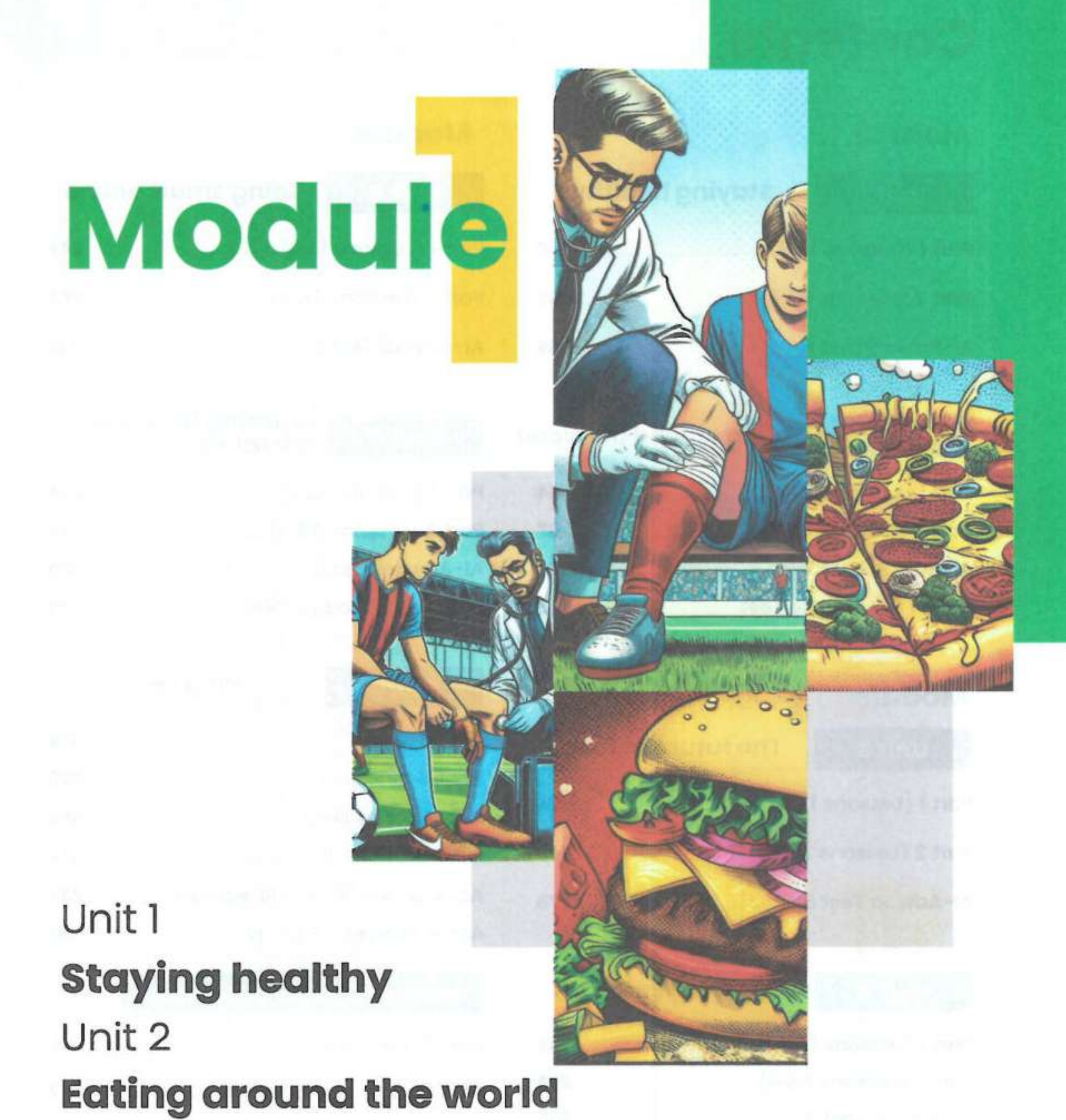

AL ADWAA
Gem
2500 سؤال كلمات وقواعد
40 قطعة - 125 ترجمة
هدية مجانية
2nd SEC
FIRST TERM
KING LEAR
NEW HELLO!
2025

Contents

Module 1



Unit 1

Staying healthy

Unit 2

Eating around the world

Test

Units 1 & 2 Module 1

Unit 1

Staying healthy



Objectives

Reading : A poster about how to perform first aid
Writing : A persuasive email to a friend
Listening : A news report about medical support for athletes; An explanation of the immune system
Speaking : Suggesting solutions to problems; Persuading
Language : Present and past necessity and lack of necessity
Life Skills : Resilience

Study ... Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2





A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation) (n) عملية إنعاش رئوى قلبى	perform (v) (ed) يقوم بـ/يؤدى	severe (adj) شديد/خطير
infection (n) عدوى	react (v) (ed) يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل	technique (n) طريقة/أسلوب/تقنية

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والإستماع

allow (v) (ed) يسمح	chest (n) صدر	fortunately (adv) لحسن الحظ
ambulance (n) سيارة الإسعاف	collaboration (n) تعاون/مشاركة	handball (n) كرة اليد
area (n) منطقة	competition (n) مسابقة/منافسة	heart centre (n) مركز القلب
athlete (n) لاعب رياضى (شخص)	damage (v) (d) يفسد/يتلف	immediately (adv) فورًا
athletic (adj) رياضى/متعلق بألعاب القوى	detail (n) تفصيل	injury (n) إصابة
awake (adj) مستيقظ/واعٍ	disease (n) مرض	instructions (n) تعليمات
bacteria (n) بكتيريا	educate (v) (d) يعلم/يدرس	lock (v) (ed) يغلق/يحبس
base (n) أساس/قاعدة (أسفل الشىء)	else (adv) آخر	major (adj) رئيسى
bleed (v) ينزف	emergency services (n) خدمات الطوارئ	normal (adj) طبيعى
bone (n) عِظم/عظمة	examination (n) فحص/اختبار	pioneer (n) رائد
breathing (n) التنفس	executive director (n) مدير تنفيذى	place (v) (d) (n) يضع/مكان
call (v) (ed) يتصل/ينادى	expert (n) (adj) خبير	press (v) (ed) يضغط
championship (n) بطولة	first aid (n) إسعافات أولية	regular (adj) منتظم
check (v) (ed) يفحص/يراجع	flat (adj) مسطح/مستوٍ	repeat (v) (ed) يكرر

respond (v) (ed) يستجيب	skill (n) مهارة	technology (n) تكنولوجيا
responsibility (n) مسئولية	sudden (adj) مفاجئ	train (v) (ed) يدرب/يتدرب
rise (v) يرتفع	surface (n) سطح (الجزء الأعلى من الشىء)	trophy (n) كأس/جائزة
sign (n) علامة	survive (v) (d) ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة	

Workbook Vocabulary مفردات كتاب التدريبات

act (v) (ed) يتصرف/يمثل	kit (n) عدة/طقم أدوات	pump (v) (ed) يضخ
bandage (n) ضمادة (للجرح)	label (n) ملصق	regularly (adv) بانتظام
blood (n) دم	muscle (n) عضلة	tight (adj) محكم/مشدود/ضيق
encourage (v) (d) يشجع	operation (n) عملية جراحية	
gloves (n) قفازات	performance (n) أداء	wrap (v) (ped) يلف/يغلف
guide (v) (d) يوجه/يرشد	prohibition (n) منع/حظر	

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Two of the victims suffered .... head injuries in the car accident and they had immediate operations.
   (b) a) regular b) severe c) simple d) normal
2. A team of Egyptian and Chinese scientists .... experiments on the new medicine.
   a) performed b) relieved c) made d) reacted
3. When children do badly at school, parents often .... with anger.
   a) call b) allow c) reflect d) react
4. Good hospitals have programmes for their surgeons to be trained in all the latest surgical ....
   a) objectives b) reactions c) techniques d) examinations
5. .... is the process of breathing air into the mouth of an unconscious person and pressing on their chest to keep them alive by sending air around their body.
   a) VCR b) PCR c) CPR d) MRI
6. I had an appointment at the dentist's for a routine .... on Monday afternoon.
   a) examination b) reaction c) intention d) collaboration

7. Students are only .... to use the equipment in the laboratory under their teacher's supervision.
   a) discouraged b) allowed c) prohibited d) learned
8. The population in Egypt has been .... rapidly, which causes a lot of economic problems.
   a) rising b) detecting c) decreasing d) arousing
9. You must make sure you understand the safety .... before you use the cutting machine.
   a) constructions b) policies c) licences d) instructions
10. The package which the postman delivered was .... in plain brown paper.
   a) wrapped b) locked c) dumped d) removed

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

do an action يقوم بالتصرف	have/get an infection يصاب بعدوى	stay healthy يبقى بصحة جيدة
do CPR يجرى عملية التنفس الصناعى	make sure يتأكد	take up a new sport يمارس (يتخذ) لعبة جديدة
do sport يمارس رياضة	perform a play يمثل مسرحية	take/do a test يؤدى اختبارًا
care about يهتم بـ	lock … together يغلق… معًا	respond to يستجيب لـ
come off يسقط/ يخرج من مكانه	react with يتصرف بـ/يتفاعل مع	rise up يرفع (يرتفع) لأعلى
disagree about لا يوافق (يعترض) على	reply to يرد على/ يستجيب لـ	wrap … around يلف… حول

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
bleed ينزف	bleeding نزيف	------------------------
breathe يتنفس	breath نفس breathing تنفس	breathy لاهث/مصحوب بأنفاس مسموعة
collaborate يتعاون/يشارك	collaboration تعاون/مشاركة	collaborative تعاونى
guide يوجه/يرشد	guidance توجيه/إرشاد guide مرشد	guiding إرشادى/توجيهى

infect	يعدى	infection	عدوى	infected infectious	مصاب بعدوى مُعدٍ
injure	يصيب/يجرح	injury	إصابة/جرح	injured	مصاب/مجروح
operate	يقوم بعملية/يشغل	operation	عملية جراحية	operative	جراحى/مشغل
perform	يؤدى	performance/performer	أداء/مؤدٍ	performing	مؤدٍ
react	يقوم برد فعل	reaction	رد فعل	reactive	ذو رد فعل

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- The team performed very well. (v)
- The performance of the team was very good. (n)
- Most performers feel nervous before they go on stage. (n)
- The performing team was so professional. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
collaboration	تعاون/مشاركة	participation/partnership		isolation/disunion	عزلة/عدم اتحاد
examination	فحص/اختبار	observation/checking		disregard/negligence	إهمال
flat	مسطح/مستوٍ	straight/plain		rough/uneven	خشن/غير مستقيم
guide	يوجه/يرشد	advise/direct		misguide/mislead	يضلل/يسيء التوجيه
infection	عدوى	contagion		sterility/sanitation	تعقيم/الصحة العامة
injury	إصابة	wound/harm		remedy/cure	علاج
perform	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	act/carry out		abandon/fail	يتوقف/يفشل
press	يضغط	squeeze/compress		release/extend	يطلق/يمد
react	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل	proceed/respond		cease/ignore	يتوقف/يتجاهل
severe	شديد/خطير	acute/extreme		gentle/mild	بسيط/لطيف/معتدل
skill	مهارة	proficiency/craft		incompetence/inability	عدم كفاءة/عدم قدرة

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The hospital tested the patient's blood for signs of the .... of malaria.
   (d) a) infect b) infected c) infectious d) infection
2. Researchers are collaborating to develop the vaccine. The adjective of the verb "collaborate" is "....................".
   a) collaborates b) collaboration c) collaborative d) collaborating
3. The soldier had a deep wound in his chest. The word "wound" can be replaced by the word "....................".
   a) remedy b) injury c) cure d) trial
4. Doctors assure that a good diet and plenty of exercise will help you to .... healthy.
   a) make b) avoid c) stay d) remove
5. Many young women stop .... sports when they get married.
   a) doing b) letting c) going d) making
6. The Minister did not respond directly .... the accusations of the Parliament members.
   a) at b) for c) about d) to
7. Many parents often disagree .... the best way to bring up their children.
   a) about b) to c) with d) for
8. Our national team must win the game to .... sure of qualifying for the World Cup.
   a) do b) make c) design d) devise
9. A supervisor will evaluate يقيم the new employee's .... for at least three months.
   a) perform b) performance c) performer d) performative
10. The police are carrying out an examination of the crime scene. The word "examination" is an antonym of the word "....................".
   a) negligence b) attention c) response d) checking

Reading Text



How to perform first aid

1. If you find an ill or injured person, you must check the area around them first to make sure it isn't dangerous. Then move closer to the person and look carefully at him/her. Does he/she seem to be very ill? Does he/she have severe injuries?
2. If the person is awake but not bleeding, you have to ask him/her how he/she feels and what happened. Check his/her body for signs of injury or infection. You don't have to touch the person's body to do this.
3. If the person doesn't reply, touch his/her shoulder[1] or foot and shout to see if he/she reacts, and remember to check for normal breathing.
4. If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the emergency services[2] immediately (123).
5. If you know how to perform CPR, you have to do this to help the person start breathing again. However, you mustn't do CPR unless the person is lying on their back on a flat surface such as the floor.
6. Place your hand on the centre of the person's chest. Put your other hand on top of the first hand and lock your fingers together. Make sure that your shoulders are above your hands.
7. You don't have to press down on the person's chest very much – only five to six centimetres. Keep your hands on their chest and allow it to rise up again. You have to do this 100 to 120 times a minute until the person starts breathing again[3].

Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام صيغة الأمر (touch) فى جواب الشرط للحالة الأولى لـ (If).

٢- لاحظ استخدام زمن المضارع المستمر (isn't breathing) بدلًا من المضارع البسيط فى فعل الشرط للحالة الأولى لـ (If).

٣- لاحظ استخدام أداة الربط (until) للربط بين جملتين فى زمن المضارع للتعبير عن قاعدة أو حدثين متكررين.

Listening Text (1)

Scan & listen



Most of us know that we need to stay healthy and many of us enjoy sports. But some young athletes believe that they don't need to worry about heart problems until they get very ill. However, health experts agree that athletes must get a special heart examination before they can be completely sure that they don't have a problem.

For example, in 2006, Mohamed Abdelwahab was an Egyptian footballer from Fayum who seemed to be very healthy. At that time, football clubs didn't have to check their players' hearts, but then Abdelwahab fell down while he was training. Sadly, although the emergency services took him to hospital, Abdelwahab didn't survive(1).

Fortunately, Egypt became a pioneer in athletic heart care in 2018 when it established the first Athletic Heart Centre in the Middle East in Wadi el Nil Hospital.

It was decided that the AHC had to have the best technology to check every detail of an athlete's heart. And Dr Hazem Khamis, the Hospital Director, has said that the centre will help to protect everyone who enjoys sport in Egypt, and it will work with Liverpool John Moores University to help athletes abroad.

Dr Ahmed Ashraf Eissa, who is the Executive Director of the centre, also believes that anyone who does any kind of sport should check the health of their heart first. For example, the members of the Egyptian national handball team take full tests of their hearts before major competitions, such as the World Handball Championships.

And now Dr Hazem and Dr Ahmed have published a book together so that everyone can understand the importance(2) of having a healthy heart. It's called Athletic Heart: Between Dreams of a Trophy and Sudden Death. Young athletes, and their families, mustn't miss this chance to learn about the importance of heart examinations to stay fit and healthy.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- يستخدم الظرف عادة لوصف الفعل و يأتي بعده ولكن عند البدء به يكون وصفًا للجملة كلها كما في (Sadly).

٢- لاحظ استخدام الصيغة مصدر + can/could فاعل + so that بمعنى... جدًا لدرجة أن ...

Scan & listen



Listening Text (2) (Workbook)



Of course, not everyone will become an athlete or a footballer, but that does not mean we should forget about our hearts. So what should parents do to help their children stay free from heart disease?

Your heart pumps about 380 litres of blood through your body every hour. This is a lot of work. In fact, your heart has to work harder than any other muscle in your body. That is why we need to keep it fit and healthy.

We all need to exercise for 30 minutes every day if we can. We should all get lots of exercise – that means Mum and Dad as well as the children. Try to walk, cycle, swim or play games outside as often as you can. Play together as a family and it will be more fun. If a child decides to take up a new sport, send them to visit a doctor to check their heart first. They'll probably be fine, but the doctor will need to do some tests to check.

Eat healthily, too. Show your children that they need to look at the labels before they buy something. They mustn't eat too much of something if it has a lot of salt or fat in it.

Eat well, do lots of exercise and you should have healthy hearts for life!

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

	Word	Example
1	**athlete** رياضى (شخص يمارس رياضة وخاصة ألعاب القوى)	Athletes are all happy to take part in the Olympic Games.
	athletic رياضى (صفة لوصف شخص أو شىء رياضى)	- He can play any sport, he's naturally athletic. - School athletic competitions are encouraged to help students live healthily.
	athletics ألعاب القوى (مجموعة من الألعاب تشمل الجرى والقفز والرمى) تعامل معاملة المفرد	Athletics is considered the most important sport in the Olympic Games.

	Word	Example
2	**sign** ١- لافتة (ورقية/معدنية) لمعلومة/ تحذير/ تعليمات. ٢- إشارة إلى (حدث يدل على حقيقة)	- You must take care of traffic signs while driving on the road. - Do you see any signs of improvement in the patient's condition?
	signal ١- إشارة (تليفون / إذاعة / تليفزيون) ٢- إشارة (ضوئية/صوتية) كدليل أو إعطاء إذن لشيء.	- The satellite is used for transmitting signals around the world. - The siren صفارة الإنذار was a signal for everyone to leave the building.
	landmark علامة بارزة (تميز مكانًا) مثل برج أو مبنى	The Eiffel Tower is probably the most famous landmark in Paris.
3	**operation** ١- عملية جراحية. ٢- عملية إنجاز (عمل / نشاط) لشركة أو منظمة.	- The famous surgeon has done this operation hundreds of times. - Connecting the water supply to some villages isn't a simple operation.
	process ١- عملية طبيعية أو صناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شيء. ٢- عملية إجرائية (سلسلة من الخطوات لإتمام شيء)	Birth and ageing may be man's most important natural processes. Getting a visa can be a complex process.
4	**another** آخر (للمفرد) **another +** مسافات / كميات / أموال / أوقات	- There's another news programme at ten o'clock. - I want to stay in Paris for another 3 days. - I lent my friend another ten pounds.
	other + اسم أخرى (للجمع / اسم لا يُعد) **the other** الآخر (بمعنى أن هناك اثنين فقط)	- I suggested a camping holiday, but Omar had other ideas. - You gave me only one pen, where is the other (one)?
	others الآخرون (يأتي بعدها فعل)	One boy fell off his chair and the others laughed.
	else ١- آخر/أيضًا تستخدم بعد كلمات تبدأ بـ some - any - every - no ولا يأتي بعدها اسم ٢- آخر/أيضًا (تستخدم بعد أدوات الاستفهام)	- There's something else I'd like to talk about as well. - I'll give you the report, but don't tell anybody else. - He is awake now, like everyone else. - Who else was at the party yesterday? - What else would you like to buy?

	Word	Example
5	**base** ١- أساس / قاعدة (الجزء الأسفل من شىء) ٢- أساس (الجزء الأهم من شىء ما، والذى منه تتطور الأفكار الجديدة)	- The statue has a solid concrete base. - India has a good scientific research base.
	basis أساس (الحقائق أو الأفكار أو الأشياء التى يمكن تطوير شىء ما منها)	Love and trust form a good basis for marriage.
6	**pioneer** رائد (من أوائل من قام بشىء ما)	Magdy Yaccoub is one of the pioneers of heart surgery.
	entrepreneur رائد أعمال (شخص مبتدئ فى مجال المال والمشروعات)	Bill Gates was one of the successful entrepreneurs in the field of computer software.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I couldn't make any calls during the safari trip as the .... was very bad in the area.
a) signal b) mark c) sign d) message

2. The climbers established a camp at the .... of the mountain to spend the night.
a) basis b) base c) basic d) board

3. The famous doctor was a/an .... in the development of new cancer treatments.
a) author b) entrepreneur c) pioneer d) user

4. Getting a visa is a complex .... involving many steps and procedures.
a) process b) operation c) duty d) mission

5. The child's parents must give their consent موافقة before he/she has the ....
a) process b) operation c) option d) task

6. The new drug can be safely used in combination with .... medicines.
a) another b) else c) others d) other

7. Some species of plants and animals exist in the rainforests and nowhere .... on earth.
a) another b) else c) others d) other

8. I didn't have to renew my passport as it is still valid for .... two years.
a) another b) other c) others d) the other

9. The assistant hung a .... on the door of the shop that said it would reopen at 10 p.m.
a) signal b) mark c) sign d) letter

10. We love to watch the Olympic competitions – especially the ....
a) athlete b) athletic c) authentic d) athletics

Practice ... Vocabulary General Exercises



Practise more

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. Doctors say that white blood cells help defend the body against ....
   a) injection b) infection c) operation d) reflection
2. The lifeguard pulled the boy out of the swimming pool and did .... for him to save his life.
   a) CPR b) PCR c) VIP d) MRI
3. Raw meat and poultry الدواجن may contain harmful ...., therefore they must be cooked to a high temperature.
   a) plants b) pains c) organs d) bacteria
4. Luckily, the young doctor had his medical .... with him when the accident happened.
   a) devices b) techniques c) kits d) jokes
5. After putting out the fire, some victims suffered from .... difficulties and eye irritation تهيج.
   a) disease b) temperature c) breathing d) depression
6. Children under five are vaccinated against .... childhood diseases such as smallpox الجدري and polio.
   a) normal b) unimportant c) major d) minor
7. When I reached the hospital, my nose was .... and the doctor plugged it with cotton wool.
   a) breathing b) wrapping c) treating d) bleeding
8. An .... is a person with a high level of knowledge or skill in a particular subject or activity.
   a) export b) explorer c) employer d) expert
9. The new director has full .... for the financial matters of the company.
   a) ability b) potential c) responsibility d) ambition
10. Father always says that a good education should give you a solid .... for life.
    a) injury b) base c) brick d) bottom
11. Two top athletes have been disqualified from the .... after positive drug tests.
    a) contagion b) ambition c) championship d) custody
12. The company has refused to reveal تعلن عن any technical .... about the new product until it went on sale.
    a) tips b) derivations c) examinations d) details
13. Our neighbour appeared weak and confused, causing his family to call for assistance from .... services.
    a) policy b) efficiency c) emergency d) detective
14. We arrived at the airport late, but .... our plane was delayed.
    a) unluckily b) fortunately c) commonly d) regularly

15. My grandfather pays .... amounts of money to Resala Charity to help the poor.
 a) regular b) visual c) gradual d) fake

16. Visible light from the sun passes through the atmosphere to the Earth's ....
 a) bottom b) core c) surface d) roof

17. You must ensure the wound is free from dirt before applying the ....
 a) rope b) bandage c) cure d) ribbon

18. A stranger was helpful enough to .... the tourist through the narrow streets to the Sultan Hassan Mosque.
 a) guide b) distract c) detect d) mislead

19. We are sad that only few buildings .... the war attacks in Gaza.
 a) damaged b) stayed c) survived d) constructed

20. The actor was annoyed at the reporters' question and .... that he didn't want to give interviews.
 a) treated b) responded c) refused d) applied

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. He suffered a severe head injury. The synonym of the word "severe" is "..................".
 a) acute b) easy c) simple d) strange

22. The paramedics who took the injured footballer .... CPR for him which could save his life.
 a) trained b) made c) performed d) applied

23. Did you .... any new sport when you started high school this year?
 a) make b) do c) give d) design

24. I .... a bad infection in my eye and my doctor said it was due to my lens.
 a) made b) did c) devised d) got

25. The call centre in the company can respond .... all customer complaints within 2 days.
 a) in b) to c) on d) at

26. The farmland near the Nile is very flat. The adjective "flat" is the opposite of "..................".
 a) smooth b) fertile c) rough d) barren

27. Poor hygiene can increase the danger of infection. The noun "infection" is similar in meaning to "..................".
 a) hygiene b) sterility c) contagion d) sanitation

28. The paramedics could react very quickly to the emergency calls after the earthquake. The noun from the verb "react" is "..................".
 a) reacts b) reacted c) reactive d) reaction

29. The nurse pressed on the wound trying to stop the bleeding. The verb "press" is the antonym of "..................".
 a) compress b) release c) squeeze d) treat

30. A button had come .... my coat, but I didn't notice it as it was dark.
a) for b) at c) in d) off

31. My brother advised me to .... up a new sport in order to be more sociable.
a) set b) give c) take d) design

32. The village mill طاحونة had been in .... for over 50 years before taking it down.
a) operation b) process c) delay d) defect

33. The Great Pyramid is probably Giza's most famous .... which is visited by millions of tourists every year.
a) sign b) landmark c) signal d) landfill

34. A/An .... is someone who starts their own business, especially when this involves seeing a new opportunity.
a) pioneer b) inventor c) entrepreneur d) practitioner

35. Anything you share on your Facebook page is shown shortly afterwards to everyone ....
a) other b) else c) another d) others

Longman and Previous Exams

36. We must put on .... before helping someone who's bleeding. Longman
a) first aid b) glues c) kits d) gloves

37. I usually get my blood pressure checked .... because I have heart problems. Longman
a) already b) regularly c) gradually d) rarely

38. Follow the rules of cleanliness to avoid being .... with any serious disease. Longman
a) infected b) protected c) injected d) rejected

39. The .... death of the young man was a big mystery. Longman
a) regular b) sudden c) late d) postponed

40. Athletes must understand the importance of .... their hearts regularly. Longman
a) changing b) shaking c) sharing d) checking

41. He was isolated in a separate room because of .... سوهاج / إدارة البلينا
a) infection b) infect c) infectious d) infected

42. Part of the final chemistry exam includes .... an experiment. الجيزة / إدارة العمرانية
a) deciding b) designing c) performing d) making

43. "..................". is a synonym for very serious. الشرقية / إدارة القنايات
a) Serve b) Simple c) Severe d) Safe

44. He applies the latest .... in business management. المنوفية / إدارة بركة السبع
a) resilience b) techniques c) pioneers d) emergency

45. The doctor pressed tightly on the wound to stop the .... سوهاج / إدارة المنشأة
a) breeding b) leading c) blooding d) bleeding



Necessity/Lack of necessity/Prohibition
الضـرورة / عدم الضـرورة / المنـع

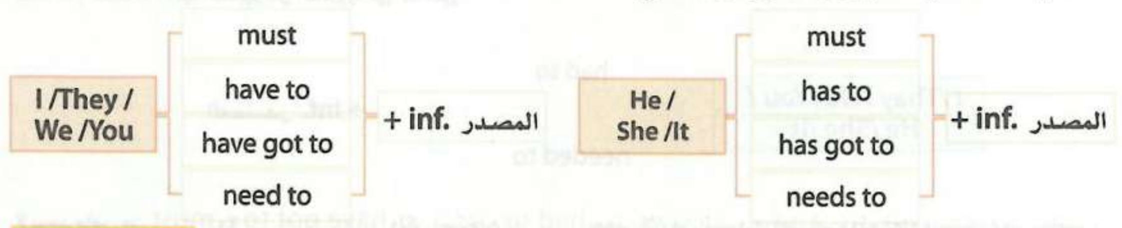
1 Necessity
الضـرورة

نضطر أحيانًا لفعل شىء أو نلزم أنفسنا بفعل شىء، ونستخدم كلمات للتعبير عن ذلك فى الماضى أو المضارع أو المستقبل والجدول الآتى يبين الكلمات المستخدمة فى كل زمن:

Present	المضارع	Past	الماضي	Future	المستقبل
must has/have to has/have got to	+ inf. المصـدر	had to no past	+ inf. المصـدر	will have to	+ inf. المصـدر
need to /needs to		needed to	+ inf. المصـدر	will need to	+ inf. المصـدر

PRESENT المضارع

نستخـدم الكلمـات الآتيـة للتعبيـر عن الضـرورة فى المضـارع:



Examples

- I must/have to/have got to/ need to go on a diet to be fit.
- He must/has to/has got to/ needs to go on a diet to be fit.

وهناك كلمات ومصطلحات تسـاوى الأفعال السابقة ولكن بشكل مختلف منها:

1 It is necessary /a necessity/a necessary thing: إنه لـ ضرورى/ ضرورة.

تستخدم مع it وليس الضمائر والأسماء مثل:

- It's necessary/a necessity/ a necessary thing to eat healthy food.
  = We must/ have to/have got to/ need to eat healthy food.

لو أردنا التخصيص نستخدم for ثم المفعول مثل:

It's necessary/ a necessity/ a necessary thing for him to find another job.
= He must/ has to/ has got to/ needs to find another job.

2 (be) obliged to + inf. مُضطرًا/مُرغمًا (فى الغالب مبنى للمجهول)

- He is obliged to look for another flat.
  = He has to/has got to/ needs to look for another flat.
- Circumstances have obliged him to sell his car.
  = He has to/has got to/ needs to sell his car.

لاحظ استخدام obligatory بمعنى إجبارى أو ضرورى بسبب القوانين واللوائح.

- It is obligatory for all competitors to wear face protectors.

3 a must (إنه لضرورة)

تستخدم must كاسم يعد بعد a مثل:

- Warm clothes are a must in winter.
- It's a must to read the new novel if you like crime fiction.

لاحظ استخدام to بعد a must ولكن لا نستخدمها بعد must كفعل ناقص.

- All of us must economise on water. (not ~~must to~~)

PAST الماضى

نستخدم الكلمات الآتية للتعبير عن الضرورة فى الماضى:

I /They /We /You / He /She /It	had to / needed to	+ inf. المصدر

لا يوجد ماضٍ من must ولا have got to ولكن نستخدم had to بمعنى كان من الضرورى فعل شىء وتم فعله ونستخدم فى الماضى:

It was necessary/was a necessity/was a necessary thing/ was a must/He was obliged ...

Examples

- It was necessary for him to train hard before the match.
  = He had to train hard before the match.
- We were obliged to show our passports at the airport.
  = We had to show our passports at the airport.



Note: ملحوظة

إذا كان الشىء ضروريًا ولم نفعله نستخدم (التصريف الثالث should have +p.p) وهذا يشير إلى اللوم أو النقد.

- He should have studied harder. He wasted his time and he is sorry now.

FUTURE مستقبل

نستخدم الكلمات الآتية للتعبير عن الضرورة فى المستقبل:

I/They/We/You/ He/She/It	will have to	+ inf. المصدر
	will need to	

إذا كان وقت الضرورة لم يأتِ وسيكون هناك شيئًا يجب فعله فى المستقبل نستخدم will have to.

Examples

- If you don't do your homework today, you will have to do it tomorrow.
- If the landlord refuses to renew our contract, we will have to look for another flat.
- It will be necessary for the government to build more houses for youth.
  = The government will have to build more houses for youth.

تعبر have/has to عن المستقبل أيضًا ولكن الضرورة تبدأ من لحظة الكلام وصاعدًا.

- I have got low marks in Maths, so I have to study hard.

الفرق بين: must - have to/has to:

كلاهما يفيد الضرورة والاضطرار لفعل شيء ولكن الاختلاف فيمن يفرض الضرورة.

- تفيد must الضرورة الشخصية (ظروف شخصية تضطره لذلك) والشخص يكون موافقًا لهذه الضرورة وراضيًا عنها (إلزام داخلى).
- وتفيد have to ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج ليس لديك اختيار فى فعلها.

Examples

- I have to get up early on school days.
- I must visit Ramy on Saturday, as I promised to visit him.

ولبيان الفرق الكامل بينهما يجب دراسة الجدول الآتى:

	have/has to	must
1	شخص آخر يعتقد إنه ضرورى (مفروض من الخارج). • My doctor always tells me I'm overweight and I have to go on a diet.	يعتقد المتحدث إنه ضرورى (شعور داخلى). • These pants don't fit me anymore. I must lose weight.
2	تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة ويمكن استخدامها فى الماضى والمضارع والمستقبل. • She has to take two trains and a bus to get to work every day. • I had to visit my uncle yesterday. • I will have to book the ticket tomorrow.	تستخدم فى المضارع لوصف ضرورة عامة ودائمة وعندما تكون الأوامر رسمية أو عامة فى مستندات أو إشعارات. • When you drive you must wear a seatbelt. • Passengers must keep their bags with them at all times.

3

تستخدم مثل أى فعل عادى فى التصريف مع استخدام has للفاعل المفرد أو الضمائر He/She/It وفى السؤال do/does.
- Does he have to wear a suit to work?
- Do I have to bring some form of ID?

لا تتغير "must" مع كل الضمائر فى الجملة الخبرية أو الاستفهام.
- I/He/They must be healthy.
- Must I go to the party? I don't really want to.
- Must he make so much noise? It's really annoying.

4

فى النفى نضيف doesn't/don't ثم have to ثم المصدر.
- She doesn't have to come to the meeting if she doesn't want to.
- We don't have to read all these books.

فى النفى نضيف not المختصرة ثم المصدر.
- They mustn't use their mobile phones during lessons.
- We mustn't stand up while the plane is taking off.

5

تستخدم "don't/doesn't have to" للشىء غير الضرورى وأن الشخص غير مضطر لفعله.
- He doesn't have to work on Fridays, so he can do what he wants.
- You don't have to pay to visit the Pyramids in Egypt. They are free.

تستخدم "mustn't" فى النفى للمنع والحظر (قوانين) والنصيحة القوية.
- When the traffic lights are red, you mustn't go.
- I mustn't drink any more coffee, otherwise I won't sleep tonight.

6

تستخدم had to للحديث عن الضرورة فى الماضى.
- Did you have to pay a fine when the police stopped you?
- Did he have to get up early yesterday?
- The doctor told her she had to lose weight.

لا تستخدم must فى الماضى.
- Present simple = must/have to
- Future simple = must/will have to
- Past simple = had to
- Present perfect = have/has had to

Have got to:

You can use have got to instead of have to:

تستخدم have got to بنفس معنى have to:

- I've got to work tomorrow. Or I have to work tomorrow.
- When has Hala got to go? Or When does Hala have to go?

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Answer all the questions. You .... write your answers in ink.
   (d) a) need b) had to c) didn't have to d) must
2. Did your brother .... pay a fine when the police stopped him?
   a) had to b) must c) have to d) has to
3. Since his car was being repaired, he .... go to Alex by train.
   a) has to b) had to c) didn't have to d) must
4. You have a lot of work tomorrow. You .... be late.
   a) mustn't b) must c) have to d) don't have to
5. You .... show your passport when you visit another country.
   a) don't have to b) needn't c) have to d) had to

2 Lack of Necessity عدم الضرورة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	Future المستقبل	
don't/doesn't have to	+ inf. المصـــدر	didn't have to + inf. المصدر لم يكن ضرورى فعل شيء فلم نفعله	won't have to	+ inf. المصـــدر
needn't (to بدون)		needn't have + P.P. لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء ولكن تم فعله	won't need to	
don't/doesn't need to		didn't need to + inf. المصدر		

PRESENT المضارع

نستخـدم الكلمات الآتية للتعبيـر عن عدم الضرورة فى المضارع:



Examples

عنـدما نستخدم عدم الضـرورة فإننا نقول إنه لا داعى لفعـل الشـىء فإذا فعلناه فلا ضـرر فمثـلًا:

- Tomorrow is a holiday. You don't have to get up early.

غدًا إجازة فلا داعى للاستيقـاظ مبكـرًا، ولكن إذا استيقظت مبكـرًا فلا ضرر.

- I don't have to/needn't/ don't need to buy any other shirts. I have so many shirts.
- He doesn't have to/needn't/ doesn't need to buy any other shirts. He has so many shirts.

وهنـاك كلمات ومصطلحات تسـاوى الأفعال السابقة ولكن بشكل مختلف منها:

It isn't necessary /a necessity/a necessary thing: إنه (ليس ضروريًّا / ضرورة).

- It isn't necessary/ a necessity/ a necessary thing to eat fast food.
  = We needn't/ don't have to/ don't need to eat fast food.

لو أردنـا التخصيص نستخدم for ثم المفعول مثل:

- It isn't necessary/ a necessity/ a necessary thing for him to borrow his brother's phone.
  = He needn't/ doesn't have to/ doesn't need to borrow his brother's phone.

Note: ملحوظة

لو نفيت must بـ mustn't يتغير المعنى إلى النصيحة القوية أو الحظر والمنع للقوانين واللوائح؛ لذلك نستخدم البدائل مثل (don't/ doesn't have to)/ needn't.

- You mustn't park here. It's forbidden.

◄ القانـون يمنـع الانتظار هنا، ولو فعلـت تعاقـب.

- You needn't park here. There is a better place over there.

◄ المكان ليس ممنوعًا، لكن هناك مكان أوسع أو أحسن فلو تم الانتظار فلا عقاب.

PAST الماضى

نستخدم الكلمات الآتية للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة فى الماضى:

I /They /We /You / He /She /It	didn't have to didn't need to	+ inf. المصـدر
	needn't have	+ p.p. التصريف الثالث



Examples

الماضى من don't/ doesn't have to هو didn't have to بمعنى لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شىء فلم يتم فعله.

- It wasn't necessary for me to get up early yesterday. It was a holiday.
  = I didn't have to get up early yesterday. It was a holiday.

لم أكن مضطرًا للاستيقاظ مبكرًا أمس فلم أستيقظ.

أما الماضى من needn't هو needn't have + p.p. بمعنى أنه لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شىء ولكن تم فعله.

- It wasn't necessary for me to wear that heavy coat, but I did.
  = I needn't have worn that heavy coat.

Note: ملحوظة

نستخدم shouldn't have + p.p. للتعبير عن حدث تم فعله أيضًا ولكن للندم أو اللوم.

- He shouldn't have ridden the bike in the middle of the street.

FUTURE المستقبل

نستخدم الكلمات الآتية للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة فى المستقبل:

I /They /We /You / He /She /It	won't have to won't need to	+ inf. المصـدر

Examples

إذا لم يكن هناك داعٍ لفعل شىء فى المستقبل نستخدم won't have to.

- If you do your homework today, you won't have to do it tomorrow.
  = If the landlord agrees to renew our contract, we won't have to look for another flat.
- It won't be necessary for us to go out for a walk tomorrow. There will be an important match on T.V.
  = We won't have to go out for a walk tomorrow. There will be an important match on TV.

3 Prohibition المنع

mustn't	=	can't	+	inf. المصــدر

تستخدم mustn't للتعبير عن المنع والحظر والتحريم للقوانين واللوائح.

- You mustn't/can't smoke in hospitals. It's forbidden.

وتوجد تعبيرات تساويها فى المعنى وهى:

- It's forbidden/ It's against the law (rules)/ It's banned/ You aren't allowed to …
  - = It's against the law to drive a truck on the left in Egypt.
  - = You mustn't drive a truck on the left in Egypt.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... this furniture yesterday. It was really unnecessary.
   (a) a) needn't have bought b) had to buy
   c) shouldn't buy d) needn't buy
2. Mona .... take her sunglasses because it was cloudy.
   a) had to b) needn't have
   c) mustn't d) didn't need to
3. We .... use our passports. They accepted our ID cards.
   a) had to b) didn't have to
   c) have to d) have got to
4. We've got plenty of time. We .... hurry.
   a) have to b) must
   c) needn't d) don't need
5. You .... go shopping with us; you can stay at home if you want.
   a) don't have to b) mustn't
   c) must d) have to

Practice ... Language General Exercises



Practise more

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. According to the law, drivers .... stop at stop signs.

a) had to b) mustn't c) must d) can't

2. If you have a garden, you .... water the trees regularly or they will die!

a) mustn't b) have got to c) had to d) need

3. A: Do you .... go to work today? **B:** No, I don't because it's Friday.

a) must b) haven't got to c) need d) have to

4. Hassan .... finish the report quickly because the deadline is today at 4 pm.

a) has to b) need to c) mustn't d) needn't

5. When we were teenagers, we .... be home by nine o'clock.

a) don't have to b) have to c) had to d) won't have to

6. When we were students, we .... take as many exams as students nowadays.

a) should b) don't have to c) have to d) didn't have to

7. I can't see the small print very well. I think I .... wear glasses soon.

a) won't have to b) will have to c) had to d) don't have to

8. It's .... to know how to do CPR to help people in need.

a) necessary b) prohibited c) have to d) must

9. I knew that my son washed the car. So, I .... it.

a) had to wash b) needn't have washed c) didn't have to wash d) washed

10. It's .... to take the medicine regularly when you are very ill.

a) a must b) allowed c) banned d) unnecessary

11. Your injury wasn't serious; you .... a doctor.

a) had to see b) needn't have seen c) must see d) don't need to see

12. I .... my English teacher. I'd like to ask him/her some confusing questions.

a) must see
b) needn't see
c) had to see
d) allowed to see

13. Modern factories .... the best machines to increase production.

a) have to
b) needn't have
c) mustn't have
d) have to have

14. We .... talk to each other because it was an exam.

a) shouldn't
b) can't
c) mustn't
d) weren't allowed to

15. It was my day off yesterday, so I .... get up early.

a) needed to
b) didn't have to
c) mustn't
d) had to

16. You .... phone me at work. We aren't allowed personal calls.

a) needn't
b) have to
c) need to
d) mustn't

17. You mustn't park here. It means that ....

a) it is necessary to park here
b) it isn't necessary to park here
c) it's against the law to park here
d) parking isn't forbidden here

18. Nobody enjoys .... get up at five o'clock in the morning.

a) have to
b) having to
c) has to
d) will have to

19. One of the following choices gives the same meaning to the following sentence. "We didn't have to wear coats yesterday as it was so hot."

a) It is necessary for us to wear coats today.
b) It wasn't necessary for us to wear coats yesterday.
c) It wasn't advisable for us to wear coats yesterday.
d) We needn't have worn coats yesterday as it was so hot.

20. Necessity is expressed in one of the following sentences.

a) Osama didn't have to find another job.
b) Osama needn't find another job.
c) Osama had to find another job.
d) Osama doesn't have to find another job.

Longman and Previous Exams

21. You .... take this medicine; you are quite well now. Longman

a) don't have
b) aren't allowed
c) needn't
d) ought

22. It is .... to follow traffic rules. Longman

a) necessarily
b) a must
c) an option
d) necessity

23. He was accused of disobeying traffic rules and .... a fine. Longman

a) needn't pay
b) had to be paid
c) needn't have paid
d) had to pay

24. You .... more sugar; the juice became too sweet. Longman

a) had to add
b) needn't have added
c) didn't have to add
d) mustn't have added

25. Which of the following doesn't show lack of necessity? Longman

a) Tamer doesn't have to pay for the ticket; it's for free.
b) Amal needn't worry; nothing is painful.
c) It isn't necessary for us to buy more sugar; we have much at home.
d) We need to follow traffic rules.

26. Young athletes .... miss the chance to check their heart examination. It's very important for their health. (المعصرة - القاهرة)

a) must
b) don't need
c) don't have to
d) mustn't

27. Ali .... wear a tie at work. It's a rule of his company. (العمرانية - جيزة)

a) has to
b) must
c) have to
d) mustn't

28. I'll give you a lift, so you .... walk to the station. (المنزلة - دقهلية)

a) must
b) don't have to
c) had to
d) mustn't

29. I .... eat healthy food if I'm going to be an athlete. (المنشأة - سوهاج)

a) need
b) shouldn't
c) must
d) don't have to

30. One of the following is INCORRECT: (حوش عيسى - البحيرة)

a) Did she have to pay a fine when the police stopped her?
b) He needn't have got up so early. It's a holiday.
c) You mustn't smoke in hospitals.
d) You don't have to be late. It's a very important meeting.



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. A needle and thread are the most important items in the sewing .... my mother always keeps in her handbag.
a) tool b) device c) kit d) trauma

2. The government insists on .... an action to prevent people from polluting the Nile.
a) doing b) encouraging c) avoiding d) making

3. .... services are the organisations that deal with accidents and urgent problems such as fire, illness, or crime.
a) Entertainment b) Deficiency c) Communication d) Emergency

4. Ismaili, the famous team, became the first Egyptian team to win a major African ....
a) match b) trophy c) reward d) present

5. The old woman who suffered a heart attack was in .... pain and unable to call for help.
a) severe b) gentle c) light d) several

6. Most of the players .... well in the match, but they didn't win the match.
a) made b) ignored c) performed d) ruined

7. We went to a special course to learn how to give first .... to accident victims.
a) help b) aid c) drug d) operation

8. Lifeguards are trained on .... CPR as they save people from drowning.
a) inventing b) making c) doing d) designing

9. The weather forecast says that today's temperatures will be .... for the time of year.
a) average b) natural c) common d) normal

10. The staff in our office are used to meeting ...., once a month.
a) gradually b) scarcely c) rarely d) regularly

11. Unfortunately, we'll have to wait for .... two weeks for the exam results.
a) another b) other c) others d) else

12. Khaled decided to .... up a new sport at the sports centre.
a) make b) do c) give d) take

13. The young doctor really has amazing skills. The word "skill" can be the opposite to the word "..................".
a) routing b) system c) space d) incompetence

14. It is important to .... your car's engine oil level daily for safety.
a) produce b) check c) share d) save

15. The .... who took part in the Olympics were tested for drugs.
a) athletic b) athletics c) athletes d) reporters

Language

16. .... leave school when you were only fourteen?

a) Will you have to
b) Did you have to
c) Won't you have
d) Were you forced

17. Children in my country .... go to school when they're 7. It's obligatory.

a) doesn't have to
b) has to
c) have to
d) needn't have gone

18. You .... drive on the right in Britain.

a) mustn't
b) has to
c) have to
d) don't have to

19. This is an opportunity that comes once in a lifetime. We .... let it pass.

a) don't have to
b) shouldn't have
c) needn't have
d) mustn't

20. I .... to go now. I have a class in ten minutes.

a) had better
b) have got
c) must
d) should

21. If I fail my exam, ... I .... take it again in August?

a) does/have to
b) did/have to
c) will/have to
d) do/won't have

22. We .... our towels because we knew the hotel would provide some.

a) didn't need to pack
b) needn't pack
c) don't have to pack
d) needn't have been packed

23. I .... arrive at work at 9 sharp. My boss is very strict.

a) need
b) needn't
c) mustn't
d) have to

24. Soha .... work such long hours. She can complete her work tomorrow.

a) doesn't have to
b) must
c) has to
d) mustn't

25. She .... home yesterday because her little son was sick.

a) has to stay
b) didn't have to stay
c) needn't have stayed
d) had to stay

26. You .... ride a bicycle in this park. It's forbidden.

a) needn't
b) mustn't
c) don't have to
d) aren't allowed

27. The windows looked clean. I .... wash them.

a) mustn't
b) can't
c) didn't have to
d) had to

28. You .... smoke in a hospital; it's forbidden.

a) mustn't
b) don't have to
c) have to
d) had to

29. Does he .... type these letters now?

a) has to
b) had to
c) must
d) have to

30. She .... about going to the dentist's. He was very kind.

a) must worry
b) had to worry
c) needn't have worried
d) needn't worry

Study ... Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4



Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

boost (v) (ed) يدفع / يعزز / يحمس	immune system (n) الجهاز المناعى	persuasive (adj) مقنع
brain (n) المخ	improve (v) (d) يحسن	protect (v) (ed) يحمى
brilliant (adj) بارع / رائع	join (v) (ed) ينضم إلى / يلتحق بـ	reason (n) سبب
cell (n) خلية	lung (n) الرئة	regularly (adv) بانتظام
champion (n) بطل رياضى	mistake (n) خطأ	separate (adj) (v) (d) منفصل / يفصل
cough (n) (v) (ed) سعال / كحة / يسعل / يكح	Olympic (adj) أوليمبى	situation (n) موقف
course (n) مقرر (منهج) تعليمى	ordinary (adj) عادى	spend (v) يقضى
cover (v) (ed) يغطى	organ (n) عضو فى الجسم	video games (n) ألعاب الفيديو
explanation (n) شرح / تفسير	perfect (adj) كامل / ممتاز	virus (n) فيروس

Workbook Vocabulary مفردات كتاب التدريبات

add (v) (ed) يضيف	microscope (n) مجهر (ميكروسكوب)	support (n) (v) (ed) دعم / يدعم / يساند
advertisement (n) إعلان	persuade (v) (d) يقنع	toy (n) لعبة (طفل)
behave (v) (d) يتصرف	pleasure (n) سعادة / سرور	
diet (n) نظام غذائى	remind (v) (ed) يذكر	unfortunately (adv) لسوء الحظ
flu (n) الإنفلونزا	simple (adj) بسيط	

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My little sister was taken to hospital because her white blood .... count is very low.
   a) organ b) molecule c) cell d) atom
2. Car companies are looking for ways to .... sales in Africa after the rise in prices.
   a) decrease b) prove c) boast d) boost

3. The .... system is the system by which your body protects itself against disease.

a) digestive b) immune c) respiratory d) nerve

4. I am always grateful to members of my family who have .... me in so many ways.

a) supported b) risked c) neglected d) enjoyed

5. To stay fit, you should choose a varied .... rich in whole grains, vegetables, and fruits, and low in fats.

a) order b) right c) fight d) diet

6. My son's teachers said he'd been .... badly at school.

a) believing b) behaving c) punishing d) rewarding

7. The company has learned from its past .... in dealing with customers' complaints, so they made a profit.

a) achievements b) courses c) favours d) mistakes

8. Medical facilities have greatly .... in the last few years especially in the countryside.

a) increased b) improved c) raised d) trained

9. During the fire, the old man inhaled استنشق the smoke and started .... badly.

a) coughing b) healing c) smiling d) smelling

10. The government is trying to .... local and foreign businesses to invest in the projects carried out in Egypt.

a) persuade b) attack c) order d) discourage

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

at any time فى أى وقت	get better يتحسن	in the first place فى المقام الأول
do the course يدرس منهجًا تعليميًا	get ill يصاب بمرض	make notes يدون ملاحظات
find it hard to يجد من الصعب أن	have the flu يصاب بالإنفلونزا	sound perfect يبدو رائعًا (ممتازًا)
complete ... with يكمل... بـ	interested in مهتم بـ	think of/about يفكر فى
great at رائع (عظيم) فى	look forward to يتطلع إلى	worried about قلق عن

Special Collocations تركيبات لغوية خاصة

become an expert يصبح خبيرًا	make a mistake يرتكب خطأ	think fast يفكر بسرعة
do first aid يقوم بالإسعافات الأولية	stay calm يبقى هادئًا	take a first aid course يحصل على دورة فى الإسعافات الأولية

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
add	يضيف	addition additive	إضافة مادة مضافة	additional	إضافى
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك/تصرف	behavioural	سلوكى
explain	يشرح/يفسر	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory	تفسيرى
immunise	يحصن/يوفر مناعة	immunity	مناعة	immune	منيع/مناعى
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسن	improved	متحسن
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع
support	يدعم/يساند	support supporter	دعم/مساندة داعم	supporting supportive	داعم/مساند داعم

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- He is adding a spoon of sugar to the cake mixture. (v)
- This addition is very important to the recipe. (n)
- The additional amount of sugar is enough. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
behave	يتصرف	act/react		misbehave/act up	يسيء التصرف
boost	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس	push/improve/support		hinder/discourage	يعوق/يحبط
brilliant	بارع/رائع	excellent/magnificent		ordinary/common	عادى
improve	يحسن/يتحسن	advance/enhance		decline/deteriorate	يتدهور
persuasive	مقنع	convincing		discouraging/unconvincing	مثبط/غير مقنع
pleasure	سعادة/سرور	enjoyment/delight		sadness/sorrow	حزن//أسى
separate	منفصل	isolated/disconnected		connected/combined	متصل

simple	بسيط	plain/easy	complicated	معقد
support	دعم	assistance/aid	hindrance/discouragement	إعاقة/تثبيط
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily/sadly	fortunately	لحسن الحظ

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many workers are worried .... losing their jobs because of the bad economic situation.
   a) about b) for c) with d) in
2. My grandmother is keen on .... notes of the dates of all her grandchildren's birthdays.
   a) doing b) making c) performing d) acting
3. The information desk has maps and .... pamphlets منشورات which can help all tourists.
   a) explain b) unexplained c) explanatory d) explains
4. If you don't like the job, why will you apply for it in the first ....?
   a) place b) location c) position d) area
5. The project won the support of the local community. The word "support" is similar in meaning to the word "..................".
   a) export b) import c) report d) assistance
6. All boy scouts are trained on .... first-aid in their camps.
   a) making b) devising c) doing d) exploring
7. The air hostess asked the passengers not to leave their seats and .... calm.
   a) behave b) remind c) move d) stay
8. The new service helped boost profits by 10%. The word "boost" can be the opposite of the word "..................".
   a) add b) join c) hinder d) separate
9. The young politician is a persuasive speaker. The synonym of the word "persuasive" is "..................".
   a) convincing b) argumentative c) tricky d) discouraging
10. My teenage cousin behaves like a child. The noun of the verb "behave" is "..................".
   a) behaves b) behaved c) behavioural d) behaviour

Reading Text (1)

Hi, Fares,
How are you?

It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course next week! I really think you should join them[1] because everyone has to know how to do first aid. You never know when someone you know will injure themselves[2] and you'll have to help them. You would want other people to help you too, right?

I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can think fast and you know how to stay calm in difficult situations. You don't have to become an expert, just learn enough so you can help someone until the emergency services arrive. The two-day course your friends want to do sounds perfect.

Talk to you soon!
Mahmoud



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ عدم استخدام حرف جر بعد الفعل (join) مثل بعض الأفعال الأخرى التى يتضمن معناها حرف الجر مثل (enjoy - admire).

٢- لاحظ استخدام ضمير الجمع (themselves) عند الإشارة إلى (someone) رغم أن الفعل بعدها يكون فى صيغة المفرد.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



To : healthtoday@mail.com
From : shady@mail.com

Dear Health Today,

My cousins, Imad and Munir, are visiting me again for a few days, and it's always a pleasure to see them. Unfortunately, because they are both less than seven years old, they sometimes forget how important it is to keep clean and stay healthy. At the moment, many people in my area have the flu and so these things are even more important than usual. What can I do to persuade my cousins to change how they behave? They often come very close to show me things, like photos they have taken on their phones or something funny that they have found.

And when they cough, they do not cover their mouths. They don't seem to understand why it is so important and it worries me a lot.

I'm also worried when I see them come inside because I don't think that they always wash their hands after they have been playing outside, touching things and getting dirty. They will clean their hands when I ask them, but I always have to remind them to do it.

I have heard that young children don't usually get very sick from flu and so they don't give the flu to older people, but I don't know if that is true. Do you think that I am right to worry?

I look forward to hearing from you[1].

Yours,

Shady



Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb +ing) بعد (look forward to) بمعنى يتطلع إلى.

Listening Text





Our organs are the parts of our bodies that help us to do things, like the brain that thinks, or the heart that sends blood around our bodies. The immune system comes from the cells and organs that work together to protect us from diseases.

The immune system does this by destroying things that get into our bodies like viruses. A virus is a very, very small thing that causes a disease. The disease could be something ordinary, like the kind of cold we all get sometimes, or it could be something serious like COVID-19, which first appeared at the end of 2019.

When a virus gets into a part of the body, a message is sent to the immune system. Then the immune system reacts by sending cells to find the virus. Cells are the smallest, separate living things in our bodies and they are small enough to fight against a disease.

Some people's immune systems work better than other people's. We all want our immune systems to be strong so we can stay healthy, so what can we do to help?

We can boost our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables, especially vegetables with green leaves. We also need to exercise regularly. We don't have to run 50 kilometres every day, but we need to be as active as possible.

We also need to make sure that we get enough sleep. For most people that means at least seven hours every night. Finally, we must do things like washing our hands regularly, which will help us to avoid getting a virus or an infection in the first place.

We also need to do things like covering our mouths when we cough to stop other people getting an infection or virus.

Video Script



Have you heard of CPR? It's short for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and it's a technique you perform on a person who isn't responding and isn't breathing. CPR can help someone to stay alive until an ambulance arrives.

So, before you start performing CPR on someone, you need to call an ambulance. Then while you're waiting for the ambulance, you can start performing CPR with your hands. This is the easiest way of performing CPR and the technique that's used the most often.

Start by getting down on the floor next to the person and putting the base of your hand on the bone in the centre of their chest. Then put your other hand on top of that hand and put the fingers from both hands together.

Move so that your shoulders are above your hands and press 5 or 6 centimetres down onto the person's chest. Then keep your hands on the person's chest, but stop pressing on it. The chest will come back up again.

Repeat this one hundred, or one hundred and twenty times a minute, every minute until the ambulance arrives.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	**advertisement** إعلان عن منتج أو افتتاح مكان تجارى أووظيفة	The organisers of the concert had taken out a full page advertisement in the newspaper.
	announcement إعلان عن/إذاعة خبر/تصريح	The Minister وزير made an important announcement at a news conference.

No.	Word	Example
2	**toy** لعبة (شيء يلعب به الأطفال)	I keep some of the toys on display for my grandchildren to play with.
	doll لعبة (تشبه شخصًا صغيرًا أو طفلًا)	The child was busy playing with her baby dolls.
	game لعبة (يتنافس أو يستمتع بها أشخاص)	We used to love playing games like chess or backgammon.
3	**organ** عضو من أعضاء الجسم	The brain organises the work of other organs in your body.
	member عضو/فرد في مجموعة كنادٍ أو فريق	To achieve success, everyone must work as a member of a team.
4	**spend** ينفق (مالًا) على	The young boy spends all his pocket money on buying new video games.
	spend يقضي الوقت في شيء أو أداء شيء	- Father doesn't have much free time as he spends his time in his office. - Mrs Reda spent all the day preparing for her daughter's birthday party. **لاحظ** يأتي (verb + ing) بعد spend.
5	**champion** بطل رياضي	Hedaya Malak is an Egyptian champion who won an Olympic medal in Taekwondo.
	hero بطل في المجتمع أو في قصة أو فيلم أو مسرحية	The young actor was chosen as the hero of the new series about space.
6	**two-day course** منهج تعليمي لمدة يومين	**لاحظ** استخدام كلمة (two-day) في صيغة المفرد في مثل هذه التعبيرات أي اتباعها باسم (course) وإذا أردنا الجمع نجمع ما بعدها من أسماء. two-way streets — شوارع كل منها ذو اتجاهين ten-minute breaks — فسح / استراحات كل استراحة منها عشر دقائق

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The film makers placed .... in all national newspapers and TV channels for the new film.

a) advertisements b) announcements
c) rehearsals d) trials

2. The doctors tried hard to preserve blood flow to the patient's brain and the other vital ....

a) members b) devices c) organs d) instruments

3. Most babies like the .... that make a noise when you shake them.

a) statues b) dolls c) games d) toys

4. Mike Tyson, the famous boxer, was the heavyweight .... of the world for many years.

a) hero b) champion c) trainer d) apprentice

5. The young graduate had to do a .... teacher training course to get a job at a governmental school.

a) two-year's b) two-years c) two-year d) two-years'

6. The real .... of the war were the young men who fought on the front lines.

a) champions b) heroes c) actors d) organs

7. The coach insists that every team .... must attend early-morning training.

a) part b) individual c) member d) organ

8. My grandfather used to spend most of the afternoon .... to songs by Om Kolthoum.

a) listen b) listened c) listens d) listening

9. We went on a .... trip in Sharm El Sheikh last summer.

a) two-week b) two-weeks c) two-week's d) two weeks'

10. A formal .... about the rising prices will be made in the Parliament by the Minister next week.

a) advertisement b) announcement
c) proof d) target

Practice ... Vocabulary General Exercises



Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. The audience of the play was .... to turn their cell phones off in the theatre.
   a) remembered b) memorised c) reminded d) forgotten
2. Doctors warn us that kids should not be fed a .... of hamburgers and sugary snacks.
   a) fight b) right c) diet d) course
3. In order to lose weight, I .... an aerobics class in the nearby gym.
   a) joined b) connected c) allied d) demolished
4. The dish we had at our grandfather's house is a/an .... one to prepare, consisting only of rice and vegetables.
   a) duplicated b) interested c) vague d) simple
5. A .... is an instrument used in scientific study for making very small things look larger so that you can examine them carefully.
   a) telescope b) microscope c) thermometer d) barometer
6. It would be difficult to .... Nagy to leave his present job for a new one.
   a) persuade b) make c) let d) employ
7. Before we travelled on our long holiday, the furniture had been .... in a protective cloth.
   a) replied b) joined c) linked d) covered
8. Ahmed's visits gave his grandparents a lot of .... as they loved him so much.
   a) sorrow b) pleasure c) frustration d) concentration
9. Cairo University runs language .... for all levels, from beginners to professional ones.
   a) games b) trips c) matches d) courses
10. The new players' skillful performance should .... the team's result this season.
   a) join b) increase c) boost d) discourage
11. The manuscript مخطوطة was not original as it contained numerous spelling ....
   a) mistakes b) fictions c) fractures d) parties
12. Iron is important because we need it to form new blood .... that carry oxygen around the body.
   a) beings b) cells c) bones d) races
13. Luckily, the bullet passed through the soldier's body without hitting vital ....
   a) members b) devices c) limbs d) organs
14. To increase your efficiency at work, it is important to keep work and family life ....
   a) joint b) strange c) demolished d) separate

15. The meal which we had at the new restaurant was delicious and absolutely ....
a) terrible b) perfect c) strange d) awful

16. A .... is a living thing, too small to be seen without a microscope, that causes disease in people, animals and plants.
a) virus b) cell c) tissue d) tumour

17. By law, an employer can't fire يفصل someone without a valid .... for doing so.
a) reason b) result c) research d) cause

18. All Egyptian squash champions are sorry that their game is not included in the .... Games.
a) Athletic b) Olympic c) Advanced d) Competitive

19. The police officers found no .... evidence of illegal activity in the fire.
a) affecting b) defective c) persuasive d) moving

20. The judge didn't believe the criminal's .... that he had stolen the money in order to give it to charity.
a) detection b) invention c) intention d) explanation

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. We have made an important .... to our fashion collection recently.
a) add b) addition c) additional d) added

22. Children find endless pleasure in playing with water. The antonym of the word "pleasure" is "....................".
a) enjoyment b) happiness c) sadness d) delight

23. My little daughter .... ill after eating a bad meal at the restaurant.
a) cured b) did c) made d) got

24. I lay awake in bed for hours thinking .... the trip I am going on the next day.
a) of b) at c) in d) for

25. I think that going to the beach is a brilliant idea. The adjective "brilliant" is similar in meaning to ....
a) excellent b) ordinary c) common d) doubtful

26. My wife and I have separate bank accounts. The synonym of the word "separate" is "....................".
a) connected b) contacted c) isolated d) combined

27. My elder brother has been very interested .... photography since he was at school.
a) at b) on c) for d) in

28. Mohamed joined a new language course and was able to .... the course in a short time.
a) make b) do c) give d) reply

29. Do you think you can persuade your cousin to lend us the money? The noun of the verb "persuade" is "....................".
a) persuades b) persuaded c) persuasion d) persuasive

30. The young mother stayed .... all night by her son's bedside as he was very ill.
a) up b) in c) for d) at

31. In the weeks that followed, my health continued to improve. The opposite of the verb "improve" is "..................".
a) advance b) enhance c) defy d) deteriorate

32. Despite the bad situation in the hospital, the doctors tried to .... calm.
a) say b) stay c) take d) explain

33. The band .... are all used to wearing strange clothes in their concerts.
a) organs b) members c) authors d) composers

34. My grandfather was a 6th October war ...., a former fighter pilot.
a) champion b) hero c) organiser d) innovator

35. The young actors have been very busy since the .... of their wedding.
a) announcement b) advertisement
c) summary d) option

Longman and Previous Exams

36. The immune system sends .... to find the virus that attacks your body. Longman
a) seals b) sales c) soils d) cells

37. I'm going to take a five-.................. course on how to cook Spanish dishes. Longman
a) day b) days' c) days d) day's

38. We must .... our immune systems to enjoy good health. Longman
a) boast b) boost c) burst d) paste

39. Our science teacher always supports us so much. "Support" here is an antonym of "..................". Longman
a) assist b) disappoint c) assess d) let

40. I'm so sorry to tell you that only club .... are allowed to enter. Longman
a) numbers b) members c) crew d) enemies

41. This advertisement will help boost the sales. "Boost" here is the synonym of "..................". (القليوبية / إدارة بنها)
a) promote b) increase c) fail d) a and b

42. His good manners made him .... to bad ideas. (الغربية / إدارة المحلة)
a) affected b) available c) influenced d) immune

43. The kidney is a vital .... in the human body. (سوهاج / إدارة طما)
a) member b) hero c) organ d) sample

44. Remas is fluent and very .... She can make you do what she likes. (الدقهلية / إدارة بلقاس)
a) helpful b) cruel c) aggressive d) persuasive

45. Can you explain the .... why the climate changes in the world? (المنوفية / إدارة منوف)
a) reason b) result c) cause d) effect

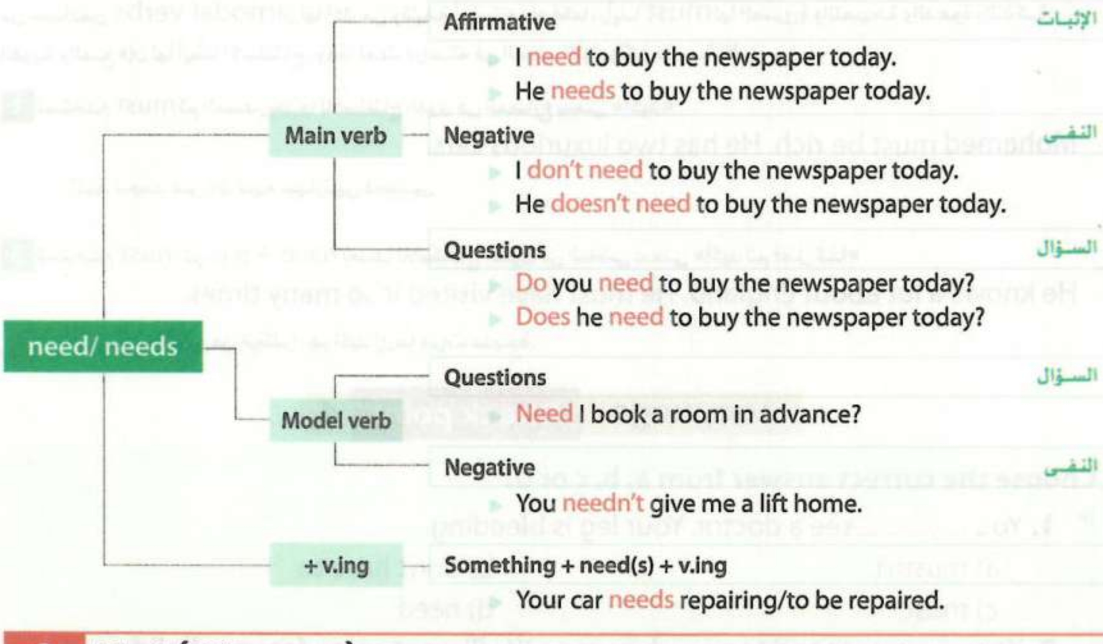


Extra points

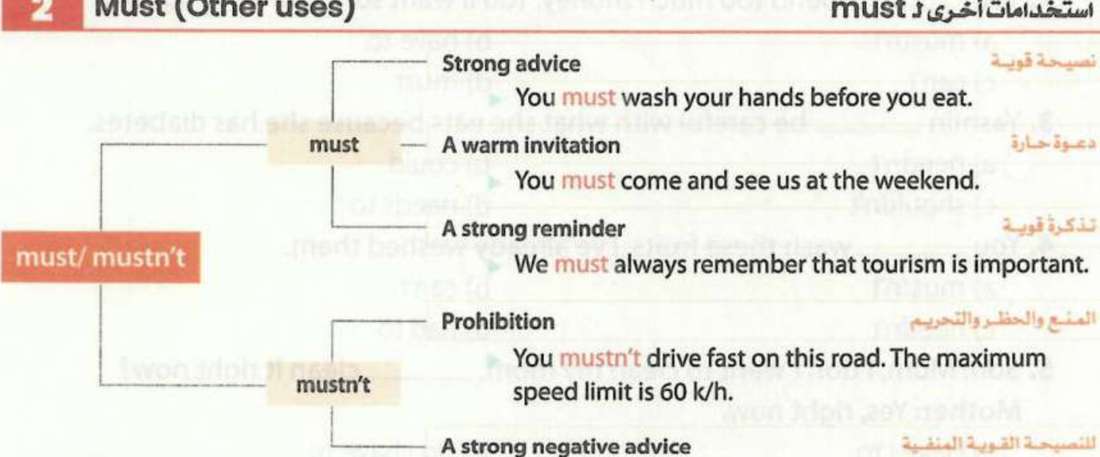
Necessity/lack of necessity/prohibition

1 Need/needs

- نستخدم need للضرورة وهى أكثر أدبًا من must أو have to وتستخدم كفعل أساسى، ويأتى بعدها to ثم المصدر وتأخذ s مع He/ She/ It وفى السؤال والنفى تسبق بـ does/do وتستخدم أيضًا كـ modal verb فى السؤال والنفى ليس بعدها to.







Passive المبنى للمجهول

إذا استخدمنا الأفعال الناقصة فى المبنى للمجهول نضع بعدها be + p.p.

- More books needn't be bought.
- Laws must be obeyed everywhere.
- The wedding invitation cards had to be sent to all my friends.

Deduction الاستنتاج

من خصائص modal verbs أن لها أكثر من وظيفة أو استخدام فكما، رأينا must لها الضرورة والنصيحة والدعوة والتذكرة القوية والمنع فإن لها أيضًا الاستنتاج، وهذا تمت دراسته فى الصف الأول ولكن نراجعة الآن:

1 تستخدم must ثم المصدر بعدها للاستنتاج القوى فى المضارع بمعنى «أكيد»

- Mohamed must be rich. He has two luxurious cars.

أكيد محمد غنى لأن لديه سيارتين فخمتين.

2 تستخدم must ثم have + p.p. بعدها للاستنتاج القوى فى الماضى بمعنى «أكيد تم فعل كذا»

- He knows a lot about England. He must have visited it so many times.

هو يعرف الكثير عن إنجلترا، هو أكيد زارها مرات عديدة.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You .... see a doctor. Your leg is bleeding.
a) mustn't b) don't have to
c) must d) need

2. You .... spend too much money. You'll want some for your holiday.
a) mustn't b) have to
c) can't d) must

3. Yasmin .... be careful with what she eats because she has diabetes.
a) needn't b) could
c) shouldn't d) needs to

4. You .... wash these fruits. I've already washed them.
a) mustn't b) can't
c) needn't d) had to

5. Son: Mum, I don't want to clean my room. .... clean it right now?
Mother: Yes, right now.
a) Have I to b) Do I have to
c) Do I must d) Must I have to

Practice ... Language General Exercises



Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If there is fuel shortage, solar energy ....

a) has to develop
b) will have to be developed
c) will have to develop
d) had to be developed

2. To keep fit and stay healthy, you .... enough kinds of exercise.

a) have to take
b) used to take
c) might have taken
d) ought to have taken

3. The car broke down, and we .... have it towed to a service station.

a) have to
b) had to
c) should
d) ought to

4. The reports .... by four o'clock because the manager is going to sign them.

a) must be finished
b) must finish
c) should have been finished
d) had to be finished

5. "It isn't necessary for us to leave soon." This means "..................".

a) We needn't have left soon
b) We should leave soon
c) We don't need to leave soon
d) We have to leave soon

6. I wish you'd told me we had much rice. I .... all this quantity.

a) didn't have to buy
b) didn't need to buy
c) needn't buy
d) needn't have bought

7. You .... be late. It's the most important meeting of the year.

a) mustn't
b) have to
c) don't have to
d) must

8. I want to go to university. I .... apply before the end of the week.

a) mustn't
b) don't have to
c) had to
d) need to

9. I .... help my father with repairing things in the house yesterday.

a) have to
b) had to
c) need to
d) don't have to

10. We .... finish now as somebody else needs this room.

a) have got to
b) needn't
c) had to
d) can't

11. Athletes .... get a special heart examination; it is safer to do this.

a) mustn't
b) must
c) don't have to
d) needed

12. As you've already phoned Mona, I .... phone her myself.

a) can't
b) wouldn't
c) mustn't
d) needn't

13. You .... drive fast in the city centre. It's very dangerous.

a) must
b) mustn't
c) don't have to
d) have to

14. A: Why do they .... overtime? B: Because their deadline is tomorrow.

a) have to
b) need to
c) have
d) need

15. I'm sorry, but you .... eat in the classroom. This is forbidden.

a) shouldn't
b) mustn't
c) oughtn't
d) aren't allowed

16. We .... forget to take the chicken out of the freezer.

a) don't have to
b) haven't to
c) don't need to
d) mustn't

17. The flight is at 6 in the morning, so we .... get up very early.

a) don't have to
b) had to
c) have to
d) mustn't

18. No one likes .... work at the weekend.

a) has to
b) had to
c) will have to
d) having to

19. You have to see the head teacher at 3 o'clock. It has the same meaning as: ....

a) You aren't allowed to see the head teacher at 3 o'clock
b) You could see the head teacher at 3 o'clock
c) It's necessary for you to see the head teacher at 3 o'clock
d) You needn't have seen the head teacher at 3 o'clock

20. He didn't go to the park with us yesterday because he .... a report.

a) needn't have written
b) didn't have to write
c) was obliged to write
d) has to write

Longman and Previous Exams

21. 'You mustn't eat foods with a lot of salt or fat in them'. This shows .... Longman

a) possibility b) strong advice c) lack of necessity d) probability

22. The car .... well before last week's trip. Longman

a) must check b) had to check
c) had to be checked d) must be checked

23. Which of the following is structurally correct? Longman

a) Sherif needn't to wait as he is in a hurry.
b) Rami had to consult a doctor as he was seriously ill.
c) The hall had to tidy for the birthday party.
d) The young man need have bought more bread.

24. Which of the following is structurally incorrect? Longman

a) It's a must to get the latest news.
b) Did he have to travel late at night?
c) The meeting had to be postponed due to unforeseen circumstances.
d) She never have to come early.

25. Which of the following doesn't show present necessity? Longman

a) It's necessary to follow traffic rules.
b) You need to make sure the medicine isn't expired.
c) She has to get a visa to travel to London.
d) He had to be careful before he started to answer the questions.

26. You .... have a passport to travel abroad. (البحيرة)

a) must b) needn't c) have to d) had to

27. You .... eat too much of something if it has a lot of salt or salt.

a) should b) mustn't c) need to d) have to

28. He .... to attend the optional training sessions. It's not important. (الشرقية)

a) doesn't have b) don't have c) has d) had

29. The operation will .... done under an anesthetic. (شرقية - بلبيس)

a) needn't be b) must be c) have to be d) have had to be

30. You .... to come with us if you don't want to. (القاهرة - إدارة المقطم)

a) need b) mustn't c) needn't d) don't have

Test yourself Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4



Take a test

Vocabulary

1. The young secretary asked to have a day off as he .... the flu and is very tired.
   a) did b) had c) made d) felt
2. Although it is difficult, the manager is doing what he can to improve the bad .... of the old factory.
   a) location b) occasion c) site d) situation
3. It is hoped that the wounded soldier will .... better soon.
   a) get b) go c) carry d) fall
4. Winning the first ten matches really sounds .... for our team.
   a) worse b) terrible c) perfect d) excited
5. The liver الكبد is an extremely complex .... which needs special care.
   a) member b) organ c) individual d) place
6. Egyptian squash .... win many titles of different championships every year.
   a) heroes b) partners c) trainees d) champions
7. I decided to do a .... in Italian as I intend to complete my studies at a university in Rome.
   a) system b) syllabus c) course d) centre
8. The receptionist asked me to complete the form .... my personal data.
   a) over b) with c) on d) in
9. The theatre managed to .... its audiences by cutting ticket prices.
   a) boost b) defect c) damage d) affect
10. Scientists warn that we're not doing enough to .... the environment from pollution.
    a) endanger b) protect c) predict d) promise
11. Our eldest brother can make our father let us go to the cinema; he is a very .... speaker.
    a) defective b) explosive c) persuasive d) defensive
12. Can you explain how this machine works? The noun from the verb "explain" is "..................".
    a) explains b) explained c) explanatory d) explanation
13. I should have been here an hour ago, but unfortunately, I missed the train. The adverb "unfortunately" is similar in meaning to ....
    a) luckily b) unluckily c) hopefully d) gradually
14. The novel *"Treasure Island"* is a/an .... and fascinating piece of writing.
    a) brilliant b) terrible c) illusive d) intensive
15. Students who aren't hard workers are always worried .... exams.
    a) about b) for c) with d) in

Language

16. You .... get off the bus before it stops. It's dangerous.
a) shouldn't b) oughtn't to c) mustn't d) can't

17. She .... buy a dress for the party. It wasn't necessary.
a) had to b) can't c) doesn't have to d) didn't have to

18. They .... to come early. They can come whenever they're ready.
a) don't need b) needn't c) have d) didn't have

19. He .... that long report. His boss said that it was not necessary.
a) had to write b) needn't have written
c) doesn't have to write d) wasn't necessary to write

20. You .... come to see us at the weekend. We need to see you.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) had to d) must

21. Omar .... finish the report quickly because the deadline is today at 4 pm.
a) had to b) needn't c) has got to d) have to

22. Why did he get up at 5 o'clock? He .... so early. He could have stayed in bed longer.
a) needn't have got up b) didn't have to get up
c) must have got up d) needn't get up

23. Marwa .... email her homework to her teacher because she forgot to take it to class yesterday.
a) didn't have to b) had to
c) must to d) needn't

24. Judy .... go to the supermarket because she doesn't have enough food for dinner.
a) needs b) doesn't have to c) has to d) mustn't

25. A: Does Ramy .... study very much tonight? B: No, he doesn't. He reviewed a lot last night and he understood everything well.
a) has to b) have to c) must d) needs to

26. Friend: .... pay to see the doctor?
Brother: No, she .... because she has medical insurance.
a) Does your sister have to/doesn't b) Do your sister have to/don't
c) Must your sister/mustn't d) Is it necessary for your sister to/isn't

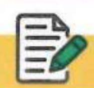
27. It wasn't necessary for me to phone Ahmed after midnight, but I did. This means: ....
a) I had to phone Ahmed after midnight
b) I needn't phone Ahmed after midnight
c) I needn't have phoned Ahmed after midnight
d) I mustn't have phoned Ahmed after midnight

28. .... immigrate and leave his children here?
a) Needs he b) Is he c) Does he need d) Need he

29. Mr Emad hasn't come to school since last Monday. He .... ill.
a) has to be b) must be c) needn't be d) was

30. The stadium was full of fans. It .... an important match.
a) must have been b) must be
c) needn't have been d) had to be





Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

Think of something that might help you to be healthier. Make notes on three persuasive reasons why your friend should do this.

Tips for writing the email	
Introduction	What do you think can help you to be healthier? State briefly how this can help you.
Main body (1)	What is the first reason for your choice? Explain it in detail to try to convince your friend.
Main body (2)	What is the second reason for your choice? Explain it in detail to try to convince your friend.
Conclusion	How can your friend benefit from your advice? Conclude and clear your point of view briefly.

MODEL EMAIL

To : yasser100@mail.com
From : medhat100@mail.com

Dear Yasser,

Fitness and health seem to be the same for everyone, but they have two different meanings. Fitness is the physical ability to perform work, sports, etc. While health is a condition in which the body should have resistance capacity to all illnesses and all parts of the body should work well without any problem. Your body should possess both fitness and health.

Health can be maintained by a proper diet, exercise and hygiene. To keep your body healthy, you need to do proper exercise. Usually, sportspeople have fit bodies. They shape their bodies in such a way that they will be fit for their sports. But, coming to a healthy body is just a matter of controlling weight and making your body immune to diseases.

For a healthy and fit body, walking is a very good exercise which helps in burning the excess fat in your body. A fit body doesn't mean that it should look good from the outside. A fit and healthy body should be physically active and energetic and smart enough to accept any tasks given to them.

Due to more demand for a fit and healthy body, many gyms and workout centres are opened. Maintaining a healthy and fit body requires self-control and willpower. Many factors can divert us from achieving our goal of having a fit and healthy body. But, try to focus on it to achieve your health, as all know "Health is wealth".

Look forward to hearing from you.
Yours,
Medhat

Practice ... Skills Exercises



Practice more

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى قطع الفهم والتراجم لهاية الكتاب

(A) Reading Comprehension

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If you want to be healthy and fit, you need to follow certain rules, whether you're a boy, a girl, young or old. People are advised to eat healthy food. It is really important if you want to be a healthy one. You don't need to go on a diet, just pay attention to what you're putting in your body. You can eat three meals a day or 5-6 mini-meals a day. NEVER skip meals. Try healthy alternatives, instead of having a bowl of ice-cream, go for a frozen yogurt. Drink more water. This is basically the most important thing of all. If you drink more water, you will be much healthier because it flushes the toxins out of your body and gives your skin a healthy glow.

It's important to exercise more, whether it's walking in the park, or cycling, do at least 20 minutes of physical activity several times a week. You should not exercise every day. Exercise will make you stronger and strengthen your muscles. You can go to the gym and swim or run. Exercising will make you healthier and happier about your body. It also reduces stress and helps to calm the mind!

During adolescence, you'll find you need more sleep. Sure, it's tempting to stay up late chatting with friends on the phone or computer, but the next morning you'll be miserable. You need to get a minimum of 8 hours of sleep every night. It may be tough if you get back late and have to wake up early on a normal school day, but if you put things in the right way, you will feel much more refreshed the next morning. This will help your concentration and you will be in a much happier and more friendly mood.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What do you need to be healthy?
- a) Go on a diet.
- b) Follow certain rules.
- c) Neglect meals.
- d) Drink little water.

2. What can you eat instead of an ice-cream?
- a) 5-6 mini-meals.
- b) A kilo of meat.
- c) A frozen yogurt.
- d) Three meals.

3. What can exercising do to you?
- a) Makes you healthier and happier.
- b) Gives us stress.
- c) Reduces the peace of mind.
- d) Weakens our muscles.

4. What does "put things in the right way" mean?
- a) Chat a lot with friends.
- b) Make extra effort.
- c) Get up early.
- d) Sleep well.

5. **Most of adults ....**
   a) stay up late chatting with friends on the phone or computer
   b) have enough sleep and never use the computer
   c) get up early and go to bed early
   d) have fewer friends than others

6. **The best title for the passage is "...................".**
   a) Eating and sleeping well
   b) How to be a good adult
   c) The rules of being healthy
   d) The danger of diseases

7. **The word "adolescence" refers to ....**
   a) childhood
   b) friendship
   c) boyhood
   d) teenage years

8. **Water is important to our bodies as ....**
   a) it's used for irrigation
   b) it helps you feel much more refreshed the next morning
   c) it strengthens your muscles
   d) it gives your skin a healthy glow

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Obesity (being very fat) is one of the greatest public health challenges of the 21st century. Its prevalence has tripled in many countries of the World Health Organisation since the 1980s, and the numbers of those affected continue to rise at an alarming rate. In addition to causing various physical disabilities and psychological problems, excess weight drastically increases a person's risk of developing a number of non-communicable diseases, including cardiovascular disease, cancer and diabetes.

Obesity is a condition that is associated with having an excess amount of body fat, defined by genetic and environmental factors that are difficult to control when dieting. Obesity is classified as having a Body Mass Index (BMI) of 30 or greater. BMI is a tool used to measure obesity.

There are many causes that directly and indirectly contribute to obesity. Behaviour, environment and genetics are among the main contributors to obesity. The Centres for Disease Control (CDC) has identified these three as the main causes of the complexity of the obesity epidemic.

In today's fast-paced environment, it is easy to adopt unhealthy behaviours. Behaviour, in the case of obesity, relates to food choices, the amount of physical activity you get and the effort to maintain your health.

Environment plays a key role in shaping an individual's habits and lifestyle. There are many environmental influences that can impact your health decisions. Today's society has developed a more sedentary lifestyle. Walking has been replaced by driving cars, physical activity has been replaced by technology and nutrition has been overcome by convenience foods.

Science shows that genetics plays a role in obesity. Genes can cause certain disorders which result in obesity. However, not all individuals who are predisposed to obesity become affected by obesity. Research is currently underway to determine which genes contribute most to obesity.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is ....

a) the dangers of obesity in the poor countries
b) how can the rich countries solve the problem of obesity
c) the advantages and disadvantages of obesity
d) obesity and our health

2. Obesity has increased .... since the 1980s in many European countries.

a) three times b) twice c) four times d) once

3. Which of the following ideas is not mentioned in the passage?

a) Food choices and the amount of physical activity are causes of obesity.
b) Obesity affects the level of intelligence of all people.
c) Sedentary lifestyle is one of the causes of obesity.
d) Scientists don't know which genes are responsible for obesity.

4. What does the underlined word "epidemic" mean?

a) Decrease. b) Control. c) Health. d) Outbreak.

5. According to the passage, behaviour is .... obesity.

a) not a cause for b) a minor cause for
c) a major cause for d) one of the steps to stop

6. The problem of obesity is that it ....

a) causes many health problems b) makes the person very big
c) causes the prices to rise d) needs special clothes

7. Obesity is classified when a person's BMI is ....

a) below thirty b) thirty or more c) double thirty d) not thirty

8. Scientifically, ... is responsible for obesity.

a) food b) environment c) disease d) genetics

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. Sports have a significant impact on how we learn new skills and maintain our physical and mental health. Additionally, sports could improve relations between many countries. Longman

a) للرياضة تأثير كبير على كيفية تعلمنا لمهارات جديدة والحفاظ على صحتنا الجسدية والعقلية. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، يمكن للرياضة تحسين العلاقات بين العديد من الدول.
b) للرياضة تأثير كبير على كيفية تعلمنا لمهارات جديدة والحفاظ على صحتنا الجسدية والنفسية. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، يمكن للرياضة تحسين العلاقات بين العديد من الشعوب.
c) للرياضة تأثير كبير على كيفية تعلمنا لمهارات جديدة والحفاظ على صحتنا الجسدية والعقلية. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، يمكن للرياضة تحسين العلاقات بين العديد من الأفراد.
d) للرياضة تأثير كبير على كيفية تعلمنا لمهارات جديدة والحفاظ على صحتنا الجسدية والعقلية. ومع ذلك، يمكن للرياضة تحسين العلاقات بين العديد من الدول.

2. The main purpose of education is the integral development of the student. It also aims at preparing generations of scientists able to face the challenges of the future.

a) الغرض الرئيسـى من التعليم هو التنمية المتكـاملة للطالب. كما يهدف إلى إعداد أجيال من العلماء قادرة على مواجهة تحديات المستقبل.

b) الغرض الرئيسى من التعليم هو التنمية الجزئية للطالب. كما يهدف إلى إعداد أجيال من العلماء قادرة على مواجهة تحديات المستقبل.

c) الغرض الرئيسـى من التعليم هو التنمية المتكـاملة للطالب. كما يهدف إلى إعداد أجيال من العلماء قادرة على مواجهة تغيرات المستقبل.

d) الغرض الرئيسى من التعليم هو التنمية المتكاملة للطالب. كما يهدف إلى إعداد أجيال من الخبراء قادرة عن مواجهة تحديات المستقبل.

3. A healthy lifestyle has become more important with the spread of new diseases. Healthy food and sport are the most important factors of that style.

a) أصبح أسلوب الحياة الصحى أقل أهمية مع انتشار أمراض جديدة، والغذاء الصحى والرياضة من أهم عوامل ذلك الأسلوب.

b) أصبح أسلوب الحياة الصحى أكثر أهمية مع انتشار أمراض جديدة، والغذاء الصحى والرياضة من أهم عوامل ذلك الأسلوب.

c) أصبح أسلوب الحياة الصحى أكثر أهمية مع انتشار أمراض جديدة، والغذاء الصحى والرياضة من أهم نتائج ذلك الأسلوب.

d) أصبح أسلوب الحياة الصحى أكثر أهمية مع علاج أمراض جديدة، والغذاء الصحى والرياضة من أهم محددات ذلك الأسلوب.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. نفخـر جميعـًا بعلمائنا المتميزيـن أمثال أحمد زويل وفاروق الباز اللذين قاما بإنجازات علمية كبيرة سـاهمت فى تقدم البشرية فى مجالات عديدة فى كل أنحاء العالم.

a) We are all proud of our modern scientists, such as Ahmed Zewail and Farouk El-Baz, who made great scientific achievements that contributed to the progress of humanity in many fields all over the world.

b) We are all proud of our distinguished scientists, such as Ahmed Zewail and Farouk El-Baz, who made great scientific achievements that contributed to the progress of humanity in many fields all over the world.

c) We are all proud of our distinguished scientists, such as Ahmed Zewail and Farouk El-Baz, who did great scientific achievements that contributed to the progress of industry in many fields all over the world.

d) We are all proud of our detected scientists, such as Ahmed Zewail and Farouk El-Baz, who made great scientific achievements that cooperated with the progress of humanity in many fields all over the world.

5. يتضمن مفهوم الطب الوقائى اتباع أسلوب حياة سليم والحصول على فوائد الغذاء الصحى.

a) The concept of preventive medicine includes following a wealthy lifestyle and obtaining the defects of healthy food.

b) The concept of preventive medicine contains following a healthy lifestyle and obtaining the advantages of healthy food.

c) The concept of inventive medicine includes following a healthy lifestyle and obtaining the contents of healthy food.

d) The concept of preventive medicine includes following a healthy lifestyle and obtaining the benefits of healthy food.

6. إن اتباع نظام غذائى يساعدك كثيرًا فى الحفاظ على وزن طبيعى وصحة جيدة. لذا يجب أن تعى أن المعدة مفتاح لصحة جيدة فى حالة اتباع العادات الغذائية السليمة.
Longman

a) Following a diet helps you a lot in maintaining a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the stomach is a key to good health if you follow proper eating habits.

b) Following a diet helps you a lot in maintaining an abnormal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the stomach is a key to good health if you follow proper eating habits.

c) Following a diet helps you a lot in wasting a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the stomach is a key to good health if you follow proper eating habits.

d) Following a diet helps you a lot in maintaining a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the kidney is a key to good health if you follow proper eating customs.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (180) words on the following:

"How the internet has changed the world of work nowadays"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. — I used the right structure. — I used a topic sentence. — I wrote the conclusion. — I used the right punctuation.



1 **Finish the following dialogue:**

Basil meets his neighbour Ali outside his house.

Basil: Good evening. Where are you going?
Ali : I am going to a doctor.
Basil: (1)..?
Ali : I don't feel well these days. I have always got a headache. I never feel fresh.
Basil: Do you take exercise or have a good weekend?
Ali : No, I don't. You know I am busy in my new job.
Basil: That's why you don't feel well.
Ali : (2)..?
Basil: A person who works all the day and does not take exercise should fall ill.
Ali : You may be right. What should I do then?
Basil: (3).. .
Ali : Quality time! What do you mean?
Basil: (4).. .
Ali : That's right. My family always complains that I am away working.
Basil: I'm sure you won't need a doctor if you do this.
Ali : Thanks for your advice.

A Glimpse of Revelation II

2 **(A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What is marvelous about the human body organs?
2. What would happen if there were more than one creator?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The amazing .... of the universe is a certain proof of the Oneness of the Creator.
   a) balance b) chaos c) things d) trees
4. The right path to arrive at our destination is the correct .... of Allah.
   a) knowledge b) ambition c) ignorance d) expectation

King Lear

3 **(A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What did King Lear plan to do when he got old?
2. Why did Kent object to the King's decision?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. .... was Gloucester's younger son.
   a) Edgar b) Albany c) Edmund d) Cornwall
4. What does King Lear decide to do after listening to Cordelia?
   a) Give Cordelia all of his kingdom
   b) Give his kingdom to his two other daughters
   c) Give none of his daughters any of his kingdom
   d) Make Kent the new king

4 **(A) Translate into Arabic:**

Scientists are doing a lot of research to protect the world from diseases.

(B) Translate into English:

إن استصلاح الصحراء وتحويلها لأراضٍ زراعية ضرورة لتحقيق الاكتفاء الغذائى.

Unit 1

Al-Adwaa Test

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. All surgeons of the department will be trained in all the new surgical .... in heart surgery.

a) objectives b) reactions c) techniques d) examinations

2. As she is very sick, Mona taught her children to call the .... services if something bad happened to her.

a) accuracy b) infection c) emergency d) inquiry

3. The new factory placed a/an .... in the local paper asking for a sales manager.

a) situation b) advertisement c) experience d) announcement

4. Some college students choose to .... their course after the first year at a certain department.

a) make b) run c) change d) take

5. The accident victim was taken to hospital as his/her injuries were quite severe. The antonym of the word "severe" is "..................".

a) acute b) mild c) harsh d) violent

6. A/An .... is someone who is important in the early development of something, and whose work or ideas are later developed by other people.

a) employee b) director c) assistant d) pioneer

7. Fahmy is not here. He .... leave early.

a) must b) had to c) has to d) needs to

8. You .... pay to use the library. It's free.

a) didn't have to b) must
c) don't have to d) had to

9. Passengers .... open the door when the train is moving.

a) mustn't b) must c) don't have to d) need to

10. Before you buy a house, you .... consider all the costs.

a) needn't b) have got c) don't have to d) need to

11. I .... to look my best as I'm going to have a job interview.

a) should b) must c) need d) needn't

12. I .... finish this essay today. It has to be handed in by tomorrow.

a) need b) don't have to c) mustn't d) must

13. You .... take a taxi to the station. I'll give you a lift.

a) mustn't b) can't c) needn't d) had to

14. Is it .... for us to send the research as an email attachment, sir?

a) necessary b) must c) necessity d) possibility

15. It's late and the baby is asleep. You .... make so much noise.

a) must b) mustn't c) needn't d) have to

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"Don't eat just before going to bed!" My mother used to tell me. "You might get a nightmare." I never believed her until it happened to me. It was on a night when I felt hungry just as I was about to go to bed. So, I made myself a peanut butter sandwich and a large, cold glass of milk. After consuming them, I went to bed.

Soon I drifted off into a troubled sleep. I dreamt that I was with a group of people looking for an old woman. I was not sure why we were looking for her, but we all seemed afraid of her. Somehow, we had to find her. So there I was, searching high and low for her in frightful places I had never been before.

Sometimes, I seemed to be flying while at other times I seemed unable to move. The whole atmosphere was like a dreadful horror film.

After some searching, I entered a darkened room and saw a figure sleeping on a bed. As I got nearer, the figure suddenly threw away the blanket, got up, and stared at me. It was an ugly old woman with shiny golden teeth. She raised her claw-like fingers and walked towards me.

I wanted to run but was unable to do so. I tried to scream, but found that I could not. In horror, I struggled and struggled to get away from the frightful woman.

The next moment, I gave a muffled yell and found myself panting on my bed. My goodness, what a horrible nightmare it was! For a minute or so I lay on my bed not daring to close my eyes for fear of falling asleep again and continuing the nightmare. From then on, I never ate just before going to sleep.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. The writer's mother warned him not to ....

a) eat before going to sleep
b) go with a group of people anywhere
c) search for the old woman
d) scream on facing dangers

17. The result of a peanut butter sandwich and a large cold glass of milk was a/an ....

a) high bill b) nightmare
c) attack from an old woman d) mother's anger from her son

18. The synonym of the word "muffled" is a "..................".

a) loud speech
b) loud voice
c) very pure sound
d) quiet and less clear sound

19. The best title for the passage is "..................".

a) Nightmares
b) Mothers' experiences
c) Much eating and good sleep
d) An adventure during the night

20. The boy was looking for the old woman although ....

a) she was cute
b) she was scared
c) he was afraid of her
d) he couldn't know her place

21. According to the passage, the nightmare ....

a) happens when people sleep
b) is a bad scary dream
c) refers to real life
d) happens to hungry people

22. The boy didn't want to close his eyes ....

a) because he was tired
b) so that he could see the rest of the nightmare
c) because they were sore
d) because he fears that he might see the nightmare again

23. The writer decided that he ....

a) would never eat just before sleeping
b) wouldn't listen to his mum's words
c) would do sports before sleeping
d) wouldn't talk to old women anymore

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Spare time can be useful if it is employed for developing one's character physically and mentally. So, we should all realise its importance and try to make the best use of it.

a) يجب أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتطوير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول صنع الأفضل منه.

b) يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتطوير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول حسن استخدامه.

c) يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتطوير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول توفير الكثير منه.

d) يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتغيير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول حسن استخدامه.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- القراءة هواية مفيدة جدًا لأنها تحفز عقلك، ويقول الخبراء إن لها تأثيرًا مهدئًا، ويمكن أن تخفض مستويات الإجهاد وتساعدك على الاسترخاء، فضلًا عن كونها تُثرى ثقافتك.

a) Reading is a very beneficial hobby because it hinders your mind. Experts say it has a calming effect, can lower stress levels and help you relax, as well as enriching your culture.

b) Reading is a very reflective hobby because it stimulates your brain. Experts say it has a calming effect, can lower stress levels and help you relax, as well as increasing your culture.

c) Reading is a very beneficial hobby because it stimulates your mind. Experts say it has a clearing effect, can lower stress stages and help you relax, as well as enriching your culture.

d) Reading is a very beneficial hobby because it stimulates your mind. Experts say it has a calming effect, can lower stress levels and help you relax, as well as enriching your culture.

26. Answer the following questions: (The play)

1. Do you agree with Kent that King Lear's decision to divide his kingdom was foolish? Why?
2. What do you think of the Duke of Burgundy's refusal to marry Cordelia?
3. Do you think that Goneril and Regan's expression of love to their father was true? Why?

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How to protect your environment and preserve it for future generations"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 405

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 2

Eating around the world



Objectives

Reading : An excerpt from Old Jo's Scrap-Bag. An Old-fashioned Thanksgiving by Louisa M. Alcott; Two articles about ways of eating around the world
Writing : A questionnaire on young people's food preferences
Listening : Descriptions of international meals
Speaking : Communicating opinions and beliefs
Language : Comparative and superlative adjectives
Life Skills : Critical thinking; Respect for diversity; Negotiation

Study ...





A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

amount (n)	مقدار/كمية	get together (v)	يتجمع/يتقابل	serve (v) (d)	يخدم/يقدم طعامًا
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل بـ	occasion (n)	مناسبة	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
eat out (v)	يأكل بالخارج	prepare (v) (d)	يعد/يجهز		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

arrive (v) (d)	يصل	fry (v) (y ied)	يقلى	recent (adj)	حديث
chips (n)	شيبسى (شرائح البطاطس)	fun (n)	مرح	roast lamb (n)	لحم ضأنٍ مشوى
cornbread (n)	خبز الذرة	gather (v) (ed)	يتجمع/يجمع	roasted (adj)	مشوى
curious (adj)	فضولى	native (adj)	أصلى	shellfish (n)	المحار
customer (n)	زبون/عميل	noodles (n)	شرائح المكرونة	special (adj)	خاص
decide (v) (d)	يقرر	old-fashioned (adj)	ذو طراز قديم	spicy (adj)	حار (بالتوابل)
dessert (n)	تحلية (بعد الطعام)	oyster (n)	محار	surprised (adj)	مندهش
Europe (n)	أوروبا	passenger (n)	راكب/مسافر	sweet potatoes (n)	البطاطا
event (n)	حدث	popular (adj)	محبوب/مشهور	takeaway (n)	طعام جاهز
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	prawn (n)	جمبرى	Thanksgiving (n)	عيد الشكر
extract (n) (v) (ed)	مقتبس/يقتبس/يستخلص	pumpkin pie (n)	فطيرة اليقطين (القرع العسلى)	turkey (n)	ديك رومى
feed (v)	يطعم/يغذى	quantity (n)	كمية	wake (v)	يوقظ/يستيقظ
festival (n)	مهرجان	rare (adj)	نادر	whatever	مهما/أيًا كان

Workbook Vocabulary مفردات كتاب التدريبات

curry (n)	كارى (بهارهندى)	jar (n)	إناء/برطمان	taste (n) (v) (d)	مذاق/يتذوق
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد	menu (n)	قائمة طعام	the countryside (n)	الريف
grapes (n)	عنب	nut (n)	بندق		
herring (n)	سمك الرنجة	seafood (n)	مأكولات بحرية	whale (n)	حوت/لحم الحوت
Indonesian (adj)	إندونيسى	smell (n) (v) (ed)	رائحة/يشم		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Americans are used to .... Thanksgiving on the fourth Thursday of November.
   a) sharing b) celebrating c) expecting d) gathering
2. My elder brother often .... together with his friends after work, so he gets home late.
   a) gets b) serves c) makes d) performs
3. The manager's secretary hasn't .... the report for the next meeting yet.
   a) made b) advised c) served d) prepared
4. The staff meeting provides an .... to discuss the problems facing the school.
   a) accident b) occasion c) action d) experience
5. My little son is such a .... boy, and he is always asking questions.
   a) thoughtful b) grateful c) curious d) strange
6. The hot and .... food which is served in this restaurant is typical of the food in India.
   a) sweet b) tasteful c) warm d) spicy
7. Most folk festivals are examples of the .... art and culture of the countries.
   a) foreign b) modern c) native d) strange
8. Although it was familiar in the past, wearing a hat is now regarded as rather ....
   a) modern b) old-fashioned c) splendid d) recent
9. There was only one waiter .... customers in the cafeteria near the petrol station.
   a) serving b) surprising c) preparing d) cooperating
10. We shouldn't ignore the problems that .... in our own community.
    a) damage b) disappear c) exist d) face

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

around the country	حول البلد	by that time	بحلول ذلك الوقت	get … ready	يجهز/يعد …
at least	على الأقل	for example	على سبيل المثال	have a meal	يتناول وجبة
catch up	يجارى/يعرف أحوال	look after	يعتنى بـ	tell …….about	يخبر.....عن
curious about	فضولى عن	made from	مصنوع من	travel to	يسافرإلى
keep out of	يبتعد عن	take place	يحدث	wait for	ينتظر

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
arrive	يصل	arrival	وصول	arriving	قادم
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	celebration	احتفال	celebratory	احتفالى
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
exist	يوجد/يتواجد	existence	وجود	existing/existent existential	موجود وجودى
expect	يتوقع	expectation	توقع	expected	متوقع
popularise	يعمم	popularity	شهرة	popular	محبوب/مشهور
prepare	يجهز	preparation	إعداد	prepared	معد/جاهز
serve	يخدم	service servant	خدمة خادم	serving	خادم
wake	يوقظ/يستيقظ	waking	الاستيقاظ	awake	مستيقظ

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- They decided to leave now. (v)
- Their decision was made carefully. (n)
- They took decisive actions to face the problems. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	honour/commemorate		ignore	يتجاهل
exist	يوجد	live/remain		depart/cease	يغادر/يتوقف
gather	يتجمع	collect/meet		separate/scatter	يفصل/يتناثر
old-fashioned	ذو طراز قديم	outdated/old		fashionable/modern	ذو طراز حديث
popular	محبوب	attractive/famous		unpopular/unknown	غير محبوب/غير معروف
probably	من المحتمل	possibly/likely		unlikely/improbably	من غير المحتمل
rare	نادر	scarce/unique		common/ordinary	شائع/عادى
surprised	مندهش	astonished/amazed		unsurprised/poised	غير مندهش
traditional	تقليدى	conventional/classical		modern/new	حديث
welcome	يرحب بـ	greet/entertain		exclude/refuse	يستبعد/يستنكر

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mother said that the house still needed a lot of work, but at .... the kitchen was finished.
   a) last b) lost c) list d) least
2. Pizza is more .... among younger adults than the old.
   a) popularise b) popularity c) popular d) unpopular
3. The police officer thinks that the robbery took .... nearly at midnight.
   a) place b) part c) up d) in
4. One common cause of homelessness is separation or divorce. The adjective "common" can be the opposite of the adjective "..................".
   a) useful b) ordinary c) available d) rare
5. The Foreign Minister spoke to reporters shortly after his .... from his tour.
   a) arrive b) arrival c) arrives d) arrived

6. I prefer to .... out of arguments between my family members.

a) set b) take c) keep d) give

7. You can't possibly go to all those stores in one day. The adverb "possibly" is similar in meaning to the adverb "..................".

a) regularly b) probably c) terribly d) fantastically

8. The drink which is made .... cherries was really delicious.

a) in b) into c) for d) from

9. Unfortunately, the driver .... asleep while driving and crashed into a tree.

a) fell b) went c) turned d) failed

10. I watched a film celebrating the life and work of Nelson Mandela. The verb "celebrate " is the synonym of the verb "..................".

a) ignore b) derive c) honour d) punish

Reading Text (1)

An Old-Fashioned Thanksgiving

In September 1620, a ship called *the Mayflower* arrived in North America with 102 passengers.

Many died, but some were able to grow food and survive with help from Native Americans.

Thanksgiving is a day when families get together to remember these events. It is celebrated in the USA every year on the fourth Thursday in November.

In 1882, Louisa M. Alcott wrote a short story called An Old-fashioned Thanksgiving. Here is an extract:

When they woke, there was still a large amount of snow outside. Tilly made a good breakfast for the seven children.

"Now, about dinner," she said as they all finished eating. "Ma said that we could have whatever we liked, but she didn't expect us to have a traditional Thanksgiving dinner."

"Have you ever cooked a turkey?" asked Roxy.

"Ma said I should decide what to do," replied Tilly.

All you children have to do is keep out of the way and let Prue and me work."[1]
The younger children walked out of the kitchen and into another room. As Tilly and Prue started to prepare the big meal, they got out all the spoons, dishes, pots and pans that they could find.

"Now, sister, we'll have dinner at five," said Tilly. "Pa will be here by that time and he'll be surprised to find us ready to serve the food. There's such a lot to do, and I'm a bit worried about the turkey[2]. It's so big!"

"I know," said Prue. "I fed it all summer and now it will feed me," she laughed.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام صيغة المصدر (work) بدون to بعد الفعل (let)
٢- تستخدم (a bit) قبل الصفات أو الصفات المقارنة للتعبير عن معنى (قليل).

Reading Text (2)



As one year changes to the next, many countries around the world choose to celebrate the start of the New Year with special food. However, different countries eat very different things to enjoy the occasion.

In Mexico, for example, many people eat out at the many restaurants around the country on New Year's Day. The most popular dish is always tamales, which is made from meat, cheese and vegetables that are cooked inside banana leaves.

However, when the New Year arrives in Japan, people make special little cakes from sweet rice. Then they get together with their family and friends to eat them and celebrate.

In Spain, it is traditional to eat twelve grapes to welcome the New Year. The Spanish people eat this particular amount of grapes late at night, when the clock reaches midnight, or twelve o'clock, and they have one grape for each hour of the clock.

In Poland, people start to prepare a fish called 'herring' at least five days before they eat it. They put the fish in a jar with water, onions and sugar and then they wait for the big day.

Finally, in Greenland, it is traditional for the men to serve a special meal of whale for women to enjoy. It takes months for the meat to become ready to eat and people say the smell is very strong.

Listening Text (1) 



Amy : So, did you ask your parents about visiting our home for Thanksgiving, Hoda?

Hoda : Yes. They like me to try new things and they thought it would be a great idea. My mum was very curious about the food you eat.

Amy : You'll love the food at Thanksgiving, Hoda. Have you had turkey before? It's a lot like chicken but it's very big.

Hoda : Well, I like chicken, so that should be okay. What else do you have?

Amy : We have a special kind of bread, called cornbread. It's delicious. And we have sweet potatoes. They're like normal potatoes, but much nicer.

Hoda : That sounds great. What do you have for dessert?

Amy : My mum makes the most wonderful pumpkin pie. It's very sweet and heavy. Sometimes I fall asleep after I eat it, so I'll try not to eat too much.

Hoda : Now I'm feeling hungry.

Amy : Me, too. But the best thing about Thanksgiving is that we all have to help with the cooking. It's a great time to meet and catch up with friends and family. That's why we're all really looking forward to seeing you.

Hoda : Great. I can't wait!

Listening Text (2) 



Nasi goreng is a meal with rice from Indonesia. In fact, the words nasi goreng mean 'fried rice' in Indonesian. Many people believe that nasi goreng is one of the spiciest meals in Indonesia, but for most people it's simply the best meal you can eat. Nasi goreng is made by frying rice and adding vegetables and either chicken or prawns to the pan[1]. It's a bit saltier than some other Indonesian meals and it often comes with a fried egg on top. Nasi goreng is usually cheaper than most other meals in Indonesia. You can get it either in restaurants or from people who cook food on the side of the road.

Oysters are a type of shellfish that people dig out of the earth under the sea. They're rarer than most other types of seafood and you can only eat them for seven months of the year. During these months, thousands of oysters are eaten in France because many people believe they're one of the most special foods you can eat.

This means that oysters are usually one of the most expensive meals on the menu in French restaurants.

Mochi are sweet, round rice cakes which are smaller than most of the cakes people eat. They look like little balls and they're made in many different colours. In Japan, where they come from, mochi are the most popular type of cake and the Japanese eat large amounts of them. Mochi were first made about one thousand years ago and people thought that they brought good luck. Today, different colours and types of mochi are more popular than others on different special occasions. For example, when the Japanese celebrate New Year's Day, flat, white mocha is the most popular type of mochi to eat.[2]



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام (either ... or)للتعبير عن الاختيار بين شيئين.

٢- لاحظ أن كلمة mochi هى صيغة الجمع من كلمة mocha.

Listening Text (3) (Workbook)



Scan & listen



The UK did not use to be known for its good food, but it has got a lot better in recent years. Probably the most popular dish is fish and chips. The fish and potatoes are fried and they are usually very salty. Fish and chips are usually cheaper than most other takeaway food, too. The British also like spicy food[1]. Indian food is usually the spiciest and Indian restaurants are very popular. One of the most traditional dishes in the UK[2] is roast lamb, which people often eat for Sunday lunch with potatoes and vegetables. The British also like a lot of sweet things such as ice cream. In 2018, the British ate more than 320,000 ice creams. They mostly eat ice cream in the summer when the weather is hotter.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- تستخدم (the) قبل الجنسية لتعنى الشعب بشكل عام.

٢- دائمًا يأتى بعد عبارة one of اسم جمع.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

	Word	Example
1	**arrive (in/at)** ١- يصل (لا يتبعه مفعول) ٢- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بعد حروف الجر (in/at)	- When does the Paris plane arrive? - We arrived in Cairo late at night. - The passengers arrived at the airport just before the plane takes off.
	reach ١- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بدون حرف جر) ٢- يصل إلى شيء معنوى	- We reached Cairo late at night. - Ministers must reach a decision before next month.
2	**decide to + inf.** يقرر أن (يتبعه المصدر)	Wafaa decided to stay in the hotel for two days.
	decide that + a sentence يقرر أن (يتبعه جملة كاملة)	I decided that it would be best to tell my father the truth.
	decide on + n/v-ing يستقر على (يتبعه اسم أو صيغة verb + ing)	We decided on going to Sharm El-Sheikh for our holiday this year.
3	**special** خاص (من نوع خاص)	I only wear this suit on special occasions like weddings.
	private خصوصى (خاص بشخص أو مجموعة محددة)	My grandfather didn't want to discuss his private life with anyone.
4	**event** ١- حدث مهم ٢- حدث مرتب (مثل حفل موسيقى/مؤتمر سياسى)	- One of the most important events in our history is October Victory. - The charity raises money by organising social events.
	incident ١- حدث (عارض/غير معتاد) ٢- حدث فى فيلم/قصة/مسرحية	- The fire shooting is one of the incidents of the day. - He thought the film was boring without many incidents.
	accident حادث (شيء خاطئ أو مؤذٍ حدث بغير ترتيب)	Over 70,000 people are seriously injured every year in road accidents.

5	menu	١- قائمة طعام (فى مطعم) ٢- قائمة (مهام/إعدادات) فى جهاز	- He looked at the menu and decided to have chicken with rice. - The menu bar with its windows is one of the features of the desktop.
	list	قائمة (أشياء أو مهام تم إعدادها)	I made a list of all the jobs I had to do in the house.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most serious .... in the home involve electrical equipment or hot liquids.
   a) operations b) events c) incidents d) accidents
2. It was already dark by the time the tourists .... at their hotel.
   a) continued b) got c) arrived d) reached
3. Sameer was always very serious at work, but he was actually very funny and relaxed in his .... life.
   a) special b) private c) specialised d) future
4. The young couple made a .... of the people they wanted to invite to the wedding.
   a) list b) menu c) tabloid d) brochure
5. There had been a number of .... of violence against the peace organisation staff.
   a) events b) accidents c) incidents d) processes
6. Landing on the moon is one of the most important .... in the history of mankind.
   a) events b) accidents c) incidents d) processes
7. Experts take .... care in handling very old books as they are soft and valuable.
   a) private b) special c) general d) public
8. After a long discussion, we decided .... blue for painting the bedroom.
   a) for b) to c) at d) on
9. The government must .... a decision about the new city before next month.
   a) arrive b) do c) reach d) come
10. Children under 12 can choose dishes from the children's .... in most restaurants.
    a) menu b) list c) title d) leaflet



Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. People differ in the way they .... their festivals, but most of them have special meals on these days.
   a) celebrate b) remind c) expect d) report
2. My grandfather's views on women's role are .... He says that they all should stay home.
   a) updated b) ragged c) gradual d) traditional
3. I was surprised because I didn't expect the meal bill to come to this .... of money.
   a) account b) quality c) amount d) number
4. The whole family needs to .... together to decide what to do about the trip.
   a) get b) fall c) grow d) deny
5. We need to make enough food to .... ten people at our son's birthday party.
   a) avoid b) serve c) defy d) report
6. At the Olympics, medals are usually worn only on special ceremonial ....
   a) accidents b) reflections c) occasions d) results
7. My friend says that he simply eats .... all the time when his wife and children are away.
   a) with b) for c) in d) out
8. There is a hard .... among the leading communication companies in the market.
   a) inflation b) competition c) festival d) examination
9. The team of scientists succeeded in .... much information about climate change during their mission to the North Pole.
   a) gathering b) giving c) innovating d) designing
10. The famous actor's last film won an award at the Cannes Film ....
    a) League b) Race c) Festival d) Title
11. It is a well-known fact that medical science has made amazing progress in .... years.
    a) ancient b) recent c) modern d) updated
12. My friend nearly lives on .... as he has lived alone since he moved to Cairo.
    a) take-ins b) overtakes c) takedowns d) takeaways
13. .... are a long thin kind of pasta, used especially in Chinese and Italian cooking.
    a) Prawns b) Chips c) Noodles d) Lambs
14. The children had a lot of .... at the movie theatre watching their favourite film.
    a) sorrow b) fight c) quarrel d) fun

15. The new restaurant quickly built up a base of regular .... because its food is really good.
a) customers b) producers c) servants d) sellers

16. After finishing our dinner, the waiter asked us if we'd like to order a ....
a) desert b) dessert c) recipe d) receipt

17. When they got off the train, the three .... shared a taxi home as they didn't have enough money.
a) voters b) passengers c) sellers d) drivers

18. Doctors expect that some diseases won't .... in our world in the future due to the great medical progress.
a) meditate b) cure c) disappear d) exist

19. The poet read several .... from his new poems in his television interview.
a) marks b) volumes c) extracts d) scripts

20. The chef said that we needed to use fresh herbs أعشاب to get the good Italian ....
a) scene b) sight c) test d) taste

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. During the school picnic, we gathered the children around us and sang songs. The synonym of the word "gather" is "..................".
a) divide b) collect c) scatter d) separate

22. I hope I've made the right .... to join the Faculty of Literature.
a) decide b) decision c) decided d) decisive

23. Sami has missed so much school that he's going to find it hard to catch ....
a) for b) at c) in d) up

24. We would welcome any advice or suggestions with open arms. The antonym of the word "welcome" is "..................".
a) agree b) accept c) refuse d) reply

25. The new coach's job includes looking .... the under-21 team.
a) for b) up c) like d) after

26. We have a lot of trouble at the factory because of the old-fashioned machines. The adjective "old-fashioned" is similar in meaning to ....
a) modern b) outdated c) new d) updated

27. Many small companies will not exist in a few years' time. The verb "exist" is the opposite of "..................".
a) cease b) entertain c) greet d) reduce

28. We celebrate 6th October as one of the most important events in our history. The adjective from the verb "celebrate" is "..................".
a) celebrates b) celebration c) celebrating d) celebratory

29. Mother worked very hard in order to .... our house ready for my brother's graduation party.
a) do b) get c) give d) take

30. My family were all surprised to hear about the job I suddenly got. The adjective "surprised" is the synonym of "..................".

a) astonished b) poised c) brilliant d) attractive

31. The shop didn't achieve the profits we expected and we had to close it. The noun of the verb "expect" is "..................".

a) expects b) expected c) expectation d) unexpected

32. The famous band arranged a series of .... in many countries to collect money for war victims.

a) events b) accidents c) incidents d) expectations

33. Hesham was rewarded because he is always the first to .... at work in the morning.

a) go b) get c) arrive d) reach

34. You can adjust the brightness of the screen from the settings .... of your mobile phone.

a) type b) design c) list d) menu

35. The famous actor told the interviewer that he wouldn't answer questions about his .... life.

a) special b) private c) public d) secret

Longman and Previous Exams

36. In some parts of Africa, people are still using letters as a/an .... way of communication. Longman

a) modern b) usual c) traditional d) international

37. We had to .... a lot of sweets for my sister's birthday party. Longman

a) prepare b) compare c) repair d) appear

38. We are going to .... after my brother's graduation. Longman

a) collaborate b) celebrate c) contribute d) educate

39. I usually visit my village on different .... Longman

a) occasions b) purposes c) positions d) reasons

40. We usually.................. together and discuss our problems. Longman

a) get b) set c) make d) do

41. My parents always .... their wedding anniversary by going out for dinner. (القليوبية - إدارة قها)

a) celebrate b) collaborate c) calculate d) separate

42. Medals are usually worn only on ceremonial .... (المنوفية - إدارة بركة السبع)

a) accidents b) occasions c) prohibitions d) intentions

43. This restaurant .... cheap and delicious food. (أسيوط - إدارة أسيوط)

a) serves b) surfs c) celebrates d) exists

44. For me, his ideas are .... I find nothing new in them. (القاهرة - إدارة المطرية)

a) innovative b) creative c) traditional d) optional

45. The movie was boring without many .... (القاهرة - إدارة الزاوية)

a) incidents b) events c) accidents d) coincidents

B Language

1 Adjectives الصفات

الصفــة: هى كلمة تصف الاسم ولا تجمع، حتى لو كان الاسم الذى بعدها جمع.

- Samira is a beautiful girl.
- Samira and Nada are beautiful girls.

1 الصفة تأتى قبل الاسم وإذا جاءت بعده تسبق بـ v - to be.

- He is a tall boy. The boy is tall.

2 تأتى الصفة بعد الأفعال الآتيــة:

be, look, smell, sound, feel, taste, seem, appear, become, get, stay, etc.

- She is beautiful.
- The food tastes good.

3 الصفات الآتية لا يأتى بعـدها أسماء:

afraid, alike, alive, alone, ashamed, asleep, awake, glad, pleased, etc.

- They are still alive.

4 الصفات الآتية يجب أن يأتى بعدها اسم:

chief, indoor, outdoor, only, outer, upper, etc.

- I like outdoor activities such as skiing, climbing, and hiking.

5 بعض الصفات تستخدم مع the كأنها أسماء لتفيد الجمع:

old, young, blind, dead, deaf, disabled, living, sick, homeless, hungry, poor, rich, strong, weak, unemployed, middle-aged, elderly, etc.

- The rich (rich people) should help and support the poor (poor people).

6 الصفة لا تجمع وإذا جاء اسم قبل اسم فالاسم الأول يعتبر صفة ولا يجمع:

A bus driver	سائق الأتوبيس	bus drivers	سائقو الأتوبيسات
Two million pounds	كلمة «مليون» هى اسم ولكن هنا صفة لأن بعدها اسم لذلك لم تجمع		
the book fair	معرض الكتاب	book fairs	معارض الكتب
a five-day holiday	إجازة خمسة أيام	five-day holidays	إجازات كل منها خمسة أيام

7 الصفات المنتهية بـ ing تصف الأشياء والأشخاص والصفات المنتهية بـ ed تصف المشاعر:

- This book is interesting.
- My neighbour is an interesting man.
- As the film was boring, we got bored and wanted to leave the cinema.

8 هناك صفات تنتهى بـ ly ويجب حفظها لتجنب التشابه بينها وبين الحال ومنها:

elderly	مُسنّ	lonely	وحيدًا / يشعر بالوحدة	ugly	قَبيح
fatherly	أبَوِيّ	lovely	مَحْبُوب	deadly	مُمِيت
friendly	ودود	motherly	أمومِيّ	heavenly	سماوى
lively	مُفْعَمٌ بالحَيَوِيَّة	silly	سَخِيف	cowardly	جَبَان
brotherly	أخَوِيّ	likely	مُتَوَقَّع / مُحْتَمَل	neighbourly	حسن الجوار

9 الصفة تسبق بـ very, so, too, وتأتى قبل enough:

- She is being very impolite today!
- The car they want to buy is too expensive.

10 وعلى الرغم من أن الصفة تأتى قبل الموصوف هناك كلمات تأتى الصفة بعدها وهى:

every	everyone	everybody	everything	everywhere
any	anyone	anybody	anything	anywhere
some	someone	somebody	something	somewhere
no	no one	anybody	anything	anywhere

Examples

- Have you ever met anyone important?
- Is there somewhere safe where I can leave my bike?
- I haven't done anything useful for 3 days.

2 Order of Adjectives ترتيب الصفات

Opinion		Fact adjectives							Noun
		size	age	shape	colour	origin	material	Used for	
It's a	nice	small	old	square	brown	Italian	wooden	dinner	table.

وفى الغالب نستخدم صفة أو اثنين أو ثلاثة صفات فقط قبل الاسم وليس كل هذه الصفات.

- She is wearing a beautiful white wedding dress.
- Hany found an old circular Egyptian coin.

Degrees of Adjectives
درجات الصفات

- **Positive** الصفة
- **Comparative** المقارنة بين شيئين
- **Superlative** صيغة التفضيل (للمقارنة بين فرد/شىء ومجموعة)

One-syllable Adjectives:

صفات المقطع الواحد.

Positive		Comparative		Superlative		
tall	طويل	taller	than	the	tallest	فى المقارنة نضع adj.+ er + than
young	صغير السن	younger	than	the	youngest	
soft	ناعم	softer	than	the	softest	فى التفضيل نضع the + adj. + est
short	قصير	shorter	than	the	shortest	
large	واسع	larger	than	the	largest	إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف e نضع r/ st
wide	عريض	wider	than	the	widest	
cheap	رخيص	cheaper	than	the	cheapest	
Positive		**Comparative**		**Superlative**		
big	كبير الحجم	bigger	than	the	biggest	إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك نضعف الساكن.
hot	ساخن	hotter	than	the	hottest	
low	منخفض	lower	than	the	lowest	إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف w قبله o أو e نضع er /est دون تضعيف.
few	قليل	fewer	than	the	fewest	
Two or more syllable-adjectives ending in y						
ugly	قبيح	uglier	than	the	ugliest	إذا كانت الصفة من مقطعين وتنتهى بحرف y قبله ساكن تقلب إلى ier/ iest.
easy	سهل	easier	than	the	easiest	
heavy	ثقيل	heavier	than	the	heaviest	
happy	سعيد	happier	than	the	happiest	
lucky	محظوظ	luckier	than	the	luckiest	

صفة المقارنة + than   صفة التفضيل + of/ in

Examples

- Shady is a young boy. — **Positive**
- Shady is younger than Ehab. — **Comparative**
- Shady is the youngest boy in class / of all students. — **Superlative**

More than Two-syllable Adjectives: صفات أكثر من مقطعين.

Positive		Comparative			Superlative
		more +	الصفة	+ than	the most + الصفة
modern	عصرى	more	modern	than	the most modern
careful	حريص	more	careful	than	the most careful
expensive	غالٍ	more	expensive	than	the most expensive
wonderful	رائع	more	wonderful	than	the most wonderful
exciting	مثير	more	exciting	than	the most exciting
difficult	صعب	more	difficult	than	the most difficult
interesting	شيق	more	interesting	than	the most interesting
beautiful	جميل	more	beautiful	than	the most beautiful

Examples

- English is an interesting subject. — **Positive**
- English is more interesting than Spanish. — **Comparative**
- English is the most interesting subject of all languages. — **Superlative**

Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives: الصفات الشاذة.

Positive		Comparison	Superlative
good	جيد / حسن	better than	the best
Bad	سيئ / ردىء	worse than	the worst
little	قليل	less than	the least
much/ many/ a lot of	كثير	more than	the most
far	بعيد	farther / further than	the farthest / furthest

Examples

- Lying is a bad habit. — **Positive**
- Nothing is worse than lying. — **Comparative**
- Lying is the worst habit in anyone's life. — **Superlative**

Notes: ملاحظات

1 نستخدم المقارنة:

- لبيان المقارنة الضمنية لشيئين حتى مع عدم ذكر أحد طرفى المقارنة:

- We need a bigger garden.
- Ali's car is certainly better, but it's much more expensive.

- بين شيئين أو شخصين مع ذكر طرفى المقارنة:

- My brother is older than me.
- My car is more modern than my neighbour's.

- لوصف كيف يتغير الشىء وبيان الفرق بين شىء قديم وآخر حديث:

- Hala is getting taller.
- Ali is getting older and more intelligent.
- Everything is getting more and more expensive.

2 لاحظ استخدام هذه الصيغة comparative + comparative لبيان الزيادة المضطردة فى التغيير.

- Cars are getting faster and faster.
- Computers are getting cheaper and cheaper.

3 يمكن استخدام كلمات مثل much/ a lot/ a bit/ a little/ far/ rather/ even قبل صفات المقارنة سواء ....er أو more.

- Gold is much / a lot more expensive than salt.
- Travelling by train is a little / a bit cheaper than travelling by car.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The blue whale makes a .... sound than the polar bear.
   a) loud b) loudest c) louder d) more loud
2. Jupiter is .... planet in the solar system.
   a) the biggest b) the bigger c) the most big d) the big
3. In my opinion, the tiger is .... animal of all.
   a) danger b) more dangerous c) a dangerous d) the most dangerous
4. This tree is .... than the building over there.
   a) more taller b) a bit taller c) very tall d) the tallest
5. As it was raining heavily, the driver saw nothing and the car went .... down the hill.
   a) fast and faster b) fast and fast c) faster and faster d) faster and fast

Practice ... Language General Exercises



Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A lot of people prefer Spain for their holidays as it is .... than England.
   a) warm b) warmer
   c) the warmest d) more warm
2. Travelling by train is .... than travelling by bus.
   a) expensive
   b) the most expensive
   c) more expensive
   d) much expensive
3. I think, the computer is .... invention in the world.
   a) the more important
   b) the most important
   c) important
   d) more important
4. How far is .... railway station from here?
   a) nearer b) the nearer
   c) the near d) the nearest
5. It is .... more expensive to live in London than any other city in Britain.
   a) very b) far
   c) little d) few
6. Mona was not as intelligent as the others, but she was ....
   a) prettier b) pretty
   c) the prettiest d) most pretty
7. Although we aren't rich, our children go to .... schools in the city.
   a) the best b) the most
   c) as good d) the better
8. A falcon has got a .... eyesight than a human.
   a) good b) bad
   c) best d) better
9. Unfortunately, her illness was .... we thought at first.
   a) serious b) more serious
   c) more serious than d) the most serious

10. What's .... important decision you've ever had to make?

a) the more
b) the most
c) most
d) the many

11. Health and happiness are .... than money.

a) more important
b) important
c) the least important
d) as important

12. We live in a .... house, but my uncle lives in a .... one.

a) big/big
b) big/biggest
c) big/bigger
d) bigger/biggest

13. The second exercise is .... more difficult than the first.

a) rather
b) so
c) as
d) many

14. It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere ....?

a) more quiet
b) much quiet
c) quieter
d) most quiet

15. I live .... from school of all my friends.

a) the farthest
b) far
c) farther
d) the further

16. One of the given words is an adjective:

"The sun is the star at the centre of our solar system."

a) system
b) solar
c) star
d) sun

17. One sentence gives the same meaning as:

"To me, physics is a difficult subject, but English is easy."

a) I find physics more difficult than English.
b) I find physics much easier than English.
c) I find physics as difficult as English.
d) I find English more difficult than physics.

18. One sentence is grammatically correct:

a) I bought a nice, Italian red dress.
b) The young people should help the old ones.
c) All society should take care of the disabled.
d) I like this food as it tastes nicely.

19. When I learned a lot of grammar and vocabulary, English became ....

a) the easiest
b) much more easier
c) more and more easier
d) easier and easier

20. My grandmother is kinder than anyone in the family. This means that: ....

a) Anyone in the family is kinder than my grandmother
b) My grandmother is as kind as anyone in the family
c) No one in my family is kinder than my grandmother
d) My grandmother shows no kindness towards anyone

Longman and Previous Exams

21. Your homework is .... than last week; you seem lazy. (Longman)

a) better b) worse c) good d) bad

22. Adel isn't as old as Hatim. Adel is really .... (Longman)

a) younger b) older c) youngest d) old

23. Which is .... in the summer: Cairo or Alexandria? (Longman)

a) hotter than b) as hot c) hottest d) hotter

24. What is the .... mountain in Europe? (Longman)

a) highest b) high c) highly d) much high

25. This exam seems .... than the previous one; you don't have to worry. (Longman)

a) more difficult
b) the easiest
c) easier
d) much difficult

26. There is not .... mountain in the world than Everest. (بنها - القليوبية)

a) height b) higher c) a higher d) high

27. Out of all students, Ahmed studied .... but got the best grades. (إدارة أسيوط)

a) the less b) the least c) the much d) the more

28. Nut biscuits are .... of all the other biscuits in the market. (المنشاة - سوهاج)

a) much sweeter
b) sweet
c) the sweetest
d) sweeter

29. Oysters are .... most other types of seafood. (نجع حمادي - قنا)

a) rarer than b) the rarest c) rarer d) less rarer than

30. Domestic cats can see well, but owls can do ten times .... (البلينا - سوهاج)

a) better b) the better c) best d) the best

Test yourself Part 1 Lessons 1 & 2



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. We aren't used to eating .... a lot. We prefer our mother's cooking.
a) inside b) down c) out d) across

2. The teacher separated the students into four groups. The verb "separate" is an antonym to the verb "..................".
a) gather b) spread c) scratch d) wake

3. The presenter only had a few hours to .... for the interview after his former guest apologised.
a) expire b) accept c) appear d) prepare

4. Al Ahly team always gives the fans something to .... at the end of most seasons.
a) separate b) commemorate c) celebrate d) relate

5. The tough defender was given a red card on two .... during the first round of the league.
a) accidents b) assignments c) promotions d) occasions

6. The charity owed its .... to the generosity of a lot of donors and volunteers.
a) exist b) existence c) existential d) exit

7. The aeroplane that crashed in the mountains was carrying over 500 ....
a) passengers b) hosts c) pilots d) hostesses

8. I have read only some .... from the new novel, but I like it very much.
a) addresses b) experiments c) extracts d) headlines

9. Millions of people watched King Charles perform the .... ceremonies at the coronation last year.
a) modern b) dated c) updated d) traditional

10. When the children get home, the mother often wants to .... with them on the school news.
a) take away b) wait for c) catch up d) look after

11. For the right recipe for the cake, you should add 50 grams of butter, and the same .... of sugar.
a) quality b) quantity c) equality d) equity

12. My grandfather's cakes are good and tasty. The adjective "tasty" is a synonym to the adjective "..................".
a) accepted b) horrible c) delicious d) strange

13. I can't eat fish or shrimps because I'm allergic to ....
a) seafood b) dairy c) poultry d) legumes

14. This year's Olympic Games was the biggest sporting .... in France and the whole world.
a) accident b) plan c) event d) feast

15. We were .... to know who won the game that we didn't watch on TV.
a) obvious b) curious c) exciting d) proud

Language

16. Horses are faster than dogs, but cheetahs are .... land animals.
a) the fastest b) faster c) the faster d) fast

17. China is .... than any other country in the world.
a) most populated b) more populated
c) populated d) as populated

18. Vegetables are .... than meat if you want to go on a diet.
a) healthier b) much healthy c) healthy d) more healthy

19. He's .... boy in the class.
a) the funnier b) funniest c) funnier d) the funniest

20. My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something .... interesting.
a) much b) most c) less d) more

21. I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed .... than usual.
a) earlier b) much early c) later d) more early

22. Yara is .... of the twins.
a) cleverer b) the most clever c) the cleverer d) more clever

23. This book is .... than the last one she wrote. I don't like it.
a) better b) best c) worst d) worse

24. I regret selling my car. It was .... decision I've ever made.
a) the best b) the worst c) as bad d) worse

25. This dress is .... of all you've tried on yet.
a) nicer b) nice c) the nicest d) as nice

26. He got the best marks in the class. This means that he got .... marks than anyone else.
a) good b) better c) best d) most

27. Hany had three big sandwiches. He was .... of all his friends.
a) hungrier b) hungry c) the hungriest d) much hungrier

28. A: Why are you sitting there? B: Frankly, there is .... to do.
a) nothing interest b) interesting nothing
c) interesting something d) nothing interesting

29. My neighbour is driving me mad! It seems that the .... it is at night, the .... he plays his music!
a) later – more loud b) late – louder
c) later – louder d) more late – loud

30. Some mushrooms are edible صالح للأكل while others, which look almost identical, contain .... poisons.
a) deadly b) dead c) the more dead d) deadness





Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق	foreigner (n)	أجنبى	questionnaire (n)	استبيان / استطلاع رأى
article (n)	مقال	general (adj)	عام	relatives (n)	أقارب
attractive (adj)	جذاب	introduce (v) (d)	يقدم	respect (n) (v) (ed)	احترام / يحترم
beef (n)	لحم بقرى	light (adj)	خفيف	rest (n) (v) (ed)	باقٍ / راحة / يرتاح
belief (n)	اعتقاد / إيمان	mean (v)	يعنى / يقصد	rude (adj)	وقح / غير مؤدب
chopstick (n)	عصا الأكل الصينية	mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية	rule (n)	قاعدة
complicated (adj)	معقد	name (n) (v) (d)	اسم / يسمى / يذكر	share (v) (d)	يشارك
confused (adj)	مرتبك	options (n)	اختيارات	simple (adj)	بسيط
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر	personally (adv)	شخصيًا	tradition (n)	تقليد
design (v) (ed) (n)	يصمم / تصميم	phrase (n)	عبارة	type (n)	نوع
details (n)	تفاصيل	plate (n)	طبق	vertically (adv)	عموديًا
distant (adj)	بعيد	products (n)	منتجات		

Workbook Vocabulary

مفردات كتاب التدريبات

abroad (adv)	بالخارج	fried (adj)	محمر / مقلى	snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة
climate (n)	مناخ	include (v) (d)	يشمل / يتضمن / يشتمل	suitable (adj)	مناسب
comfortable (adj)	مريح	prefer (v) (red)	يفضل	windy (adj)	عاصف
confuse (v) (d)	يربك	repeat (v) (ed)	يكرر		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... it a great honour to be invited to this important conference.
   a) inspect b) include c) consider d) deny
2. When I had dinner with my friends, we .... the bill equally among the three of us.
   a) sold b) paid c) designed d) shared
3. I am looking for a birthday present for my mother, but I can't find anything .... for her.
   a) respectful b) suitable c) achievable d) reusable
4. The old man often has to ask people to .... what they say because he has hearing difficulties.
   a) repeat b) announce c) start d) attract
5. I went into the bank to ask for .... about opening a new account.
   a) questions b) plots c) chances d) details
6. A .... is a written set of questions which you give to a large number of people in order to collect information.
   a) belief b) questionnaire c) request d) degree
7. Plutonium is a fuel used to .... nuclear energy in power stations.
   a) produce b) consume c) buy d) present
8. Strangers and tourists should respect the .... of the country they are in.
   a) instructions b) costumes c) customs d) divisions
9. The former minister wrote about his political career in a series of .... published in a national newspaper.
   a) phrases b) articles c) brochures d) searches

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

achieve a great deal of يحقق قدرًا كبيرًا من	get confused يرتبك / يفقد التركيز	make a lot of difference يحدث فرقًا كبيرًا
around the world حول العالم	go abroad يسافر للخارج	make noise يحدث ضوضاء
at a time كل مرة	in my opinion فى رأيى	show respect يظهر الاحترام
ask about يسأل عن	careful about حريص بشأن	start with يبدأ بـ
happy with سعيد بـ	spend on ينفق على	write about يكتب عن

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
attract	يجذب	attraction	جذب	attractive	جذاب
believe	يعتقد	belief believer	اعتقاد مؤمن	believable	يمكن تصديقه
confuse	يربك	confusion	ارتباك	confused confusing	مرتبك مربك
consider	يعتبر	consideration	اعتبار	considerable considered	كبير/فائق معتبر/جدير بالاعتبار
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تقديمى
produce	ينتج	product production producer	منتج صناعى إنتاج منتج	productive	منتج
respect	يحترم	respect	احترام	respected respectable respectful	محترم بسبب إنجازاته محترم من الآخرين محترم لغيره

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ماتحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- The factory produces high-quality shoes. (v)
- The products are exported to the Gulf countries. (n)
- The workers are very productive. (adj)
- Saudi Arabia is a major producer of oil. (n)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
belief	اعتقاد	concept/faith	doubt/disbelief	شك
confuse	يربك	distract	comfort/clarify	يريح /يوضح
design	يصمم	plan/devise	ruin	يدمر
distant	بعيد	isolated/remote	close/near	قريب

light	خفيف	lightweight	heavy/large	ثقيل/كبير
respect	احترام	appreciation/esteem	disrespect/dishonor	عدم احترام
share	يشارك	distribute/participate	gather/combine	يجمع
suitable	مناسب	appropriate/convenient	inconvenient/improper	غيرمناسب

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I never had any doubt you would win. The noun "doubt" can be the opposite to the noun "..................".
a) denial b) belief c) tiredness d) acceptance

2. The author outlines his methods of research in the .... of his book.
a) introduce b) introduction c) introductory d) introduced

3. People living near the old factory are happy .... the decision to close it.
a) at b) in c) over d) with

4. Your mother should be treated with respect. The noun "respect" is similar in meaning to the noun "..................".
a) esteem b) dishonour c) doubt d) belief

5. Our office's working system is based on the .... that people work more productively in a team.
a) belief b) believe c) believable d) believed

6. Schools must try to make subjects more .... to children and teenagers.
a) attract b) attraction c) attractive d) attracted

7. Schools must teach children to .... respect towards elderly people.
a) achieve b) see c) show d) make

8. If things start going badly again, the club members are sure to .... noises.
a) make b) do c) reply d) apply

9. Some people complain that the government spends more .... sports than on the arts.
a) in b) at c) on d) with

10. The stars are more distant from the earth than the sun. The synonym of the adjective "distant" is "..................".
a) remote b) close c) nearly d) wild

Reading Text



(A) Personally, I think it's important to respect our older relatives. When South Korean families eat together, the oldest person at the table always starts to eat first. The rest of the family waits until this person has finished eating before they finish their meals. It is believed that this shows your respect for the most important people in your family.

(B) As you probably know, people in China usually use chopsticks to eat their food. However, you need to be careful about what you do with them when you're eating there. It is considered very rude to put your chopsticks vertically into your bowl of food, for example. I understand that this is a Chinese tradition, but for me, foreigners who do this don't mean to be rude at all.

(C) In my opinion, lunchtime isn't the best time of day for eating a large meal. However, in Russia it is thought that people should eat their largest meal of the day between 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the afternoon. In the evening, people usually eat some light food, such as bread and cold meat followed by tea. This is a traditional way of eating in Russia.

Listening Text





When you're writing a questionnaire, you need to ask the right questions. Some questions are a lot more useful than others. And, very often, small changes to a questionnaire can make a lot of difference.

Firstly, it's important that the questions are easy to understand, so it's always helpful to use simple language. If you use complicated language, people will need to read or hear the questions two or three times.

Secondly, it's important to use words with clear meanings. Words like 'most' and 'many' mean different things to different people. So, use words that are easier to understand, such as 'almost all' and 'almost none' instead.

Thirdly, don't have too many options. People get confused when there are more than six options to choose from.

Don't ask personal questions, like questions about money. People don't like talking about these things.

Remember to ask one question at a time. Don't put two questions into one, for example: 'How often do you eat out with your family?' Some people will eat out quite often, but not with their family. And others might eat with their family all the time, but only at home.

Finally, make sure the answers to your questions are easy to remember. Don't ask about events in the distant past, especially if they are about something that was boring.

Then, when you know the questions you want to ask, think about the best time to ask people. If you're going to ask people about a recent event, for example, do it before they start to forget.

Video Script



People in different countries celebrate different festivals, but they all cook special meals for their families when they're celebrating together. Let's look at three examples of special meals from around the world.

Many Egyptians celebrate the festival of Eid-al-Adha every year. The most popular meal to eat on this occasion is a traditional fattah. Egyptian families usually eat fattah for breakfast.

In Britain, Christmas is the most popular festival of the year. British families come together on this occasion to eat a special meal, which is usually roasted turkey with potatoes and other vegetables.

And, finally, let's go to China where the New Year is the most important festival of the year. Families like to have lots of different things on the table when they get together to eat at Chinese New Year. This usually includes spring rolls, noodles, fish and chicken.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

	Word	Meaning	Example
1	share	١- يشترك (فى شىء) بدون تقسيم ٢- يشارك (شيئًا/ رأيًا/ شعورًا)	- My brother shares a room with one of his university colleagues. - We shared the pizza between the four of us.
	divide	١- يقسم/ينقسم ٢- يقسم على رقم (فى الرياضيات)	- The children are divided into three teams. - Thirty divided by six is five.
2	introduce	يقدم (شخصًا) يقدم (شيئًا جديدًا)	- I introduced my family to all my friends at the school party. - Russia is the first country to introduce a new vaccine for the novel coronavirus.
	present	يقدم (شيئًا)	It was the school headmaster who presented the prizes at the party.
3	include	يشمل /يتضمن (ما بعده يشكل جزءًا مما قبله)	The price of the computer includes 500 pounds worth of free software.
	contain	يحتوى على (بداخله)	There were four or five boxes containing toys and books.
	consist of	يتكون من (ما بعده يشكل كل ما قبله)	A football team consists of ten players and a goalkeeper.
	enclose	يرفق	I sent my CV and enclosed a recent photo.
4	abroad	خارج البلاد	My father travelled abroad last year.
	aboard = on board	على متن السفينة/الطائرة	The check-in desk announced that it's time to get aboard the plane to London.
	broad	عريض/واسع	My friend Ali is of medium height, but has very broad shoulders.
5	climate	(المناخ) فترة طويلة	Egypt is popular with tourists because of its mild climate all year.
	weather	(الطقس) فترة قصيرة	The weather today is hot and humid.
	atmosphere	الغلاف الجوى- مناخ (محيط بالشخص أو المكان)	- Pollution is really damaging the atmosphere of the Earth. - He lives in an atmosphere of respect and love.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egyptian football players have gone to clubs .... since the 1990s.
   a) board b) broad c) aboard d) abroad
2. The waiter says that the bill .... tax and service.
   a) consists b) includes c) encloses d) contains
3. On his retirement تقاعد, Mr Yasser's colleagues .... him with many gifts.
   a) presented b) introduced c) volunteered d) declined
4. The .... is fantastic for a picnic, but I have lots of work to do.
   a) climate b) space c) weather d) ozone
5. The flight attendant welcomed us .... before giving us the instructions of the plane taking off.
   a) board b) broad c) aboard d) abroad
6. Before the effects of global warming, Egypt's .... used to be mild all the year round.
   a) weather b) climate c) atmosphere d) space
7. At the restaurant, the three friends .... the pizza and had a slice each as they didn't have enough money.
   a) shared b) divided c) meant d) produced
8. The film .... some very unpleasant scenes of violence, so it isn't suitable for children.
   a) consists b) includes c) encloses d) contains
9. We went around the room, and each of us .... himself on the first day in class.
   a) introduced b) presented c) invited d) showed
10. The audience at the famous singer's concert .... largely of teenagers.
   a) consisted b) included c) enclosed d) contained



▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. The camera has many .... features at a very good price.
a) depicted b) terrible c) attractive d) intensive
2. The young squash player has a strong .... in his ability to win the cup.
a) change b) obstacle c) research d) belief
3. A .... is one of the two thin things that you use to eat food in many countries in Asia.
a) knife b) chopstick c) teaspoon d) bowl
4. In many countries, it is allowed for .... to own land under some conditions.
a) foreigners b) citizens c) enemies d) sellers
5. Most villagers are more keen to keep local .... than the people who live in cities.
a) costumes b) traditions c) tasks d) missions
6. The new company has good ...., but it needs to be marketed better.
a) products b) intentions c) galleries d) fairs
7. Nowadays, it is hard to .... a balance between work and your family life.
a) respect b) design c) rewrite d) achieve
8. The question with too many .... will confuse the young student.
a) articles b) papers c) options d) letters
9. In the .... past, dinosaurs had controlled the earth before they became extinct.
a) near b) distant c) strange d) odd
10. Our head teacher insists that anyone who breaks the school .... will be punished.
a) rules b) roles c) beliefs d) phrases
11. In China, it is impolite to put your chopsticks .... into your food bowl.
a) gradually b) carefully c) usefully d) vertically
12. Some of the maths questions were too .... for my 10-year-old son. He found them difficult.
a) simple b) complicated c) easy d) hidden
13. I have great .... for my teacher. He taught me a lot.
a) disrespect b) rudeness c) power d) respect
14. The new washing machine is very .... for all people to use.
a) simple b) confused c) complicated d) interested

15. Only thirty-five close friends and .... attended my sister's wedding.

a) enemies b) relatives c) heroes d) opponents

16. A .... map is a diagram that presents information with a central idea in the middle and connected ideas arranged around it.

a) mind b) brain c) psychology d) mental

17. You should wear ...., comfortable shoes if you intend to make this long shopping tour.

a) heavy b) vague c) light d) old-fashioned

18. This small house won't be .... for a large family like our family.

a) affectionate b) suitable c) general d) vertical

19. Your brother's tough behaviour doesn't .... that he dislikes you.

a) mean b) share c) report d) present

20. We must make the instructions for our system easier otherwise they may .... the customers.

a) support b) confuse c) diffuse d) report

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. As a manager of a multi-national company, Mr Ibrahim often .... abroad on business.

a) arrives b) goes c) comes d) plans

22. The streets in this area are so alike that they can confuse any newcomer. The noun from the verb "confuse" is "..................".

a) confuses b) confused c) confusion d) confusedly

23. I have the greatest respect for my parents. The noun "respect" is similar in meaning to ....

a) belief b) doubt c) denial d) appreciation

24. I have to go to the mechanic's as my car is .... a loud and strange noise.

a) making b) doing c) reusing d) devising

25. I always confuse Leila with her sister - they're so alike. The antonym of the verb "confuse" is "..................".

a) distract b) clarify c) reply d) mend

26. My science teacher advises us to learn from bees which are highly .... workers.

a) produced b) product c) producer d) productive

27. This violent film isn't suitable for children. The antonym of the adjective "suitable" is "..................".
a) appropriate b) convenient c) improper d) defective

28. Shy children usually .... distracted in crowded and noisy places.
a) get b) do c) make d) go

29. The store has introduced a new range of food for children. The adjective of the verb "introduce" is "..................".
a) introduces b) introduced c) introduction d) introductory

30. Mohamed Salah is one of the most famous sportsmen .... the world.
a) out b) around c) about d) with

Longman and Previous Exams

31. I don't like to work in distant places. "Distant" is the opposite in meaning to "..................". [Longman]
a) remote b) close c) far d) crowded

32. The teacher .... students into four groups to encourage teamwork. [Longman]
a) joined b) tied c) divided d) shared

33. Most developed countries .... a lot of money on scientific research. [Longman]
a) depend b) miss c) spend d) save

34. Don't ask students more than one question at a time so as not to .... them. [Longman]
a) regulate b) activate c) confuse d) amuse

35. Does the price of this camera .... sales tax? [Longman]
a) remind b) appear c) consist d) include

36. My uncle eventually .... his goal of becoming a university professor. [Longman]
a) believed b) achieved c) relieved d) aggrieved

37. I share my father's .... that people should work hard for their living. (الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية)
a) belief b) disbelief c) affection d) relief

38. "I find this question very difficult." This means that the question is .... for me. (الغربية - إدارة شرق المحلة)
a) confused b) confusing c) confuse d) confuses

39. The team has no other .... but to win the match. (الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس)
a) prefer b) caption c) option d) choose

40. The teacher asked us to .... the experiment to confirm our results. (المنيا - إدارة المنيا)
a) repeat b) avoid c) neglect d) prevent

B Language



Important Notes

1 لتساوى الصفات نستخدم:

Chemistry is as difficult as biology.	عند تساوى الصفات	as + adj. + as
Arabic isn't as/so difficult as biology.	عدم تساوى الصفات	not as/so + adj + as

وتستخدم أيضًا الصيغة the same + noun + as للتعبير عن التساوى:

- Her hair is as long as her sister's. = Her hair is the same length as her sister's.
- His father is as old as my father. =His father is the same age as my father.

2 عندما نجد فعلًا حركيًا (action) فى الجملة فإن الذى يصفه هو الحال وليس الصفة مثلًا:

- Ahmed plays football well. (Not good).

وعند تساوى الحال نستخدم as well as:

- Ahmed plays football as well as Omar.

3 نستخدم no/ never دائمًا فى صيغة المقارنة.

- No river in the world is longer than the Nile.
- I've never bought a faster car than Mercedes.

4 نستخدم ever فى صيغة التفضيل آخر الجملة.

- Mercedes is the fastest car I've ever bought.

5 نستخدم less + adjective + than للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين مع الصفات القصيرة و الطويلة.

- Silver is less expensive than gold.
- This book is less interesting than that one.
- Fiat is less cheap than Toyota.

6 مع التركيبة الآتية نستخدم صفات المقارنة بمعنى (كلما ....كلما).

اسم + صفة مقارنة + the ,......... اسم + صفة مقارنة + The

- The more books you read, the more information you get.
- The fewer mistakes you make, the higher marks you get.

7 هناك صفات مشتركة فى النوعين فتأخذ er/ est or more/ the most وهى:

clever, common, cruel, friendly, gentle, narrow, pleasant, polite, shallow, simple, stupid, quiet, etc. simple - simpler - simplest (more simple - the most simple)

8 هناك مقارنة نستخدم فيها the بين شيئين من نوع واحد:

- Of the two cars, this is the faster.
- Noha is the younger of two girls.

9 نستخدم most بدون the بمعنى very قبل صفة أو حال أو بعد صفات الملكية أو s' الملكية.

- We attended a most interesting lecture.
- This is the question that is asked most often.
- Ali's most interesting novels have been published lately.

10 نستخدم (of) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها أشخاص أو فترة زمنية.

- He is the cleverest of his friends in electronics.

11 نستخدم (in) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها مكان.

- Cairo is the biggest city in Egypt.

12 لاحظ استخدام (from) مع (farthest) واستخدام (nearest) مع (to).

- Luxor is the farthest city from Cairo.
- Banha is the nearest city to Cairo.

13 يمكن استخدام كلمات مثل much/a lot/ a bit/ a little/ far/ rather/ even/ slightly قبل صفات المقارنة سواء more أو er .... لبيان درجة ومقدار المقارنة.

- لبيان أن الفارق كبير بين طرفى المقارنة far/ much/ a lot.

- Gold is much/a lot/far more expensive than salt.

- لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيرًا بين طرفى المقارنة slightly/ a bit/ a little/ rather/ even.

- Travelling by train is a little/a bit cheaper than travelling by car.

14 الفرق بين later/ latter/ last.

Later (بعد ذلك/ لاحقًا)

- تشير كلمة (later) التى بحرف T واحد إلى وقت فى المستقبل.

- Right now I'm studying my lesson, and I'll visit you later. (in the future from this moment).

ودائمًا عندما نقول مع السلامة لشخص مع المقابلة مرة أخرى فى وقت لاحق نقول "See you later!"

Latter (الثاني/الاخير)

- نستخدم كلمة (latter) التى بحرفين T عندما نشير إلى الثانى من شخصين أو شيئين يتم ذكرهما.

- I have fans on both Facebook and YouTube, and I have more fans on the latter.

الأخير يعنى الثانى من الشيئين اللذين ذكرتهما للتو وهو اليوتيوب.

Last (الاخيـر)

- اخرشيء أو شخص ولا شيء أو شخص بعده / أقرب شيء للوقت الحاضر.

- The next meeting will be held in the last week in June.
- The guard was the last person to see his boss alive.

15 الفرق بين older/ elder.

Elder

- نسـتخدم elder عندمـا يتعيـن علينـا مقارنـة أقدميـة شـخصين فيمـا يتعلـق بالعمـر وخاصـة بيـن أفـراد العائلـة. ولا يأتى بعدها than.

- My elder sister couldn't go to school today because she missed the bus.
- Oh, so you are 3 years elder to me!

لاحظ أن كلمة elderly صفة بمعنى كبار السن من منتصف الخمسينات وأكثر.

- Nowadays, elderly people are healthier and more active than youngsters.

Older

- نستخدم older عندما نشيرإلى أى شيء يخص الماضى ويكون قديمًا وأقدم أو أكبر من للأشخاص ونذكر طرفى المقارنة أو تأتى المقارنة ضمنيًا ويأتى بعدها than.

- We start understanding many things as we grow/get older.
- My parents are older than your parents.
- The older version of the software had many useful features than this one.

16 استخدام how + adjective أو what + adj. + noun للتعجب.

How + adjective/ adverb

- نستخدم how + adj/ adverb للتعجب وبعدها الفاعل ثم الفعل.

- How polite he is!
- How fast she types!

What + a(n) + (adjective) + singular countable noun

- نستخدم what وبعدها اسم موصوف ثم الفاعل والفعل.
- نضع a/ an قبل الاسم الموصوف المفرد الذى يعد.

- What a beautiful girl she is!
- What an easy lesson it is!

What + (adjective) + uncountable/ plural noun

- لا نضع a/ an قبل الاسم الجمع أو الاسم الذى لا يعد.

- What horrible news! (اسم لا يعد)
- What lovely earrings! (اسم جمع)

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's .... to learn a language in a country where it is spoken.

a) much easy b) the easiest c) a lot easier d) more easier

2. It's getting .... and more difficult to find a job nowadays.

a) much b) most c) more difficult d) more

3. Riding a horse is not .... riding a bike.

a) easier b) as easy as c) the easiest d) so easy

4. The weather is better today. It's .... yesterday.

a) as cold as b) not as cold as
c) colder than d) much colder than

5. Ahmed and Ashraf are the same age. This means that ....

a) Ahmed is as old as Ashraf
b) Ahmed is older than Ashraf
c) Ashraf isn't as old as Ahmed
d) Ashraf is older than Ahmed

6. I had a meeting at work which went on .... than I expected.

a) much longer b) more longer
c) too long d) long

7. Nowhere .... this room.

a) as cold as b) is it as cold as
c) it is as cold as in d) is as cold as in

8. You need to hurry because the .... train leaves in five minutes.

a) later b) latter c) last d) latest

9. This is the .... building in the city.

a) elderly b) oldest c) elder d) eldest

10. He lives two miles .... away from the club than I do.

a) farther b) far c) farthest d) furthest



▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I thought she was younger than me, but in fact she's slightly ....

a) old b) older c) oldest d) eldest

2. Since Asmaa went to Canada, her English has got ....

a) well b) good c) best d) better

3. The .... tired you are, the harder to concentrate.

a) much b) most c) more d) many

4. Leila's .... sister is a nurse.

a) much elder b) more older c) old d) elder

5. The slower you drive, the .... you are.

a) safe b) safest c) safer d) most safer

6. The Amazon isn't .... the Nile. The Nile is the longest river in the world.

a) longer b) long
c) as long as d) so long

7. That's the least interesting book I've .... read.

a) ever b) never c) yet d) hardly

8. She is not .... as her mother.

a) more beautiful b) most beautiful
c) as beautiful d) beautifully

9. Sara is the same .... as Mona; they are 17 years old.

a) age b) old c) height d) older

10. The .... I had to queue at the bank, the more impatient I became.

a) longer b) long
c) longest d) most long

11. The .... you study for these exams, the .... you will do.

a) hard/better b) harder/better
c) more/good d) much/better

12. He is .... of the two brothers.

a) cleverer b) the cleverer
c) clever d) the clever

13. The .... chapter of the twenty ones is very interesting.

a) late
b) last
c) latest
d) latter

14. Of the two sisters, Magda is the ....

a) old
b) most old
c) elder
d) elderly

15. The store is .... from my house than I thought. It's easy to shop.

a) farther
b) further
c) more far
d) less far

16. One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) My brother is as tall as my father.
b) My father is tallest than my brother.
c) My father and my brother are the same high.
d) My brother is more shorter than my father.

17. Yesterday's match was .... than last week's match.

a) much more boring
b) the most boring
c) little boring
d) much boring

18. The children were too tired to walk any ....

a) far
b) furthest
c) further
d) farthest

19. Watching football attracts me more than any other programmes.
This means ....

a) for me, no other programme is more interesting than watching football
b) for me, watching football is less interesting than any other programmes
c) for me, watching football is as interesting as any other programmes
d) for me, watching football is the least interesting thing

20. .... Mohamed Salah is! All people respect him.

a) How intelligent footballer
b) What an intelligent footballer
c) What intelligent a footballer
d) What an intelligent a footballer

Longman and Previous Exams

21. My friend usually buys the same colours of clothes .... I do. [Longman]

a) like
b) exact
c) such as
d) as

22. Who is the .... of the two runners? [Longman]

a) faster
b) fast
c) much fast
d) more faster

23. French fries are .... than vegetables. [Longman]

a) less healthy
b) so healthy
c) much healthier
d) as healthy

24. Living in a big city isn't .... living in a small village. [Longman]

a) cheaper
b) so cheap as
c) as cheap
d) so cheap

25. No one in the class is as short as Tamer. This means that .... [Longman]

a) Tamer is the tallest boy in the class.
b) Tamer is the same height as all the boys in the class.
c) all the boys in the class are shorter than Tamer.
d) no one in the class is the same height as Tamer.

26. Fruits and vegetables became a .... more expensive than they used to be. (المعصرة - القاهرة)

a) much
b) lot
c) less
d) much

27. You should wear .... heavier clothes than these in such cold weather. (منوف - المنوفية)

a) more
b) few
c) a little
d) many

28. *"Oliver Twist"* is one of Charles Dickens' .... novels. (إدارة أسيوط)

a) famous
b) most famous
c) the most famous
d) much famous

29. The more effort you make, the .... marks you will get. (بلبيس - شرقية)

a) higher
b) highest
c) least
d) less

30. One of the following sentences is INCORRECT: (حوش عيسى - البحيرة)

a) Gold is much more expensive than salt.
b) Gold is more expensive than salt.
c) Gold is a little expensive than salt.
d) Gold is far more expensive than salt.



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Ali Farag, the Egyptian squash player, is currently .... number one in the list of world professional players.
   a) considered b) regulated c) regarded d) moved
2. The farm owner insists on having both dairy and .... on the farm.
   a) poultry b) beef c) seafood d) nuts
3. Mr Medhat is a careful driver and always .... the speed limit of the roads he drives on.
   a) reflects b) benefits c) affects d) respects
4. This building is not really .... for wheelchair users as it doesn't have such facilities.
   a) available b) suitable c) reputable d) avoidable
5. Some kinds of flowers, such as sunflowers, can grow in a hot or humid ....
   a) soil b) atmosphere c) climate d) depth
6. After selling the factory, some employees were given the .... of retiring early.
   a) option b) necessity c) task d) duty
7. Before starting your own business, you should be familiar with the government's .... and regulations.
   a) rails b) rolls c) roles d) rules
8. I don't share your belief about the role of women. The noun "belief" can be the opposite to the noun "..................".
   a) concept b) theory c) doubt d) faith
9. This section of the hypermarket sells meat .... like hot dogs and burgers.
   a) productions b) products c) articles d) extracts
10. Experts advise mothers to try to get their kids to .... in the housework.
    a) share b) divide c) prefer d) leave
11. You don't have to pay for your flights – they're .... in the price of your holiday.
    a) consisted b) contained c) included d) enclosed
12. The rich man made great efforts to be a .... member of society.
    a) disrespected b) respect c) respecting d) respected
13. The Ministry of Finance .... a new pay system for all governmental employees last year.
    a) rejected b) introduced c) achieved d) allowed
14. The .... of Sham El Nessim dates back to the time of the pharaohs.
    a) direction b) fault c) tradition d) search
15. Most companies spend much money .... marketing and advertising.
    a) of b) in c) about d) on

Language

16. Pick out one adjective in the following sentence:
"I always see my friendly neighbours running fast in the club near our village."

a) neighbours b) friendly c) village d) fast

17. I'm walking as fast as I can. I can't walk ....

a) faster b) fast c) fastest d) fast and fast

18. After three weeks of studying, I began to understand English ....

a) good b) the farthest c) the better d) much better

19. I'm very clever at cooking, but my mother is .... cook I've ever known.

a) cleverer b) clever c) the cleverest d) less clever

20. If I had to choose between Gamal and Hany, Gamal is the ....

a) funnier b) funnily c) funny d) more funny

21. Osama tells his doctor that he has been feeling .... tired lately.

a) the most b) more and more c) such a d) many

22. I like to travel light. The .... luggage, the better.

a) little b) fewer c) more d) less

23. The film we saw last night was .... interesting of all I have seen this month.

a) least b) less c) the least d) much

24. The Pharaohs' Golden Parade موكب is .... majestic than any other. People enjoyed watching it all over the world.

a) far more b) lot c) exactly as d) less

25. Maher isn't .... friendly as Hussein.

a) more b) so c) far d) much

26. Most other metals aren't .... as gold.

a) precious b) the most precious c) more precious d) as precious

27. Ali speaks French .... than English. Few people understand him when he speaks it.

a) better b) good c) worse d) best

28. It took us .... time to get here than usual.

a) a lot b) little c) long d) less

29. Nada is 160 centimetres tall, and so is Sara. This means that ....

a) Nada is the same height as Sara. b) Nada is younger than Sara.
c) Nada and Sara are the same tall. d) Sara is taller than Nada.

30. One sentence doesn't give the same meaning as:
"No person is more intelligent than Bassem in my class."

a) Bassam is the most intelligent person in my class.
b) Bassam is more intelligent than any person in my class.
c) Bassam is as intelligent as every person in my class.
d) No person is as intelligent as Bassem in my class.



Part 3 Skills



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

Questionnaire Writing

- **You're going to write a questionnaire to find out what young people like to eat and where they prefer to eat in your country:**

Tips for preparing the questionnaire:

- Discuss things to ask about and make the mind map.
- Design your own questionnaire.
- Think about how long it will take to ask all your questions.
- Make your questionnaire look attractive.

MODEL QUESTIONNAIRE

Read the questions and Tick (✓) your answer:

1. Where do you like to eat your food?
   - ◯ At home.
   - ◯ At restaurants.
2. What kind of food do you like?
   - ◯ Fast food.
   - ◯ Home cooked food.
3. What do you care more about your food?
   - ◯ Taste.
   - ◯ Ingredients.
4. What kind of snacks do you like?
   - ◯ Fruit and vegetables.
   - ◯ Home cooked food.
   - ◯ Sandwiches and juice.
5. Do you care about the natural ingredients of the food you eat?
   - ◯ Yes.
   - ◯ No.
6. Do you like canned food?
   - ◯ Yes.
   - ◯ No.
7. How much fresh juice do you have?
   - ◯ Much.
   - ◯ A little.
   - ◯ None.
8. Do you care about healthy or unhealthy food?
   - ◯ Yes.
   - ◯ No.



Practice more

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

(A) Reading Comprehension

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Everyone knows that running is a great way to get into shape, but it also can benefit almost every part of your body and boost your mood. Whether it's your favourite part of the day or something you have to push yourself through, the benefits are undeniable.

1. Running improves your health.
2. It prevents disease.
3. You might lose weight.
4. Running boosts your depression.
5. It relieves stress.
6. Running has the power to eliminate depression.

One of the coolest things about the sport of running is that you don't need expensive equipment. All you need is a good pair of running shoes and a safe environment.

No one wakes up and decides to run a marathon without training. Running requires discipline, perseverance, and concentration. It's a sport that's good for your body and mind.

Running strengthens your heart, lungs, and muscles. It develops coordination and makes you more aware of your body. Running also gives you energy by increasing your oxygen intake, and it improves your immune system, so you don't get sick as easily. It can even help you stay more focused in school because exercise helps you to think more clearly.

Most schools offer cross-country and track programs, but there are also running clubs open to all ages. A simple internet search can help you find some in your area. The programs show you how running can offer competition or just be for fun. They also teach runners to set realistic goals and take care of their bodies.

If you're looking for more than just a sport, running may be the perfect choice for you.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main idea of the fourth paragraph in this article?

a) Running is one way to keep your body healthy.
b) You don't need expensive equipment to be a runner.
c) Running for fun is better than running in a competition.
d) There are many running clubs and teams you can become involved in.

2. What is the author's main purpose for writing this passage?

a) To give historical information about runners.
b) To teach readers how to become great runners.
c) To persuade readers to try running.
d) To compare and contrast running and watching television.

3. Running strengthens your ....

a) heart, lungs, and muscles
b) hearing
c) hair
d) weakness

4. The words "protects your body from bacteria and disease" refer to the "...................".

a) lungs
b) immune system
c) heart
d) marathon

5. It's required to have .... to practise running.

a) smoking and beverage
b) perseverance and focus
c) leather shoes and a suit
d) money and a vast place

6. Running can benefit the mind as it ....

a) boosts confidence
b) helps people lose weight
c) helps people think clearly
d) keeps you hungry

7. According to the passage, people can find the suitable places for running through ....

a) the newspapers
b) the magazines
c) the internet
d) the school noticeboard

8. The underlined word "discipline" means "...................".

a) carelessness
b) weakness
c) self-control
d) flexibility

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You don't need to be an adult to help others. In November 2009, when she was just thirteen years old, Nahla was looking for the sports section in the newspaper. A story about a girl by the name of Karima El-Said caught her eye. Karima El-Said, who lived in Siwa, had been forced to work long days in a carpet factory.

She had worked fourteen hours a day, seven days a week from the time she was six years old until she escaped. Her job was to tie small knots in the carpets.

The article shocked Nahla. Karima El-Said was the same age as Nahla. Nahla just couldn't imagine what it was like to work all day seven days a week and never have a chance to attend school or play. Nahla tore the article out of the newspaper and put it in her rucksack. But she couldn't get Karima El-Said out of her mind. Riding the bus to school, she took the article out of her rucksack and read it again and again. After school, she went to the local library and got as much information as she could find on child labour and exploitation. The next morning, with the teacher's permission, she told the class about Karima and about the thousands of children who were forced to work in plantations, mines, and factories.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of the following isn't true.
a) Nahla is about 28 years now.
b) Nahla never had a chance to attend school.
c) Nahla and Karima are the same age.
d) Nahla was sorry for Karima.

2. This story shows that you .... to help others.
a) don't have to be old
b) must be old
c) need to be courageous
d) have to be a student

3. The best title for the passage is "................".
a) How to help others
b) Children are more useful than adults
c) Children in plantations
d) Child employment and manipulation

4. The underlined word "plantations" means ....
a) shops
b) schools
c) farms
d) markets

5. Nahla knew about Karima El-Said's story when she ....
a) went to school
b) read the newspaper
c) met her teacher
d) met her personally

6. What was shocking about Karima's story?
a) She worked for long hours and had no education.
b) She worked in carpets.
c) She was from Siwa.
d) She had the ability to work for long hours.

7. Nahla cut the article out of the page to ....
a) stick it on the wall
b) take part in a competition
c) read it several times
d) put it in the library

8. Karima couldn't bear her conditions and ....
a) decided to open her factory
b) escaped from the factory
c) committed a suicide
d) went to school

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. In the past, people only ate food made of local and available ingredients. Now, they can eat food made in many parts of the world due to the growth of international trade.

a) فى الماضى كان الناس يأكلون فقط الطعام المصنوع من المكونات المحلية والمتاحة، والآن يمكنهم تناول الطعام المصنوع فى أجزاء كثيرة من العالم بسبب نمو التجارة الدولية.
b) فى الماضى كان الناس يأكلون أحيانًا الطعام المصنوع من المكونات المحلية والمتاحة، والآن يمكنهم تناول الطعام المصنوع فى أجزاء كثيرة من العالم بسبب نمو التجارة الدولية.
c) فى الماضى كان الناس يأكلون فقط الطعام المصنوع من المكونات المحلية والمتاحة، والآن يمكنهم تناول الطعام المصنوع فى أجزاء كثيرة من العالم بسبب نمو الصناعة الدولية.
d) فى الماضى كان الناس يأكلون فقط الطعام المصنوع من المكونات المحلية والثرية، والآن يمكنهم تناول الطعام المصنوع فى أجزاء كثيرة من العالم بسبب نمو التجارة الدولية.

2. Most governments impose strict laws to assure food safety for their peoples. Yet, we should all be responsible for obeying these laws precisely everywhere.

a) تفرض معظم الحكومات قوانين صارمة لضمان سلامة الغذاء لشعوبها. ومع ذلك، يجب أن نكون جميعًا مسئولين عن إطاعة هذه القوانين بدقة في كل مكان.

b) تفرض معظم الحكومات قوانين صارمة لضمان سلام الغذاء لشعوبها. ومع ذلك، يجب أن نكون جميعًا مسئولين عن إطاعة هذه القوانين برقة في كل مكان.

c) تفرض معظم الحكومات قوانين صارمة لضمان أمانة الغذاء لشعوبها. ومع ذلك، يجب أن نكون جميعًا مسئولين عن إطاعة هذه القوانين بكفاءة في كل مكان.

d) تقوض معظم الحكومات قوانين صارمة لضمان سلامة الغذاء لشعوبها. ومع ذلك، يجب أن نكون جميعًا مسئولين عن تمييز هذه القوانين بدقة في كل مكان.

3. Eating habits differ from one country to another. Some people are characterised by their healthy food whereas others prefer the tasty food whether it is healthy or not.

a) تختلف تطلعات الأكل من بلد إلى آخر ويتميز بعض الناس بطعامهم الصحي بينما يفضل البعض الآخر الطعام الشهي سواء كان صحيًا أم لا.

b) تختلف عادات الأكل من بلد إلى آخر ويتوسع بعض الناس بطعامهم الصحي بينما يفضل البعض الآخر الطعام الشهي رغم كونه صحيًا أم لا.

c) تختلف عادات الأكل من بلد إلى آخر ويتميز بعض الناس بطعامهم المغذي بينما يفضل البعض الآخر الطعام الشهي بينما كان صحيًا أم لا.

d) تختلف عادات الأكل من بلد إلى آخر ويتميز بعض الناس بطعامهم الصحي بينما يفضل البعض الآخر الطعام الشهي سواء كان صحيًا أم لا.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. نأمل أن تسهم جهود المنظمات الخيرية في مصر، مثل: جمعية رسالة وبنك الطعام المصري، في تخفيف معاناة الناس والقضاء على الفقر في كل مكان.

a) We hope that the efforts of charitable organisations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will contribute to relieve people's suffering and eliminate poverty everywhere.

b) We hope that the efforts of charitable organisations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will contribute to relieving people's suffering and stopping poverty everywhere.

c) We hope that the efforts of charitable organisations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will contribute to relieving people's suffering and eliminating poverty everywhere.

d) We hope that the efforts of charitable organisations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will make up to relieving people's suffering and eliminating poverty everywhere.

5. لم تمنع صعوبات التعلم بعض المشاهير من النجاح فى حياتهم واستثمار قدراتهم ومواهبهم، بل استطاعوا الوصول للنجاح بالمثابرة والعمل الجاد

a) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from succeeding in their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to reach success through preservation and hard work.

b) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from passing their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to reach success through perseverance and hard work.

c) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from succeeding in their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to arrive success through perseverance and hard work.

d) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from succeeding in their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to reach success through perseverance and hard work.

6. يحتفل المصريون مثل باقى شعوب العالم بالأعياد المختلفة التى يتميز كل منها بنوع معين من الطعام، فاللحوم تؤكل فى عيد الأضحى، والحلويات المختلفة تؤكل فى عيد الفطر وعيد الميلاد المجيد.

a) Unlike the rest of the world's peoples, Egyptians celebrate various holidays, each of which is dominated by a specific type of food. Meat is eaten on Eid al-Adha, and various sweets are eaten on Eid al-Fitr and Christmas.

b) Like the rest of the world's peoples, Egyptians celebrate various holidays, each of which is characterised by a private type of food. Meat is eaten on Eid al-Adha, and various sweets are eaten on Eid al-Fitr and Christmas.

c) Like the rest of the world's peoples, Egyptians celebrate various holidays, each of which is characterised by a specific type of food. Meat is eaten on Eid al-Adha, and various sweets are eaten on Eid al-Fitr and Christmas.

d) Unlike the rest of the world's peoples, Egyptians celebrate various holidays, each of which is characterised by a general type of food. Meat is eaten on Eid al-Adha, and various sweets are eaten on Eid al-Fitr and Christmas.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

How can education help in solving many social problems in Egypt?

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Hoda and Salma are talking about their last visit to the Book Fair.

Salma: Hello Hoda. So you, too, have come to see the Book Fair.
Hoda : Of course. (1)..?
Salma: No, I haven't. I couldn't buy all the books I liked and wanted.
Hoda : Why?
Salma: They were too expensive. What I have really enjoyed are the cultural meetings and discussions that took place at the fair. (2).. .
Hoda : Every day! They (3)... .
Salma: Yes, of course you meet poets, writers and journalists.
Hoda : I wish I had been with you.
Salma: Don't worry. They are going to extend the fair for another two days.
Hoda : (4)...?
Salma: Of course I can.
Hoda : Thank you very much.

A Glimpse of Revelation II

2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is emphasised regarding the proper noun "Allah"?
2. Discuss the significance of Allah's names and attributes in shaping the relationship between believers and their Creator.

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. We should bear in mind that the names of Allah are ....
   a) countable b) countless c) limited d) only ninety-nine
4. Most of Allah's names are revealed in the Qur'an, while some are known from ....
   a) stories b) narration c) the hadith d) tales

King Lear

3 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. What was Goneril and Regan's reply when Cordelia asked them to take care of their father?
2. In what ways are Goneril and Regan like Edmund?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. Goneril and Regan say they must prepare for problems because of ....
   a) Lear's ill health and age b) the French army
   c) Kent's anger d) Edmund's trickery
4. Edmund wanted to trick both his father and brother in order to ....
   a) become the King b) have fun
   c) get rid of his father d) get his inheritance

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- Many people oppose globalization because it helps rich countries more than poor countries.

(B) Translate into English:

- يساعدنا الاستقرار على تنفيذ المشروعات النافعة وحل مشكلات الإسكان والمواصلات وتحسين العناية الصحية.

Unit 2

Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My elder brother often gets .... with his friends after work on Thursday.
   a) together   b) on   c) up   d) through
2. These clothes aren't suitable for this cold weather. The synonym of the word "suitable" is "....................".
   a) appropriate   b) inconvenient   c) improper   d) similar
3. An estimated 200 people attended the food .... in the local park.
   a) gallery   b) conference   c) festival   d) seminar
4. The surgeon asked the two nurses to .... the patient for surgery.
   a) appear   b) disappear   c) prepare   d) repair
5. The decision to close the plastic factory should .... as a warning to factories that pollute the environment.
   a) cook   b) serve   c) mend   d) show
6. The hotel manager ordered the staff to .... the big hall ready for the conference in two days' time.
   a) bring   b) do   c) get   d) design
7. The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be ....
   a) more expensive   b) much expensive
   c) cheaper   d) cheap
8. The younger you are, the .... freedom you have.
   a) most   b) best   c) more   d) much
9. Box A is bigger than box B, box C is bigger than box A. This means "....................".
   a) Box B is the smallest box.   b) Box A is the biggest box.
   c) Box C is the smallest box   d) Box B is the biggest box.
10. Robert is never on time. He always arrives .... than the rest of us.
    a) the latest   b) later   c) last   d) latter
11. I thought this test would be difficult, but it's .... test I've ever taken.
    a) much easier   b) easier   c) the easiest   d) easy
12. Out of all the films I've seen, this one is ....
    a) sadly   b) a sad   c) sadder than   d) the saddest
13. Your answer is not complete, but it's .... than the other students' answers.
    a) more correctly   b) more correct
    c) the most correct   d) much correct
14. Carrots are good for you, cakes are bad for you. This means ....
    a) Carrots are worse for you than cakes.   b) Cakes are good for you.
    c) Cakes are better for you than carrots.   d) Carrots are better for you than cakes.
15. Do you walk .... now than before?
    a) a lot of   b) little   c) very many   d) more

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People love to chew gum. In fact, people around the world have been chewing gum for thousands of years. But, have you ever wondered how gum is made? You may not believe this, but gum comes from trees. Ancient Greeks got it from the bark of mastic trees. People in South America chewed chiclet, which is very rubbery. It is made from the sap of the sapodilla tree. The people of North America chewed the sap from spruce trees.

In 1871, the chemist Thomas Adams created chewing gum made out of chiclet. He manufactured it. Chiclet was used to make gum for many years.

Then he sold it to many people. Then in 1928, Walter Diemer invented modern bubble gum. Today, pink is still the most popular colour for bubble gum.

Chemists figured out ways to create artificial gum. Everything could be made in a lab. Chemists discovered other things too. For example, they figured out how to make the gum's taste last longer. That made people happy! But people who chew gum need to remember something. Gum is not meant to be swallowed.

However, our bodies cannot digest gum. Some people believe the gum sticks together in our stomachs and blocks everything. Others even believe that gum stays there for seven years. This is not true. If you swallow gum, it will just come out when you go to the bathroom. There are many ingredients in today's bubble gum. There is sugar, corn syrup, softeners, flavouring, and latex.

The latex makes the gum stretch. That way, you can blow bubbles. Chad Fell from the United States blew the biggest bubble in the world. In 2004, he blew a bubble 20 inches wide and he didn't even use his hands! That's pretty impressive. You can also practise blowing big bubbles. But be prepared to get some gum sticking to your face once the bubble pops!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. According to the information you read in the article, which statement is true about bubble gum?

a) Gum was first invented by Thomas Adams in 1871.
b) Walter Diemer called his modern day bubble gum, "Hubba Bubba."
c) People in ancient times, such as the Greeks chewed different types of tree sap as a form of gum.
d) Modern day bubble gum only has one or two ingredients in it.

17. Based on the information in the article, what did Chad Fell do?

a) He made bubble gum out of resin.
b) He manufactured chewing gum made out of chiclet.
c) He invented modern bubble gum in a lab.
d) He blew a 20-inch bubble in 2004.

18. What ingredient in modern day bubble gum makes it stretch?

a) Corn syrup.
b) Latex.
c) Flavouring.
d) Sugar.

19. The word "swallow" means ....

a) cause food or drink to pass down the throat
b) the body's way of breaking down food
c) make a large quantity of something using machinery
d) putting bad food in dust bins

20. Gum was chewed all over the world ....

a) ten years ago
b) in the modern ages
c) thousands of years ago
d) millions of years ago

21. .... were the first to get the gum from trees.

a) The people of North America
b) The people of South America
c) Ancient Greeks
d) Indian Americans

22. The chiclet was easy to chew because it sounded like ....

a) rubber
b) gold
c) sugar
d) sap

23. The best title for the passage is ....

a) Healthy Food
b) Chewing
c) Trees around the world
d) The History of Gum

24. Choose the correct English translation:

- البطالة مشكلة خطيرة جدًا، فهى لا تؤثر فقط على الأفراد، ولكن أيضًا على نمو البلد؛ حيث إن لها تأثيرًا سلبيًا على النمو الاقتصادى والاجتماعى، وتساعد على انتشار الجريمة فى المجتمع.

a) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it affects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country. It has a negative impact on economic and social growth, and helps spread crime in society.

b) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it reflects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country. It has a negative impact on cultural and social growth, and helps spread crime in society.

c) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it affects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country. It has an expected impact on economic and social growth, and helps publish crime in society.

d) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it affects not only members, but also the growth of the country. It has a negative crash on economic and social growth, and helps spread crime in society.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- One must carefully weigh the positives and the negatives before engaging excessively in social media. If used in the correct way, social media can be a boon for mankind.

a) يجب على المرء أن يقيس بعناية الإيجابيات والسلبيات قبل الانخراط بشكل عادى فى وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. إذا تم استخدامها بالطريقة الصحيحة، يمكن أن تكون وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى نعمة للبشرية.

b) يجب على المرء أن يتناول بعناية الإيجابيات والسلبيات قبل الانخراط بشكل مفرط فى وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. إذا تم استخدامها بالطريقة الصحيحة، يمكن أن تكون وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى نقمة للبشرية.

c) يجب على المرء أن يوازن بعناية الإيجابيات والسلبيات قبل الانخراط بشكل مفرط فى وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. إذا تم استخدامها بالطريقة الصحيحة، يمكن أن تكون وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى نعمة للبشرية.

d) يجب على المرء أن يعتبر بعناية الإيجابيات والسلبيات قبل الابتعاد بشكل مفرط عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. إذا تم استخدامها بالطريقة الصحيحة، يمكن أن تكون وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى تقدم للبشرية.

26. Answer the following questions: (The play)

1. If you were Edmund, what would you do to make your father change his mind about his inheritance?
2. In your opinion, would Goneril and Regan really take care of their father?
3. Was it right of Edgar to trust Edmund so easily? Why?

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Sports and their good impact on man's health"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 405

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Units 1 & 2

Module Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... on the player's knee was carried out by a team of surgeons at a German hospital.
   a) operation b) process c) research d) inspection
2. Several villages along the .... of the river were affected by the floods.
   a) certificate b) line c) degree d) course
3. Doctors say that our .... system works better if we eat healthy food.
   a) emergency b) immune c) athletic d) injured
4. The machine presses the plastic into sheets. The synonym of the verb "press" is "....................".
   a) iron b) release c) squeeze d) pull
5. We all need to learn to accept people who have different .... from ours.
   a) releases b) treaties c) riches d) beliefs
6. My parents always tell us that students usually .... great respect for their teachers when they were at school.
   a) showed b) gained c) won d) demanded
7. They .... see us talking or they'll suspect something.
   a) had to b) mustn't c) didn't have to d) can
8. A: Can we meet on Thursday morning? B: Sorry, no. I .... go to the dentist at 11.00.
   a) had to b) mustn't c) have to d) shouldn't
9. He's got a lung problem and he .... go to hospital for treatment.
   a) has to b) doesn't have to c) mustn't d) have to
10. Ali .... his car to the market yesterday as it was very near.
    a) must have driven b) had to drive c) mustn't drive d) needn't have driven
11. A: Ola lost her passport. .... get a new one?
    B: No, she didn't. She found it in her purse.
    a) Did she have to b) Will she have to c) Does she have to d) Is she having to

12. Ayman is a successful sportsman, but his brother is .... than him.

a) as successful   b) most successful
c) more successful   d) more successfully

13. My sister has a soft voice, but my friend's voice is .... than hers.

a) so soft   b) more soft
c) softest   d) softer

14. I always arrive at school a little later .... my schoolmates.

a) as   b) than   c) from   d) to

15. I am afraid his situation is going from bad to ....

a) worse   b) bad   c) worst   d) badly

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If we look around us, we see motion happening everywhere. We see it in the movement of vehicles, people walking, aeroplanes flying, a ball rolling and animals running. Basically, it is an important part of our lives. However, there is much more to motion and it has a great impact on many things that we are part of. We can watch things around us move. When something is in motion, it changes its position. Objects can move from one place to another. They can move in many directions. If you roll a ball, it might move in a straight line. It might also move in a curve. A swing can move back and forth. A light switch can move up and down. Fans have blades that move in a circle. If you want to know if something is moving, you can compare it to other things around it that are not moving. If the things behind the object are changing, the object is probably moving. If they are not changing, the object is probably not moving.

You can measure the distance an object moves. Just measure the distance between where it was when it started to move and where it was when it stopped.

Distance can be measured in inches, feet, yards or miles. Those measurements are in the customary system. It can also be measured in millimetres, centimetres, metres and kilometres. Those measurements are in the metric system.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. When something is in motion, what does it change?

a) Size.   b) Height.
c) Position.   d) Weight.

17. How does a swing move?

a) Up and down.   b) Back and forth.
c) Back and up.   d) Back and right.

18. How does a light switch move?

a) Back and up.
b) Back and forth.
c) Back and right.
d) Up and down.

19. What are the units of measurement you could use to measure distance?

a) Inches, feet, yards or miles.
b) Inches, pounds, grammes or miles.
c) Tones, kilograms, yards or miles.
d) Hectares, feet, tones or miles.

20. We know that something is moving when ....

a) it makes noise
b) objects behind it are changing
c) balls are moving around it
d) it exceeds a mile

21. A distance between the start point of the object and the ending point means that ....

a) the object moved
b) the object was stable
c) the object is heavy
d) the object will move

22. The word "impact" in the passage can be replaced by the word ....

a) move
b) effect
c) change
d) response

23. The underlined pronoun It refers to a ....

a) moving object
b) direction
c) straight line
d) ball

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Health care is considered an important element in increasing production. A healthy worker can work harder and more efficiently than a sick one.

a) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا مهمًا فى زيادة الإنتاج و يمكن للعامل السليم أن يعمل بجد أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.
b) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا مهمًا فى زيادة الاستهلاك و يمكن للعامل السليم أن يعمل بجد أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.
c) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا مهمًا فى زيادة الإنتاج و يمكن للعامل المجد أن يعمل بجد أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.
d) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا مهمًا فى زيادة الإنتاج و يمكن للعامل السليم أن يعمل بخطورة أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- الغذاء الكامل هو الغذاء الذى يحتوى على جميع العناصر الغذائية بكميات مناسبة لاحتياجات الجسم، لكن معظم الناس يهتمون بالطعم ولا يهتمون بالمكونات.

a) Complete food is food that includes all the nutrients in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but most people care about the taste and do not care about the ingredients.

b) Complete food is food that contains all the nutrients in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but many people care about the taste and do not care about the ingredients.

c) Complete food is food that contains all the nutrients in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but most people care with the taste and do not care about the crops.

d) Complete food is food that contains all the nutrients in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but most people care about the taste and do not care about the ingredients.

26. Answer the following questions: (The play)

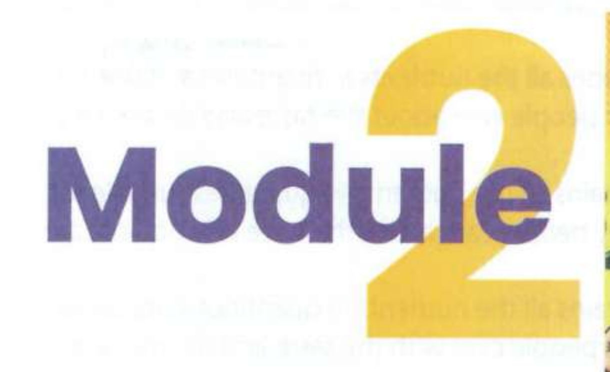
1. If you were King Lear, would you give Cordelia a second chance to correct her mistake? Why?
2. Do you think that the King of France appreciated Cordelia's honesty? Why?
3. Do you think that it is fair that Edgar and Edmund share their father's inheritance? Why?

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

The role of mass media such as television in spreading awareness about the importance of a healthy lifestyle.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Unit 3

The future of food

Unit 4

Changing English

Test

Units 3 & 4 Module 2

Unit 3
The future of food



Objectives

Reading : Two articles about future sources of food and more sustainable farming
Writing : Essay with proposals for how to feed people more sustainably in the future; writing a summary
Listening : An interview with an expert on sustainable farming
Speaking : Speculating about the future
Language : Will/Be going to; Future continuous
Life Skills : Problem solving







Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

agriculture (n)	الزراعة	innovation (n)	إبداع / ابتكار / فكرة مبتكرة	sustainable (adj)	مُستدام
crop (n)	محصول	livestock (n)	ماشية	source (n)	مصدر
Earth (n)	الكرة الأرضية	production (n)	إنتاج	variety (n)	تنوع / مجموعة متنوعة

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والإستماع

burger (n)	شريحة هامبورجر	gas (n)	غاز	project (n)	مشروع
cause (n) (v) (d)	سبب / يسبب	grow (v)	ينمو / يزداد	rainforest (n)	غابات استوائية (مطيرة)
chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائى / مادة كيميائية	guest (n)	ضيف	remove (v) (d)	يزيل
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى	increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد / زيادة	researcher (n)	باحث
create (v) (d)	يخلق / ينتج	instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك	save (v) (d)	ينقذ / يوفر
damage (n) (v) (d)	تلف / يتلف	invest (v) (ed)	يستثمر	seriously (adv)	بجدية / بخطورة
decade (n)	عقد (عشر سنوات)	involve (v) (d)	يتضمن / يتورط	solution (n)	حل
destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر	island (n)	جزيرة	southern (adj)	جنوبى
dry (adj) (v) (~~y~~ ied)	جاف / يجف / يجفف	laboratory (n)	معمل	space (n)	مساحة / فراغ / فضاء
education (n)	التعليم	land (n)	أرض	stuff (n)	أشياء / مواد
effect (n)	تأثير	level (n)	مستوى	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
electric (adj)	كهربى	mention (v) (ed)	يذكر	the United Nations (UN)	الأمم المتحدة
electricity (n)	كهرباء	negative (adj)	سلبى	vegetarian (n)	شخص نباتى (لا يأكل اللحوم)
energy (n)	طاقة	organisation (n)	منظمة	vehicle (n)	مركبة / وسيلة
environment (n)	البيئة	percent (adv)	بالمائة		

Workbook Vocabulary مفردات كتاب التدريبات

area (n) منطقة/مساحة	encourage (v) (d) يشجع	petrol (n) بنزين
capital (n) عاصمة/رأس مال	extraordinary (adj) مميز/رائع	population (n) السكان
central (adj) وسط/متوسط - مركزى	furniture (n) أثاث	rainfall (n) هطول المطر
charity (n) مؤسسة خيرية	local (adj) محلى	success (n) نجاح

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many farmers complained that the storm caused .... damage across the village in the north of the country.
   a) ingredient b) floor c) crop d) recipe
2. It is expected that the new car model will go into .... next year.
   a) destruction b) organisation c) inspection d) production
3. .... are the animals kept on a farm, for example, cows or sheep.
   a) Livestock b) Dairy c) Agriculture d) Poultry
4. Through technology and ...., humans found ways to get better results with less work.
   a) excitement b) loss c) source d) innovation
5. Money is often a major .... of arguments for married couples nowadays.
   a) reason b) source c) result d) connection
6. A/An .... is a person who studies something carefully and tries to discover new facts about it.
   a) graduate b) explorer c) historian d) conductor
7. All power stations work 24 hours a day, providing .... to vehicles.
   a) food b) reactor c) energy d) aviation
8. The Minister suggested a number of creative .... to the housing problem which were effective.
   a) solutions b) causes c) results d) sources
9. The plan to improve the health service .... an increase in spending on public hospitals.
   a) consists b) involves c) examines d) starts
10. Grasshopper attacks هجوم الجراد usually threaten to .... some crops at certain times of the year.
   a) save b) create c) design d) destroy

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

as a result نتيجة لذلك	get worse يسوء	run a programme يدير برنامجًا
for years to come لسنوات قادمة	make more money يدر مالًا	tell the difference between يميز الفرق (الاختلاف) بين
cut down يقطع	kind of نوع من	solution to حل لـ
hope for أمل لـ	learn about يعرف عن	taste of مذاق لـ
increase... by يزيد... بنسبة	look for يبحث عن	variety of تنوع من
instead of بدلًا من	remove from يزيل من	work with يعمل مع

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
produce ينتج	production إنتاج producer منتج	productive منتج
innovate يبدع/يبتكر	innovation إبداع/فكرة مبتكرة innovator مبتكر	innovative مبدع/إبداعي/ابتكاري
vary يختلف/يتنوع	variety تنوع	various مختلف/متنوع
sustain يدعم/يتحمل/يمدد	sustainability استدامة/استمرار	sustainable مستدام/مستمر
create يخلق/ينتج	creation خلق/إنتاج creator خالق/مبدع	creative مبدع
affect يؤثر على	effect تأثير	effective مؤثر
solve يحل	solution حل	solvable يمكن حله
destroy يدمر	destruction دمار/تدمير	destructive مدمر destroyed مدمر (تم تدميره)
organise ينظم	organisation منظمة organiser منظم	organised منظّم
succeed ينجح	success نجاح	successful ناجح

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ماتحفظ. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- The army destroyed the settlements of the civilians. (v)
- The destruction disappointed the soldiers. (n)
- The attacks were destructive. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
destroy	يدمر	smash/ruin	construct/build	يشيد
extraordinary	مميز/رائع	amazing/incredible	ordinary/common	عادى
increase	يزيد	raise/expand	decrease/reduce	يخفض
mention	يذكر	name/point out	ignore/neglect	يتجاهل
negative	سلبى	contradictory	positive	إيجابى
source	مصدر	origin	outcome	ناتج
success	نجاح	achievement/ accomplishment	failure/defeat	فشل
sustainable	مستدام	continuous	temporary	مؤقت
variety	تنوع	diversity/variation	similarity/uniformity	تشابه

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is difficult to predict the final outcome of the project in these conditions. The noun "outcome" is an antonym to the noun "..........................".
   a) origin b) result c) explanation d) source
2. We couldn't complete our picnic as the weather .... worse during the day.
   a) made b) got c) done d) devised
3. Because of the successive crises, food prices increased .... 70% in less than a year in many world countries.
   a) by b) in c) out d) of
4. The young scientist became rich after he .... a lot of money out of his new invention.
   a) did b) printed c) made d) declared
5. The second edition of the book "Harry Potter" was a big .... after its film was at the cinemas.
   a) succeed b) success c) successful d) successfully
6. Instead .... buying a new car, I bought a used one to save money.
   a) of b) at c) in d) for
7. The school has organised a lot of trips this year. The noun of verb "organise" is "..........................".
   a) organises b) organisation c) organised d) disorganised

8. My friend is colour-blind and can't really .... the difference between these two colours.

a) do b) make c) watch d) tell

9. He mentioned your important role in his life. The word "mention" is similar in meaning to the word "..........................".

a) name b) neglect c) ignore d) invent

10. Giving up smoking had a magical .... on the young man's health and life.

a) affect b) effective c) effect d) affection

Reading Text (1)

1) New solutions for our growing world

According to the United Nations, there will be almost 10 billion people in the world by 2050. As a result, we will have to increase our food production by about 70 percent. However, farmers do not have space to keep more livestock and grow more crops. Instead, they'll need to look for more sustainable solutions and this will involve producing a wider variety of food.

How would you feel about eating a burger that was grown in a laboratory? Scientists think that it could be more sustainable than keeping livestock. Some of the people who have eaten these burgers say that they can't tell the difference between the new burgers and real meat.

2) Changes in agriculture that can save the land

Researchers from the United Nations have found that some kinds of agriculture are seriously damaging the land. This is not sustainable. If farming continues to cause so much damage, there won't be enough land left for food production. In Europe, most of the damage is due to farmers using too many chemicals, so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow[1] without having to use so many chemicals. In southern Africa, the problem is that there is too much rain in the summer. In the future, we can expect that farmers in southern Africa will be using innovations in technology to remove water from the land and use it elsewhere.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- تستخدم (will need to) بمعنى سيتوجب عليه بنفس استخدام (will have to).

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



The future of forests

The world has been losing millions of trees from the rainforests every year for a long time. Many trees get cut down so that we have wood to make furniture,[1] and many more get cut down because people need the land to grow food. However, there may be hope for the future because countries around the world are changing the way we think about these important areas.

Changes started a long time ago in Costa Rica. Around 60% of the rainforest in this small central American country was lost in the 1980s. But in the 1990s, the government started working with local farmers[2] and persuaded them to look after the rainforest instead of cutting down more trees. This encouraged tourists to visit the country, and soon the local people started to make more money from tourism than from cutting down trees.

It was a great success, but things got worse in other parts of the world, such as the Amazon rainforest, until 2004. Then many people and governments around the world started to change how they thought about rainforests, and the number of trees cut down there has been getting smaller every year.[3] Many parts of the Amazon rainforest are now protected and, like Costa Rica, it is hoped that more people will be visiting and enjoying this extraordinary place in the future. Finally, we can all hope that our children will be learning about the rainforests for many years to come.



Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- تستخدم (get) بدلًا من (verb to be) فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول مع بعض الأفعال.

٢- تستخدم صيغة (المصدر to + inf) أو (verb + ing)بعد الفعل (start).

٣- الجملة أصلها

- .... and the number of trees which are cut down there has been getting smaller every year.

وتم حذف (which are) لأنها فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول.

Scan & listen


Listening Text (1)



Interviewer : Hello, everyone. In today's show, I'll be talking to my guest, Dr Sarita Parker, who's an expert on the rainforests in Borneo. Welcome to the show, Dr Parker.

Dr Parker : It's great to be with you, John.

Interviewer : Now, we all think that we know what a rainforest is, but how would you describe it?

Dr Parker : A rainforest has a lot of trees and many different types of animals and plants live in it. And it's a place that's usually very hot and it rains a lot, too.

Interviewer : And what can you tell us about the rainforests in Borneo?

Dr Parker : Well, Borneo is a large island in South-East Asia, and it has one of the oldest rainforests in the world. However, recently the island has become hotter and there has been less rain than usual. And scientists think that there will be even less rainfall on the island in the next few years.

Interviewer : Why is that?

Dr Parker : Unfortunately, some farmers are cutting down trees and starting fires so they can grow crops and keep livestock there. Now the rainforest is about thirty percent smaller today than it was forty years ago. And if there's less rainforest, there's less rain and the island will get even hotter, you see. So, we're very worried that farmers are going to continue to damage the rainforest over the next few decades. That would be terrible for the animals and plant life in the rainforest, and Borneo would heat up even more.

Interviewer : Do you think those farmers will keep cutting down so many trees in the future, or will they use more sustainable ways to grow crops and keep livestock?

Dr Parker : Well, it won't be easy. Of course, many farmers are just trying to feed their families, however, we hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will be using sustainable farming techniques and things will improve. They need more information about how they can plant new trees and move crops around from one field to another each year. But farmers won't change until they understand why they need to change and they have everything they need to do that. My organisation will be running an education programme next month to help them.

Interviewer : Thank you very much for your time, Dr Parker.

Scan & listen



Listening Text (2)



The population of Egypt is growing by nearly two percent a year. That means that there are one million more people living in its cities every six months. This is a problem in a country where 95 percent of its population live on about four percent of its land. It is thought that the population of Egypt will be around 128 million by 2030. So what are the solutions to these problems? One plan is to invest billions of pounds in a new capital city outside Cairo. This is one of the big projects that will help the 700,000 young people who start looking for work each year.

Notes on Vocabulary

	Word	Meaning	Example
1	cause	١- سبب (يتبعها حرف الجر of) ٢- يسبب	-The major cause of these accidents is the high speed of vehicles. - The fire caused serious damage to the factory.
	reason	١- سبب/تبرير (يتبعها حرف الجر for) ٢- يفكر/يصل إلى رأى بعد تفكير	- People have different reasons for wanting to change jobs. - We reasoned that they would not leave before dark.
	reason with	يقنع/يتجادل مع	- I tried to reason with my friend to attend the party.
	reason why + جملة	سبب لـ	- I don't know the reason why he was absent.
2	earth	الكرة الأرضية/تراب	The earth is not flat as most people believed in the past.
	ground	أرض فضاء/أرضية	On my way home, my bag dropped on the ground.
	land	اليابسة	The earth consists of water and land.
	soil	تربة (زراعية/رملية)	This kind of vegetables needs muddy soil, not sandy soil.
	floor	أرضية الحجرة/طابق فى بناية	- The floor of the flat needs cleaning. - My flat is on the fourth floor.

	Word	Example
3	south جنوب southern جنوبى الجهات الأصلية هى: (north – south – east – west) ولتحويل هذه الكلمات إلى صفات نضيف (ern).	- My cousins live in the south of Egypt. - In summer, temperatures are so hot in southern Egypt. - My cousin got married and moved to live in western Europe.
4	local ١- محلى (خاص بمنطقة/قرية/مدينة) ٢- أحد السكان المحليين	- Alaa worked in the local newspaper before he travelled to the city. - We asked one of the locals to recommend a restaurant.
	national قومى (خاص ببلد)	Tourism helps to increase the national income of many countries.
	international دولى (بين أكثر من دولة)	The United Nations is the most important international organisation.
5	electric كهربى (شىء يعمل بالكهرباء)	I bought a new electric kettle.
	electrical ١- كهربى (شىء يستخدم أو ينتج الكهرباء) ٢- كهربى (شخص يتعامل مع الكهرباء)	- I work in a company manufacturing electrical goods. - My brother is an electrical engineer.
	electrician فنى كهربائى	You'll need a qualified electrician to rewire your house.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The road accident was reported in the .... newspaper in Helwan.
   a) local b) national c) international d) global
2. The police report says that the exact .... of the accident is not known.
   a) reason b) cause c) purpose d) reform
3. My uncle lives in the .... of New 6th of October City.
   a) south b) southern c) southerly d) southernly
4. For the past year, he has worked as an .... at a factory in Mahalla.
   a) electric b) electrical c) electricity d) electrician

5. When I returned home, I found my son and daughter sitting on the .... watching TV.

a) earth b) land c) floor d) soil

6. The .... anthems الأناشيد of different countries are played at the beginning of big football matches.

a) local b) global c) national d) international

7. I can't think of any .... why you would want to leave your good job.

a) cause b) result c) reason d) share

8. The .... part of Egypt such as Aswan has very hot weather in summer.

a) southern b) southerly c) small d) shortest

9. The gardener told us that the flowers grow well in sandy ....

a) earth b) land c) floor d) soil

10. The cause of the fire has been described as an .... fault.

a) electric b) electrical c) electrician d) electrically



Practice ... Vocabulary General Exercises



Practise more

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. If .... is given priority, the country will easily be able to establish food security.
   a) economy b) agriculture c) industry d) culture
2. The government aims at paving the way for .... economic growth, which will last for many years to come.
   a) imaginary b) contemporary c) solvable d) sustainable
3. The doctor encouraged his patient to increase the .... of food that he eats.
   a) team b) mixture c) region d) variety
4. The mother's job is the family's only .... of income as her husband was dead.
   a) division b) result c) source d) purpose
5. Unfortunately, most farmers spray the .... with pesticides which can be harmful.
   a) seals b) crops c) equipment d) earth
6. It is said that astronomy was the great .... by the Greeks of the 5th century BC.
   a) innovation b) intention c) detection d) derivation
7. The country resumed استأنفت its normal oil .... after the war ended.
   a) invention b) production c) prediction d) reduction
8. We had to learn .... formulae معادلات at school, but I can only remember H_2O for water.
   a) chemical b) literal c) physical d) valuable
9. Most factory workers had a poor ....; they left school without qualifications.
   a) agriculture b) education c) training d) industry
10. The new blogger's followers continue to .... quickly in number.
    a) remove b) make c) grow d) continue
11. A .... is a person who does not eat meat or fish.
    a) vegetarian b) farmer c) creator d) researcher
12. Nowadays, there are special offices which can advise clients on how to .... their money wisely.
    a) do b) invest c) move d) cause
13. Australia has a low .... density. That's why they welcome immigrants المهاجرين there.
    a) devastation b) invention c) pollution d) population
14. Wind turbines and solar panels supply farms with .... power for their equipment and machines.
    a) electric b) electronic c) updated d) chemical

15. The software and Photoshop programmes make it easy to .... colourful graphs.
a) take b) end c) involve d) create

16. I always .... all my old documents in case I need them again.
a) spend b) invest c) save d) waste

17. The government's necessary cuts of expenses may have a .... impact on public services.
a) positive b) negative c) organised d) successful

18. The singer did a/an .... performance on the first night to raise money for war victims.
a) newspaper b) increase c) factory d) charity

19. Houses and flats in the city centre .... are very expensive.
a) ground b) detention c) area d) department

20. When I .... that my friend failed the test, he looked embarrassed.
a) mentioned b) referred c) respected d) denied

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. The bomb destroyed the building. The synonym of the word "destroy" is "....................".
a) repair b) construct c) smash d) touch

22. There are no simple solutions .... the problem of overpopulation.
a) to b) in c) at d) by

23. Most of the flights from the London airport had to be cancelled .... a result of the pilots' strike إضراب.
a) for b) as c) in d) at

24. Young men can .... more money in private business than in governmental jobs.
a) make b) give c) deliver d) see

25. The bomb blast destroyed the building. The noun of the verb "destroy" is "...............".
a) destructive b) destruction c) destroyed d) destroys

26. You must be happy to work .... an important writer from whom you can learn a lot.
a) in b) on c) with d) as

27. Milk is a good source of calcium. The noun "source" is the opposite of "....................".
a) origin b) foundation c) base d) outcome

28. The United Nations collects money to .... a special programme to help the people in poor countries.
a) do b) run c) base d) damage

29. He succeeded in his final exams with good results. The adjective from the verb "succeed" is "....................".
a) succeeds b) succeeded c) success d) successful

30. We all believe that cycling is a totally sustainable form of transport. The antonym of "sustainable" is "....................".
a) permanent b) temporary c) continuous d) available

31. We need to increase public awareness of the disease. The verb "increase" is similar in meaning to "..................".

a) raise b) rely c) decrease d) reduce

32. Experts warn us that too much exposure to sun can .... severe damage to your skin.

a) reply b) reason c) do d) make

33. The Parliament members are demanding an inquiry into the .... of the train accident.

a) reason b) purpose c) search d) cause

34. Many species are in danger of disappearing from the surface of the ....

a) earth b) land c) floor d) soil

35. Most governments signed a/an .... agreement to ban chemical weapons.

a) local b) national c) international d) limited

Longman and Previous Exams

36. In the future, we can expect that farmers will be using .... in technology to remove too much rainwater from the land and use it elsewhere. Longman

a) cultivation b) irrigation c) motivations d) innovations

37. Tourism is a great .... of national income in Egypt. Longman

a) store b) means c) source d) origin

38. Are you for or against using chemicals to help .... grow faster? Longman

a) products b) goods c) careers d) crops

39. A lot of farmers keep .... for meat production. Longman

a) crops b) seeds c) stock d) livestock

40. Can you .... the difference between the two pictures? They are nearly the same! Longman

a) hide b) tell c) appear d) think

41. I didn't punish him for coming late as I was told the reason .... he came late. (القاهرة - إدارة المعصرة)

a) for b) why c) over d) of

42. We hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will use .... farming techniques. (الدقهلية - إدارة المنزلة)

a) sustainable b) sociable c) invisible d) cultural

43. Experts recommend doubling food .... to face the increasing population. (الشرقية - إدارة القنايات)

a) infection b) consumption c) production d) reduction

44. Man settled and built houses after starting .... (المنوفية - إدارة الباجور)

a) agriculture b) culture c) cultural d) agricultural

45. There is a wide .... of crops to grow in our land. (المنوفية - إدارة قويسنا)

a) vary b) various c) variety d) variable



B Language

FUTURE FORMS
اشكال المستقبل

Simple بسيط	Continuous مستمر	Perfect تام	Perfect Continuous تام مستمر
will + inf.	will be + v. ing	will have + p.p.	will have been + v. ing
be going to + inf. Present simple Present continuous	المستقبل مثله مثل كل الأزمنة يتكون من أربعة "البسيط والمستمر والتام والتام المستمر" وسنتناول بالتفصيل فى هذه الوحدة المستقبل البسيط والمستقبل المستمر		

1 Future simple {will/ won't + inf. مصدر الفعل}

Affirmative الجملة المثبتة	Subj. فاعل + will + inf. مصدر ▶ We will invite many people to the party.
Negative الجملة المنفية	Subj. فاعل + won't + inf. مصدر ▶ We won't invite many people to the party.
Question السؤال	Will + subj. فاعل + inf.? ▶ Will you invite many people to the party? Wh word أداة استفهام + will + subj. فاعل + inf. مصدر? ▶ Where will you spend the weekend?
Passive المبنى للمجهول	Obj. مفعول will be + p.p. تصريف ثالث ▶ Many people will be invited to the party.

(Will + inf.) is used with the following: تستخدم will + inf. مع الآتى:

1 - Predictions based on what we think (without evidence) تنبؤ بدون دليل (قائم على الاعتقاد)	▸ Egypt will win the next World Cup. ▸ It will rain heavily tomorrow. ▸ Our shopping will be done on the Internet.
2 - Future facts حقائق المستقبل	هى الحقائق التى ستحدث فى المستقبل وليست دائمة: ▸ Tomorrow will be 15/10/2024. هذا الحدث لن يحدث إلا مرة واحدة وهو لم يأتِ بعد.



Note: ملحوظة

الحقائق التى تحدث دائمًا لكونها علمية أو عامة توضع فى المضارع البسيط.

▸ Stones sink in water. ▸ The sun rises in the morning.

3 - On-the-spot decisions القـرارات الفـوريـة العاجـلة	هى القـرارات التى تكون رد فعـل لشىء ولم تكـن مجهـزة مسبقًا. ▸ Your homework has been badly done. I'll tell your parents. ▸ This shirt is nice. I'll buy it.
٤- مع الأفعال والتعبيرات والأحوال مثل: **Verbs:** think/ believe/ expect/ promise/ hope/ predict **Expressions:** be sure/ be afraid **Adverbs:** perhaps/ certainly	▸ I promise I will get higher marks the next exam. ▸ I hope my brother will pass his driving test. ▸ My parents think that I'll become an artist one day. ▸ I'm sure Osama will win the race. ▸ Perhaps, my boss will punish me for being late. ▸ The police will probably find the criminal.

لاحـظ

1 إذا كان هنـاك فاعـل بعد الأفعـال promise/ expect/ hope نستخـدم will وإذا لم يوجـد فاعـل أو كان هنـاك مفعـول نستخـدم to + inf.

- I promise I will visit you tonight. — هنا يوجـد فاعـل
- I promise to visit you tonight. — هنا لا يوجد فاعل
- I expect that Ali will pass his exams easily. — (على) هنـا فاعـل
- I expect him (Ali) to pass the exams easily. — (على) هنا مفعـول

عنـدما لا يوجـد فاعـل أو مفعـول فالجمـلة تعـود على المتكلم.

- I expect to pass............ / I hope to pass ....

2 إذا كانت الأفعـال السـابقـة فى الماضى فإننا نستخـدم would لأن المستقبـل أصبـح ماضيًا.

- I promised I would help him with his work.
- I expected that she would win the prize.

5 - Offer العـرض	▸ I see that you have difficulty with these questions. Wait a minute and I'll help you. ▸ Since you're tired, I'll cook dinner tonight. العـرض يكـون جمـلة خبريـة.
6 - Request الطلـب	▸ Will you help me with my homework, Hazem? ▸ Will you get me two kilos of sugar when you go to the market? الطلـب يكـون سـؤالًا.
7 - Warning التحذيـر	▸ Factories must stop polluting the air or we won't be able to breathe. ▸ If we don't arrive early, we won't find a place to park.

8 - Threat التهـديـد	▶ If you make these mistakes again, I'll punish you. ▶ Behave well or I'll tell your father. التهديد يكون بلغة عنيفة عن التحذيـر.

2 {Subj. فاعل + be going to + inf.}

Affirmative الجملـة المثبتـة	Passive المبنى للمجهـول
Subj. فاعل + be going to + inf.	Subj. فاعل + be going to + be + p.p.
▶ We are going to build a new house.	▶ A new house is going to be built.

Negative الجملة المنفيـة	Question السـؤال
Subj. فاعل + be (not) going to + inf.	Be + subj. فاعل + going to + inf.?
▶ We aren't going to build a new house.	▶ Are you going to build a new house?

(be going to + inf.) is used with the following: تستخدم be going to مع الآتى:

1 - Predictions (with evidence) تنبؤ بدليل (شيء يـراه الإنسان)	▶ There are black clouds in the sky. It's going to rain. ▶ The wall is moving. It's going to fall. التنبؤ قائم على الرؤيـة أو السماع وليس الاعتقـاد.
2 - Verbs: plan/decide/intend مع هذه الأفعال والأسماء المشتقة منها plan/ decision/ intention	▶ He's going to employ more staff. This is his plan. ▶ I'm going to move to a bigger house next year. This is my decision.
3 - Ambition للطموحات	▶ I'm going to be a clever player.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The milk is boiling. I .... the gas off.
   a) turn b) am going to turn
   c) am turning d) will turn
2. The wind is getting stronger. I think there .... a sandstorm.
   a) is being b) will be
   c) is going to be d) going to be
3. The twins .... seventeen next week.
   a) turning b) will turn
   c) turns d) is going to turn
4. Look! That boy .... It seems he can't swim.
   a) is going to drown b) will drown
   c) is drowning d) drowns
5. She .... a professional teacher when she grows up. She has a strong intention.
   a) is going to be b) will be
   c) is being d) going to be
6. I think I .... more friends after I start going to the sports club next week.
   a) am going to have b) will have
   c) am having d) have
7. Somebody is knocking on the door. I .... and open it.
   a) am going b) have gone c) will go d) go
8. A: What would you like to have, sir? B: I .... a cup of coffee.
   a) am going to have b) am having
   c) have d) will have
9. Dalia is putting the dirty clothes in the washing machine. She .... them.
   a) would wash b) washes
   c) has washed d) is going to wash
10. I promised my father .... the full marks in the next exam.
    a) will get b) would get
    c) to get d) am going to get

هنـاك طـرق أخـرى للتعـبيـر عن المستقبل:

3 Present Simple: المضارع البسيط:

FORM التكوين

He/ She/ It/ S. فاعل مفرد + Inf. مصدر + (s, es, ies).

I/ They/ We/ You/ plural noun اسم جمع + inf. مصدر

Examples

- The train to Assuit leaves at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning.

يعبرالمضـارع البسيـط عن المستقبل مع الجداول المحـددة والبرامج والمواعيد الثابتـة مثل مواعيـد الطائـرات والأتوبيسـات والقطارات والسينما والمسرح والتليفزيـون و الامتحـانـات...إلخ.

- The film starts at 9 pm. (cinema programme).
- The plane arrives at Cairo Airport at 7:30. (timetable)

لاحـظ

إذا كان الوقـت محـددًا للوصول أو الرحيل نستخدم جدول المواعيد والمضارع البسيط وإذا لم يحدد وقت فيمـكن استخدام أى نـوع من المستقبـل مثـل:

- Hurry up! The train is going to/ is about to leave soon.
- The headmaster is giving a speech. The first lesson will start as soon as the bell rings.

4 Present Continuous: (am/ is/ are + v - ing) المضارع المستمر:

FORM التكوين

Subj. فاعل + am/ is/ are + v - ing

Examples

- I am meeting Mr Ibrahim at his office at 10 am tomorrow.

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التى تم الترتيب لها فى المستقبل القريـب وخاصة مع الأفعـال arranged/ prepared/ booked/ appointed.

- I'm flying to London tomorrow morning. (I've got the ticket.)
- We're giving a party tomorrow. (Everything has been arranged.)

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The band .... Denmark next May. They have already made arrangements.
   a) will visit   b) are going visiting   c) visit   d) are visiting
2. He is flying to London at the weekend. His flight .... at 5.30.
   a) leaving   b) left   c) leaves   d) leave
3. We .... to Alex in July. All things are okay.
   a) will be moved   b) are moving
   c) move   d) will move
4. My English lesson .... at ten tomorrow morning.
   a) starts   b) is starting
   c) will start   d) will be starting
5. It's arranged. We .... the Red Sea this summer.
   a) are going to   b) are going to go
   c) go to   d) will go to

The time conjunctions used with the future:

The future simple is used with the following time conjunctions:

يُستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع الروابط الزمنية الآتية:

Future simple (will/ be going to + inf.)	after, before, till/ until, when, as soon as, the moment, once	Present simple مضارع بسيط Present perfect مضارع تام

الفعل بعد الروابط السابقة يأتى مضارعًا بسيطًا أو مضارعًا تامًا ويجب الحذر من استخدام المستقبل بعدهم :

When Ali arrives (~~will arrive~~), I'll give him a copy of my new book.

- After Ahmed finishes/ has finished his exams, I'll take him for a picnic.
- The manager is going to see you as soon as he comes out of the meeting.
- He won't say anything until the boss tells him.
- I won't touch (Don't touch) anything before the police arrive.

لاحظ أن الفعل الأمر يحل محل المستقبل ولا يأتى بعد الروابط.

- Call me as soon as you get back.



Important Notes

1 الفعل think يأخذ will ولكن إذا كان هناك دليل نستخدم be going to.

- Bahaa is a careless driver. I think he will have an accident one day.
- Look! Bahaa is driving dangerously fast. I think he is going to have an accident.

2 الصفات الثابتة والحقيقية ليست دليلاً على حدوث الفعل مثل:

- Salah is a clever player. I think he will score a goal the next match. **(not going to)**
- Salah is alone with the goalkeeper. I think he is going to score a goal. (هذا دليل)

3 تدل جمل التحذير (Be careful! - Look out! - Take care! /Watch out!) غالبا على قرب حدوث الفعل.

فالشخص يرى شيئًا قريب الحدوث فيحذر منه؛ لذلك نستخدم بعدهم **be going to**.

- Look out! We are going to crash! There is a car coming.

وأمًا إذا كان التحذير عامًا نستخدم will وخاصة مع استخدام or.

- Be careful or you will fall in the newly dug hole on your way to the market.
- Be careful or you will make mistakes.

4 يمكن أن يكون التحذير من شيء يحدث بالفعل، وليس وشيك الحدوث فمثلًا أن تريد أن تعبر الشارع وأريد أن أحذرك من سيارة قادمة وهى ليست قريبه منك فأقول:

Be careful!/Watch out!	A car is coming.

أو أن هناك أمطارًا تهطل وأنت لا تدرى فنقول:

Be careful!/Watch out!	It is raining. Take your raincoat.

أو التحذير من شيء موجود وهنا نستخدم المضارع البسيط.

Be careful!/Watch out!	The road is slippery.
Be careful!/Watch out!	There is broken glass on the floor.

إذن العبرة ليست بحفظ الكلمة، بل بفهم المعنى فليس كل كلمة تحذير بعدها **be going to**.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm sure my friend .... win the next school championship in swimming.
a) should b) would c) is going to d) will

2. They've got the tickets; they .... to London.
a) will have flown b) fly
c) are flying d) will fly

3. The TV programme .... at seven o'clock this evening.
a) is starting b) starts c) will start d) will be starting

4. I .... Ahmed in the club as planned.
a) am going to meet b) will meet
c) meet d) would meet

5. The train to Cairo is on platform No. 4 and it .... at 9:30.
a) will be leaving b) will leave
c) leaves d) is leaving

6. When he .... next week, he will give me some money.
a) come b) will come c) is coming d) comes

7. Our manager .... dinner with the Minister next Thursday as appointed.
a) is having b) had c) has d) is going to have

8. She is flying to Italy next week, her flight .... off at 7 a.m.
a) took b) takes c) take d) taking

9. A: Have you got any plans for tomorrow? B: Yes, I .... my grandparents.
a) would visit b) visit
c) will visit d) am going to visit

10. My brother has decided to immigrate يهاجر . He .... next month.
a) will travel b) travels
c) is going to travel d) travelling

11. There are a lot of people in the room. It .... difficult to find a chair.
a) will be b) is going to be c) is being d) will have been

12. I predict that in the future mobile phones .... much smaller.
a) are going to be b) are
c) will have been d) will be

13. The fridge is empty. .... and get some food, please?

a) Will you go
b) You will go
c) Do you go
d) Are you going

14. It is getting hot. I .... the windows.

a) am opening
b) will be opening
c) will open
d) open

15. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?

a) It's cold here. I will close the window.
b) It's cold here. I will have closed the window.
c) It's cold here. I will be closing the window.
d) It's cold here. Shall you close the window?

16. Which one of the following questions is grammatically incorrect?

a) What are you going to do next weekend?
b) What do you do next weekend?
c) What are your plans for next weekend?
d) What do you intend to do next weekend?

17. I promise I .... hard and get high marks this year.

a) to study
b) to studying
c) will study
d) to have studied

18. It's very hot here. ....

a) You are going to turn on the air conditioner.
b) Will you turn on the air conditioner?
c) Are you going to turn on the air conditioner?
d) You will turn on the air conditioner.

19. .... visit the Egyptian Museum next weekend?

a) Do you
b) Do you offer to
c) Are you suggesting to
d) Do you intend to

20. Since you don't know the way, I'll give you a lift. This is a kind of a/an ....

a) suggestion
b) excuse
c) offer
d) request

Longman and Previous Exams

21. Tamer: What do you intend to do this evening? [Longman]

Wael: I .... to the theatre.

a) going to go
b) am going to go
c) will have gone
d) will go

22. Let's hurry; the museum .... at 6 p.m. (Longman)

a) will close b) was closed c) will be closing d) closes

23. If you exceed the speed limit, you .... a fine. (Longman)

a) will be paid b) will be paying c) will have to pay d) must have paid

24. Atef and Sahar .... married next Thursday. Preparations are in full swing. (Longman)

a) have got b) going to get c) will get d) are getting

25. I promise .... you as soon as I finish working on this project. (Longman)

a) to visit b) visiting c) will visit d) would visit

26. The train .... platform 4 at 10 a.m tomorrow morning. (المعصرة -القاهرة)

a) will leave b) is going to leave c) leaves d) will be leaving

27. We .... the office till we have done all our work. (إدارة أسيوط)

a) won't leave b) didn't leave c) have left d) had to leave

28. Ahmed, Osama and I .... at 5 o'clock on Monday to discuss the plan. (العمرانية - جيزة)

a) meet b) are meeting
c) are going to meet d) will have met

29. I have just decided that I .... go to the cinema with my friends. (حوش عيسى - البحيرة)

a) am going to b) will be c) am going d) won't

30. I .... Ahmed in the club as planned. (المنشأة - سوهاج)

a) would meet b) will meet
c) am going to meet d) meet

Test yourself Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. One of my friends works for a .... that gives poor people money and food for their living.
   a) newspaper b) charity c) shop d) station
2. Scientists say that governments must take an action to reduce the .... of pollution.
   a) reasons b) studies c) effects d) inventions
3. We enjoyed the film, which was amazing. The word "amazing" is similar in meaning to the word "..................".
   a) terrible b) extraordinary c) common d) awful
4. I really like the variety the department store offers. The noun "variety" can be the opposite of "..................".
   a) diversity b) variation c) similarity d) detection
5. Scientists warn us that cutting .... rainforests has a bad effect on the planet.
   a) in b) at c) for d) down
6. The space project took a whole .... from 2010 to 2020 and it was successful.
   a) reign b) millennium c) decade d) century
7. Many tourists visit .... Spain because of the beautiful Mediterranean beaches.
   a) south b) southern c) southerly d) southward
8. We had a very good .... of potatoes last year which led to the increase in exports.
   a) discovery b) drop c) crop d) exploration
9. We really live in an age of technological .... where everything seems possible.
   a) distortion b) innovation c) pollution d) population
10. Scientists always think of new ways to help farmers to promote .... agriculture.
    a) sustainable b) real c) toxic d) unavailable
11. Toyota's latest car has just gone into .... for the Japanese market.
    a) produce b) production c) productive d) produced
12. The battery of the new mobile I bought can store .... for one or two days.
    a) gas b) health c) strength d) energy
13. Finding a cure for cancer is still one of the biggest challenges facing medical ....
    a) researchers b) farmers c) helpers d) officers
14. There was a lot of rainfall this winter. As a/an ...., floods happened in the country.
    a) reason b) result c) effect d) impact
15. The train accident got much .... in the national newspapers because of its drama.
    a) space b) area c) gap d) hole

Language

16. They have intended to buy a big house. They .... buy it soon.
a) are buying b) are going to c) may d) will

17. What a wonderful shirt, I .... it.
a) buy b) am buying c) am going to buy d) will buy

18. There are no clouds in the sky today. I think that it .... very hot.
a) will be b) will have been c) is going to be d) is

19. The basketball team .... two games next week.
a) play b) is playing c) have played d) going to play

20. As it's cold and rainy, I ....
a) won't go out today
b) am going out today
c) won't have gone out today
d) will be going out today

21. I'm looking for my e-book reader. I .... an e-book on it.
a) will be read
b) am going to read
c) will read
d) read

22. A: Oh! I haven't got enough money to pay!
B: Don't worry. I .... you some.
a) am lending
b) am going to lend
c) will lend
d) lend

23. Quick! Give me a paper tissue, I .... again!
a) will sneeze
b) would sneeze
c) sneeze
d) am going to sneeze

24. My parents promised me that they .... me a new car.
a) are buying
b) will buy
c) would buy
d) are going to buy

25. Ali will go to the park when he .... his homework.
a) will finish b) finish c) had finished d) finishes

26. A: Why do you want so many oranges?
B: I .... make an orange juice for us all.
a) am going to b) will c) would d) won't

27. Lots of people have said they .... to tomorrow's party.
a) would come
b) will come
c) came
d) were going to come

28. The programme predicts what life .... in 20, 30 or 40 years.
a) will have liked
b) will be liking
c) will be like
d) may be liking

29. Choose the grammatically correct sentence:
a) I will be helping you with your homework if you want.
b) I will help you with your homework if you want.
c) I will have helped you with your homework if you want.
d) I'm helping you with your homework if you want.

30. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
a) Liverpool is winning the next match.
b) Liverpool will have won the next match.
c) Liverpool is going to win. They're three-nil up already.
d) Liverpool will be winning the next match.

Study ... Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4



Watch a video



A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
algae (n)	طحالب	fact (n)	حقيقة	ocean (n)	المحيط
argument (n)	جدال/حجة	factual (adj)	واقعى/حقيقى	original (adj)	أصلى
available (adj)	متوافر/متاح	farm (v) (ed)	يزرع/يفلح	replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
boring (adj)	ممل	fashion (n)	موضة	seaweed (n)	الأعشاب البحرية
chance (n)	فرصة	gap (n)	فجوة/فراغ	several (adj)	عديد
complete (adj)	مكتمل/تام	giant (adj) (n)	عملاق	suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
conclude (v) (d)	يستنتج/يختتم/ينهى	heat up (v) (ed)	يزداد حرارة	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
conclusion (n)	استنتاج/ختام	include (v) (d)	يشمل	summary (n)	ملخص
continent (n)	قارة	introduction (n)	مقدمة	tasty (adj)	ذو مذاق جيد
description (n)	وصف	link (n) (v) (ed)	رابط/يربط	topic (n)	موضوع
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	lose (v)	يفقد/يخسر	underline (v) (d)	يضع خطا تحت
evidence (n)	دليل	notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد/غريب

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
Antarctica (n)	القارة القطبية الجنوبية	fresh (adj)	طازج	produce (n) (v) (d)	إنتاج زراعى/ينتج
argue (v) (d)	يجادل/يقدم حجة	hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية	reuse (v) (d)	يعيد استخدام
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوى على	insect (n)	حشرة	specific (adj)	محدد
control (v) (led)	يسيطر على	leaves (n)	أوراق شجر	surprisingly (adv)	من المدهش
earn (v) (ed)	يكسب	main (adj)	أساسى		
flow (n) (v) (ed)	انسياب/ينساب	outdoor (adj)	خارج المنزل	urban (adj)	مدنى/حضرى
focus (v) (ed)	يركز	predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ بـ		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think there should be a close .... between the teacher and his student.
   a) gap b) travel c) space d) link
2. The professor said that we must pick a/an .... for our research papers by next week.
   a) topic b) reason c) object d) fact
3. The engineer gave a/an .... of the progress in building the road to the Minister.
   a) evidence b) research c) summary d) introduction
4. The programme about the war .... scenes that may be disturbing to some viewers.
   a) develops b) contains c) encloses d) consists
5. Seaweed and other .... are eaten in China and Japan, especially by people who live near the ocean.
   a) algae b) insects c) fruits d) meat
6. Scientists are trying to .... what the North Pole will look like in 20 years' time because of climate change.
   a) protect b) avoid c) predict d) rejoice
7. .... is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
   a) Agriculture b) Hydroponics c) Industry d) Botany
8. .... fish is brought up from the coast on ice to the market every day.
   a) Original b) Dull c) Renewed d) Fresh
9. Children's television programmes are made mainly for a/an .... age group.
   a) public b) available c) specific d) accepted
10. Team sports provide a .... for you to improve your social life.
   a) present b) chance c) gift d) prize

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

in fact	فى الحقيقة / الواقع	lose up to	يخسر حتى	over the next few decades	عبر العقود القليلة القادمة
in my view	فى رأيى	make sense	ذو معنى	To conclude	وفى الختام
available for	متوافر لـ	good for	جيد لـ	opinion on/about	رأى عن
based on	معتمد (مرتكز) على	grow to	ينمو إلى	source of	مصدر لـ
focus on	يركز على	link to	رابط لـ		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
argue	يجادل	argument	جدل	argumentative	جدلى
bore	يضجر/يمل	boredom	الملل	boring bored	ممل متضجر
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفى
predict	يتنبأ ب	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	يمكن التنبؤ به
replace	يستبدل	replacement	استبدال/بديل	replaced	مستبدل
specify	يحدد	specification	تحديد	specific	محدد
suggest	يقترح	suggestion	اقتراح	suggestive	اقتراحى

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ماتحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- Scientists predict that the sun will explode one day. (v)
- The prediction caused a lot of arguments. (n)
- This case is not easily predictable. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
boring	ممل	uninteresting/dull		interesting/exciting	شيق
control	يسيطر على/يتحكم	dominate/command		obey/ neglect	يتجاهل/يطيع
factual	حقيقى/واقعى	real/actual		fictional/false	خيالى/غير حقيقى
notice	يلاحظ	observe/regard		ignore/overlook	يهمل/يتغاضى عن
predict	يتنبأ ب	forecast/foresee		disbelieve/misunderstand	لا يصدق/يسىء فهم
specific	محدد	definite/particular		common/ambiguous	شائع/غامض
suggest	يقترح	propose/advise		oppose/deny	يعارض/ينكر
urban	مدنى/حضرى	civil		rural	ريفى

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was punished for neglecting his animals. The word "neglect" is an antonym of the word "..................".
   a) expect b) control c) employ d) dismiss
2. The sales manager said that no figures are available .... the number of goods sold last month.
   a) at b) on c) in d) for
3. The film is based .... a true story of an American soldier during the Second World War.
   a) at b) for c) on d) about
4. It .... sense to keep important data on file for quick reference.
   a) does b) notices c) accepts d) makes
5. I asked my friends to give me their opinions .... my new watch.
   a) for b) at c) about d) over
6. The real value of the country's exports has grown little lately. The word "real" is similar in meaning to the word "..................".
   a) fictional b) factual c) available d) advised
7. This town is so .... in the evening - there's never anything happening.
   a) bore b) boredom c) bored d) boring
8. The witness wasn't able to describe the robber. The noun of the verb "describe" is ....
   a) describe b) description c) described d) descriptive
9. The police did not specify precisely how many people were in the incident. The adjective from the verb "specify" is "..................".
   a) specifies b) specification c) specific d) pacified
10. The car factory production has grown .... around 100 cars a month over the last two years.
    a) at b) to c) in d) for

Reading Text (1)

Is algae the future of food?

We will need to find sustainable sources of food in the future because there will be more people to feed and many places will be too hot and dry for agriculture. So, why don't we think about farms in the sea?

Algae are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. They are eaten by everything from the smallest fish to giant whales. Some kinds of algae are called seaweed, and this is a very popular food in China and Japan.

Algae is very healthy and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future.[1] They hope that farmers won't need to damage the environment, because they will be growing our food in the ocean. In fact, scientists think that growing algae will help to clean the sea and improve the air that we breathe because algae makes a lot of oxygen.

But will you want to eat it? Well, you might not even notice. Scientists are already using seaweed to replace salt in bread and some other foods to make it much healthier.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- تستخدم (a lot - much) قبل صفات المقارنة للتعبير عن الاختلاف الكبير بين طرفي المقارنة.

Reading Text (2)

This essay will focus on the future of agriculture.

First, I will explain the reason why agriculture needs to change. After that, we will look at several ways that agriculture could change. Finally, I will give my opinion on what farmers should do to prepare for the future.

The Earth's surface is heating up and soon there will be less land that farmers can use.

In the case of Africa, the continent could lose up to 18 percent of its farmland in the next fifty years. As a result, farmers will need to farm their land even more efficiently.

Due to the fact that there will be less land available for agriculture in the future, farmers will need to grow a greater variety of crops. Evidence suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and we may start the production of new sources of food, like algae, instead.

In my view, farmers should see this is as a chance to try new things and to start using new technology, such as robots, on their farms. They should start doing this immediately so they're prepared for the future.

To conclude, agriculture is clearly going to change a lot over the next few decades and farmers will need to change the way they farm, too.

Reading Text (3)



Hydroponics

With the population of the world predicted to grow to around 10 billion by 2050, one problem we will have is finding enough land for food production[1]. A possible solution to this problem is using something called hydroponics.

Hydroponics is a way to grow plants without using any soil. Instead, farmers grow the plants in special water which contains all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in areas with poor soil[2]. Hydroponics uses a lot less space than traditional farming and, surprisingly, it also uses less water because any water that the plants do not use is reused. There are also fewer problems with insects. Almost, any plant can grow using hydroponics and many plants produce more fruit and leaves this way.

Some people argue that hydroponics is not very good for large farms because they need expensive computers to control the flow of water, light, etc. to the plants, but others argue that it could offer the best solution to future problems. Many scientists think that in the future; we will be using hydroponics to grow food even in places where nothing grows now, such as deserts, Antarctica or even space.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- صيغة الفعل (finding) بعد (is) ليست مضارعًا مستمرًا، فصيغة (verb + ing) بمفردها تعنى الاسم (إيجاد).

٢- هذه الجملة أصلها:

- This is a big help for farmers who live in areas with poor soil.

حذف ضمير الوصل (who) واستخدمت صيغة (verb + ing).



Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

Urban farming

This essay will focus on something my uncle is planning to do to help food production: something called urban farming.

My uncle lives in London and first, I will explain what urban farming is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends.[1] Urban farming is growing food in our cities. Of course, cities are not usually good for farming due to the fact that there is so little green space, but he says they will be using flat roofs, gardens and open spaces to grow what they can.

In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens, but next year, the group of friends will be planting more fruit and vegetables in any open spaces they can use. At the end of the year, they will be eating fresh fruit and vegetables from these spaces.

In my view, urban farming is a great idea. It will help my uncle and his friends to save money in the shops, and it might also help them to earn money. They hope they will be selling some of the produce to local restaurants and markets.

To conclude, urban farming is an interesting idea. All the evidence suggests that it could help us grow our own food[2] in the future, even in cities without much outdoor space.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- استخدمت صيغة الجملة (فاعل + فعل) بعد أدوات الاستفهام (what - why) لأن الجملة فى صيغة غير المباشر

٢- تستخدم جملة كاملة بعد (suggest) ويمكن استخدام (verb + ing) أيضًا.

- I suggested going to the cinema tonight.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Amir : Is that your homework, Hany?

Hany : Yes. What's wrong with it? It took me ages.

Amir : I can see that. It's very long.

Hany : So what?

Amir : Well, we were asked to write a summary, and yours looks longer than the text we're summarising! You know it should be shorter, right?

Hany : Yes, I know that. But I didn't want to miss anything important.

Amir : So, what was the text about?

Hany : I can't remember, but it's all in my summary.

Amir : My friend, you need to think more and write less. Start by reading the whole text and try to understand as much as you can. Ask yourself: What's the main idea? How would I explain it to a friend quickly? Don't start writing anything until you've done that.

Hany : But you know me. I always forget something important.

Amir : Then you should read the text again. But the second time, underline the most important words or phrases in it. These are usually nouns for the things or people that the text is about, verbs for important actions, or phrases for times and places.

Hany : Okay.

Amir : After that, try to only look at the important words that you underlined when you're writing your summary. And just write complete sentences that fill in the gaps between those words.

Hany : I see.

Amir : It's also helpful to use words or phrases that show the order in which things happen. Phrases like 'first', 'after that' or 'finally'.

Hany : And then?

Amir : When you've finished writing your summary, read it again. Check that it's clear, and then look back at the original text to see if you've included all the important information.

Video Script

Would you like to do more to help the environment by living a more sustainable life? It's actually easier than you might think. There are many small changes you can make that will help to protect the Earth. Here are three of them.

Let's start with food. You don't have to become a vegetarian, but eating less meat will help the environment. Livestock produce dangerous gases and they can damage the land they live on.

When you need to travel, think about whether you really need to go in the car or take the bus. It's often possible to walk or ride a bike instead and these are more sustainable ways of travelling.

Everyone likes to get new things, but before you ask your parents to buy you new clothes or new games, ask yourself if you really need them. It isn't sustainable for people to continue buying so much stuff!

Notes on Vocabulary

	Word	Examples
1	**tasty** ذو مذاق جيد (تستخدم للطعام فقط)	- My sister makes a really tasty dish with chicken and rice.
	tasteful ذو ذوق جيد (مختار بعناية)	- The hotel lobby is filled with tasteful furniture and original artwork.
2	**lose** يفقد / يخسر	- I lost my handbag at the airport because it was overcrowded. - Our team lost the final match of the championship last year.
	miss يفتقد / يفوته شيء	- I really missed my family when I was abroad last month. - I missed the train because I got up very late.

No.	Word / Meaning	Examples
3	**fresh** – طازج – جديد وشيق – حديث (تم أو يتم من وقت قصير) – نشيط/ملىء بالحيوية	تستخدم الصفة fresh بأكثر من معنى كالتالى: - I like to have fresh juice with my breakfast. طازج - Our teacher always encourages having fresh ideas about science. جديد وشيق - The marks on the shirt are fresh. You should wash it immediately. حديث (تم أو يتم من وقت قصير) - The players of the team still look fresh after the first half. They are very fit. نشيط/ملىء بالحيوية
4	**earn** يكسب (مالًا عن طريق العمل غالبًا)	She was earning good money during her work at the bank.
	gain يكتسب (شيئًا معنويًا)	- In her first job, she gained experience as a programme manager. لاحظ gain (speed - weight - height) - I have gained a lot of weight because of eating fast food.
	win يفوز بـ (مباراة/جائزة/مسابقة)	- It's supposed to be easier to win your home games. - How does it feel to have won the gold medal?
	beat يهزم/يتغلب على	- I always beat my friend at tennis; he gets annoyed.
5	**outdoor** بالخارج/خلوى (خارج الأماكن المغلقة) صفة يأتى بعدها اسم.	Father has liked outdoor activities like camping and hiking since he was a child.
	outdoors بالخارج (خارج الأماكن المغلقة) حال/ظرف يصف فعلًا.	I asked my wife to have breakfast outdoors. It was sunny and nice.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The inexperienced businessmen .... their money in a poor investment.
   a) missed b) lost c) paid d) got
2. The young players gradually .... confidence in their abilities when they get good scores.
   a) earn b) overcome c) gain d) beat
3. A number of .... concerts are held in the open air in Marina during the summer.
   a) outdoor b) outdoors c) indoor d) indoors
4. The room is filled with .... furniture and original paintings and pieces of art.
   a) taste b) tasted c) tasty d) tasteful
5. As a famous professional squash trainer, he .... over a million dollars a year.
   a) wins b) beats c) earns d) gains
6. We had to hurry back so as not to .... the start of our favourite programme.
   a) lose b) gain c) miss d) earn
7. My cousin .... a scholarship to study at the American University in Cairo.
   a) won b) beat c) earned d) gained
8. Fast food can be ...., but it contains a lot of fat.
   a) tasteful b) tasty c) tasteless d) taste
9. Samir wants a job that will let him work .... He doesn't like staying in offices.
   a) indoor b) indoors c) outdoor d) outdoors
10. Regular exercise will help you feel "Fresher" and fitter. "Fresh" here means ....
    a) new b) tasteful c) drinkable d) energetic

Practice ... Vocabulary General Exercises



Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. The problem of air pollution is especially serious in .... areas because of the heavy traffic jams.
   a) urban b) rural c) ocean d) desert
2. The office manager says they will let us know about any .... jobs at the bank.
   a) main b) harmful c) available d) reliable
3. The last document .... all the previous reports about crime.
   a) appeared b) expected c) summarised d) divided
4. The neighbours' dog got in through a .... in the garden fence.
   a) notice b) flow c) gab d) gap
5. Although they are rare, wolves are still found on the .... of Europe.
   a) continent b) country c) island d) ocean
6. To keep the environment clean, natural resources must be used .... to avoid waste.
   a) surprisingly b) efficiently c) negatively d) passively
7. Police officers are trying hard to find .... which proves the criminal's guilt.
   a) prediction b) description c) chance d) evidence
8. The main .... of the river water has been turned to a new course after building the dam.
   a) produce b) downpour c) flow d) storm
9. Our neighbour was not convinced by his wife's .... that they needed a bigger house.
   a) debate b) argument c) summary d) disagreement
10. There's only a brief .... of the hotel on the Internet.
    a) description b) introduction c) conclusion d) infection
11. Chinese factories .... cheap goods for export to many world countries.
    a) avoid b) reduce c) produce d) consume
12. In my opinion, schools should not .... only on exam results as activities are very important for education.
    a) detect b) distract c) derive d) focus
13. This watch may be fake, but it looks just like the .... CASIO model.
    a) factual b) original c) dispensing d) giant

14. The data which the scientists collected enabled them to reach good ....

a) introductions b) experiences c) arguments d) conclusions

15. Most rich women are used to attending .... shows of famous fashion houses.

a) flow b) fashion c) fiction d) fact

16. Mother .... up the remains of last night's supper for us to have as she wasn't able to cook.

a) heated b) speeded c) hurried d) descended

17. The government is going to .... the old wooden bridge with one made of concrete.

a) place b) replace c) retry d) destroy

18. The club was found guilty and fined because of failing to .... the fans who made trouble after the match.

a) fight b) include c) control d) involve

19. To conserve resources, we should all .... shopping bags which are made of plastic.

a) delay b) depict c) invent d) reuse

20. Despite living in different countries, the two families have kept close .... with each other.

a) links b) branches c) lies d) works

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. The essay contains a number of factual errors. The antonym of the adjective "factual" is "..................".

a) real b) fictional c) complete d) true

22. It would .... sense for the parents to share in the decisions about their children's education.

a) make b) do c) reply d) devise

23. I haven't seen my old friend for years. In ...., I can't even remember what he looks like.

a) face b) fiction c) advance d) fact

24. In my ...., the new plan to build the new cinema is fantastic.

a) discussion b) view c) debate d) fight

25. The game was so boring for the spectators who left early. The synonym of the word "boring" is "..................".

a) special b) interesting c) dull d) exciting

26. New teachers often find it difficult to control their classes. The verb "control" is similar in meaning to "..................".

a) damage b) obey c) neglect d) dominate

27. The article focuses .... three main economic problems of the present situation.

a) in b) on c) at d) for

28. The lifeguard didn't notice that a boy was having trouble in the pool. The verb "notice" is the opposite of the verb "...................".

a) ignore b) observe c) regard d) contain

29. The sausages in this restaurant are really ....; you must try them.

a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) taste

30. Mary doesn't .... much money as an office clerk, but she enjoys the work.

a) earn b) win c) beat d) gain

31. The hotel is distinguished by an .... swimming pool which is overlooked by most of the rooms.

a) outdoor b) indoor c) outdoors d) indoors

32. Because of the traffic jam, we got to the cinema late and .... the beginning of the film.

a) lost b) gained c) missed d) completed

33. Fresh towels are provided regularly in the hotel rooms. "Fresh" here means ....

a) new b) tasteful c) interesting d) energetic

34. The young runner got the gold medal for the 100 metres, ... a number of top champions.

a) earning b) winning c) gaining d) beating

Longman and Previous Exams

35. I am looking for a/an .... kind of shampoo for my dry hair. Longman

a) harsh b) unsuitable c) specific d) expensive

36. We were happy to have dinner .... ; we had a nice time outside the house. Longman

a) outdoor b) outdoors c) indoor d) indoors

37. .... is a very simple plant without stem or leaves that grows in or near water. (البحيرة - إدارة حوش عيسى)

a) Hydroponics b) Algae
c) A flower d) Urban farming

38. Parking in this car park is .... only for people staying at the hotel. (الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية)

a) suitable b) available c) reliable d) avoidable

39. Seaweed can .... salt in bread to make it much healthier. (أسيوط - إدارة القوصية)

a) place b) replace c) breathe d) predict

40. Football is an outdoor game but basketball is played .... (القليوبية - إدارة بنها)

a) indoor b) outdoor c) outdoors d) indoors

B Language

Future Continuous المستقبل المستمر

Form التكوين	Subj. فاعل + will be + v.ing • I'll be playing at 7 p.m. tomorrow.
Negative النفى	Subj. فاعل + won't be + v.ing • I won't be waiting for you at 10 p.m. tomorrow.
Question السؤال	Will + subj. فاعل + be + v.ing? • Will you be painting your room at this time next week? Wh-word أداة استفهام +subj فاعل +will be + v-ing? • What will you be doing at this time next week?

USAGE الاستخدام

1 **For actions that will be in progress at a stated future time.**

يستخدم للأحداث التى ستكون مستمرة عند وقت محدد فى المستقبل.

▸ I will be watching the final match at 7 pm tomorrow.

2 **For actions that will definitely happen in the future as a result of a routine or arrangement (instead of the present continuous).**

يستخدم للأحداث التى سوف تحدث بالتحديد فى المستقبل كنتيجة لروتين أو ترتيب (بدلًا من المضارع المستمر).

▸ I'll be playing golf on Friday. It's part of my routine.
(I play golf every Friday - it's part of my routine.)
▸ I'll be seeing Ramy tomorrow. (see = meet)
(We work in the same office, so we will definitely meet.)

3 **When we ask politely about people's arrangements to see if they can do something for us or because we want to offer to do something for them.**

يستخدم عندما نسأل بأدب عن ترتيبات الأشخاص لنرى ما إذا كانوا يستطيعون فعل شىء لنا، أو لأننا نريد أن نفعل شيئًا لهم.

▸ Will you be going to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?

4 **We use may be + v.ing to refer to future events or trends which are possible but not certain.**

نستخدم may be + v.ing للتعبير عن الأحداث التى من الممكن أن تحدث، ولكن لسنا متأكدين منها.

▸ Many more people may be living in Cairo in the next 50 years.

5

The future continuous is used with the following time expressions:

نستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية.

- all night/ day tomorrow/ next week, etc.
- this time tomorrow/ next week - at + مدة tomorrow/next week.
- from .... to .... tomorrow.
- in an hour's time ....

▸ This time tomorrow, I will be watching a film with my family.

EXTRA POINTS

1

أفعال state verbs لا تستخدم مع المستقبل المستمر ولكن إذا تغير معناها يمكن أن تستخدم فى الاستمرار.

▸ This time next year, I will have had my graduation certificate.

- لا يمكن استخدام will be having لأن الفعل يملك لا يستخدم مستمرًا.

▸ This time tomorrow, I will be having my dinner with my family.

- الفعل have هنا ليس بمعنى يملك، بل بمعنى يتناول؛ لذلك استخدم فى الاستمرار.

2

لو كان الحدثان سيستمران فى المستقبل ووجد رابط زمنى فالحدث الذى بعد الرابط الزمنى يكون مضارعًا مستمرًا أو بسيطًا وليس مستقبلًا مستمرًا.

مستقبل مستمر	+	رابط زمنى	+	مضارع مستمر أو بسيط

▸ I'll be studying for my lessons while my father is watching the match tomorrow.

Note: ملحوظة

- يمكن استخدام will بعد كلمات الاستفهام إذا جاءت رابطًا فى جمل المباشر مثلًا

▸ He asks me when I will finish my exams.

- فى الجملة السابقة when جاءت بمعنى "متى" وليس رابطًا بمعنى "عندما" انظر المثال التالى:

▸ When I finish (have finished) my exams, I'll visit my relatives in the village.



Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... for the final exam all tomorrow evening?
   a) Will you revise b) Have you revised
   c) Will you be revised d) Will you be revising
2. I .... tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket.
   a) will leave b) am leaving c) going to leave d) shall leave
3. My elder son says he .... a doctor. This is his ambition.
   a) is going to be b) is
   c) will be d) is being
4. I want to buy a new villa, so I .... save a lot of money.
   a) going to b) will c) am going to d) will be
5. Will you .... the phone for long? I want to make some calls.
   a) be using b) use c) be used d) have used
6. I'll tell Hesham about the party. I .... him at work anyway.
   a) will see b) will be seeing c) may see d) was seeing
7. From 6 to 8 tomorrow, I .... the final match on TV.
   a) will watch b) going to watch
   c) watch d) will be watching
8. This time next week, I .... on the beach.
   a) will have sunbathed b) will have been sunbathing
   c) will be sunbathing d) will be sunbathed
9. Magdy .... in the school concert all next week.
   a) will perform b) will be performing
   c) will be performed d) has performed
10. This flat is very hot, so we .... a flat that is far from the beach next time.
   a) will rent b) aren't going to rent
   c) are renting d) don't rent
11. We .... a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?
   a) are having b) have
   c) will have had d) have had

12. I think one day every new book .... as an e-book.

a) publish
b) will publish
c) will be published
d) will have published

13. Choose the best correct answer:

a) I will be met my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
b) I will have met my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
c) I am meeting my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
d) I shall meet my friends for dinner all day after work tomorrow.

14. "Just a minute, please. I will be with you as soon as I .... this."

a) will do
b) have done
c) will be doing
d) will have done

15. A: Let's meet at eleven o'clock tomorrow.

B: Sorry, I .... my boss at this time.

a) will have met
b) will be meeting
c) will meet
d) meet

16. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?

A: Have you made plans for tonight?

B: Yes. I .... my sister after work. We need to discuss some family matters.

a) am going to visit
b) will have visited
c) will visit
d) will be visited

17. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?

a) This time tomorrow, I will watch the new film.
b) This time tomorrow, I will be watching the new film.
c) This time tomorrow, I watch the new film.
d) This time tomorrow, I will have been watched the new film.

18. Don't worry; I .... you after I have finished my work.

a) will help
b) will have helped
c) will be helped
d) have helped

19. He promised .... me with my homework.

a) he would help
b) to have helped
c) he will help me
d) that he will help

20. The rich man's plane .... Cairo next week.

a) will have reached
b) will reach
c) is going to be reached
d) will be reaching

Longman and Previous Exams

21. More people .... electric cars, and therefore we will cut down on pollution. (Longman)

a) were using
b) had to use
c) going to use
d) will be using

22. Don't expect him to come this evening; he .... an important meeting. (Longman)

a) going to attend
b) will be attended
c) will be attending
d) had attended

23. I can't go to the cinema with you this evening because I .... for my brother's wedding. (Longman)

a) will prepare
b) will be preparing
c) had to prepare
d) going to prepare

24. What .... from 6 to 8 next evening? (Longman)

a) will you do
b) were you doing
c) will you be doing
d) have you done

25. All next year, scientists .... on decreasing global warming. (Longman)

a) are going to work
b) will be working
c) will work
d) will have worked

26. At one o'clock tomorrow, I.................. the problem with my colleagues. (المعصرة - القاهرة)

a) will discuss
b) will be discussing
c) am going to discuss
d) will have discussed

27. My school .... an educational program next month to help slow learning students. (إدارة أسيوط)

a) will be running
b) has run
c) runs
d) will have run

28. In the future, I think we .... electric cars. (بنها - القليوبية)

a) drive
b) are driving
c) going to
d) will be driving

29. Jana .... a new car. She has already decided. (نجع حمادى - قنا)

a) will buy
b) is buying
c) is going to buy
d) buys

30. Mohamed will go to the university when he .... his secondary school. (منوف - المنوفية)

a) had finished
b) finishes
c) finish
d) will finish

Test yourself Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. I propose going to an early film and having dinner afterwards. The verb "propose" is a synonym to the verb "..................".
   a) divide b) intend c) agree d) suggest
2. The stove takes a while to .... up and you can prepare the ingredients of the dish.
   a) heat b) speed c) hurry d) descend
3. The new Presidential Initiative has been the main .... of most talk shows.
   a) clause b) reason c) result d) topic
4. The text provides a .... of the plot of Shakespeare's *King Lear*.
   a) research b) document c) theory d) summary
5. The website of the fashion house gives a full .... of each product.
   a) describe b) description c) described d) descriptive
6. The air is fresh in rural areas. The adjective "rural" is the opposite of the adjective "..................".
   a) natural b) crowded c) urban d) helpful
7. You would have another .... to succeed in the test if you tried again and again.
   a) topic b) chance c) study d) subject
8. On hearing about losing his job, Sameh was so angry that his speech didn't .... sense.
   a) do b) notice c) accept d) make
9. The report's main .... was that global warming is a serious threat.
   a) study b) conclusion c) extension d) experience
10. At present, we have no .... of life on other planets.
    a) fiction b) art c) evidence d) science
11. Calvin Klein, Diesel and Christian Dior's .... shows attract a lot of attention as they are world-famous clothes designers.
    a) wave b) fashion c) flood d) trend
12. The roof of the farmer's yard was in such bad condition that it needed to be completely ....
    a) replaced b) placed c) disappeared d) thought
13. The research shows a .... between high cholesterol and an increased risk of heart attacks.
    a) method b) link c) contact d) communication
14. I thanked my friend for the .... meal she cooked for us.
    a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) testy
15. Access to certain websites is only .... to registered users who have to pay for this.
    a) refused b) acceptable c) available d) probable

Language

16. I can't visit my cousins in June because I .... for a charity.

a) will work
b) will be working
c) am being worked
d) will have worked

17. In the next week's radio programme, we .... to a famous scientist.

a) will be talking
b) were talking
c) talk
d) have talked

18. I have made a decision. I .... the weekend in my village.

a) will spend
b) will be spending
c) am spending
d) am going to spend

19. People .... in houses under water in twenty years' time. Who knows?

a) may have lived
b) will be living
c) may be living
d) are going to live

20. This time tomorrow, I .... for my father at the airport.

a) will be waited
b) will be waiting
c) going to wait
d) will have been waited

21. Ahmed is a terrible driver. He .... an accident one day.

a) will have
b) is having
c) is going to have
d) will be having

22. Don't phone me after 11 o'clock. I ....

a) will sleep
b) will be sleeping
c) going to sleep
d) sleep

23. A: I've planned my future for the next five years.
B: That is very clever of you. What .... when you retire?

a) are you doing
b) do you do
c) have done
d) are you going to do

24. You have no chance of getting the job. You .... your time if you apply for it.

a) be wasting
b) will be wasting
c) waste
d) won't waste

25. If you don't take a taxi, you .... on time.

a) won't arrive
b) aren't going to arrive
c) aren't arriving
d) don't arrive

26. I .... Hurghada during the next summer holidays. Everything is arranged.

a) will go to
b) am going to
c) am going to go
d) will have gone to

27. In five years' time, Ali will probably .... with his parents.

a) be lived
b) still live
c) still living
d) be still living

28. This time next year, Salma .... for her final exam.

a) will revise
b) will be revising
c) may revise
d) revises

29. The doctor says that he'll feel a lot better after he .... a rest.

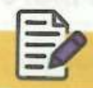
a) has had
b) had
c) will have
d) had had

30. It rained! I didn't think it ....

a) is going to rain
b) was going to rain
c) was raining
d) had rained

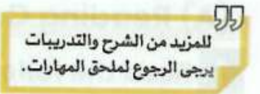
Part 3 Skills







Writing Skill



للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing tips

• **Write an essay about how to feed people sustainably in the future.**

Tips for writing the essay	
Introduction	Reasons for keeping sustainable food: - Increase in the population. - Decrease in food production.
Main body (1)	- A modern way to grow food. - Aeroponics, definition and basic rules.
Main body (2)	- Benefits of aeroponics to keep sustainable food.
Conclusion	- How aeroponics can secure sustainable food. - How it is better than traditional methods of agriculture.

MODEL ESSAY

There is a big shortfall between the amount of food we produce today and the amount needed to feed everyone in 2050. There will be nearly 10 billion people on Earth by 2050. Moreover, as incomes rise, people will consume more and more. At the same time, we urgently need to decrease greenhouse gas emissions from agricultural production and stop the destruction of the remaining forests on earth. Hence, we need innovative and new ways to keep food sustainable in the future.

One of the most innovative ways to grow food is aeroponics. It is the process of growing plants in an airy or misty environment without the use of soil. The seeds are planted in pieces of foam stuffed into tiny pots, which are exposed to light on one end and nutrient mist on the other. The foam also holds the stem and root mass in place as the plants grow. The plant's roots are sprayed with a nutrient-rich water solution.

Aeroponics is suitable for growing many kinds of food. Tomatoes and herbs are the best examples. It enables us to grow food in all available spaces. Besides, the environment is kept free from pests and diseases so that the plants may grow healthier and more quickly. Last, it helps us save water resources.

Aeroponics is a better method of agriculture than traditional soil-based ones. It provides faster growth, and higher yields and also minimises or eliminates the need for herbicides and pesticides. It doesn't need special skills, so everyone can grow food wherever they find available space. In short, aeroponics is one of the most modern ways that can help us keep sustainable food in the future.

Practice Skills Exercises



Practice more

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة في
قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

(A) Reading Comprehension

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Food is the basic human need to stay alive. Moreover, it is the need of every living organism. Therefore, it is important that we should not waste food. Our world consists of different types of cultures. These cultures have varieties of dishes of food in them.

Thus, all the dishes have different tastes. Furthermore, our nature provides us with a variety of food. From fruits to vegetables, from dairy food to seafood, everything is available. Different countries have their own speciality of dishes. Here are some of them:

In China, people eat eight, ten or twelve dishes of food at the New Year. A lot of the food at New Year has a special meaning. Seaweed means good luck and long noodles mean long life. They eat whole vegetables and don't use knives to cut things, because this means the end of your good luck.

In Russia, there is lots of food on the table, so the next year will be happy and plentiful. At 11.59 people have their special drinks and wait for the clock to strike twelve. Then they make a toast for the New Year. They wish everybody good luck and happiness.

In Spain, people eat twelve grapes – one with each chime of the clock at midnight. This brings good luck for the next twelve months. But it is difficult to eat twelve grapes in twelve seconds, so people usually have a mouth full of grapes at the end!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Food is necessary for ....
a) people b) animals c) trees d) all of these

2. People around the world have .... cultures.
a) the same b) different c) strange d) bad

3. In China people eat a/an .... number of dishes of food.
a) even b) odd c) eight d) nine

4. Eating twelve grapes in twelve seconds in Spain means ....
a) bringing good luck for the next twelve months
b) bringing good luck for the next twelve seconds
c) having a mouth full of grapes
d) leaving no grapes for the next day

5. Our nature provides us with .... of food.
a) twelve kinds b) none c) all kinds d) a few kinds

6. Using knives to cut things means ....
a) the end of your good luck b) half of the year is good
c) ending of bad luck d) the food is very old

7. The best title for the passage is "..................".
- a) Food all over China
- b) Countries and their food
- c) Different cultures and their food in Europe
- d) We shouldn't waste food

8. In your opinion, the word "noodles" means ....
- a) a kind of soup
- b) a kind of human
- c) a kind of food
- d) a kind of money

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

African lions are larger than other big wild cats, including leopards, cheetahs, and jaguars. In fact, only Asian tigers are bigger. The African lion is the only cat to live in cooperative groups. These groups are called prides. A pride usually has no more than three unrelated adult males. Together with adult females (lionesses) and young cubs, a pride has from three to over 30 members. The females are related, and they usually stay together for life.

Living in a pride gives African lions benefits other cats don't have. Other cats live alone, coming together only to mate. This means the mother must raise the young and provide all protection and food. African lion mothers, however, have a pride of lions to help. Pride members communicate vocally, by roaring, meowing, and snarling.

They also use facial expressions, scent, and touch, including rubbing and licking. The largest male lion's job is to protect the pride, especially the cubs. Males are usually gentle with cubs in their own pride, but not with the cubs in other prides.

Females, meanwhile, do most of the hunting. With their smaller size, they can sneak closer to prey through tall savannah grasses. They hunt mostly during the night and in the early morning when light is poor. Large, fast animals like zebras, buffalo, wildebeest, wild hogs, and gazelles are the lions' favourite prey.

However, these fast animals often escape. So, lions also hunt smaller animals, such as hares, birds, and reptiles. They also use their size and numbers to steal dead prey from other predators, including cheetahs and leopards. That's why cheetahs drag their kills to hiding places and leopards pull theirs into trees.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. According to the article, how are lions different from any other wild cats?
- a) Lions are the largest wild cat species on earth.
- b) Lions are the only wild cats that live in Africa.
- c) Lions are the only wild cats that are endangered.
- d) Lions are the only wild cats to live in cooperative groups.

2. What is one reason why female lions, the lionesses, do the hunting instead of the males?
a) The females run faster than the males and can catch up to their prey quicker.
b) The females are stronger than the males and can take down their prey easier.
c) The females are smaller than the males and can sneak closer to their prey in the tall savannah grasses.
d) The females have better eyesight than the males to spot prey easier.

3. Lions hunt ....
a) large, fast animals only
b) smaller animals only
c) dead animals
d) both small and large animals

4. The synonym of the word "prey" is "....................".
a) friend
b) victim
c) companion
d) violent

5. Living in groups is good for African mother lions because ....
a) the members of the group help them raise the cubs
b) the males are kind to them
c) they don't hunt, so they don't run
d) males take care of them

6. Cheetahs and leopards may hide their prey ....
a) to keep them fresh
b) to eat them with their families
c) to preserve them
d) because lions can eat the prey by force

7. The pride members can communicate through many ways except ....
a) odour
b) facial expressions
c) drawing
d) licking

8. The best title for the passage is "....................".
a) The Life of the Lioness
b) The Species of Cats
c) The Prey
d) Prides and Individuals

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. In the last fifty years, technology has really changed the way farmers produce food. Agriculture is now developed with the help of machines that save time and effort.

a) فى الخمسين عامًا الماضية، غيرت التكنولوجيا حقًا طريقة إنتاج المزارعين للغذاء. يتم الآن تطوير الزراعة بمساعدة الآلات التى تخزن الوقت والجهد.

b) فى الخمسين عامًا الماضية، غيرت التكنولوجيا حقًا طريقة إنتاج المزارعين للغذاء. يتم الآن تطوير الزراعة بمساعدة الآلات التى توفر الوقت والجهد.

c) فى الخمسين عامًا الماضية، تغير التكنولوجيا حقًا طريقة إنتاج المزارعين للغذاء. يتم الآن تطوير الزراعة بمساعدة الآلات التى توفر الوقت والجهد.

d) فى الخمسين عامًا الماضية، غيرت التكنولوجيا حقًا طريقة إنتاج المزارعين للغذاء. يتم الآن زيادة الزراعة بمساعدة الآلات التى تحفظ الوقت والجهد.

2. Organising your life is a necessity if you want to achieve your most valuable goals. Well-organised people are the most successful and effective members in life.

a) يُعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا ضروريًا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر قيمة فالأشخاص المنظمون جيدًا هم أكثر الأعضاء نجاحًا وفاعلية فى الحياة.

b) يُعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا فرعيًا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر ثمنًا فالأشخاص المنظمون بجد هم أكثر الأعضاء نجاحًا وفاعلية فى الحياة.

c) يُعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا قانونيًا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر قيمة فالأشخاص الرياضيون جيدًا هم أكثر الأعضاء نجاحًا وفاعلية فى الحياة.

d) يُعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا ثانويًا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر قيمة فالأشخاص المنظمون جيدًا هم أكثر الأعضاء ثراءً وفاعلية فى الحياة.

3. Egypt had its leading role in the economic, political, and educational fields, especially in the Middle East. Thus, we should try to help restore this role.

a) كان لمصر دور متحكم فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسية والتعليمية وخاصة فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط، وبالتالى، يجب أن نحاول المساعدة فى استعادة هذا الدور.

b) كان لمصر دور ريادى فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسية والتعليمية وخاصة فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط، وبالتالى، يجب أن نحاول المساعدة فى استعادة هذا الدور.

c) كان لمصر دور ريادى فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسية والتعليمية وخاصة فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط، وبالتالى، يجب أن نحاول المساعدة فى تصحيح هذا الدور.

d) كان لمصر دور ريادى فى المجالات التكنولوجية والسياسية والتعليمية وخاصة فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط، وبالتالى، يجب أن نحاول المساعدة فى استعادة هذا الدور.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. من المهم أن يدرك المزارعون أهمية الحفاظ على الزراعة المستدامة للمحافظة على إمدادات الطعام لنا وللأجيال القادمة، وهكذا نستطيع حل مشكلة نقص الطعام.

a) It is important for farmers to realise the importance of maintaining sustainable agriculture in order to maintain food supplies for us and for future generations. Thus, we can solve the problem of food shortages.

b) It is important for farmers to realise the importance of maintaining attainable agriculture in order to keep food supplies for us and for future generations. Thus, we can solve the problem of food shortages.

c) It is important for farmers to realise the importance of maintaining sustainable agriculture in order to maintain food supplies for us and for future generations. Thus, we can solve the problem of food shortages.

d) It is important for farmers to recognise the importance of maintaining sustainable agriculture so that maintain food supplies for us and for future generations. Thus, we can solve the problem of food efficiency.

5. لن أنتظرك فى محطة القطار لأننى سوف أكون فى دورة الشطرنج عندما تصل إلى القاهرة.

a) I didn't wait for you at the train station because I will be at the chess tour when you will arrive in Cairo.

b) I don't wait for you at the train station because I will be at the chess tournament when you will arrive in Cairo.

c) I won't wait for you at the train station because I will be at the chess tour when you arrived in Cairo.

d) I won't wait for you at the train station because I will be at the chess tournament when you arrive in Cairo.

6. أحد أخطر عيوب الكمبيوتر والتليفون المحمول توسيع الفجوة بين الشباب ووالديهم، حيث يقضون ساعات طويلة فى استخدامهما دون التواصل مع الوالدين والعائلة.

a) One of the most serious disadvantages of computers and mobile phones is the widening gap between young people and their parents, as they spend long hours using them without communicating with parents and family.

b) One of the most serious advantages of computers and mobile phones is the widening gap between young people and their parents, as they spend long hours using them without communicating with parents and family.

c) One of the most serious disadvantages of computers and mobile phones is the shortening gap between young people and their parents, as they spend long hours using them without contacting with parents and family.

d) One of the most serious disadvantages of computers and mobile phones is the widening gap between young people and their parents, as they spend long hours using them without connecting with parents and family.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Trees are very useful. As well as giving us food, what are their other benefits?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Samir is talking to his cousin Ehab after getting a degree at the university.

Ehab : Congratulations, Samir. You finally got your degree.
Samir: Thank you.
Ehab : It must have been hard to pass all these exams.
Samir: (1).. . I worked very hard.
Ehab : What do you plan to do after that?
Samir: I don't know. What do you think?
Ehab : (2).. .
Samir: A governmental job! No, I don't like that. I'm going to start a private business.
Ehab : That's great. (3)..?
Samir: I'm going to take a loan from a bank specialised in financing small projects for young people.
Ehab : You seem to have a plan. How did you know about such a bank?
Samir: (4).. .
Ehab : Anyway, I wish you good luck.

A Glimpse of Revelation II

2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. After his parents' death, by whom was Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) first raised?
2. Who were the first people to believe in Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) and accept Islams?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. What was Prophet Muhammad's (PBUH) profession in his early 20s?
   a) Shepherd. b) Trader. c) Farmer. d) Soldier.
4. Prophet Muhammad (PBUH) began to call people to Islam ....
   a) publicly b) in groups c) in his travels d) secretly

King Lear

3 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Goneril want the King to get rid of his soldiers?
2. Why did Kent hit Goneril's servant, Oswald?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. .... disguises himself so he can continue to work for the King.
   a) Edgar b) Kent c) The Fool d) Gloucester
4. Albany .... his wife's treatment to the King.
   a) approved b) didn't care about
   c) didn't agree d) increased

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- Egypt will remain an oasis of security and safety in the Middle East region.

(B) Translate into English:

- يعتقد الخبراء أن مصر بها كافة مقومات السياحة التى يمكن أن تجعلها فى مقدمة دول العالم السياحية.

Unit 3 Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The food crisis which the war in Ukraine caused showed the importance of .... to assure food supply.
   a) industry b) agriculture c) exploration d) deportation
2. Our teacher mixed two different chemicals with water to prepare the wanted ....
   a) transmit b) transport c) solution d) deduction
3. The government is making great efforts to encourage .... in industry.
   a) destruction b) deterioration c) innovation d) intention
4. When my brother failed the test, my mother couldn't .... her anger and started yelling at him.
   a) consist b) promote c) include d) contain
5. Most chemical factories are polluting and destroying the environment. The synonym of the word "destroy" is ".....................".
   a) damage b) inspect c) create d) establish
6. Farouk El-Baz is one of the greatest experts .... geology, especially in the field of remote sensing.
   a) about b) for c) in d) with
7. A: Why are you switching on the TV? B: I .... a football match.
   a) will watch b) watch
   c) am watching d) am going to watch
8. When I see you tomorrow, I .... you my new book.
   a) will show b) will be showing c) am showing d) show
9. I can't go shopping on Monday morning because I ....
   a) will work b) may work
   c) will be working d) will be worked
10. The population of the world .... to around ten billion by the year 2100.
    a) will increase b) will be increasing
    c) may be increased d) increases
11. Ali .... a good job when he finishes his education.
    a) may be getting b) will probably be getting
    c) gets d) will probably get

12. Nader is going on holiday. This time tomorrow, he .... in the sea.

a) should swim
b) will be swimming
c) will swim
d) may swim

13. I'm sorry, but you need to stay in the office until you .... your work.

a) have finished
b) will finish
c) are finishing
d) had finished

14. When you .... off the train, I .... for you by the ticket machine.

a) get/will wait
b) get/will be waiting
c) have got/will wait
d) get/am going to wait

15. I .... you know as soon as the telegram ....

a) will let/arrives
b) would let/arrives
c) will let/arrived
d) let/had arrived

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You are a citizen of the country you were born in. Usually, citizens live in their country as loyal members of society. Many countries also have options, so people who are not natural-born citizens can become citizens of those countries. When they complete the requirements, they are called naturalised citizens. As a citizen of your country, you have some rights, duties, and responsibilities. The law of any country should guarantee the rights of all citizens and the rights should be the same for all citizens. The rights of citizens are protected in the constitution.

A citizen has the right to speak freely and the right to religious freedom. A citizen who is accused of a crime has a right to a fair trial. In exchange for their rights, citizens have duties and responsibilities. They have a duty to serve in the army when asked. They should obey all laws. In wartime, they must serve in the Armed Forces when required to. They must pay taxes to support the services and programmes of the government. Good citizens vote in elections to express their opinions on how the government should be run.

In addition to national citizenship, people are citizens of a state and a city. They have similar rights and responsibilities at each level of citizenship.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. What protects the rights of the citizen in any country?

a) The citizenship.
b) The responsibilities.
c) The constitution.
d) The trial.

17. The best title for the passage is "..................".

a) Asking for the rights
b) Paying taxes
c) The responsibilities of the citizenship
d) The citizen's rights and responsibilities

18. "Doing what you are told" means ....

a) obeying
b) agreement
c) voting
d) exchanging

19. People who vote in elections to express their opinions are ....

a) volunteers
b) respectable and noble
c) greedy
d) selfish

20. Naturalised citizens are those who ....

a) were born in the same country
b) participate in the elections
c) have duties not rights
d) are asked for a set of requirements

21. When we pay taxes, we perform one of our ....

a) duties
b) rights
c) abilities
d) advantages

22. What is not mentioned about the citizens' rights?

a) To speak freely.
b) To adopt any religion.
c) To practise sports.
d) To be judged fairly.

23. The underlined word "taxes" means ....

a) money given to the bank
b) money given to the prisoners
c) money given to the government
d) services done to the state men

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

– لقد فشلت كل محاولات هدم المجتمع المصرى بسبب الوحدة الوطنية التى تمثل عقبة كبيرة فى وجه كل من يحاول العبث باستقرار الشعب المصرى.

a) All attempts to demolish the Egyptian society have failed because of the national unit, which represents a major step in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the stability of the Egyptian people.

b) All attempts to demolish Egyptian society have failed because of the national unity, which presents a minor obstacle in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the stability of the Egyptian people.

c) All attempts to demolish the Egyptian society have failed because of the national unity, which represents a major obstacle in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the stability of the Egyptian people.

d) All attempts to demolish the Egyptian society have failed because of the national unity, which presents a major obstacle in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the steadiness of the Egyptian people.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the good signs of a civilised society.

a) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يبنون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة فالأخلاق هى حقًا علامات جيدة لمجتمع مثقف.

b) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة فالأخلاق هى حقًا علامات جيدة لمجتمع متحضر.

c) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى القليل من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة فالأخلاق هى حقًا أسباب جيدة لمجتمع متحضر.

d) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة السريعة فالأخلاق هى حقًا علامات جيدة لمجتمع مثقف.

26. Answer the following questions: (The play)

1. Do you think the King has the right to hit Goneril's servant? Why?
2. If you were Albany, would you obey Goneril and stop defending the King so easily? Why?
3. Why do you think the King insisted on keeping a hundred soldiers at his service?

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"There have been several scientific inventions from time to time, and these have made life more comfortable for human beings.
Choose one or two of these inventions to talk about."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 405



< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 4
Changing English



Objectives

Reading	: An article about the effect of messaging on English today; Text messages; A text about Shakespeare and language; A blog post
Writing	: A blog post about mobile phone use and its effects
Listening	: A speaker talking about messaging tips on how to write a successful blog post
Speaking	: A debate
Language	: Reported speech: reporting orders, requests and advice; could/should hove + past participle
Life Skills	: Communication

Study ... Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2



Watch a video



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
abbreviation (n)	اختصار	frown (v) (ed)	يكشر/يعبس	misunderstand (v)	يسىء الفهم
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيرى	innovator (n)	مبدع	necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة
formal (adj)	رسمى	linguist (n)	عالم لغويات	tone (n)	نبرة صوت

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
acronym (n)	اختصار (أوائل حروف الكلمات)	communication (n)	اتصال/تواصل	messaging (n)	المراسلة
actually (adv)	بالفعل	conversation (n)	محادثة	personal (adj)	شخصى
admit (v) (ted)	يعترف	correctly (adv)	بشكل صحيح	positive (adj)	إيجابى
adults (n)	كبار/بالغون	deal (v)	يتناول/يتعامل	punctuation (n)	علامات الترقيم
advantage (n)	ميزة	disadvantage (n)	عيب	require (v) (d)	يتطلب
app (n)	تطبيق	everyday (adj)	يومى	response (n)	رد/استجابة
appear (v) (ed)	يظهر	expression (n)	تعبير	spelling (n)	الهجاء
apply (v) (~~y~~ied)	يتقدم بطلب	face-to-face (adj)	وجهًا لوجه	suitable (adj)	مناسب
arrangement (n)	ترتيب	facial (adj)	وجهى (بالوجه)	teenager (n)	مراهق
author (n)	مؤلف	immediate (adj)	فورى	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
basic (adj)	أساسى	increase (v) (d)	يزيد		
basically (adv)	أساسًا	lovely (adj)	جميل	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر
chat (v) (ted)	يدردش	message (v) (d)	يرسل رسالة		

Workbook Vocabulary

مفردات كتاب التدريبات

ability (n)	قدرة	gift (n)	هدية	regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
blog (n)	مدونة	mark (n)	درجة/علامة	reply (v) (y-ied)	يرد
care (v) (d)	يهتم	meeting (n)	اجتماع	request (n)	طلب
copy (n) (v) (y-ied)	نسخة/ينسخ	online (adj) (adv)	على الإنترنت	selfie (n)	صورة شخصية أمامية
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل	parcel (n)	طرد بريدى	voice (n)	صوت بشرى
fantastic (adj)	رائع	post (n) (v) (ed)	منشورًا/ينشر (على صفحات التواصل)		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .... is an icon used in electronic messages and on websites in order to express a particular idea or feeling.
   a) picture b) emoji c) number d) app
2. My father .... with annoyance when he read my brother's exam results.
   a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced
3. The romantic music perfectly matches the .... of the film about a love story.
   a) sound b) note c) intention d) tone
4. At airports, all .... belongings should be clearly marked with the owner's name.
   a) personal b) common c) public d) general
5. At cinemas, seats in the front row are not .... the best as they can be too close to the screen.
   a) correctly b) improbably c) necessarily d) excitedly
6. The interviewer told me that 3,000 pounds is the .... salary without overtime or tips.
   a) improper b) unimportant c) trivial d) basic
7. Many girls are used to staying up all night .... with their friends online.
   a) copying b) chatting c) admitting d) reading
8. The zookeeper has to .... visitors that some of the zoo animals are dangerous.
   a) recommend b) fail c) deal d) warn

9. A .... is a young person between thirteen and nineteen years old.

a) teenager
b) kid
c) grown up
d) toddler

10. With no phone or radio equipment, the lost tourist had no means of ....

a) punctuation
b) connection
c) affection
d) communication

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

as soon as possible بأسرع ما يمكن	introduce new ideas يقدم أفكارًا جديدة	post personal information ينشر معلومات شخصية
get upset يصبح منزعجًا	make communication quicker يجعل الاتصالات أسرع	stay in touch with يبقى على اتصال مع
have much fun يتمتع بمرح كبير	pass an exam يجتاز اختبارًا	take a selfie يأخذ صورة شخصية (أمامية)
advice about نصيحة بشأن	deal with يتعامل مع	talk to يتحدث إلى
apply for يتقدم لوظيفة	go back يرجع	thank ...for يشكر... على

Message Abbreviations اختصارات الرسائل النصية

Abbreviation	Full Form	Meaning
1. LOL	Laugh out loud	اضحك عاليًا
2. cul8r	See you later	أراك فيما بعد
3. gr8	Great!	رائع
4. plz	Please	من فضلك
5. idk	I don't know	لا أعرف
6. 2moro	Tomorrow	غدًا
7. thx	Thank you	شكرًا
8. ASAP	As soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
communicate	يتواصل	communication	اتصال / تواصل	communicative	اتصالى
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر
fail	يفشل	failure	فشل / شخص فاشل	failing	فاشل
innovate	يبدع	innovation innovator	إبداع مبدع	innovative	إبداعى
regret	يأسف / يندم	regret	أسف / ندم	regretful regrettable	نادم يؤسف عليه
require	يتطلب	requirement	متطلب	required	مطلوب
warn	يحذر	warning	تحذير	warning	تحذيرى

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- I'd like to express my gratitude to you. (v)
- Your expression is meaningful and clear. (n)
- Teachers' language should be expressive. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
basic	أساسى	main/primary	minor/extra	فرعى / إضافى
care	يهتم	pay attention/consider	ignore/disregard	يتجاهل /يستهين
deal	يتعامل	handle	refuse/deny	يرفض /ينكر
frown	يكشر / لا يستحسن	disapprove/pout	cheer approve/smile	يبتهج يقبل / يبتسم
misunderstand	يسيء الفهم	misjudge	understand/perceive	يفهم
regret	يأسف/يندم	repent	praise/delight	يمدح / يفرح
request	طلب	demand/seek	reply/answer	يرد
require	يتطلب	need/desire	offer/dislike	يعرض / يكره
response	رد / استجابة	reaction	request/question	طلب / تساؤل
warn	يحذر	alert	mislead/ignore	يخدع / يتجاهل

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I completely approve of my friend's actions. The verb "approve" is an antonym for the verb "..................".
   a) agree b) accept c) frown d) expire
2. I would like to express my thanks for your kindness. The noun of the verb "express" is ....
   a) expresses b) expression c) expressive d) expressed
3. A head teacher should .... in touch with students and teachers' everyday demands.
   a) lose b) miss c) pass d) stay
4. The police officers received special training in how to deal .... families of crime victims.
   a) in b) at c) with d) of
5. My sister .... very upset to hear that the party had been cancelled.
   a) took b) made c) got d) did
6. The company is using a computerised system نظام حاسوبى to detect early .... signs of a fire.
   a) warn b) warning c) warring d) warned
7. All tourists visiting Paris insist on .... a selfie in front of the Eiffel Tower.
   a) taking b) doing c) drawing d) making
8. Working hard all the year-round will help you .... all exams.
   a) succeed b) pass c) fail d) degrade
9. The designer .... new ideas and a new line of clothes in his last show.
   a) implied b) refused c) introduced d) agreed
10. Mother warned me that the stove was still hot. The verb "warn" is a synonym for the verb "..................".
    a) apply b) ignore c) deny d) alert

Reading Text 

Plz read this article ASAP. It's gr8. Hope u  it! 

For any readers who can't understand the language of text messaging, the translation is: *Please read this article as soon as possible. It's great. I hope you like it.*

In text messages, abbreviations, emojis and numbers are all used to make communication quicker. The language of text messages doesn't require correct spelling, or difficult grammar and punctuation.

Messaging language is appearing in everyday English more often. When people write emails, many of them use a lot of abbreviations and emojis 😄 . Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!!!!!![1]

So, is messaging language damaging English? Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable in formal emails. And now teachers are worried that some teenagers are no longer able to speak or write using English correctly.

However, some linguists suggest that people who use messaging language are actually language innovators, introducing new ideas into English.[2]

They argue that messaging language is quick, short and communicates a lot in a small space.

Whether or not you like messaging language, English is continuing to change. Perhaps it would be a good idea to learn some of the basic abbreviations so you can enjoy talking to your friends with fun, short messages!

 **Notes on some sentences:** ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- تستخدم (others) بمعنى الآخرين وتشير إلى الاسم المذكور قبلها (people)

٢- الجملة أصلها

- people who use messaging language are actually language innovators, who introduce new ideas into English.

حذف الضمير واستخدمت صيغة (verb + ing) لأن الجملة مبنية للمعلوم.

Scan & listen



Listening Text



Presenter : Hello everyone, thanks for joining me today on Afternoon Talktime. And today we are talking about messaging. My guest today is Dr Magda Morsy. She is the author of the book A Guide to Messaging which encourages us to use messaging positively. Welcome to the programme, Magda.

Dr Magda : Thank you. It's lovely to be here.

Presenter : So, many parents are worried about their children and messaging. I myself have a 15-year-old daughter and we had an example of a messaging problem just yesterday when she came down to dinner very upset. She couldn't stop crying. Eventually, she admitted that she was upset because of her friend. They were messaging and having fun, but then my daughter, Talia, had written LOL - laugh out loud - in response to a photo her friend, Mona, had posted of herself. Talia thought it was a funny photo. She waited for an hour, but Mona didn't reply. Talia couldn't understand what the problem was[1] and was worried that Mona was upset with her.

Dr Magda : This is a good example of why we need to be aware of the advantages and disadvantages of messaging, and how it can very easily make us worried and upset if we get it wrong.

Presenter : Because messaging is different to speaking face-to-face, isn't it?

Dr Magda : Exactly! Sometimes face-to-face communication can be confusing, it's easy to feel the other person isn't listening for example, or isn't interested in what you are saying, but messaging can be much more confusing. And this is basically because you can't see the other person's face – is he or she smiling or frowning? And you can't hear their voice – are they angry? Are they making a joke? Are they feeling sad? And you can't see their body movements. When we speak to someone face-to-face, we notice all these things; facial expressions, body movements, and the tone of what they are saying. When we message, we have to guess a lot of these things. This means we can often misunderstand what the other person is trying to communicate.



Notes on some sentences:

ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- لاحـظ اسـتخدام صيغـة الجملة (فاعـل + فعل) بعد أداة الاسـتفهام (الربـط) (what) لأن الجملـة فى الصيغة الخبرية وليست الاستفهامية.

Presenter : So, that's the negative side of messaging. Is there a positive side?

Dr Magda : Yes, of course. Messaging is great for staying in touch with friends but remember that messaging is designed to be short and quick so don't expect to have long conversations, and don't get upset when you get one word or even an abbreviation or acronym as a response to your message.

Presenter : So, what should my daughter, Talia, have done yesterday evening?

Dr Magda : Well, first of all, she shouldn't have got upset so quickly. Just because you don't get an immediate reply does not necessarily mean that the person is not interested in chatting with you. People are busy and they have got other things to do. So, she shouldn't have sat in her room for an hour looking at her phone and waiting for Mona to reply. She should have put her phone down and done something else and checked her phone later. And of course, if she was really worried, she could have called and spoken to Mona. She could have messaged and said, 'Can I call you?'

Presenter : So, I think Dr Magda is telling us to remember that sometimes more traditional communication is important.

Dr Magda : I am! Absolutely. Messaging is one form of communication, not the only form of communication.

Presenter : Great – thank you, Dr Magda Morsy. Next on the programme

Notes on Vocabulary

1	everyday (adj) يومى (صفة يأتى بعدها اسم)	Exercise should be part of your everyday activities.
	every day (adv) كل يوم (ظرف)	My father drives us to school every day.
2	communicate يتواصل/يتفاهم	People use more than words when they communicate with each other.
	contact يتصل بـ/يحتك بـ/اتصال	- As my friend is abroad, we contact by email. - There is very little contact between the two cities.
	connect يصل/يربط بين شيئين	The railway connects Cairo with most cities in Egypt.

3	make يستخدم الفعل (make) بمعنى يجعل بأكثر من صيغة:	1. make + مفعول + (to) مصدر الفعل بدون - We make our children read simple stories. 2. make + مفعول + adjective - The actor's new film made him famous. 3. make + مفعول + adjective + (to) + مصدر الفعل - The internet makes it easy to communicate with our friends.
4	meeting اجتماع (لأشخاص غالبًا ينتمون لمكان واحد)	The staff are having a meeting next week to discuss the company's problems.
	conference مؤتمر (لأشخاص غالبًا من أماكن مختلفة)	The Arab Summit Conference is held in March every year.
	interview مقابلة شخصية لـ (وظيفة/صحافة/إذاعة)	- Mary has an interview next week for a teaching job in Paris. - A famous reporter is having an interview with the President tonight.
	appointment موعد مع (شخص/طبيب)	I'd like to make an appointment to see the doctor.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The staff .... was expected to finish at four o'clock, but it took much longer.
   a) meeting b) conference c) interview d) race
2. Through the internet, we can now .... instantly with people on the other side of the world.
   a) contact b) communicate c) connect d) tie
3. The internet has become part of all young people's .... life.
   a) every day b) everyday c) day d) days
4. Every patient in the hospital must give the name of someone who can be .... in case of emergency.
   a) communicated b) connected c) contacted d) linked
5. Egypt successfully hosted the UN Climate Change .... in November 2022.
   a) Meeting b) Conference c) Interview d) Appointment
6. These three parts of the brain are closely ....
   a) connected b) contacted c) communicated d) chattered
7. My parents always .... my little brother do his homework before going to bed.
   a) make b) advise c) blame d) ask
8. The young athlete has had many .... on TV channels since she became an Olympic champion.
   a) reviews b) conferences c) interviews d) meetings



Practise more

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. I think you've .... what I'm saying. You behaved wrongly.
   a) misdeemed b) misrelated c) misprinted d) misunderstood
2. Some experts say that expensive articles are not .... better than cheaper ones.
   a) regularly b) necessarily c) gradually d) probably
3. When the officer spoke to the young man, his .... was accusatory اتهامى.
   a) tone b) ton c) tune d) turn
4. My family have had a very .... influence on me and helped me succeed in life.
   a) passive b) reflexive c) negative d) positive
5. A/An .... is someone who studies or teaches the science of languages.
   a) linguist b) botanist c) astrologist d) author
6. In English, 'Dr' is written as a/an .... of 'Doctor'.
   a) form b) emoji c) abbreviation d) replacement
7. A/An .... agreement between the two countries was signed to end the conflict.
   a) normal b) formal c) informal d) expressive
8. Most people nowadays are aware of some of the .... rules of healthy living.
   a) distant b) extra c) additional d) basic
9. When Wael behaved badly, his mother .... and shook her head.
   a) frowned b) laughed c) regretted d) chatted
10. You are so lucky to live here with all this .... countryside around you.
    a) hateful b) lovely c) confusing d) pleased
11. Online shopping .... less time and effort than going around the shops.
    a) requires b) acquires c) inquires d) protects
12. Not speaking English is a/an .... for you on applying for a job at a foreign company.
    a) advantage b) merit c) disadvantage d) expression
13. After questioning him استجوابه, the criminal .... the murder and was sent to prison.
    a) expressed b) warned c) disbelieved d) admitted
14. Sayed Darwish was one of the greatest .... of the 20th century music.
    a) players b) editors c) explorers d) innovators
15. If companies .... information on their websites or social media, everyone has access to it.
    a) request b) innovate c) post d) respond

16. The scientist's book is .... as a text for a course in beginning chemistry.
a) suitable b) avoidable c) detectable d) deniable

17. Being tall gave the young player a/an .... over the other players.
a) disadvantage b) care c) advantage d) experience

18. The bride's parents were busy making last-minute .... for the wedding.
a) detentions b) arrangements c) punishments d) regulations

19. The cost of the trip to Sharm El-Sheikh is 1,000 pounds for .... and 500 pounds for children.
a) enemies b) foreigners c) adults d) babies

20. The driver suffered a/an .... cut in the accident and had to have plastic surgery.
a) acceptable b) helpful c) lunar d) facial

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. She lacks the most basic skills necessary for the job. The synonym for the word "basic" is "..................".
a) minor b) main c) extra d) unnecessary

22. The famous player posted a series of selfies that he .... during his vacation on his Instagram yesterday.
a) did b) left c) made d) took

23. Mona spent a long time talking .... her grandmother as she likes her much.
a) on b) in c) to d) for

24. Fortunately, I was able to .... in touch with most of my secondary school friends.
a) stay b) waste c) lose d) save

25. The call centre worker apologised to me and said that not all complaints are dealt .... so easily.
a) at b) with c) for d) away

26. Pets require a lot of care and attention. The verb "require" is similar in meaning to "..................".
a) need b) refuse c) apply d) inspect

27. Smartphones and internet connections have .... communication quicker and easier.
a) done b) given c) made d) taken

28. When it was first introduced, the electric car was described as one of the ten most .... products of the year.
a) innovate b) innovates c) innovative d) innovation

29. We discussed different ways of dealing with the customers' complaints. The verb "deal" is the opposite in meaning of "..................".
a) reply b) handle c) deny d) inquire

30. Deaf people communicate in sign language. The adjective of the verb "communicate" is ....
a) communicates b) communication
c) communicated d) communicative

31. The construction of the new road will probably cause some increase .... traffic delays.
a) at b) of c) in d) for

32. The Book Fair is open .... from 25th January until 8th February.
a) every day b) everyday c) day d) days

33. There were buses that .... the two villages not only to each other but also with the city.
a) contacted b) communicated c) connected d) separated

34. The secretary says that the manager has no free .... to meet customers this week.
a) interviews b) appointments c) meetings d) conferences

35. I regret leaving school so young. The verb "regret" is similar in meaning to ....
a) delay b) delight c) praise d) repent

Longman and Previous Exams

36. Nowadays, mass media helps us .... with each other easily. [Longman]
a) connect b) communicate c) join d) link

37. Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable for .... emails. [Longman]
a) formal b) informal c) foreign d) fluent

38. A .... is the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking. [Longman]
a) tan b) tune c) ton d) tone

39. This young man is a/an ....; he isn't afraid to try something new. He introduces changes and new ideas. [Longman]
a) innovator b) discoverer c) explorer d) surveyor

40. The language of text messages doesn't .... correct spelling. [Longman]
a) inquire b) acquire c) require d) enquire

41. WHO is a/an .... of "World Health Organisation". (المنيا - إدارة المنيا)
a) suffix b) prefix c) antonym d) abbreviation

42. When I told her the news, she .... at me, clearly annoyed. (القاهرة - إدارة المطرية)
a) frowned b) smiled c) laughed d) climbed

43. We don't usually use .... English when we send text messages. (المنوفية - إدارة الباجور)
a) informal b) formal c) usual d) normal

44. I never expected you to .... me. I'm really shocked. (القاهرة - إدارة دار السلام)
a) misunderstand b) research
c) communicate d) respect

45. I don't like to discuss this problem with you. It's .... (الجيزة - إدارة جنوب)
a) personnel b) personally c) personality d) personal



Reported Speech

الكلام المنقول (غير المباشر)

Direct Speech:

هو الكلام الذى يأتى على لسان الشخص مباشرة كما ينطقه هو، ويوضع الكلام المباشر بين علامات اقتباس " ".

- My brother said to me, "Call me when you go home".

Indirect/Reported Speech:

الكلام غير المباشر هو نقل كلام شخص فى وقت غير وقت الكلام وهذا يستلزم تغيير الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان.

- My brother asked me to call him when I went home.

Reported imperatives, requests, suggestions and advice:

تحويل الأمر والطلب والنصيحة والاقتراح إلى غير المباشر:

لتحويل الأمر والطلب والاقتراح والنصيحة لغير المباشر، نتبع الآتى:

1 يتكون فعل القول فى الجملة الأمرية من أحد الأفعال الآتية:

advise	ينصح	help	يساعد	teach	يعلم
ask	يسأل	instruct	يوجه / يعلم	tell	يخبر
encourage	يشجع	invite	يدعو	want	يريد
expect	يتوقع	order	يأمر	warn	يحذر

2 تلغى علامات الاقتباس فى الجملة الأمرية المحولة ونربطها بـ to/ not to وبعدها المصدر.

- The teacher said to us, "Stop talking."
- The teacher told/ asked/ ordered us to stop talking.
- My mother said to me, "If I were you, I'd have a holiday and relax."
- My mother advised me to have a holiday and relax.
- My father said to me, "Don't waste time."
- My father advised me not to waste time.
- Ali said to his friend, "Study science at university."
- Ali encouraged his friend to study science at university.

لاحظ

لكى تختارين to/ not to يجب أن ترجع بالجملة إلى أصلها قبل التحويل، فهناك أفعال ممكن أن تتحير فى الربط بعدها لأن المعنى باللغة العربية يمكن أن يتماشى مع الجملة مثل:

- He warned his daughter (to/ not to) walk in the dark alone.

فلربما تترجم وتقول هو حذر ابنته أن تمشى فى الظلام وتختار to وهذا خطأ، لأن أصل الجملة إما مثبتًا فنختار to أو منفيًا فنختار not to وأصل الجملة هنا هو ... Don't walk فيكون الاختيار بالطبع not to.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The flight attendant instructed us .... our safety belts before taking off.
   a) not to fasten b) fastening c) to fasten d) don't fasten
2. My friend advised me .... nervous before the sports match.
   a) not to be b) to be c) be d) that I be
3. Ola said to Reham, " .... the hotel your CV to apply for the job".
   a) Not to send b) Send c) Sending d) To send
4. Fatma .... Huda to revise for the test.
   a) said b) advised c) encouraged d) both b & c
5. The teacher warned the students .... to write their names at the top of the page.
   a) to forget b) forgetting c) not to forget d) that they forget

1 could/couldn't

يوجد العديد من الوظائف لاستخدام could منها ما هو مضارع، ومنها ما هو ماضٍ ولكن ما يهمنا فى هذا الجزء هو استخدام الماضى:

could = was/ were able to

could + inf. مصدر

استطاعة فعل شيء فى الماضى (مقدرة بوجه عام).

- I could read and write by the time I was 6 years old.
- She could play the violin when she was ten.

was/ were able to = managed to + inf. مصدر

استطاعة فعل شيء فى موقف معين (بعد مجهود).

- The question was difficult, but I was able to answer it.
- Thanks to his help, I was able to carry the heavy box.

couldn't + inf. مصدر

- عدم استطاعة فعل شيء فى الماضى.

- I couldn't answer all the questions. The exam was difficult.
- I wasn't able to get the exact information about the project.

- عدم استطاعة، لأن الشيء غير قانونى against the law.

- He couldn't smoke on the metro as smoking wasn't allowed.

2 could/ couldn't have + P.P.

could have + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل

كان فى الاستطاعة فعل شىء ولم نفعله.

- He went to school on foot, but he could have gone by bus.

من الممكن أنه تم فعل كذا. (احتمال حدوث شىء فى الماضى ولكن بدون تأكيد)

- I haven't seen him for two weeks. He could have travelled.

لاحظ أن كلمة (كان من الممكن فعل كذا) تعبر عن شيئين، أما استطاعة أو احتمال، وإذا كان المعنى احتمال فإن could تساوى might ويكون فى الجملة that أو جملة كاملة بعد possible، وإذا كانت استطاعة نجد ضمير مفعول أو اسم بعد for.

- It's possible that he bought a new car.

من الممكن أنه اشترى سيارة جديدة.

- He could (might) have bought a new car.

هنا احتمال أنه اشترى سيارة جديدة.

- It was possible for him to buy a new car.

كان من الممكن (المستطاع) له أن يشترى سيارة جديدة. فإن كان قد اشترى نستخدم:

- He could buy a new car.

وإن كان فى استطاعته ولم يشترِ نستخدم:

- He could have bought a new car, but he preferred to complete building the house.

couldn't have + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل

شىء لم يكن محتملًا حدوثه فى الماضى أو مستحيلًا.

- You couldn't have seen Dina today. She is in Germany at the moment.
- We got fantastic support – we couldn't have asked for more.

حصلنا على دعم ممتاز وكان مستحيلًا أن نطلب أكثر من ذلك. (شىء كان جيدًا ولم نتخيل أفضل منه)

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can't play football now, but I .... when I was younger.
   a) couldn't b) could have c) should have d) could
2. The copier isn't working. You .... the ink in a wrong way.
   a) should have changed b) could change
   c) couldn't have changed d) could have changed
3. He .... at work yesterday. I looked for him in all buildings.
   a) shouldn't have been b) could have been
   c) couldn't have been d) could be
4. I was so sick yesterday that I .... get out of my bed.
   a) can't b) couldn't c) shouldn't d) could
5. Galal was lucky. He .... hurt himself when he fell, but he was OK.
   a) could b) could have c) should have d) couldn't have

3 Should/ shouldn't have + P.P. for regrets للنـدم

should have + P.P. = ought to have + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل

شيء لم يتم في الماضي وكان واجبًا فعله (لوم/ندم)

- He should have studied harder to pass the exam.
- I should have saved enough money for our holiday.
- I ought to have stopped my son from wasting his time.

shouldn't have + P.P. = oughtn't to have + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل

شيء تم في الماضي ولم يكن واجبًا فعله (لوم/ندم)

- He shouldn't have wasted his time. He is sorry now.
- I shouldn't have punished him. It wasn't a serious mistake.
- I oughtn't to have exceeded the speed limit. I was fined.

Language Check point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There were so many people in the house. .... his father before inviting all his friends?
   a) He should have asked b) Should he have asked
   c) Should he ask d) He should ask
2. He is so ill. I think they .... a doctor earlier.
   a) shouldn't have consulted b) couldn't have consulted
   c) should consult d) should have consulted
3. I .... Ali during his sleeping hours, but I forgot.
   a) shouldn't have phoned b) couldn't have phoned
   c) could have phoned d) should have phoned
4. You should have been nicer to Asmaa. She was furious. This is a kind of ....
   a) suggestion b) regret c) blame d) offer
5. I wasted the time doing nothing at the club. I .... a book to read.
   a) should bring b) ought to bring
   c) shouldn't have brought d) ought to have brought

PASSIVE

- عند استخدام modal verbs في المبنى للمجهول إذا كان بعدهم المصدر نستخدم be + P.P. وإذا كان بعدهم have + P.P. نستخدم have been + P.P.

Examples

- The Pyramids could be visited tomorrow. We aren't sure.
- The bills should have been paid two weeks ago.

Practice ... Language General Exercises



Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She .... a new phone, but she didn't.

a) could buy
b) could have bought
c) had to buy
d) shouldn't have bought

2. Sameh and Kareem played a match yesterday. Kareem played well, but Sameh .... beat him.

a) managed to
b) couldn't
c) wasn't able to
d) can

3. My friend was absent yesterday. He .... ill, but I'm not sure.

a) should have been
b) was
c) couldn't have been
d) could have been

4. The doctor .... me to drink plenty of water.

a) suggested
b) begged
c) told
d) warned

5. I didn't see Omar at the party last night. He .... early.

a) could have left
b) should have left
c) couldn't have left
d) might leave

6. You didn't pass the exam. You .... harder, but you wasted so much time.

a) shouldn't have studied
b) could have studied
c) could study
d) must have studied

7. She warned her daughter .... near the campfire because it was dangerous.

a) going
b) that she goes
c) not to go
d) to go

8. My father's keys are on the table. He .... to work by car.

a) could go
b) had to go
c) shouldn't have gone
d) couldn't have gone

9. He .... about the party from me. I haven't told anyone yet!

a) couldn't have known
b) shouldn't have known
c) could know
d) had to know

10. He was thirsty during the trip. He .... more water.

a) could buy
b) should have bought
c) had to buy
d) shouldn't have bought

11. Ahmed's father advised him .... the front door at night.

a) for locking
b) that he locks
c) to lock
d) be locking

12. I .... earlier to catch the train. I will take the next one.

a) shouldn't have left
b) should leave
c) ought to have left
d) had to leave

13. I .... the bike in the middle of the street. It was wrong of me to do that.

a) should have ridden
b) couldn't ride
c) could have ridden
d) shouldn't have ridden

14. I didn't want to delay Osama, so I asked him ....

a) not to wait for me if I was late
b) to wait for me if I'm late
c) to wait for me if I was late
d) not to wait for me if I'm late

15. You .... the boat if you had been here at one o'clock, but it's gone now and it's too late.

a) might catch
b) could have caught
c) could catch
d) shouldn't have caught

16. Fatma .... phoned me before going out. It was desirable.

a) should have
b) shouldn't have
c) must have
d) needn't have

17. I was sitting at the back of the theatre and .... very well.

a) can't hear
b) couldn't hear
c) shouldn't have heard
d) shouldn't hear

18. My brother .... to Cambridge University, but he decided to study in Egypt.

a) shouldn't have gone
b) couldn't have gone
c) could have gone
d) could go

19. You .... yourself yesterday. It was the right thing to do, but you didn't do it.

a) shouldn't behave
b) could behave
c) shouldn't have behaved
d) ought to have behaved

20. The tour guide warned the tourists .... into the desert on their own.

a) that they go
b) not to go
c) to go
d) going

Longman and Previous Exams

21. We .... meat when we went to the market; it was possible, but we preferred to buy fish. Longman

a) shouldn't have bought
b) could have bought
c) needn't buy
d) couldn't have bought

22. I should have obeyed my mother. This sentence shows .... Longman

a) suggestion
b) positive advice
c) regret
d) possibility

23. The old man gave us positive advice. He .... us .... hobbies in our free time. Longman

a) encouraged / to practise
b) encouraged / for practising
c) discouraged / from practising
d) encouraged / not to practise

24. Adel didn't go to school yesterday; he .... sick. Who knows? Longman

a) must have been
b) had to be
c) should have been
d) could have been

25. The Japanese played well, but the Egyptian team .... We are all very proud of our Egyptian team. Longman

a) isn't able to win
b) should have been won
c) was able to win
d) couldn't have won

26. He .... to bed earlier last night. He is really sleepy and tired today. (المعصرة - القاهرة)

a) shouldn't have gone
b) should have gone
c) shouldn't go
d) should go

27. Teachers often instruct their students .... the best use of their time. (بنها - القليوبية)

a) not to making
b) not to make
c) to make
d) to making

28. Menna .... in the club last night; she was busy working in her office. (منوف - المنوفية)

a) should have been
b) could have been
c) mustn't have been
d) couldn't have been

29. The situation was bad, but it .... worse. (حوش عيسى - البحيرة)

a) could have been
b) should have been
c) could be
d) shouldn't have been

30. I shouldn't have parked my car here. The underlined words express a/an .... (إدارة قها)

a) prohibition
b) necessity
c) regret
d) advice

Test yourself Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2



Take a test

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. He said that his first reaction was shock. The word "reaction" is similar in meaning to the noun "..................".
   a) response b) activity c) ability d) relaxation
2. My mother .... upset when I told her that I lost my mobile at school.
   a) made b) reached c) got d) grew
3. My father believes that religion has a/an .... influence on our society as it helps to implant morals.
   a) unknown b) passive c) positive d) negative
4. Some distant villages in Africa lack .... services such as water and electricity.
   a) minor b) unimportant c) trivial d) basic
5. Mohamed .... angrily when he read the letter that the office sent him.
   a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced
6. It took the company a week to reply to my letter. The verb "reply" can be the opposite to the verb "..................".
   a) accept b) request c) offer d) answer
7. We all .... about our children and hate to see them hurt in any way.
   a) care b) ignore c) devise d) behave
8. The young couple gave each other some .... at Christmas.
   a) prizes b) gifts c) emojis d) marks
9. Many people don't buy newspapers anymore as they read them ....
   a) everyday b) inline c) offline d) online
10. The postman brought a/an .... and some letters for you.
    a) icon b) sale c) parcel d) invention
11. I .... selling my car. It was the worst decision I've ever made.
    a) regret b) admit c) recommend d) wish
12. It is said that dolphins use sound to .... with each other.
    a) contact b) connect c) communicate d) link
13. All staff members are expected to attend the next important .... about the company's future.
    a) conference b) interview c) meeting d) appointment
14. You should .... for the job of a receptionist in person as there will be a primary interview.
    a) deal b) apply c) comply d) imply
15. The customer complained that he .... the store six weeks ago and didn't receive his order yet.
    a) messaged b) warned c) chatted d) regretted

Language

16. Sara's mother warned her .... the oven because it was hot.
a) don't touch b) to touch
c) touching d) not to touch

17. I .... my car in a "No parking area". I had to pay a fine.
a) shouldn't have parked b) couldn't have parked
c) couldn't park d) shouldn't park

18. He has got 80% only. He .... 90% if he had studied more.
a) could get b) should have got
c) must have got d) could have got

19. The policeman instructed the people .... so fast.
a) not to drive b) to drive c) that drive d) driving

20. I got up late this morning; I .... up late last night.
a) should have stayed b) could have stayed
c) shouldn't have stayed d) needn't stay

21. I phoned the plumber because I .... smell gas in the kitchen.
a) can b) could c) managed to d) couldn't

22. Habiba .... the book, but she borrowed it from the library instead.
a) could buy b) shouldn't have bought
c) could have bought d) was able to

23. The teacher warned the students .... to do their homework daily.
a) to forget b) forgetting c) not to forget d) that they forget

24. Our neighbours .... down the tree in their garden. It was a really beautiful tree.
a) shouldn't have cut b) mustn't have cut
c) could have cut d) could cut

25. A: I had to walk home yesterday. I had no money for my fare.
B: Why didn't you tell me! I .... you the money!
a) shouldn't have lent b) couldn't have lent
c) could have lent d) could lend

26. .... you speak French when you went to the university in Paris or did you learn later?
a) Can b) Could c) Couldn't d) Should

27. I .... to .... by a doctor.
a) was advised/see b) was advised/be seen
c) advised/be seen d) advised/see

28. My cousin .... read and write when he was five.
a) can b) must c) may d) could

29. His health condition got worse and worse. He .... a doctor earlier.
a) shouldn't have seen b) ought to have seen
c) could see d) shouldn't see

30. The boys .... left school before the end of the day. They were punished.
a) shouldn't have b) must be
c) should have d) could have been





A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

anymore (adv) لم يعد	grandparents (n) أجداد	receive (v) (d) يتسلم/يتلقى
blog post (n) منشور على مدونة	headline (n) عنوان	section (n) قسم
check (v) (ed) يراجع/يفحص	image (n) صورة	society (n) مجتمع
cite (v) (d) ينوه/يذكر	key (adj) رئيسى	sub-heading (n) عنوان فرعى
conclusion (n) خاتمة/خلاصة	modern (adj) حديث/عصرى	suffix (n) لاحقة (مقطع يُضاف لآخر الكلمة)
debate (n) مناظرة	partner (n) شريك/رفيق	thesaurus (n) موسوعة مفردات
disagree (v) (d) يعترض/يخالف	prefix (n) بادئة (مقطع يُضاف لأول الكلمة)	tips (n) نصائح
findings (n) اكتشافات	procedure (n) إجراء	uncomfortable (adj) غير مريح
frequently (adv) بشكل متكرر	proper (adj) مناسب/صحيح	

Workbook Vocabulary مفردات كتاب التدريبات

age (n) عمر/عصر	Latin (n) (adj) اللغة اللاتينية/لاتينى	Romans (n) الرومان
aim (n) هدف	member (n) عضو/فرد	Russian (n) (adj) روسى
Angles (n) قبائل الأنجلو الإنجليزية	powerful (adj) قوى/ذو نفوذ	Saxons (n) قبائل الساكسون الإنجليزية
comment (n) (v) (ed) تعليق/يعلق	recognisable (adj) يمكن تمييزه/مميز	site (n) موقع
compare (v) (d) يقارن	record (n) (v) (ed) سجل/يسجل	social media (n) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
Greek (adj) يونانى	remain (v) (ed) يبقى/يظل	summarise (v) (d) يلخص
helicopter (n) طائرة مروحية هليكوبتر	report (n) (v) (ed) تقرير/يبلغ عن تقرير	survey (n) دراسة/تقييم
hobby (n) هواية	result (n) نتيجة	title (n) عنوان
interest (n) (v) (ed) اهتمام/يثير اهتمامًا	reuse (v) (d) يعيد استخدام	Vikings (n) غزاة الشمال (الفايكنج)

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The terrible accident has caused a strong .... on road safety.
   a) agreement b) debate c) search d) finding
2. The children's regular visits give their .... a great pleasure.
   a) grandchildren b) sons c) grandparents d) visitors
3. The old man's constant مستمرة coughing is the .... of many years of smoking.
   a) reason b) purpose c) conclusion d) result
4. The teacher's .... on my work are very clear and to the point.
   a) comments b) interests c) products d) records
5. The new journalist's .... wasn't published as it contained some spelling and grammar mistakes.
   a) conclusions b) reports c) conferences d) procedures
6. My cousin and I were business ...., but not friends.
   a) parts b) surgeons c) servants d) partners
7. Most news magazines have a/an .... devoted to external affairs.
   a) site b) centre c) section d) aim
8. The soldiers were ordered to .... at their posts until they received new orders.
   a) remain b) remind c) last d) check
9. My mother's childhood is .... in the diaries she has kept for years.
   a) resulted b) explored c) received d) recorded
10. Investigators المحققون urged that safety .... at the site should be improved.
   a) reports b) procedures c) articles d) aims

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

at that time	فى ذلك الوقت	give advice	يعطى نصيحة	keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
ever since	منذ ذلك الحين	give an opinion	يعطى رأيًا	take/make notes	يدون ملاحظات
feel special	يشعر أنه مميز	in general	بشكل عام	make different sounds	يصدر أصواتًا مختلفة
add to/into	يضيف إلى	suitable for	مناسب لـ	talk about	يتحدث عن
disagree with	لا يتفق مع	take ... away	يأخذ بعيدًا عن		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	comparative	مقارن
disagree	يخالف / يعترض	disagreement	عدم اتفاق	disagreeable	غير مستحب
find	يجد	finding	اكتشاف	found	مكتشَف
interest	يثير الاهتمام	interest	اهتمام	interesting interested	شيق مهتم
recognise	يتعرف على / يميز	recognition	تمييز	recognisable	مميز (يمكن تمييزه)
record	يسجل	record	سجل	recorded recordable	مسجل قابل للتسجيل

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- The new exhibit at the museum will interest many art enthusiasts. (v)
- Her interest in environmental science led her to pursue a degree in biology. (n)
- The lecture was quite interesting, and it kept everyone engaged. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
compare	يقارن	contrast/ analyse	discard/ neglect	يستبعد/يهمل
debate	مناظرة	argument/ controversy	agreement/ harmony	اتفاق/انسجام
interest	اهتمام	concern/ passion	indifference/ boredom	لا مبالاة/ملل
modern	حديث / عصرى	contemporary/ modernised	old/ ancient	قديم
procedure	إجراء	method/ proceeding	inaction/ inactivity	عدم إجراء / عدم نشاط
proper	مناسب/صحيح	convenient/ suitable	improper/ inappropriate	غير مناسب
recognisable	مميز	definite/ obvious	ambiguous/ indefinite	غامض / غير محدد
report	يبلغ	inform/ record	hide/conceal	يخفى
survey	دراسة/تقييم	analysis/ inquiry	negligence	إهمال

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My younger sister always asks me to .... her my opinion of her clothes.
   a) take b) give c) receive d) deliver
2. If you contrast the writer's early writing with her later work, you can see that she improved. The word "contrast" is similar in meaning to the word ....
   a) compare b) sum up
   c) record d) find
3. The Eiffel Tower in Paris is an instantly .... landmark.
   a) recognise b) recognition
   c) recognisable d) forgettable
4. The hard-working student is used to .... notes during his lectures.
   a) filling b) drawing c) doing d) taking
5. The applicant's experience makes her more suitable .... the job.
   a) for b) about c) on d) over
6. Some of the team disagreed with the new coach, but they were too afraid to say so. The noun from the verb "disagree" is "..................".
   a) disagree b) disagreement
   c) disagreed d) disagreeable
7. Girls like to .... special, so they often buy new clothes and accessories.
   a) feel b) make c) work d) help
8. The new gardener is planning to add some new flowers .... the garden.
   a) with b) for c) from d) to
9. Space travel is one of the wonders of modern science. The antonym of the adjective "modern" is "..................".
   a) updated b) fashionable
   c) ancient d) helpful
10. I am worried about my car as the engine is .... different and strange sounds.
    a) making b) doing
    c) taking d) replying

Reading Text (1)

Shakespeare and the English language

Language is always changing, and new words are created all the time. We need new words to describe new technology, ideas, and situations. For example, before people took photos of themselves on their phones, we didn't need a word for that. But when everyone started doing it, the word 'selfie' became very useful, and it was added to dictionaries in 2013. Many famous dictionaries add new words every year, and sometimes they remove words and phrases that we don't use anymore.

Shakespeare was a great innovator with language, and he added more words and phrases into the English language than anyone else.[1] He made new words by changing verbs into adjectives,[2] changing nouns into verbs, and connecting words to make new words. He also added prefixes and suffixes, for example, he created 'uncomfortable' from 'comfortable'.

Today the language that Shakespeare used can sound difficult, but he was writing in a way that made his stories easy for people to understand at that time.

Like messaging language, Shakespeare made new words from other words that everyone already knew. Then he used his words to describe the things that people most wanted to talk about.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- تستخدم (else) بعد تعبيرات تحتوى على (some - any – no).

٢- تستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد حروف الجر.

Reading Text (2)



Emoji fun!

Yesterday, my four-year-old sister sent her grandparents some text messages from my phone.[1] The problem is, there are no words, just a long line of emojis. This is confusing because our grandparents think the messages were from me! Should I have taken the phone away from my sister?

When a child begins to learn how to speak, they first make different sounds. It seems that children do the same with messaging. They use emojis rather than proper words to communicate what they want to say.

But is this a good thing? Yes! Young children are learning to communicate. With text messages, children can receive and read replies which are written just for them. I'm sure this will make them feel special and they will want to communicate more.

So, instead of taking phones away from children, perhaps we should give them our phones more often and say, "Send your grandparents a message".

Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- تستخدم صيغة المفرد وليس الجمع (four-year-old) فى التعبير السابق لأنها تعتبر صفة لكلمة (sister).

Reading Text (3)

Endless change

The Romans spoke a language called Latin and they first took it to the country they called Britannia almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from Germany when people called Angles and Saxons arrived about 500 years later. Soon the Land of the Angles became known as England and the English have been using and misusing foreign words ever since.

For example, words like cake, eggs, and happy all come from Old Norse, which was the language spoken by the Vikings who came to England a few years after the Angles. However, many more English words came from the French, who arrived in 1066.

Unlike the poor people, who continued speaking English, all the rich and powerful people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with similar meanings. French words are recognisable because they usually describe something which is better. For example, the word house is an English word, but a big house is called a mansion, which is a French word.

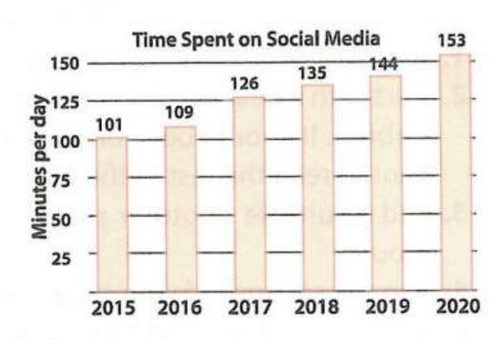
In the modern age, we often reuse old words from the past to make new international words for technology. For example, the first part of the word helicopter is Greek and the second part is Latin, but the word was first used by a Russian speaker living in America.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



How to write a brilliant blog

1. ✓ Choose an interesting title.
2. ☐ Don't worry about spelling grammar or punctuation mistakes.
3. ☐ You shouldn't use images or photos.
4. ☐ Include a few links to other sites.
5. ☐ Don't organise your ideas dearly.
6. ☐ Give your personal opinion.



The aim of this report is to summarise the findings of the survey into the time students spend using social media.

Between 2015 and 2020, we asked 1,200 students about the amount of time they spent using social media.[1] We also asked them how they used social media, and what they liked and disliked about using it. We recorded our results and compared them.

Most of the students that we spoke to were surprised by how much time they spent on social media when they thought about it carefully.

Many students thought that they were spending too much time on social media and some students said that they would try to spend less time on social media. Some students reported that at least one member of their family had made a negative comment about it.

However, almost all of the students reported that they enjoyed using social media and most of the students did not want to stop using it[2].

Most students used social media on their phones[3]. The students used social media to keep in touch with their friends, and to follow their interests or hobbies.

In general, students enjoy social media and they are using it more often. However, it is making a small number of students worried because they feel that they are spending too much time on it.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل:

١- تستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (spend).
٢- تستخدم (most of the) بمعنى (معظم) عند التحدث عن فئة محددة.
٣- تستخدم (most) بدون (of the) بمعنى (معظم) عند التحدث عن مجموعة عامة.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Speaker 1: Tips on how to write a successful blog post:

1. Start with your topic. Think about what will interest and inform your reader.
2. Start with a headline for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.
3. Find a suitable photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.
4. Plan the sections of your blog. Add a sub-heading for each section/new point.
5. Write your introduction paragraph. Be clear what the purpose of this blog post is. Speak to the reader – use first and third person. Include a question.
6. Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. Include images where useful. Do research to find facts to include.
7. Write a conclusion. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself; use 'we'.
8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too frequently. Use an online thesaurus to avoid repeating the same word too many times.
9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it make sense to them?
10. Cite all your sources of information.

Video Script



Smartphones are changing the way we choose to communicate with each other. More people use their phones to send and receive messages than they do to make phone calls. Messaging is quick and cheap. We can keep in contact with friends, make and check arrangements, send photos, ask questions and receive answers within seconds.

Messaging is now more popular than emails, especially between friends and family. Messaging increased by 7,000% in the ten years between 2007 and 2017 and is still rising. Reports suggest that more than 560 billion text messages are sent around the world every month. And it seems that teenagers send more than most adults.

Staying in contact with people is really important and messaging is a fun way to do this, but we need to remember that text messaging is not the same as having a conversation or spending time with someone: that's important too.

Notes on Vocabulary

1

prefix

البـادئة هى جـزء من كـلـمة تضـاف قبـل الكـلـمة لتعطى معنـى جديـدًا ومنـهـا (mis – re – un)، واستـخدام كل منـهـا كمـا هو موضـح بالجـدول.

Prefix	Meaning	Examples	
mis	تعطى معنى يسىء	misunderstand يسىء الفهم	misuse يسىء الاستخدام
re	تعطى معنى مرة ثانية	reread يعيد قراءة	rewrite يعيد كتابة
un	تعطى العكس	undo يلغى العمل	unrecognisable لا يمكن تمييزه

suffix

اللاحقة هى مقاطـع تضاف إلى آخـر الكلمة لتكوين كلمـة جديـدة لإعطـاء معنـى جديـد أو لتحديـد نـوع الكـلـمة، ومنهـا (able – er – less)، واستـخـدام كل منـهـا كما هو موضـح بالجـدول.

Suffix	Meaning	Examples	
able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	understandable يمكن فهـمه	recognisable يمكـن تمـييزه
er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	carer مهتم / مـراع	writer كاتـب
less	تعطى العكس	careless غيـر حـريص	useless بلا فائـدة

2

title

١- عنـوان (كتـاب / مقـال / مسرحيـة)
٢- لقـب
٣- مسمـى وظيفـى

- The title of the play we study this year is *"King Lear"*.
- The title "Mrs" is used with a married woman.
- My father's official title is the editor of the newspaper.

address

١- عنـوان (مكـان)
٢- عنـوان موقـع إنترنت أو بريـد إلكترونى
٣- خطـاب / يخاطـب

- I wrote my address in detail in the application form.
- You shouldn't post your website address on unknown pages.
- The manager addressed the clerks in his first speech.

3

society

المجتمع (عمـوم النـاس الذين يربطهم قانون واحد وتنظيمات واحـدة)

The Egyptian society has been shocked by the violent murder.

community

المجتمع / الجاليـة / جماعـة (النـاس الذيـن يعيشـون فى منطقة أو مدينة واحـدة)

The President met representatives of the Egyptian community in New York.

4	**section** قسـم (جزء من شيء مختلف بشكل واضح ومنفصل عن الأجـزاء الأخـرى)	- The test is divided into two sections. - The dictionaries are in the reference section of the library.
	department قسم (جزء من مؤسسة كبيرة مثل الحكومة أو الأعمال أو الجامعة)	- I work in the sales department of an oil company. - My brother graduated from the English department.
5	**site** موقع (مكان يتم استخدامه لغرض معين، أو حيث حدث شيء مهم)	- There are plans to develop the site for housing. - The area has become a dumping site for nuclear waste.
	venue موقـع (مكـان يتـم فيه عقـد شيء مثل اجتماع أو حفل موسيقى أو مسابقة)	- Paris is the venue for the next Olympic Games. - The hotel is a popular wedding venue.
	scene مشـهد (مكان حدث فيه شـيء سيئ مثل حادث أو جريمة)	Ambulance crews were at the scene of the train accident within minutes.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new edition of the dictionary adds a .... on phrasal verbs.
   a) section b) department c) site d) scene
2. The young poet's poems were published under the .... of "*Love and Romance*".
   a) address b) title c) rank d) award
3. Some professors from the history .... at the faculty will speak at the university conference.
   a) section b) department c) district d) region
4. Four stadiums in Qatar have been specifically designed as a .... for World Cup matches.
   a) site b) scene c) venue d) sight
5. The government built a new hospital to serve the rural .... near the Siwa Oasis.
   a) society b) government c) community d) business
6. The criminal's fingerprints were found near the murder ....
   a) site b) scene c) venue d) sight
7. The young man was accused of giving a false .... of his office to the police.
   a) award b) title c) headline d) address
8. Many important archaeological .... were discovered by accident.
   a) sites b) scenes c) venues d) sights



Practise more

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. It is important to have a clear .... before starting a new project.
a) inspection b) result c) aim d) detection

2. The government conducted a .... on the new city and found that most people agree.
a) section b) site c) search d) survey

3. I .... many bicycles before buying a new one for my son.
a) conducted b) compared c) implied d) responded

4. It's a good idea to .... the flight departure time before you leave for the airport.
a) check b) challenge c) change d) design

5. Most shopping websites request .... from people who visit them.
a) tools b) conclusions c) comments d) prices

6. The head teacher has .... several calls from angry parents about the condition of the school bus.
a) received b) disagreed c) sent d) designed

7. A number of well-known film directors have expressed .... in turning the novel into a film.
a) debate b) interest c) invention d) discovery

8. Facebook and Instagram are two of the most famous social .... websites.
a) competition b) service c) course d) media

9. The government aims at delivering .... care and treatment to people in the countryside.
a) probable b) recognisable c) proper d) careless

10. I just had time to scan the newspaper .... before leaving for work.
a) captions b) headlines c) articles d) analysis

11. The economy is regarded as the .... subject in most people's arguments.
a) key b) minor c) unimportant d) aimless

12. There is no reason to doubt the information in the articles .... above.
a) searched b) removed c) recorded d) cited

13. The chef said that you must stir the sauce .... to avoid burning.
a) annually b) rarely c) frequently d) politely

14. The assistant told us that the frozen-foods .... is in the back of the shop.
a) section b) carriage c) aisle d) route

15. The bank .... contain the details of all employees and customers.
a) interests b) records c) aims d) sites

16. Stamp collecting has been a .... of mine since I was a child.
a) result b) challenge c) tip d) hobby

17. Many negative .... of women are found in the media.
a) photos b) images c) procedures d) portraits

18. To be successful, the .... of a sports team must cooperate with each other.
a) organs b) callers c) members d) helpers

19. I recommend that you buy a more .... computer to get the project ready soon.
a) powerful b) helpless c) ordinary d) ancient

20. All the staff and students need to be trained about safety .... during earthquakes.
a) products b) production c) procedures d) records

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. I didn't recognise you in your uniform. The noun of the verb "recognise" is ....
a) recognised b) recognisable c) recognisably d) recognition

22. A special expert .... the young graduates advice about finding a suitable job.
a) made b) gave c) devised d) took

23. In ...., Japanese cars are very reliable and breakdowns are rare.
a) advance b) public c) private d) general

24. The journalists sat .... notes of everything that was said at the press conference.
a) inspecting b) giving c) taking d) receiving

25. Some people disagree with this argument. The noun from the verb "disagree" is "..................".
a) disagrees b) disagreement
c) disagreed d) disagreeable

26. There was a wider debate on the issue of violence. The antonym of the word "debate" is "..................".
a) agreement b) controversy c) argument d) denial

27. It's right and proper that his family should be present at graduation. The synonym of the adjective "proper" is "..................".
a) improper b) doubtful c) suitable d) inappropriate

28. A recent survey has recorded over 116 species of plants. The noun "survey" is similar in meaning to the noun ....

a) satisfaction b) distention c) neglect d) analysis

29. I chose the quiet resort because it is particularly suitable .... families.

a) in b) on c) for d) at

30. The author's name is usually printed below the .... of his or her novel.

a) text b) address c) speech d) title

Longman

31. A/An .... is added at the beginning of a word to change its meaning. Longman

a) acronym b) abbreviation c) suffix d) prefix

32. This man standing next to your uncle in that photo isn't ....; I don't remember him. Longman

a) recognisable b) valuable c) arguable d) tolerable

33. The doctor .... the results of the two blood analyses to see how much the patient had improved. Longman

a) cured b) completed c) compared d) mixed

34. A/An .... is a discussion on a particular topic that frequently lasts for a long time and in which several points of view are expressed. Longman

a) post b) debate c) quarrel d) interview

35. A/An .... is a web page containing information or opinions from a particular person or about a particular subject, to which new information is regularly added. Longman

a) email b) post c) blog d) title

36. The hotel is ....; I can't stay in it any more. Longman

a) comfortable c) recognisable c) uncomfortable d) tolerable

37. You should listen to the lecturer carefully and .... your notes. Longman

a) do b) take c) ignore d) disregard

38. Is this appointment .... you? - Yes, I'm free at this time. Longman

a) inconvenient for b) different from c) suitable for d) ready with

39. The Egyptian .... in the USA is large. Longman

a) band b) gang c) society d) community

40. Most students are usually worried about exam .... Longman

a) causes b) results c) reasons d) agreements



B Language



Important points

1 could (Present) — استخـدام could فى المضارع

Rule	Usage	Examples
Could + subj. فاعل + inf. مصدر?	طلب مـؤدب	Could you buy me two kilos of sugar?
Subj. فاعل + could + inf. مصدر	اقتـراح	You could study science at college. We could meet at the club.
could … or …….	أكثر من اقتراح	You could come with us or you could stay here.
could	للتوصـيات	You could visit the citadel. It's interesting.

لاحـظ إن should/ ought to/ must أقوى من could للاقتراح والتوصية والنصيحة.

2 could/ could have for other usages — استخدامات أخرى لـ could/ could have

Could be (inf.) | Might be (inf.) | May be (inf.)

- عندما نكون غير متأكدين من شىء فى المضارع، نستخدم .could/ might/may + inf

Where is Dad?
- I don't know. He could be at the swimming pool or in the park.

could

- يمكن أن تأتى آخر الجملة وليس بعدها شىء بمعنى قدر المستطاع.
- I was in a hurry. I ran as fast as I could.

Wish/ If only + could + inf.

- بعد wish/ if only للتعبير عن أمنية فى المستقبل أو المضارع وجواب شرط الحالة الثانية بعد if.
- I wish/ If only I could play the piano.
- I wish I could help, but I am so busy that I don't have the time.
- He could go with us if he weren't ill.

Wish/ If only + could have + P.P.

- بعد wish/ if only للتعبير عن أمنية لم تتحقق أو ندم فى الماضى وجواب شرط الحالة الثالثة بعد if.
- She wishes she could have come last Friday.
- I wish I could have helped but I was so busy that I didn't have the time.
- If he had finished earlier, he could have come with us.

3 Should + inf. for advice Should have + P.P. for regret/ blame

Advice النصيحة

Should/ ought to/ had better + inf. مصدر

Shouldn't/ oughtn't to/ had better not + inf. مصدر

- They should help the poor.
- We shouldn't waste our time.
- They ought to study hard.
- He had better not use the phone a lot.

Regret/ Blame الندم/اللوم

Should/ ought to have + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل

Shouldn't/ oughtn't to have + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل

- You should (ought to) have gone to bed earlier last night.
- I shouldn't (oughtn't to) have wasted my time.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They .... at school. I'm not sure.
   a) could still be b) are still
   c) have still been d) must still be
2. If Sami had trained harder, he .... well.
   a) should have played b) could have played
   c) played d) couldn't have played
3. You .... the teacher to help you if you don't understand the lesson.
   a) shouldn't ask b) could have asked
   c) could ask d) should have asked
4. You .... plan your revision from now. It's important.
   a) shouldn't b) could
   c) needn't d) had to
5. I wish the team .... well. They lost the final.
   a) could play b) shouldn't have played
   c) played d) could have played



Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... have booked the tickets last week. I feel sorry for not booking the ticket.
   a) can't b) should c) must d) shouldn't
2. When you go to Paris next month, you .... with my cousin.
   a) should have stayed b) shouldn't have stayed
   c) could have stayed d) could stay
3. Hossam wasn't at the scene of the crime, so he .... have been guilty.
   a) couldn't b) shouldn't c) could d) should
4. He .... have been a great doctor. He had the ability, but he didn't want to work hard.
   a) can't b) must c) could d) might
5. You .... have seen Hady in the park this morning. We were in Cairo together.
   a) should b) must c) mustn't d) couldn't
6. A: I can't decide what to make for dinner tonight.
   B: You .... meat or chicken with some soup.
   a) couldn't make b) could make
   c) could have made d) should have made
7. You .... have been rude to him. He did nothing wrong.
   a) shouldn't b) couldn't c) can't d) should
8. We .... have donated some money to the poor. It was the right thing to do, but we didn't do it.
   a) must b) shouldn't c) ought to d) might
9. He .... a lawyer, but he didn't and lost the case.
   a) might have consulted b) must have consulted
   c) consulted d) could have consulted
10. He .... have been more tolerant. Everyone was angry with him.
   a) must b) ought to c) shouldn't d) might
11. You .... have taken this job. I can see you're not enjoying it.
   a) couldn't b) should c) shouldn't d) could
12. I .... my paragraph well; it was full of mistakes.
   a) should have checked b) shouldn't check
   c) should check d) shouldn't have checked

13. .... you possibly give me a lift to the next village?

a) Didn't b) Shouldn't c) Should d) Could

14. I'm so sorry; I .... have visited you, but I .... too busy.

a) shouldn't / am b) ought to / wasn't
c) should / was d) ought / was

15. We .... the weekend in Alexandria, but we preferred to be with our old friends in the village.

a) had to spend b) could have spent
c) shouldn't have spent d) must have spent

16. Salah should have saved much money to buy a new car. This means that he .... it.

a) didn't buy b) regrets buying
c) saved but didn't buy d) was wrong to buy

17. These flowers should be watered twice a week, but I always forget to water them. This means it's ....

a) must b) advisable c) unnecessary d) necessity

18. I .... speak English fluently until I was 20 when I travelled to England and met native speakers.

a) wasn't able to b) was able to
c) didn't succeed in d) wasn't capable of

19. I shouldn't have wasted my time playing and having fun. This can be a/an ....

a) suggestion b) request c) regret d) offer

20. A: You bought the tickets, didn't you?
B: No. I ...., but I didn't have enough money.

a) couldn't b) ought to have been
c) must have d) should have

Longman and Previous Exams

21. I think you could visit the Cairo Museum tomorrow. It's really fantastic. This shows .... Longman

a) past ability b) suggestion c) order d) certainty

22. Rami didn't go to school because he was ill, did he?
Which of the following is structurally correct to give the same meaning? Longman

a) Rami would have gone to school if he had been ill, wouldn't he?
b) Rami would have gone to school if he hadn't been ill, would he?
c) Rami went to school although he was ill, didn't he?
d) Rami would have gone to school if he hadn't been ill, wouldn't he?

23. I wish I had studied well for the exam. I got bad results. This means: [Longman]

a) I shouldn't have got bad results because I studied well for the exam.
b) I should have studied well for the exam to get better results.
c) I regret to study well for the exam; I got bad results.
d) My bad results discouraged me, so I didn't study well for the exam.

24. Yasser should have come on time. This means: [Longman]

a) He must have come on time because it was necessary.
b) He didn't come on time although it was necessary.
c) He came on time although it wasn't necessary.
d) He could have come on time, but he refused.

25. Which of the following doesn't show regret? [Longman]

a) I should have followed my father's advice.
b) I ought not to have ignored my father's advice.
c) I regret not following my father's advice.
d) I should follow my father's advice.

26. I feel terribly sick today. I .... fast food yesterday. It was a wrong decision. (بنها - القليوبية)

a) should have eaten   b) couldn't have eaten
c) shouldn't have eaten   d) could have eaten

27. My teacher advised the students .... their time. (المنزلة - الدقهلية)

a) to waste   b) not to waste
c) to not waste   d) don't waste

28. I travelled by train. I .... by car, but I felt tired. (المنزلة - الدقهلية)

a) had to travel   b) have to travel
c) might travel   d) could have travelled

29. Why did you tell your friends about the secret? You .... nothing about it. (نجع حمادي - قنا)

a) should have said   b) could have said
c) couldn't say   d) shouldn't have said

30. It .... been a cart, it had an engine and a driving wheel.

a) ought to have   b) could have
c) couldn't have   d) shouldn't have

Test yourself Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. The interview with the new minister was .... on the front page of the newspaper.
   a) summarised b) commented c) reduced d) increased
2. The Cairo Tower can be recognisable from a long distance away. The adjective "recognisable" can be the opposite to the adjective ....
   a) definite b) reachable c) clear d) ambiguous
3. Shakespeare's old English could be understood .... that time.
   a) in b) by c) at d) for
4. We bought this house in 1986 and have lived here .... since.
   a) never b) ever c) for d) before
5. It is important for any business owner to .... in touch with the latest technology.
   a) keep b) play c) make d) leave
6. The experienced architect has worked on various building ...., so the company chose him for an important project.
   a) scenes b) views c) sights d) sites
7. Science is an important part of contemporary culture. The word "contemporary" is a synonym for the word "....................".
   a) ancient b) civilised c) modern d) behaved
8. I asked my friend about the .... of this week's writing as I was absent.
   a) address b) title c) site d) location
9. You should .... the phone away from the child as he has been using it for a long time.
   a) take b) give c) break d) repair
10. Experts advise all people to eat .... meals instead of fast-food takeaways.
    a) probable b) interested c) expensive d) proper
11. Some sociologists carried out research into the roles of men and women in today's ....
    a) organisation b) society c) association d) interview
12. The .... of your essay should be clear and brief so that readers finally understand your view.
    a) introduction b) tip c) conclusion d) start
13. To ensure high quality, all products of the food factory go through strict testing ....
    a) procedures b) findings c) results d) records
14. Social .... have really changed the way people communicate, work and shop.
    a) service b) media c) status d) work
15. The hospital conducted a/an .... asking patients to suggest ways in which the service could be improved.
    a) inspection b) search c) survey d) estimation

Language

16. He .... have asked me before he took my bike. I'm annoyed.
a) shouldn't b) should c) needn't d) must

17. I .... have eaten so much chocolate! I feel sick!
a) couldn't b) could c) should d) shouldn't

18. A: How did the robbers get in?
B: We don't know yet. The old woman .... have forgotten to lock the door.
a) must b) can't c) might d) should

19. He .... been working in the garage when we arrived. That might be why he didn't hear the bell.
a) could have b) has c) can't have d) shouldn't have

20. Ali .... have forgotten about the meeting. I told him this morning.
a) can't b) must c) might d) should

21. She's late. She .... have taken the wrong road.
a) might not b) may c) can't d) should

22. They .... smoke there. They aren't allowed.
a) can't b) must c) couldn't d) might

23. We were totally free. We .... what we wanted.
a) couldn't have done b) should do
c) couldn't do d) could do

24. Fady .... his exam as he seems happy.
a) could have passed b) shouldn't have passed
c) could pass d) can't have passed

25. I called her, but there was no answer. She .... for Alexandria.
a) has probably left b) should have left
c) can't have left d) might have left

26. I wish I .... go to the stadium tomorrow.
a) can b) could c) will d) may

27. Kamal .... abroad; he is still in Cairo.
a) had to travel b) must have travelled
c) can't have travelled d) shouldn't have travelled

28. Don't ring the doorbell when you get there. Ola's baby .... sleeping.
a) can't be b) may not be
c) may be d) should be

29. He .... his exams. I'm not sure.
a) must have finished b) might have finished
c) shouldn't have finished d) can't have finished

30. "Doctors are supposed to help sick people" means ....
a) they can't help sick people
b) they must be helping sick people
c) they might have helped sick people
d) they ought to help sick people





Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Blog post writing

Write a blog post on the topic of mobile phone use and its effects today.

Tips for writing the essay:

Writing tips

Consider the following points:

- What is a healthy amount of time to spend using your phone?
- What are the effects of spending too much time on your phone?
- What solutions or advice can you offer your readers on how to use their mobile phones in the most positive way?

Mobile phone! Take care!

Yesterday, I phoned my friend Nahla to ask her about the title of our English assignment this week. Her phone was busy. I continued to try to get her on the phone, but it was busy for 6 hours. Imagine! She had been talking with a friend all that time. Although there is no exact amount of time set for using your phone, experts warn us not to use a mobile that long.

Spending too much time on your phone has dangerous effects on your health as well as your social life. People who use their phones for long suffer health problems such as sleep trouble and obesity. In addition, it can take you away from your family and friends.

There are some things you can do to use your mobile phone positively. You can use it to communicate with your friends, but don't forget to get together with them. You can use it to play games, but don't neglect physical exercises.
In short, you should make your mobile phone a means to be controlled, not a device to be controlled by.

Practice Skills Exercises



Practice more

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى
قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

(A) Reading Comprehension

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Language is always changing, evolving and adapting to the needs of its users. This isn't a bad thing; if English hadn't changed since, say, 1950, we wouldn't have words to refer to modems, fax machines or cable TV. As long as the needs of language users continue to change, so will the language. The change is so slow that from year to year we hardly notice it. Language changes for several reasons. First, it changes because the needs of its speakers change. New technologies, new products and new experiences require new words to refer to them clearly and efficiently. Another reason for change is that no two people have had exactly the same language experience. We all know a slightly different set of words and constructions, depending on our age, job, education level, region of the country and so on. We pick up new words and phrases from all the different people we talk with. At the same time, various groups in society use language as a way of marking their group identity; showing who is and isn't a member of the group. Many of the changes that occur in language begin with teens and young adults. As young people interact with others their own age, their language grows to include words, phrases and constructions that are different from those of the older generation. We get new words from many different places. We borrow them from other languages (sushi, chutzpah), (gym from gymnasium), we create them by shortening longer words or by combining words.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The language is .... to the needs of its users.

a) steady
b) adaptable
c) inflexible
d) stubborn

2. Although the users of the language need it badly, it changes ....

a) hardly
b) quickly
c) slowly
d) individually

3. The antonym of the word "combining" is "....................".

a) separating
b) joining
c) uniting
d) linking

4. Changing the language is most desirable by ....

a) seniors
b) teens and young adults
c) infants
d) children

5. Youth and adults approve of language change as ....

a) they interact only with others of their own age

b) they use words, phrases and constructions that are different from older generations

c) they don't like their own language

d) their native language isn't available all the time

6. .... make the language change necessary.

a) New technologies b) New products

c) New experiences d) All are possible

7. The language acquires its words from ....

a) many different places and from other languages

b) older generations

c) teachers and professors

d) books and libraries

8. The best title for the passage is "....................".

a) The importance of languages

b) How to acquire new languages

c) Language change

d) Languages in different countries

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A desert is a special region where only certain kinds of plants and animals can survive. All deserts have very little water. This means that only animals and plants that can do without water for long periods of time can exist in the desert. Plants in the deserts are particularly adapted to the dry and hot environment. One well-known desert plant is the cactus. Like many desert plants, this plant has very tiny leaves. As plants lose most of their water through their leaves, the small leaves of the cactus help to cut down water evaporation. There are other desert plants that do not have leaves at all. Some desert plants survive by avoiding the dry season altogether. During the dry season, this plant remains as a seed and does not emerge from the soil at all. When the rains come, this seed would grow very quickly into a plant. It would bloom rapidly and then scatter its seeds before the dry season returns. Desert animals have also learnt to adapt well to life in this region. The camel, for example, survives well in the desert because water can be stored in its body.

Other desert animals include rodents. These animals need very little water as they can get all the water they require from their food.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The climate in the desert is ....

a) mild and windy
b) hot and dry
c) rainy and windy
d) hot and wet

2. The plants found in the desert must have ....

a) long leaves to store water in them
b) deep roots to get water easily
c) either tiny leaves or no leaves at all
d) few leaves

3. To avoid the dry season, some plants ....

a) remain as seeds and do not emerge from the soil
b) hide under other plants to get protection
c) drink much water throughout the year
d) remain in far and wet regions under the sand

4. The antonym for the word "include" is "....................".

a) enclose
b) consist
c) contain
d) exclude

5. The camel can survive in the desert because it ....

a) stores water
b) hides under trees
c) digs the ground for water
d) drinks rain drops

6. The cactus is one of the plants that .... in the desert.

a) doesn't grow
b) can't store water
c) survives
d) grows underground

7. What are the qualities of the animals and plants which exist in the desert?

a) They are yellow.
b) They are long and thick.
c) They can't be eaten by human.
d) They stay without water for long.

8. The best title for the passage is "....................".

a) Life in the Oceans
b) Rodents and Camels
c) Life on Earth
d) The Desert Hard Life

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. Although using abbreviations and emojis is not acceptable in any formal learning or writing, most young people use them in their everyday chats with their friends.

a) على الرغم من أن استخدام الاختصارات والرموز الفنية غير مقبول فى أى تعليم رسمى أو فى الكتابة الرسمية، فإن معظم الشباب يستخدمونها فى محادثاتهم اليومية مع أصدقائهم.

b) على الرغم من أن استخدام الاختصارات والرموز التعبيرية غير مقبول فى أى تعليم غير رسمى أو فى الكتابة الرسمية، فإن معظم الشباب يستخدمونها فى محادثاتهم اليومية مع أصدقائهم.

c) على الرغم من أن استخدام الاختصارات والرموز التعبيرية غير مقبول فى أى تعليم رسمى أو فى الكتابة الرسمية، فإن معظم الشباب يستخدمونها فى محادثاتهم اليومية مع أصدقائهم.

d) على الرغم من أن استخدام الاختصارات والرموز الفنية غير مقبول فى أى تعليم رسمى أو فى الكتابة الرسمية، فإن كل الشباب يستخدمونها فى محادثاتهم اليومية مع أصدقائهم.

2. Competition in our modern life affects everybody in society and sometimes leads to evil deeds. Greed for money and power is the root of many crimes.

a) تؤثر المنافسة فى حياتنا الحديثة على كل فرد فى المجتمع وتؤدى أحيانًا إلى الأفعال الشريرة؛ فالجشع من أجل المال والسلطة هو أصل العديد من الجرائم.

b) تؤثر المنافسة فى حياتنا الحديثة على كل فرد فى المجتمع وتؤدى أحيانًا إلى الأفعال الغريبة؛ فالجشع من أجل المال والسلطة هو أصل العديد من الجرائم.

c) تؤثر المنافسة فى حياتنا الحديثة على كل فرد فى المجتمع وتؤدى أحيانًا إلى الأفعال الشريرة؛ فالجشع من أجل المال والشهرة هو أصل العديد من الجرائم.

d) تؤثر المنافسة فى حياتنا الحديثة على كل فرد فى المجتمع وتنتج أحيانًا من الأفعال الشريرة؛ فالجشع من أجل المال والسلطة هو أصل العديد من الجرائم.

3. We use messaging daily to communicate with friends and family, and its convenience has made us want to use it to communicate with businesses too.

a) نحن نستخدم الرسائل يوميًا للتواصل مع الأصدقاء والعائلة، وقد جعلتنا الصعوبة التى توفرها نرغب فى استخدامها للتواصل مع الشركات أيضًا.

b) نحن نستخدم الرسائل يوميًا للتواصل مع الأصدقاء والعائلة، وقد جعلنا التلازم الذى توفره نرغب فى استخدامها للتواصل مع الأعمال أيضًا.

c) نحن نستخدم الرسائل يوميًا للتواصل مع الأصدقاء والعائلة، وقد جعلتنا الراحة التى توفرها نرغب فى استخدامها للشكوى إلى الشركات أيضًا.

d) نحن نستخدم الرسائل يوميًا للتواصل مع الأصدقاء والعائلة، وقد جعلتنا الراحة التى توفرها نرغب فى استخدامها للتواصل مع الشركات أيضًا.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. أصبح تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية جزءًا هامًا من التعليم فى كثير من الدول، وذلك لأنها لغة دولية تساعد فى كثير من الأغراض العلمية والترفيهية.

a) Learning English has become an important part of education in many countries, because it is a national language that helps in many scientific and entertaining purposes.

b) Learning English has become an important part of education in many countries, because it is an international language that helps in many scientific and propaganda purposes.

c) Learning English has become an important place of education in many countries, because it is an international language that helps in many scientific and entertaining purposes.

d) Learning English has become an important part of education in many countries, because it is an international language that helps in many scientific and entertaining purposes.

5. للأصدقاء تأثير كبير في حياة المراهقين ؛لذلك يجب على الآباء تشجيعهم على الصحبة الجيدة، فالصديق الجيد يساعد الشخص على النجاح في الحياة.

a) Friends have a huge impact on teens' lives. Therefore, parents should encourage them to have good partnership. A good friend helps a person succeed in life.

b) Friends have a huge impact on teens' lives. Therefore, parents should encourage them to have good company. A good friend helps a person succeed in life.

c) Friends have a tiny impact on teens' lives. Therefore, parents should encourage them to have good company. A good friend helps a person succeed in life.

d) Friends have a huge impact on teens' lives. Nevertheless, parents should encourage them to have good company. A good friend helps a person succeed in life.

6. يحصل الأبطال المصريون في الألعاب الفردية على الميداليات والكئوس، ومع ذلك لا يلقون الاهتمام والدعم مثل الألعاب الجماعية التي لم تحقق الكثير من الإنجازات الكبيرة.

a) The Egyptian champions in individual games get medals and cups, yet they do not receive the same attention and support as the team games that did not achieve many great achievements.

b) The Egyptian champions in member games get medals and cups, yet they do not receive the same attention and support as the team games that did not achieve many great achievements.

c) The Egyptian champions in individual games get medals and cups, yet they do not receive the same attention and report as the team games that did not achieve many great achievements.

d) The Egyptian champions in individual games get medals and cups, yet they do not receive the same intention and support as the team games that did not achieve many great achievements.

(C) Writing

4 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Your friend wants to improve her English and asks your advice the best ways to do so. Give her your advice."
Your friend's name is Manal and her email address is: manal10@gmail.com.
Your name is Leila and your email address is: leila10@yahoo.com

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.



1 **Finish the following dialogue:**

During the break at school, Aya is talking with her friend Walaa about her favourite music.

Walaa: Hi, Aya. Why are you putting on your headphone?
Aya : Hi, Walaa. (1)... .
Walaa: What kind of music are you listening to?
Aya : (2).. .
Walaa: That's strange. Nobody ever listens to this kind of music.
Aya : I think we have a duty to keep our heritage and this is one of them. (3)..?
Walaa: For me, pop music is my love.
Aya : (4)...?
Walaa: Yes, it's a bit noisy, but I like its rhythm very much. Besides it's easier to get.
Aya : It's time to get back to class. Bye, Walaa.
Walaa: Bye, Aya.

A Glimpse of Revelation II

2 **(A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What place did The Prophet (PBUH) had to find to convey the message of Islam to the Muslim converts?
2. What happened to Prophet (PBUH) at 'First 'Aqabah Pledge?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. After the cruelty and violence of Quraysh, the Muslims asked the Prophet (PBUH) to allow them ....
   a) hide in Mecca b) leave Mecca
   c) leave Abyssinia d) stay home
4. The Prophet (PBUH) sent .... to teach the people of Yathrib about Islam.
   a) Ali b) Abu Bakr
   c) Alabass d) Mus'ab Ibn 'Umair

King Lear

3 **(A) Answer the following questions:**

1. Why was the King angry to see Kent in the stocks?
2. How did Regan prove that she is worse than her sister, Goneril?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. In order to make Gloucester and Cornwall believe him, Edmund pretended that ....
   a) he killed Edgar b) he had an army
   c) he was to fight Edgar d) his brother cut his arm
4. Edgar decided to disguise himself as a mad and poor man called ....
   a) Kent b) Oswald c) Poor Tom d) Philosopher

4 **(A) Translate into Arabic:**

- We must inculcate the love of work and belonging in our children's minds and also encourage them to be creative.

(B) Translate into English:

- لقد تغلبت المرأة المصرية على قيود المجتمع التقليدية وأصبحت تشارك الرجل فى كافة الميادين.

Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We didn't have the proper tools to do the job right. The synonym of the adjective "proper" is "......................".
   a) updated b) suitable c) fashionable d) helpless
2. As a linguistic innovator, Shakespeare could add many words and phrases .... the English language.
   a) at b) for c) with d) to
3. The film has a comic .... throughout although it has some adventure scenes.
   a) scenery b) sound c) tone d) voice
4. Children must be taught the .... rules of hygiene and sanitation at school.
   a) basic b) extra c) additional d) fictional
5. The teacher .... angrily at the lazy student who said that he didn't bring his book to school.
   a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced
6. Some new scientific theories take a very long time to .... in real life.
   a) apply b) reply c) imply d) intensify
7. As soon as I walked into the room, I .... gas.
   a) could have smelt b) must have smelt
   c) can't have smelt d) could smell
8. Many people are demanding that something .... about pollution.
   a) should have done b) should do
   c) should be done d) shouldn't be done
9. Reham .... have got my message. Otherwise, she would have replied.
   a) mustn't b) couldn't c) shouldn't d) could
10. "Don't wait for me, Ahmed," said Hany.
    Hany told Ahmed ....
    a) to wait for him b) not to wait for him
    c) didn't wait for him d) don't wait for him
11. The teacher .... us to keep quiet.
    a) suggests b) wants c) warns d) says
12. Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Paris? You .... have stayed with Tamer.
    a) shouldn't b) might c) must d) could

13. We didn't know where Mohamed was, but we .... find him in the end.

a) can b) were able to c) should d) might

14. You could have left your phone at work. This means ....

a) it's impossible that you left it there
b) it's necessary that you left it there
c) it's advisable that you left it there
d) it's possible that you left it there

15. What .... yesterday to avoid making that bad mistake? I feel sorry now!

a) did I have to do b) should I have done
c) should I do d) must I have done

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Glass is a pure compound of sand melted at a very high temperature with the help of catalysts. Silicate, the main component of sand, is heated till it is red-hot. When it has been sufficiently heated, it is wound around a blowing pipe. Specially trained men, who have learnt to control their intake and output of air, will then blow cups, bowls, vases, and bottles from the heated silicate. These men never make a mistake while blowing glass, for any deviation from their methods could burst their lungs or seriously harm their internal organs. Glassmakers work for years before achieving the status of master craftsmen. They join the glassworks from a young age, working for minimal pay as apprentices.

They soon learn the trade and become ordinary craftsmen. With the benefit of practice and experience, they will one day become master craftsmen. If a particular cup or vase requires a special rim or design, the master craftsman will handle it himself. Otherwise, mass-produced glasses may be moulded in die casts.

Great patience is needed to make a glass, for after it is shaped and left aside to cool, it has to be given a long interval to 'contract'. If it is not 'aged' sufficiently, it will crack and disjoint.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. The main component of glass is ....

a) sand b) bottles c) silicate d) cups

17. Glassmakers become craftsmen ....

a) at a very early age b) after three-year experience
c) when they join glass works d) after a lot of practice and experience

18. Someone who works for an employer for a fixed period of time in order to learn a particular skill or job is called a/an ....

a) apprentice
b) craftsman
c) patient
d) professional

19. Which one of the following isn't mentioned in the passage?

a) Making glass needs a lot of patience.
b) Making glass needs a lot of money.
c) Making glass needs a lot of experience.
d) Making glass needs a lot of heat.

20. The silicate is heated to produce ....

a) sand
b) glass
c) moulds
d) apprentices

21. Mistakes in this industry is unacceptable as craftsmen may ....

a) lose money
b) harm their lungs
c) lose their voice
d) be disabled

22. The master craftsmen are asked to ....

a) handle special rim
b) take courses
c) sell their products
d) teach older craftsmen

23. The best title for the passage is "........................".

a) The History of Glass
b) The importance of Sand
c) Glass Industry
d) Trade

24. **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- أن تكون غير أنانى ومتواضعًا وذكيًا وصبورًا فى ساعة المعاناة وقويًا فى وقت المشاكل وشخصًا مخلصًا ومحبًا، فأنت إذًا إنسان ناجح حقًا، وتتحلى بكثير من الصفات الحميدة.

a) If you are unselfish, humble, intelligent, patient in times of suffering, strong in times of trouble, loyal and lovely, then you are a truly successful person, with many good qualities.
b) Unless you are unselfish, humble, intelligent, patient in times of suffering, strong in times of trouble, loyal and loving, then you are a truly successful person, with many good qualities.
c) Although you are unselfish, humble, intelligent, patient in times of suffering, strong in times of trouble, loyal and loving, then you are a truly successful person, with many good quantities.
d) While you are unselfish, humble, intelligent, patient in times of suffering, strong in times of trouble, loyal and loving, then you are a truly successive person, with many good qualities.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The champions who won medals in the last Olympics proved that the Egyptians are able to do wonders despite their present hardships. They only need facilities and encouragement.

a) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الماضية أن المصريين قادرون على صنع المعجزات على الرغم من الصعوبات الحالية. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الإمكانيات والتشجيع.

b) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الحالية أن المصريين قادرون على صنع المعجزات بسبب الصعوبات الراهنة. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الماليات والتشجيع.

c) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الماضية أن المصريين قادرون على امتلاك القدرات على الرغم من الصعوبات الحالية. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الماليات والتشجيع.

d) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الماضية أن المصريين قادرون على صنع المعجزات على الرغم من الصعوبات المستمرة. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الإمكانيات والتشجيع.

26. Answer the following questions: (The play)

1. Do you think that Edgar was wrong to trust Edmund so completely and easily? Why?
2. Why do you think Edgar chose to disguise himself as a poor mad man?
3. Do you think that Edmund would be loyal to Cornwall if he worked with him? Why?

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Having free time is something you should value and spend in useful things."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 405

Assess your progress	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
★★★★★	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Units 3 & 4 Module Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt is hoping to achieve .... economic growth which will improve people's lives.
a) movable b) sustainable c) perfectible d) detestable

2. Hard work, patience and determination are the essential .... for success.
a) chemicals b) paints c) ingredients d) components

3. The first thing I noticed about the little girl was her blue eyes. The antonym of the verb "notice" is "..................".
a) intend b) protect c) regard d) ignore

4. We use the .... "cm" for "centimetres", without any full stop after it.
a) indication b) domination c) declaration d) abbreviation

5. The story of the new car make was reported on the business .... of the newspaper.
a) title b) college c) section d) degree

6. It isn't a good idea to .... your personal information on websites that you can't trust.
a) derive b) post c) revise d) analyse

7. Riham is going on holiday soon. This time next week, she .... in the Mediterranean.
a) will sail b) 'll be sailing c) sails d) sailed

8. A: We haven't got any sugar. B: I know. I .... some this afternoon.
a) won't buy b) will have bought
c) will be bought d) am going to buy

9. My little grandchild .... three next Friday.
a) is going to be b) will have been
c) will be d) would be

10. In two years' time, Imad .... English at university.
a) will be studying b) will study
c) will be studied d) studies

11. I expect him .... to dinner.
a) coming b) come c) to come d) should come

12. Our son promised to clean his room, but it is still messy. He .... it.

a) needn't have cleaned b) couldn't have cleaned
c) can't clean d) shouldn't have cleaned

13. You missed a great party last night. You .... have come. Why didn't you?

a) might b) must c) should d) can't

14. He .... have committed this crime. He wasn't even in the city that night.

a) might b) must c) shouldn't d) couldn't

15. ".................... on the grass as it is wet." said the gardener.

a) Don't walk b) Walk c) To walk d) Not to walk

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You may have seen pictures of astronauts. They float around in space. They fly in a space shuttle. Have you ever wondered why they float? Your feet stay firmly on the ground. Why don't theirs? When you drop something, why does it fall? The answer to these questions is something called gravity. It affects everything we do. Gravity is essential for life on earth. Many years ago, a man named Sir Isaac Newton wondered about gravity, too. He watched and tested the way things move and fall on Earth. He wrote his ideas down. Scientists today use a lot of his ideas. Those ideas are now considered laws of science. Gravity is a force that makes all objects attracted to each other. The bigger the object is, the more it attracts things. Since nothing on Earth is bigger than planet Earth itself, all the things and people on Earth are attracted by Earth. Everything is pulled toward the centre of the planet. That is why things fall to the ground. It is also why people and things stay on the ground instead of floating around in space. Earth is even large enough to attract our moon. That's why we can see it in our sky!

Gravity keeps our muscles and bones, up and working. Gravity allows earth to retain its atmosphere. Gravity, being able to store its energy as "potential energy", allows us to harness it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. Why do your feet stay on the ground instead of floating?

a) Because they are heavy.
b) Because there isn't enough air.
c) Because of gravity.
d) Because the earth is very small.

17. Why are things and people attracted to Earth?

a) Because the Earth is attractive.
b) Because the Earth is bigger than other objects.
c) Because there is magnetism in things and people.
d) Because people like the Earth.

18. What can we see in the sky because of gravity?

a) The planets. b) The stars.
c) The sun. d) The moon.

19. The synonym of the word "essential" is "..................".

a) secondary b) unnecessary
c) vital d) option

20. Which best described Newton's Law of Universal Gravitation?

a) Gravity pulling depends on the length of its orbit.
b) The smaller the object, the greater the force.
c) The largest object exerts a force pulling every other object to it.
d) All objects exert a gravitational force on all other objects.

21. Which has a stronger force of gravity, the Earth or the moon?

a) The Earth. b) The moon.
c) They are the same. d) The moon has no gravity.

22. Which has the strongest gravitational pull?

a) The Earth. b) The moon.
c) The Sun. d) The North Star.

23. Because of gravity, everything is pulled to the .... of the planet.

a) margin b) centre c) left d) ground

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Some people believe that text messaging is a literary disease that will lead to the downfall of the language. However, young people believe that it is a way of innovation.

a) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية مرض لغوى سيؤدى إلى سقوط اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للابتكار.

b) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية تطور أدبى سيؤدى إلى سقوط اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للاتصال.

c) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية مرض أدبى سيؤدى إلى سقوط اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للابتكار.

d) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية إبداع أدبى سيؤدى إلى نماء اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للتواصل.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- في حين أن زيادة الوزن أصبحت إحدى مشكلات الدول المتقدمة، لا يزال الناس في بعض الدول النامية يعانون من سوء التغذية، بل يصابون بالمرض بسبب الغذاء غير الآمن.

a) While being overweight has become a problem for developing countries, people in some developed countries still suffer from malnutrition and even get sick from unsafe food.

b) While being overweight has become a problem for developed countries, people in some developing countries still suffer from malnutrition and even get sick from unsafe food.

c) While being overweight has become a problem for developed countries, people in some developing countries still suffer at prosperity and even get sick from unsafe food.

d) While being overweight has become a problem for developing countries, people in some developed countries still suffer of malnutrition and even get sick from unsafe food.

26. Answer the following questions: (The play)

1. What do you think of Goneril's urging her husband to let her father go away?
2. What do you think of Edmund's evil plan to take Edgar's place?
3. Do you agree with Regan that the King's soldiers caused Edgar to try to kill his father? Why?

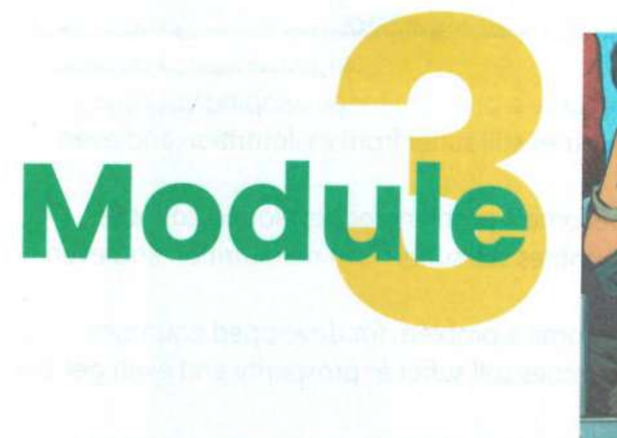
27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The mobile phone and social media affected our social relations badly".
Do you agree? Why? Why not?"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Module 3







Unit 5

Being smart online

Unit 6

Learning from our mistakes

Test

Units 5 & 6 Module 3

Unit 5
Being smart online



Objectives

Reading : An article about an online video channel; An Article about how to use the internet for research

Writing : An email and an essay on how to use social media sensibly

Listening : Two boys discussing how to use social media; Five teenagers talking about the effects of the internet on young people

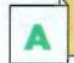
Speaking : A presentation

Language : seems to, (be) meant to, (be) supposed to

Life Skills : Critical thinking; Resilience

Study ... Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2





A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

banner adverts (n) إعلانات البانر (اللافتة)	search result (n) نتيجة البحث	upgrade (v) (d) (n) يرقى/ترقية
consult (v) (ed) يستشير	sponsored adverts (n) الإعلانات الممولة	upload (v) (ed) يحمل ملفات إلى الإنترنت
cookies (n) ملفات تعريف الارتباط	subscribe (v) (d) يشترك فى موقع	up-to-date (adj) حديث
download (v) (ed) يقوم بتنزيل ملفات	take down (v) يزيل ملفات سبق رفعها على الإنترنت	views (n) مشاهدات
follower (n) متابع	targeted advertising (n) الدعاية الموجهة	
reliable (adj) موثوق فيه	update (v) (d) يحدث	

Vocabulary on Reading Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة

advertiser (n) معلن	information (n) معلومات	save (v) (d) يحفظ
avoid (v) (ed) يتجنب	junk food (n) الطعام السريع	scan (v) (ned) يتصفح (يقرأ) للبحث عن شيء محدد
confused (adj) مرتبك	keywords (n) كلمات رئيسية	skim (v) (med) يتصفح (يقرأ) بسرعة
effectively (adv) بفاعلية	knowledge (n) معرفة	smartphone (n) هاتف ذكى
experience (n) خبرة/تجربة	mega meal (n) وجبة كبيرة (بمطعم)	source (n) مصدر
extra (adj) إضافى	research (v) (ed) يقوم ببحث	task (n) مهمة
honest (adj) مخلص/أمين	resource (n) منبع/مورد	URL (Uniform Resource Locator) عنوان URL (على الإنترنت)

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

access (n) مدخل/إمكانية الوصول	character (n) شخصية/حرف أو رمز بالكمبيوتر	identity (n) شخصية/هوية
adapt (v) (ed) يتأقلم	collect (v) (ed) يجمع	influence (n) (v) (d) تأثير/يؤثر على
app (n) تطبيق	common (adj) شائع	install (v) (ed) يركب جهازًا/يثبت برنامجًا
browser (n) متصفح	excuse (n) عذر	instant (adj) فورى/عاجل
button (n) زر	fake (adj) مزيف	Irish (adj) أيرلندى

journalist (n) صحفى	professional (n) (adj) محترف/احترافى	spread (v) ينشر
moral (n) (adj) مغزى/درس أخلاقى/أخلاقى	provide (v) (d) يوفر/يزود	stamp (n) (v) (ed) وسم/يوسم/يختم
musician (n) موسيقار	publish (v) (ed) ينشر (كتبًا/مجلات)	steal (v) يسرق
obvious (adj) واضح	series (n) سلسلة	suppose (v) (d) يفترض/يظن
perfect (adj) كامل/تام	sociology (n) علم الاجتماع	trust (n) (v) (ed) ثقة/يثق فى
print (v) (ed) يطبع	software (n) برامج الكمبيوتر	version (n) إصدار/نسخة (من برنامج)

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Around 2 million people could .... to the page of online music service.
   a) subscribe b) adopt c) activate d) take part
2. Most major websites use .... to arrange the content of the website in a way that matches your interests.
   a) comments b) posts c) cookies d) shares
3. .... advertising is those advertisements that appear to people out of their interest and activity on the internet.
   a) Banner b) Planner c) Amateur d) Targeted
4. The young actor's page has seen significant improvement, with over thousands of page .... and hundreds of followers.
   a) sights b) views c) refuses d) excuses
5. You'll need to .... your hard drive to 1 Terra before running this software.
   a) diffuse b) upload c) upgrade d) secure
6. As an important reading skill, a teacher should teach students to .... for essential information.
   a) scan b) research c) apply d) reply
7. This type of fonts produces a line that can reach 30 .... long.
   a) personalities b) characters c) personnel d) photos
8. The passenger was arrested for possessing a/an .... passport when he entered the airport.
   a) fake b) figured c) updated d) intended
9. The new copier which our office bought can .... 30 pages per minute.
   a) carve b) publish c) spread d) print
10. To find a good restaurant, you can enter the .... 'restaurants' and click on Search.
    a) key b) keyword c) image d) result

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

at the same time في نفس الوقت	do research يقوم ببحث علمي	have/gain access to يمتلك (يحصل على) وسيلة للوصول إلى
at the touch of a button بلمسة زر	do things يقوم بأشياء	have experience in لديه خبرة بـ
do a history essay يعد مقالًا تاريخيًا	go online يستخدم الإنترنت	keep … safe يحافظ على … أمنا
adapt to يتأقلم مع	find out يكتشف	information about معلومات عن
careful about حريص بشأن	full of ملىء بـ	worry about يقلق بشأن

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
adapt يتأقلم	adaptation تأقلم	adaptable متأقلم
advertise يعلن عن	advertiser معلن advertisement إعلان	------------------------
apply يطبق/يتقدم لوظيفة	application (app) تطبيق/طلب وظيفة applicant متقدم لوظيفة	applicable يمكن تطبيقه
collect يجمع	collection مجموعة collector جامع (شخص)	collective جماعى
consult يستشير	consultation استشارة	consultative استشارى
influence يؤثر	influence تأثير influencer شخص موثر فى تفكير الآخرين	influential مؤثر/ذو نفوذ
rely يعتمد	reliance اعتماد	reliable موثوق فيه
suppose يفترض/يظن	supposition افتراض	supposed من المفترض

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ماتحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- I prefer to consult old people to young people. (v)
- Farmers always hold consultations about the agricultural techniques. (n)
- There is a consultative group to ask about your inquiries. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
adapt	يتأقلم	adjust/modify	reject/abandon	يرفض/ينبذ/يهجر
fake	مزيف	forged/false	genuine/real/original	أصلى/حقيقى
honest	مخلص/أمين	sincere/truthful	deceitful/dishonest	مخادع/غيرحقيقى
instant	فورى/عاجل	immediate/urgent	delayed/slow	مؤجل/بطىء
obvious	واضح	apparent/evident	ambiguous	غامض/مشكوك فيه
professional	محترف	expert/experienced	amateur/incompetent	هاوٍ/غيركفء
reliable	موثوق فيه	trustworthy/respectable	dishonest/unreliable	غيرأمين/غيرموثوق
speed	سرعة	quickness/acceleration	slowness/delay	بطء/تأخير
task	مهمة	duty	irresponsibility	اللامسئولية
upgrade	يرقى	promote/improve	reduce/decrease	يقلل/يخفض

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The results of the experiments were ambiguous and they will have to be done again. The adjective "ambiguous" can be the opposite of the adjective "..................".
   a) smart b) updated c) vague d) obvious
2. We must watch for our children who .... online a lot so as to be careful that they aren't misled.
   a) come b) go c) travel d) view
3. It's a problem that many young men have meals while using the phone .... the same time.
   a) at b) in c) for d) by
4. Famous fashion houses are very careful .... their reputation, so they produce the best quality clothes.
   a) at b) on c) in d) about
5. The office staff received training on a number of spreadsheet and database ....
   a) apply b) application c) applied d) applicable
6. You must consult your lawyer before signing contracts. The adjective of the verb "consult" is "..................".
   a) consults b) consulted c) consultative d) consultant

7. He showed a sincere concern for her health. The adjective "sincere" is a synonym of the adjective "..................".

a) honest b) fake c) obvious d) clear

8. During important championships, all reporters and journalists .... access to the internet freely at the media centre.

a) make b) have c) do d) win

Reading Text (1)

Doing research online

Your teacher has given you a homework task. Where do you start your research? The internet is very useful with lots of information, but how do you avoid spending hours reading unhelpful websites? Read on to find out how to use the internet effectively.

1 Look for websites by people, companies or universities, who have experience in or knowledge of the topic you are researching. If you know who wrote the website, try to find out more about their experience[1].

2 Think about who has written the website. Is it a company who may be trying to sell you something?

3 Check if the website is up-to-date. Is the information still reliable and useful?[2] When was it updated?

4 Always consult more than one website. The advantage of looking at few different sites is that you can check the information and you may find extra facts.

5 What does the website look like? If it is badly designed and is full of grammar and spelling mistakes, then it is probably not very reliable.

6 Websites that have named their sources are usually more reliable and useful than sites that do not name their sources.

7 Save the URL (uniform resource locator) of any useful pages or images so you can find them easily.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام صيغة الأمر فى جواب الشرط للحالة الأولى لـ (if).

٢- تعامل (information) معاملة المفرد باستخدام الفعل (is) لأنها اسم غير معدود.



Reading Text (2)

Targeted advertising

Our computers and smartphones keep small pieces of information called cookies, which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. Cookies are meant to make it easier for us to find things that interest us, but they also help advertisers to sell things to us. So, when we see an advert for something that seems to be exactly what we want, it is because advertisers know what we like. This kind of advertising is called targeted advertising.

Sometimes advertisers know where you like to go and when you like to do things, so they can advertise to you when you are most interested. For example, they advertise places to eat when you're hungry. They can also send adverts to your friends at the same time if they think you'll go together.

Sometimes it's easy to see that something is an advert, like those large banner adverts that always seem to appear on websites when you're trying to read. And there are adverts that seem to appear in the strangest places, like the small sponsored adverts that you find in search results.

Adverts are supposed to be honest, but we must be careful. When you see an advert online, think about why you might be seeing it and whether you can believe what it says.

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)



Are you internet smart?

Do you really know how to protect yourself online? There are several things you can do to stay safe.

- Choose a strong password. Did you know the most common password in the world is '123456'? The best passwords should have numbers, letters and even a special character e.g. TI342mS!* It will be easier to remember if you make it personal in some way.
- When you go online, make sure you have upgraded your browser with the latest software update before you open a webpage.
- Be careful what you upload. Check what others can learn about you[1] from what they can see behind you, and take down any photos you do not want others to download.

All of these tips seem obvious, but you'll be surprised how many people are careless online. Stealing someone's identity is more common than you think[2].
Do not make the mistake of thinking that it can't happen to you.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام صيغة الجملة (فاعل+ فعل) بعد (what) لأن الجملة فى الصيغة الخبرية.
٢- لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb +ing) كفاعل للجملة بمعنى (سرقة) ولاحظ استخدام الفعل فى صيغة المفرد (is).

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)



Don't believe everything you read!

The title of this article is a piece of advice which we may have heard from our parents or grandparents. Although it was true in the past, the speed at which we have access to new information means that this warning is even more important now.

In the past, professional journalists always checked the facts that they wanted to publish against at least two reliable sources to make sure the story was correct. Checking sources, and the time needed to print something in a newspaper, meant that the news, which was meant to be new, was actually a day or two old.

Today the internet provides instant news and is a place where anyone can share information with the rest of the world at the touch of a button. This means that journalists often need to publish their stories quickly, so fact-checking isn't as good as it is meant to be. This is why not everything you read is what it seems to be.

Even serious newspapers, which are supposed to be reliable, can make mistakes. Shane Fitzgerald, an Irish sociology student, wanted to test the influence of the internet. He posted a fake phrase online. It was supposed to be something that a French musician who had recently died had said. Almost immediately several newspapers published the phrase and it was read all over the world.

The moral of the story is to listen to those with more life experience than you and remember not to trust everything you read online without checking it first.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها:

	Word	Examples
1	**load** يحمل (بضائع / برامج) / حمولة / عبئًا	- The farmers were loading some vegetables into the cars. - Newcomers couldn't afford the load of the work.
	unload يفرغ حمولة	- The driver unloaded some boxes from the back of the truck.
	overload يفرط فى التحميل (الاستخدام)	- Be careful not to overload the washing machine.
	download يحمل ملفات من الإنترنت	- There are some games that can be downloaded free from the internet.
	upload يرفع إلى الإنترنت	- It might take 10 minutes to upload this video to the website.

	Word	Examples
2	**effective** مؤثر/فعّال (له تأثير)	- The new vaccine is highly effective against the disease.
	impressive مؤثر (يترك/ترك انطباعًا جيدًا)/رائع	- Mohammad Salah has an impressive career which makes him a legend.
	affecting مؤثر (يوحى بالشجن)	- The film about the poor girl was so affecting that it made my mother cry.
3	**experience** ١- خبرة (اسم غير معدود) ٢- تجربة حياة (اسم معدود)	- He had no previous experience for the job he applied for. - The two children in this story have suffered a lot from difficult experiences in their life.
	experiment تجربة (علمية/معملية)	- Scientists usually do experiments on animals for new medicines.
4	**publish** ينشر (عملًا فنيًا/جريدة/تقريرًا)	- The novel was published last year.
	spread ١- ينتشر/يمتد/يفرد ٢- ينشر (خبرًا/إشاعة/مرضًا)	- Fire quickly spread through the building. - The disease spread rapidly amongst the village. - Mum spreads sandwiches with cheese like a chef. - How dare you spread such evil lies!
5	**adapt** ١- يتأقلم/يتكيف (يعتاد على شيء جديد) ٢- يقتبس (عن قصة أو مسرحية مثلًا)	- Some bacteria adapt to the environment and develop resistance to commonly used antibiotics. - Many of Mahfouz's novels have been adapted for television.
	adopt ١- يتبنى (طفلًا) ٢- يتبنى فكرة أو قانونًا أو مبدأ	- The rich couple adopted two children from the orphanage. - The new manager adopted a very autocratic style.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It took the new secretary a long time to .... to the new job.
a) adapt b) adopt c) depart d) employ

2. A successful applicant should have over ten years' .... as a teacher.
a) experiment b) experience c) intention d) task

3. The lights went out because the electricity system was ....
a) loaded b) uploaded c) downloaded d) overloaded

4. The writer began his book with an .... description of his difficult childhood.
a) effective b) impressive c) affecting d) intensive

5. Astronauts performed some scientific .... during their expedition in the space station.
a) conditions b) experiments c) experiences d) licences

6. Influenza is primarily .... from person to person through coughing and sneezing.
a) spread b) published c) extracted d) sprayed

7. It might take a while for this video to .... to your blog as it is long.
a) load b) overload c) upload d) download

8. The recent research about the virus was .... in the Science Journal.
a) spread b) published c) sprayed d) defined

9. The most .... solution to traffic jams is to build more roads.
a) effective b) impressive c) affecting d) pleasant

10. The researchers could not agree on the best methods to .... to fight the new virus.
a) adapt b) adopt c) report d) imply

Practice ... Vocabulary General Exercises



Practise more

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Workbook

1. Mother asked my sister to .... down the embarrassing photos that she posted on her Facebook page.
   a) pull b) give c) go d) take
2. Most footballers and actors have thousands or millions of .... on social media.
   a) beginners b) followers c) bullies d) enemies
3. Buyers can now .... an electronic version of books to read on a mobile device.
   a) collect b) detach c) upload d) download
4. Researchers say that they can't reach a result or write a report without .... data.
   a) doubtful b) distant c) reliable d) disorganised
5. You should not attempt tough exercises without first .... your doctor.
   a) consulting b) supporting c) encouraging d) checking
6. The police recommended that a hidden camera should be .... in the gym after the robbery.
   a) broken b) instilled c) detached d) installed
7. Many children like to have Mickey Mouse or some other cartoon .... on their clothes.
   a) persons b) characters c) directors d) servants
8. Advertising experts depend on .... to target their customers' needs.
   a) viruses b) hackers c) cookies d) shares
9. A .... advert is an advertisement across the top or bottom or down the side of a page on the internet.
   a) banner b) pop-out c) postal d) sudden
10. Most job interviews focus on the candidate's ability to communicate ....
    a) affectingly b) effectively c) horribly d) excitedly
11. Sara, the manager's secretary, had the .... of preparing the agenda for meetings.
    a) rights b) plays c) sections d) tasks
12. Nahdet Misr is a famous organisation which .... different kinds of books.
    a) spreads b) hides c) publishes d) believes
13. It might take some minutes to .... these high-definition photos to the website.
    a) load b) download c) upload d) overload
14. .... will pay higher rates to be able to use the prime-time الأعلى مشاهدة entertainment shows.
    a) Customers b) Consumers c) Advertisers d) Rivals
15. Unfortunately, most young people get all their .... about politics only from social media.
    a) fancy b) concept c) election d) knowledge

16. Japan is a country which has few energy ...., such as oil, of its own.

a) stations b) reactors c) resources d) wells

17. I couldn't update my antivirus because I had an older .... of the software.

a) subscription b) mail c) version d) topic

18. As Salma isn't very good at languages, she was .... by the foreign road signs.

a) inspected b) confused c) determined d) clear

19. The organisation dedicated a large sum of money to .... endangered animals.

a) applying b) saving c) searching d) harming

20. The company's reputation has already been harmed by a .... of complaints to the police.

a) block b) chain c) series d) serial

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. We should find instant solutions to water pollution. The synonym of the word "instant" is "...................".

a) original b) slow c) easy d) immediate

22. He had to buy a lot of different numbers of magazines to .... his research.

a) make b) play c) do d) carry

23. You must make sure you .... your important documents safe.

a) stay b) keep c) reply d) deploy

24. This is a better and more reliable car than my last one. The word "reliable" is similar in meaning to "...................".

a) trustworthy b) doubtful c) dishonest d) vague

25. My friend .... no previous experience of managing a farm, but he started his own project.

a) had b) made c) grew d) turned

26. It's a good idea to collect rainwater for use in the garden. The noun of the verb "collect" is "...................".

a) collects b) collected c) collection d) collective

27. With the internet, you can get all the information you look for .... the touch of a button.

a) out b) for c) in d) at

28. We sprayed fake snow over the trees to make it look like winter. The antonym of the adjective "fake" is "...................".

a) false b) genuine c) fabricated d) duplicated

29. Her parents tried to influence her in her choice of university. The adjective of the verb "influence" is "...................".

d) influential c) influencer b) influence a) influences

30. When father found .... that we broke his valuable tablet, he was so shocked.
a) of b) out c) in d) at

31. All the charity's workers are volunteers, without professional training. The adjective "professional" is the opposite of "...................".
a) oppressive b) detective c) amateur d) experienced

32. The news about the opening of the theatre had .... and was causing great excitement.
a) disappeared b) come out c) published d) spread

33. The front of the Grand Egyptian Museum is very .... with marvellous designs.
a) intensive b) impressive c) affecting d) effective

34. All the family members helped to .... the luggage from the car.
a) download b) upload c) unload d) load

35. It is a well-known fact that animals can .... to different and extreme weather.
a) adapt b) adopt c) exchange d) update

Longman and Previous Exams

36. Nowadays, we have good .... to most websites. (Longman)
a) stress b) accent c) across d) access

37. I must .... my doctor; I have a chest pain. (Longman)
a) result b) insist c) consult d) insult

38. I need to .... my antivirus software to make my personal computer fully protected. (Longman)
a) date b) update c) deactivate d) vibrate

39. Is it easy to .... videos to YouTube? (Longman)
a) upload b) download c) load d) overload

40. .... are small pieces of information which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. (Longman)
a) Cookies b) Antiviruses c) Downloads d) Hackers

41. I can't benefit you, so you need to .... a respected lawyer. (الشرقية - ادارة العاشر من رمضان)
a) order b) consult c) identify d) support

42. When I finish writing my notes, I'll .... them to the internet. (الأقصر - إدارة إسنا)
a) upload b) download c) upside d) downside

43. This website is up-to-date, its information is .... and useful. (أسيوط - إدارة القوصية)
a) reliable b) extra c) confused d) consulted

44. Check if the information on the website was .... (السويس - مديرية السويس)
a) counted b) consulted c) forgotten d) updated

45. Have you seen that there are 6,000 .... of my brother's blog? (المنوفية - ادارة الباجور)
a) posters b) subscribers c) likes d) followers

B Language

seem to/(be) meant to/(be) supposed to

1 seem/seems/seemed يبدو

We use "seem to" to talk about how something or someone appears to be.

للحديث عن كيف يبدو شيء ما أو شخص ما وخاصة عندما لا نكون متأكدين تمامًا.

seem/ seems/ seemed يبدو

Rule القاعدة	Usage الاستخدام
seem seems + adj. صفة	He seems angry. You seem ill. He seemed pleased with his new job.
seem to be + adj. صفة seem to be + n اسم seem to be + v.ing seem to + inf. مصدر	للتعبير عن المضارع يأتى بعد to be صفة أو اسم أو فعل مستمر بـ ing. He seems to be clever. The story seems to be true. He seems to be a driver. Omar seems to be playing a game. ويمكن أن يأتى بعد to أى فعل فى المصدر. Belal seems to like his new laptop. They seem to work hard.
seem to have + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل	للتعبير عن الماضى. You seem to have made a lot of money. I seem to have lost my car keys.
seem to have been + P.P.	للتعبير عن المجهول فى الماضى. The car seems to have been repaired by a clever mechanic.
seem like/as if يبدو كما لو	Ola seems like a nice girl. The last few days seemed like a dream. It seemed as if the end of the world had come.
It seems that + جملة	It seems that you have lost weight. It seems that our team will lose the next match. It seemed that someone had left the building unlocked.
There seem to be	There seem to be a lot of people outside.

Negative

النفى

Rule	Negative	Examples
seem	don't seem	They don't seem to be playing well.
seems	doesn't seem	Farah doesn't seem to be happy at her new school.
seemed	didn't seem	Lack of money didn't seem to be the main problem.

لاحظ

لا تستخدم seem فى المجهول ولا فى الاستمرار بعد v. to be

- He is seeming happy. (✗)
- He seems happy. (✓)
- The vase is seemed to be broken. (✗)
- The vase seems to be broken. (✓)

2 mean/means/meant

يعنى / يقصد

mean/ means/ meant	Rule القاعدة	Usage الاستخدام
	mean	تأتى mean بمعنى (يقصد / يعنى). The red light means 'Stop'.
	mean (that)	I mean (that) we'll have to leave early – that's all.
	(be) meant to + inf. مصدر	من المفترض أن: للحديث عن الغرض أو الحقيقة من شىء ما. School is meant to be educational. للحديث عن شىء متوقع. They were meant to arrive by now. للحديث عن شىء مقصود. It was meant to be a chocolate cake, but I dropped it.

لاحظ أن be meant to للمجهول ولذلك دائمًا قبلها المفعول أما إذا كانت الجملة للمعلوم فلا تسبق mean بـ v. to be ويكون قبلها الفاعل ويكون معناها أن فلانًا قصد شيئًا من كذا مثل:

- Alexander the Great meant Alexandria to be the capital of Egypt.

وعند تحويلها للمجهول تصبح:

- Alexandria was meant to be the capital of Egypt.

Negative النفى

Rule	Negative	Examples
mean	don't mean never mean	You don't really mean that, do you? I never mean to hurt or harm anyone.
means	doesn't mean never means	He doesn't mean to insult you. He never means to insult you.
meant	didn't mean never meant	I didn't mean to learn magic. I never meant to learn magic.
be meant	am not/ isn't/ aren't meant	You can go, Ahmed, you aren't meant to be helping me.

3 be supposed to + inf. مصدر من المفترض

Rule القاعدة	Usage الاستخدام
(be) supposed to …………	to talk about obligation. للحديث عن الإلزام والاضطرارية. I'm supposed to cook dinner tonight.
	to talk about what something or someone is likely or expected to do or be. للحديث عن شيء ما أو شخص ما يحتمل أو يتوقع أن يفعل أو يكون. It is supposed to rain this afternoon.
	to talk about arrangements. للحديث عن الترتيبات. I'm supposed to meet my colleagues on Monday evening.
	to talk about our beliefs about something. للحديث عن معتقداتنا عن شيء ما. Samsung is supposed to be the best phone that you can buy.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can't join you for lunch. I'm .... attend a meeting in ten minutes.
   a) supposing to b) supposing c) supposed d) supposed to
2. He .... to have been studying for the test all night.
   a) is supposing b) supposed c) seems d) meant
3. The hospital .... to help the local people, but everyone came to it.
   a) supposed b) was meant c) is seemed d) was meaning
4. I hope that you have read the report and understood what it ....
   a) seems b) is supposed c) means d) is meaning
5. I am supposed .... for the job advertised in the local newspaper before next week.
   a) applying b) will apply c) apply d) to apply
6. I'm so worried about Heba; she always .... be exhausted.
   a) seems b) seems to c) means d) supposed
7. He is playing computer games, but he's .... to be washing the car.
   a) seemed b) mean c) supposed d) seem
8. Instead of being excited about the good news, she .... quite upset.
   a) seemed b) means c) supposed d) seems to
9. I didn't .... to do it; it was by accident.
   a) seem b) seemed c) supposed d) mean
10. I am supposed .... the Japanese delegation at 9 am tomorrow morning.
    a) to meet b) meeting c) meet d) will meet

Practice ... Language General Exercises



Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Eiffel Tower .... to attract people to one of the exhibitions, but it has become one of the monuments.
   a) was meaning b) seems c) was meant d) is supposed
2. There were some problems at first, but they .... to have been solved.
   a) meant b) seem c) supposed d) will be supposed
3. I shouldn't eat too much. I .... to be on a diet.
   a) 'm supposed b) 'm not supposed c) seem d) was meant
4. It .... to be an apology, but it made her angry.
   a) is seemed b) is meant c) supposed d) was meant
5. The wedding .... to be a secret, so how did you find out about it? Did Leila tell you?
   a) meant b) is seemed c) was supposed d) was supposing
6. You .... problems with your washing machine.
   a) seem to be having b) are supposed to have c) are seemed to have d) are meant to have
7. The new method .... improve agriculture, but it was incorrectly used.
   a) seemed b) seems to c) was meant to d) was supposing
8. Maher .... to be good at interpreting, ... he?
   a) didn't seem/doesn't b) seemed/did c) doesn't seem/does d) seems/does
9. My little brother .... English fast.
   a) seems learn b) seems to have learnt c) seems learning d) is meaning to learn
10. The garbage .... today. Please take it out.
    a) didn't suppose to collect b) is supposed to collect c) is supposed to be collected d) was meant to collect
11. They stay at home all the time. They never .... to go anywhere.
    a) supposed b) seem c) are supposed d) are meant
12. The boss is asking for a technician. The photocopier doesn't .... to be working.
    a) mean b) suppose c) seem d) need
13. My teacher is pleased with me nowadays. My English .... to be getting better.
    a) was supposed b) is seemed c) seems d) means
14. The open space .... to be a playground for youth, but it has turned into a market.
    a) seems b) meant c) supposed d) was meant
15. I'd better hurry. I .... to be meeting Ahmed in ten minutes.
    a) seem b) 'm supposed c) was meant d) was supposed

16. All my friends .... to congratulate me when I got married, but only a few of them phoned me.
a) were supposed b) seemed c) meant d) are supposed

17. One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.
a) Our guests were supposing to come at 7:30, but they were late.
b) Our guests were seemed to come at 7:30, but they were late.
c) Our guests were supposed to come at 7:30, but they were late.
d) Our guests were seeming to come at 7:30, but they were late.

18. "We are supposed to wear a uniform at work." This means ....
a) it's necessary to do so b) we aren't allowed to do so
c) it's impossible to do so d) it's kind of us to do so

19. One answer to the following sentence is grammatically incorrect:
"You are supposed to obey your parents." This means that ....
a) it's necessary to do so b) it's your duty to do so
c) it's forbidden to do so d) it's advisable to do so

20. "My friends .... to wait for 2 hours, but they left after an hour."
a) were supposed b) were meaning c) seem d) mean

Longman and Previous Exams

21. Car drivers are .... to wear seat belts. (Longman)
a) seemed b) supposing c) supposed d) meaning

22. Rami's homework .... to be full of mistakes; the teacher is angry with him. (Longman)
a) means b) supposes c) seems d) sees

23. A: Did he mean .... her late at night? B: No, it was a mistake. (Longman)
a) to call b) to be called c) call d) to calling

24. She .... to have a hard time in that factory. She wants to look for another job. (Longman)
a) supposed b) seems c) is seemed d) is meant

25. They are supposed to arrive tomorrow. This sentence shows .... (Longman)
a) ability b) impossibility c) prohibition d) expectation

26. Salma .... to phone me last night, but she didn't. (الدقهلية - المنزلة)
a) was supposed b) seems c) is meant d) is supposed

27. Libraries .... to be places for reading. (المنشأة - سوهاج)
a) supposed b) are meant c) seem d) were meant

28. He gets high marks though he isn't clever. He .... to be a cheat. (سوهاج - البلينا)
a) supposes b) was supposed c) seems d) means

29. I can hear the drops of water outside. It seems .... (البحيرة)
a) to have rained b) rain c) rains d) to be raining

30. One of the following is INCORRECT: (البحيرة - حوش عيسى)
a) She seemed to be angry at the party.
b) She seemed angry at the party.
c) She seems to have been angry at the party.
d) She was seemed to be angry at the party.

Test yourself Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2



Take a test

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. The movie, Harry Potter, was .... from the book of the same title.
   a) adapted b) adopted c) admired d) admitted
2. I was astonished at the slowness of my new bike. The noun "slowness" is an antonym to the noun "....................".
   a) greed b) speed c) habit d) custom
3. The journalist said that he couldn't reveal the .... of his source.
   a) respect b) description c) identity d) prosperity
4. To apply for the babysitter job, you must have some .... working with kids.
   a) experiment b) research c) inspection d) experience
5. How long will it take to .... this sand onto the lorry?
   a) load b) overload c) download d) upload
6. Where did you get your wedding invitations ....? They have a creative design.
   a) carved b) published c) printed d) spread
7. You've really got no need to worry .... your weight. You look smart.
   a) in b) about c) for d) at
8. Many young people are fond of having a great number of .... on social networking sites.
   a) bloggers b) loaders c) followers d) advisors
9. My uncle works for a company that .... reference books.
   a) spreads b) rehearses c) deploys d) publishes
10. To hear the full interview, ... to the free National Geographic News podcast.
    a) subscribe b) describe c) inscribe d) prescribe
11. My little cousin doesn't .... anyone about his career, so he gets in trouble.
    a) invent b) summon c) expertise d) consult
12. Customers gain .... to up-to-date information through a computer database.
    a) recess b) exit c) access d) entry
13. I always use Google Chrome as my default internet ....
    a) image b) hardware c) media d) browser
14. The .... of the film was that crime does not pay.
    a) aspect b) moral c) role d) start
15. The latest Windows automatically .... your antivirus settings.
    a) updates b) outdates c) reverses d) deteriorates

Language

16. Ali always reaches his office before the appointed time. He .... to be enjoying his job.
   a) is meant b) seems c) supposed d) is seemed
17. The food .... to feed the poor, but everyone had a share of it.
   a) was meant b) was seemed c) was supposing d) is supposed
18. What are you doing at work? You .... to be on holiday.
   a) seem b) mean c) are meaning d) 're supposed
19. Yasser's phone never stops ringing. He .... to know a lot of people.
   a) seems b) was meant c) was supposed d) is seeming
20. Mohamed is much better after his illness, but he's .... to do any heavy work.
   a) meant b) not supposed to c) seemed d) supposed
21. The match .... to start at 8:30, but it was cancelled.
   a) seemed b) is meant c) was supposed d) wanted
22. Schools .... to follow rules of safety.
   a) supposed b) are meant c) are seemed d) must
23. The car engine is meant ....
   a) to check b) to have checked c) to be checking d) to be checked
24. What .... to do to improve your memory?
   a) you are supposed b) did you suppose
   c) you are meant d) are you supposed
25. I'm sorry I didn't .... to hurt you.
   a) meant b) supposed c) seem d) mean
26. Trains .... to arrive every 15 minutes.
   a) must b) are seemed c) are meant d) supposed
27. I .... to buy groceries this Friday as my wife is ill.
   a) suppose b) 'm supposed c) have supposed d) 'm supposing
28. Let's go to the party. It .... interesting.
   a) is meant b) is supposing to be c) supposes d) seems to be
29. The burglars must have come in through the window as the lock .... to be forced.
   a) seems b) is meant c) is supposed d) needs
30. One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.
   a) He was meant to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
   b) He was meaning to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
   c) He seemed to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
   d) He was supposing to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.

Study ... Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4





A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص الاستماع

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
addicted (adj)	مدمن	forever (adv)	للأبد	pros (n)	مميزات
anyway (adv)	على كل حال	forum (n)	منتدى	rank (n) (v) (ed)	رتبة / يضع فى رتبة (ترتيب)
behaviour (n)	سلوك	game (v) (d)	يمارس ألعاب الفيديو	safely (adv)	بأمان
birth (n)	ميلاد	guide (n) (v) (d)	مرشد (كتاب إرشادى) / يرشد	sensible (adj)	عاقل / منطقى
brainstorm (n)	عصف ذهنى	imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل	similar (adj)	مشابه
connect (v) (ed)	يتصل / يوصل / يربط	join (v) (ed)	يلتحق بـ	solve (v) (d)	يحل
cons (n)	عيوب	mention (v) (ed)	يذكر	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم / مساندة / يدعم
criticise (v) (d)	ينتقد	order (n)	ترتيب	symbol (n)	رمز
cute (adj)	لطيف	platform (n)	منصة / رصيف قطار	take care (v)	يهتم
develop (v) (ed)	يطور	pleased (adj)	مسرور	teen (n)	مراهق
each (pron)	كل	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى	unsuitable (adj)	غير مناسب
employee (n)	موظف	privacy (n)	خصوصية	useful (adj)	مفيد / نافع
entertain (v) (ed)	يسلى / يستضيف	profile (n)	الملف الشخصى / التعريفى	victim (n)	ضحية
exciting (adj)	مثير / رائع	programmer (n)	مبرمج		
fire (v) (d)	يفصل من العمل	programming (n)	برمجة		

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
represent (v) (ed)	يمثل / ينوب عن	purpose (n)	غرض	highlight (v) (ed) (n)	يسلط الضوء / عمل بارز
feelings (n)	مشاعر	viewpoint (n)	وجهة نظر	example (n)	مثال
register (v) (ed)	يسجل	explain (v) (ed)	يفسر	linking word (n)	أداة ربط

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can post your relationship status, whether single or married, on your Facebook ....
   a) profile b) drawer c) desk d) book
2. The young mother .... to the children exactly what to do in an emergency.
   a) waved b) told c) promised d) explained
3. While studying, I usually .... the important parts in the text in yellow.
   a) cut b) enlighten c) highlight d) darken
4. The head coach publicly .... the referee's decisions in the press conference.
   a) punished b) criticised c) rewarded d) praised
5. The old sailor .... the guests with stories of his sea travels.
   a) entertained b) delayed c) inspected d) trained
6. The plane crash .... were taken to hospital by helicopter immediately after they were discovered.
   a) officers b) criminals c) victims d) crew
7. The book club provides a .... for people who share an interest in reading literature.
   a) home b) view c) seminar d) forum
8. I can't .... what it will be like to lose my job after 20 years.
   a) imagine b) stop c) retire d) demand
9. Facebook has become the most important social media .... all over the world.
   a) pavement b) platform c) view d) canal
10. It would have been more .... to save the money than to spend it all on clothes.
    a) sensible b) sensitive c) senseless d) sensory

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

after all على أية حال	have an effect on له تأثير على	keep … entertained يسلى / يجعلهم مسرورين
as a result of كنتيجة لـ	have nothing to do with لا صلة له بـ	keep in contact with يُبقى على اتصال مع
do a blog post يعد لمنشور على مدونة	in a few years' time فى خلال سنوات قليلة	make rules يعد القواعد
for ages لعصور (لفترة طويلة)	in person شخصيًا	on your own بمفردك
have a problem لديه مشكلة	in short باختصار	pay attention to يهتم بـ
addicted to مدمن على	loads of كثير من	share with يشارك مع
divided into مقسم إلى	set of مجموعة من	

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
addict يدمن	addiction إدمان	addictive مسبب للإدمان addicted مدمن
connect يتصل	connection اتصال	connected متصل
criticise ينتقد	criticism نقد/انتقاد	criticised منتقد
employ يوظف	employment توظيف employee موظف employer صاحب العمل	employed موظف employable قابل للتوظيف
entertain يسلى	entertainment تسلية/ترفيه	entertaining مسلٍّ
imagine يتخيل	imagination خيال	imaginative خيالى (مبدع) imaginary خيالى (بعيد عن الواقع)
register يسجل	registration تسجيل	registered مسجل (رسميًا)
represent يمثل	representation تمثيل/إنابة عن representative مندوب / ممثل	representative نموذجى/تمثيلى (نيابيًا)

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- The President was represented at the conference by the Minister. (v)
- The lawyer was very efficient at the representation of the man in trial. (n)
- My brother works as a sales representative for a famous company. (n)
- These paintings are representative of the modern painting trend. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
criticise	ينتقد	condemn/blame	approve/praise	يستحسن/يمتدح
cute	لطيف	attractive/charming	hateful/ugly	كريه/قبيح
entertain	يسلي/يستضيف	amuse/satisfy	annoy/displease	يضايق
fire	يفصل من العمل	dismiss/sack	employ/hire	يوظف/يستأجر
privacy	خصوصية	secrecy	publicity	دعاية
register	يسجل	enroll/record	erase	يمحو/يزيل
represent	يمثل	serve/speak for	differ/oppose	يختلف/يعارض
similar	مشابه	alike	different/opposite	مختلف/مقابل
support	دعم	assistance/backing	discouragement/hindrance	عدم تشجيع/إعاقة

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Musicians need to use their .... as well as their technical skills.
   a) imagine b) imaginative
   c) imaginary d) imagination
2. At the end of the lecture, the professor divided all the attendees .... small discussion groups.
   a) at b) into c) with d) about
3. I managed to .... in contact with our foreign friends since we met on holiday.
   a) keep b) leave c) depart d) pay
4. Strict rules should be .... to limit the increase in air pollution.
   a) ignored b) done c) made d) finished
5. The teacher asked me to read the final page of the chapter and .... attention to the last paragraph.
   a) spend b) buy c) cost d) pay
6. My little sister loves to share her toys .... other children.
   a) with b) into c) at d) about

7. I'll connect the printer to the computer and then we can print the research. The noun of the verb "connect" is "..................".

a) connect b) connection c) connected d) connective

8. Our staff can give assistance with any problems that may arise. The word "assistance" is the synonym of the word "..................".

a) report b) rapport c) support d) export

Listening Text (1)



Scan & listen



Hamdi : Hey Khaled, can you help me? I'm doing a blog post on how to use social media well. Can you help me think of some interesting points to include please?[1]

Khaled: Yes, sure. What have you got so far?

Hamdi : OK, I think I'm going to begin by talking about your profile. That's important on social media.

Khaled: Definitely!

Hamdi : Great! What shall I write?

Khaled: Well, I like seeing who I'm chatting with on social media, so I believe you should always put up a nice picture of yourself on your profile. I hate it when people have symbols or something instead of their photo – you don't know who you are talking to.

Hamdi : I disagree; symbols tell you more about what someone thinks.

Khaled: Really, Hamdi? Well, I think it's important that people don't know too much. For example, in my opinion, it's a bad idea to include your date of birth to show your age.

Hamdi : I see your point. Did you know that about 50% of teenagers have experienced bad behaviour on social media? So, I think you're right not to give people too much information about yourself.

Khaled: After all, you have to be sensible on social media if you want to enjoy it safely.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام فعل فى صيغة المصدر بعد الفعل (help) كما يمكن استخدام المصدر. (to + inf)

Scan & listen



Listening Text (2)



Narrator 1

Dalida : Hi, I'm Dalida. I think the biggest effect that the internet has on young people is it keeps them entertained – there's always something to watch or listen to, and I'm never bored.

Narrator 2

Injy : Hi, I'm Injy. Like most of my friends, I think I'm addicted to the internet. If I'm not checking my social media apps, I feel worried that I'm missing something important. It means I have a lot of arguments with my parents at mealtimes and when we go out together.

Narrator 3

Ayman : Hello. I'm Ayman. I am so pleased I have the internet to help me with my homework. Imagine if you had to go to the library and read loads of books for every homework or project!

Narrator 4

Osama : Hi, my name's Osama. I game online which is really fun, so I think the internet has a good effect on my life, but I do worry about my sister.[1] She gets sad because she thinks her friends all have better lives than her and do more exciting things. She can't understand that they only post the good things and not the bad things.

Narrator 5

Radwa : Hi, Radwa here. I love the internet. I love computer programming so I go on forums to chat to other programmers – students and people who do it for a job. I have learned so much. And if I have a problem that I can't solve to do with programming, someone on the forum can usually help me.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام (do) قبل الفعل فى الجملة الخبرية للتأكيد بمعنى بالفعل.

Scan & listen



Listening Text (3) (Workbook)



Hanan : Leila, did you see the post that Hany put up the other day about social media behaviour in Egypt?

Leila : No, I was too busy updating my profile.(1) Do you know how difficult it is to take a good photo of yourself?

Hanan : I know what you mean. I just used a photo of my cat. Anyway, as I was saying, did you know that Hany's post said that 22 million people in Egypt connect to one popular social media app every day?

Leila : Wow! That's something like 20% of Egypt all on just one social media platform(2)! But getting back to your profile photo, why don't you use a photo of yourself?

Hanan : Don't you worry about what all those people might see on your profile? For example, imagine you post a photo of yourself doing something stupid now, and in a few years' time you apply for a job and the company look at your social media profile to see what kind of person you are. What opinion will they have of you?

Leila : I see your point, but in my opinion, social media should be personal and has nothing to do with your job.

Hanan : I disagree. I read about a man who was fired from his job for criticising his company on his personal profile. You can never be too careful. You don't know who might see your posts.

Leila : I didn't think posting a photo was so important!

Hanan : The thing is that as soon as you post something, it is there forever. So be careful with those selfies you're taking! Plus, Hany told me that(3) he was once the victim of bad behaviour after posting a photo of himself in some old jeans(4). He reported it and everything is fine now, but it really affected him at the time.

Leila : Wow! Well, I might think twice about updating my profile picture and just keep the photo of my dog. I think she's so cute and my selfies all look terrible anyway!

Hanan : I agree, I think your dog is lovely and it's a safer photo too.

Leila : Hey, look! Have you seen what Mona's wearing in the photo she's just posted?



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- تستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد التعبير (be busy).

٢- التعبير (something like) بمعنى ما يقرب من.

٣- معنى كلمة (Plus) وهو علامة الجمع (+) وتستخدم فى المحادثة بمعنى (أضف إلى ذلك).

٤- تستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد أداة الربط (after) إذا لم يأت بعدها فاعل.

Video Script



Social media can keep us in contact with friends, entertain us and keep us up-to-date. So, it's important to know how to use it safely.

First of all, take care with privacy settings. Make sure that the only people who can see what you're posting are people who you want to contact online.

Think carefully about the information that you share. Why not use a nice image instead of your face in your profile? And never put real details about yourself online, such as your date of birth, school, home address or your telephone number.

Don't be unkind. If you haven't got anything nice to say, don't say anything. And always check that you know who you are sending messages to. Is it one person or a large group?

If you want to meet more people online, there are lots of groups that you can join. Look for one with people who share your interests. But if anyone asks to meet you in person, tell an adult. Never meet them on your own.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها:

	Word	Examples
1	**each** نستخدم (each) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء بشكل منفصل، واحد فى كلّ مرة.	- He was holding a pen in each hand. - The teacher will ask each student to hand his essay in person.
	every نستخدم (every) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء معًا، فى مجموعة تعنى (كل شىء) أو (الجميع) أو (الكل).	Omar has seen a lot of films this month. He enjoyed every one of them.
2	**platform** ١- رصيف القطار ٢- منصة (يقف عليها المتحدث) ٣- منصة إلكترونية (مثل موقع تواصل اجتماعى)	- The Aswan train leaves from platform six. - He stepped up onto the platform and looked out into the audience. - Due to COVID-19, many educational platforms emerged to help students study online.
	pavement رصيف الشارع	He stopped the car just off the pavement.

	Word	Examples
3	**represent** يمثل/ينوب عن (منظمة/مجموعة)	He represented his company at the meeting.
	act ١- يتصرف ٢- يمثل (يقوم بدور) فى عمل فنى	- My parents are always telling me how I should act and what I should say. - As a child, she began acting in television commercials.
4	**sensible** عاقل / حكيم / عملى	- The young manager is sensible and can take good decisions. - It's sensible to keep a note of your passport number.
	sensitive حساس (لفهم مشاعر الناس / سريع التأثر)	- Our teacher is very sensitive to other people's feelings. - Coral reefs are very sensitive to changes in seawater temperature.
5	**profile**	تستخدم profile بأكثر من معنى كالتالى: - An image of the President's profile appears on the coin. صورة جانبية - I read a profile of my favourite writer in a magazine. لمحة عن حياة شخص - We need to increase our company's profile in Asia. رأى عام (مقدار الاهتمام العام والإشعار الذى يتلقاه شيء ما) - Your Facebook profile needs to be updated every now and then. ملف تعريفى

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A careless child suddenly stepped off the .... into the road in front of my car.
   a) pavement b) station c) platform d) stop
2. When he saw the fire, the young man .... very responsibly and called the police.
   a) represented b) acted c) made d) did
3. The artist painted the profile of a boat against the setting sun. In this sentence "profile" means "....................".
   a) reputation b) file c) opinion d) picture

4. Our geography teacher explained that each colour on the map .... a different area.

a) represents b) acts c) attaches d) connects

5. There was a small raised .... at one end of the meeting room for the speaker to stand on.

a) pavement b) side c) platform d) stop

6. Because of the traffic jam, there were cars waiting along .... side of the street.

a) both b) all c) every d) each

7. .... person should have a role in the progress of their country.

a) Neither b) Every c) Either d) Both

8. It would be .... to consult a parent or a teacher if you faced a problem on the internet.

a) sensible b) sensitive c) insane d) interested





Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Listening & Workbook

1. The .... of the new resort at El Galala is to attract more tourists.
   a) purpose b) reason c) search d) rank
2. The Family Game Show is a series of jobs listed in .... of difficulty.
   a) campaign b) profile c) order d) contrast
3. Because of the world economic crisis, a lot of companies all over the world decided to .... some of their workers and staff.
   a) keep b) hire c) shoot d) fire
4. The major cities in Egypt are .... by train and bus services.
   a) relied b) connected c) designed d) solved
5. Television is now considered an important .... for political and social debates.
   a) image b) pavement c) support d) forum
6. We recommend you buy a reliable .... to Italy before travelling there.
   a) presentation b) guard c) guide d) purpose
7. The man says he's unable to give up smoking as he's completely .... to it.
   a) addicted b) attained c) attacked d) applied
8. The news programme complained that the earthquake .... were living in tents in the city's parks.
   a) researchers b) victims c) survivors d) inventors
9. The .... should be informed about the new instructions and rules in the company.
   a) customers b) sections c) employees d) officers
10. The company director will be making short .... in the meeting.
    a) complaints b) products c) interviews d) presentations
11. Mandela became a/an .... of the struggle for human rights in Africa and the whole world.
    a) status b) image c) symbol d) painting
12. At the family party, my uncle, a former sailor, ... us with exciting stories of his adventures at sea.
    a) implanted b) entertained c) annoyed d) departed
13. The World Economic .... is held in Davos at the end of January every year.
    a) Club b) Championship c) Race d) Forum

14. It's the parents' job to train children in acceptable standards of ....

a) behaviour b) lecture c) capture d) rapture

15. The actress complained that the photographs taken without her approval were an invasion انتهاك of her ....

a) fame b) privacy c) wealth d) health

16. The oil company is known for paying the .... pretty well.

a) crews b) employers c) employees d) robbers

17. The secretary asked the head teacher how many students have .... for English summer classes.

a) treated b) retired c) resigned d) registered

18. Five Egyptian female players are now .... among the top ten squash players in the world.

a) graded b) retired c) ranked d) divided

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

19. She got fired from her first job for being careless. The antonym of the verb "fire" is "....................".

a) sack b) dismiss c) employ d) apply

20. I'm sorry, I didn't .... attention to what the presenter said about the weather.

a) pay b) push c) cost d) buy

21. The book is divided .... six sections, each one is about 20 pages.

a) for b) into c) on d) at

22. All rules are .... to ensure that all games are fair for everyone.

a) called b) broken c) done d) made

23. .... short, the report says that more money should be spent on reforming the road system.

a) At b) In c) On d) Out

24. I am keen to keep in close .... with you on this subject.

a) rehearse b) separation c) communication d) contact

25. The two houses are similar in size, but different in style. The synonym of the adjective "similar" is "....................".

a) far b) puzzled c) representative d) alike

26. She has been sharply criticised for her comments. The noun from the verb "criticise" is "....................".

a) criticised b) criticises c) criticism d) critical

27. She entertained the children with stories, songs and drama. The verb "entertain" is the opposite of "..................".

a) annoy b) satisfy c) reply d) amuse

28. The lawyer represented the criminal at court. The verb "represent" is similar in meaning to "..................".

a) differ b) act c) introduce d) speak for

29. He entertained us for hours with his stories and jokes. The verb "entertain" is an antonym of the verb "..................".

a) annoy b) amuse c) assist d) delay

30. The Ministry of Education has set up a special .... for online learning and communication between the teacher and the student.

a) platform b) building c) pavement d) facility

Longman and Previous Exams

31. Unfortunately, my friend has become technology ....; he spends too much time using the internet for unnecessary things. [Longman]

a) suggested b) protested c) protected d) addicted

32. .... is the state of being free from public attention. [Longman]

a) Publicity b) Piracy c) Privacy d) Accuracy

33. Mr Awany is going to .... our company at the upcoming conference. He will speak on behalf of the entire staff. [Longman]

a) reproduce b) represent c) introduce d) produce

34. The little girl is so cute. "Cute" is opposite in meaning to "..................". [Longman]

a) poor b) rich c) ugly d) attractive

35. There were .... of people standing around a TV set watching the final match in the club. [Longman]

a) loads b) loans c) leads d) loons

36. The word .... is an antonym of "criticise ". (البحيرة - إدارة حوش عيسى)

a) blame b) condemn c) praise d) erase

37. The train leaves for Cairo from .... 3. (سوهاج - إدارة طما)

a) platform b) pavement c) hill d) basement

38. A/An .... is a picture or shape that has a particular meaning. (البحيرة - إدارة البحيرة)

a) symbol b) acronym c) abbreviation d) profile

39. Egyptian squash players are .... number one in the last competition. (الشرقية - إدارة العاشر من رمضان)

a) faced b) distributed c) boosted d) ranked

40. Employees have to work hard so as not to be .... by their employers. (الجيزة - إدارة جنوب)

a) piled b) begged c) sighed d) fired

B Language

Other uses استخدامات أخرى

seem to/(be) meant to/(be) supposed to

1 seem/seems/seemed يبدو

seem/ seems/ seemed

Rule القاعدة	Usage الاستخدام
It seems to somebody (that)	يبدو لشخص أن ... It seems to me that you don't have much choice.
seem (state verb)	فعل غيرحركى (حالة) يسمى linking verb يربط الفاعل بالاسم أو الصفة ولا يأتى بعده الحال مثل الأفعال الحركية (dynamic/action) The boys seem satisfied with the teacher's explanation.
doesn't seem himself	لوصف العاطفة. He doesn't seem himself these days. لا يبدو فى حالته هذه الأيام.
seeming (adj)	ظاهرى (صفة قبل اسم فقط) We were suspicious of their seeming enthusiasm. حماس ظاهرى.
seemingly (adv)	ظاهريًا (حال غالبًا لوصف الصفة والجملة) She was seemingly unaware of all the activity around her. Seemingly, he borrowed the money from the bank.

2 mean/means/meant يعنى/يقصد

mean/ means/ meant

Rule القاعدة	Usage الاستخدام
mean	يقصد/يعنى (تأتى آخر السؤال) وليس بعدها to. What does this word mean?
be meant to be + v.ing	تستخدم be بعد meant to ثم v.ing للتعبير عن استمرار حدث فى المضارع. Come on, Osama, you're meant to be cleaning the room.
mean + v.ing = involve	يشمل - يضم. Being a doctor means working long hours.
mean + to + inf. = intend	ينوى - يهدف إلى. I wasn't criticising you, I really meant it for the best. I didn't mean to upset you.
mean that + جملة	The high cost of housing means that many young people can't afford to buy a house.

mean/ means/ meant	Rule القاعدة	Usage الاستخدام
	a means – means	تعنى وسيلة وهى مفرد وبها s والجمع به s ولكن بدون a. The train is an important means of transport.
	mean something to	للدلالة على أهمية شيء بالنسبة لشخص. I know how much your work means to you. Time meant nothing to me while I was travelling.
	mean (adj.)	تستخدم كصفة بمعنى قاس أو غير عطوف وبمعنى بخيل أيضًا. It was mean of him not to invite her. Don't be so mean to her! He's too mean to buy a present for his wife.

لاحظ

لا نستخدم الفعل mean فى الاستمرار فى معظم أحوالها.

- This is meaning trouble. (✗)
- This means trouble. (✓)
- What is this word meaning? (✗)
- What does this word mean? (✓)

3 be supposed to من المفترض

suppose/ be supposed to	Rule القاعدة	Usage الاستخدام
	be + not supposed to	تعبر be + not supposed to عن المنع والحظر وعدم السماح وخاصة مع النفى. You're not supposed to do something = you aren't allowed You're not supposed to park your car here. It's private parking only.
	be supposed to = be said to	تستخدم be supposed to بمعنى يقال /قيل. He is supposed to have twelve children. = He is said to have ....
	suppose (verb)	يفترض. What makes you suppose we're going to sell the house?
	It is supposed that + جملة	إذا استخدمنا that فنستخدم جملة بعدها. It is usually supposed that girls are less aggressive than boys.
	Suppose/ Supposing	تأتى فى أول الجملة بديلاً لـ if بمعنى الافتراض (شيء غير حقيقى). Suppose you lost your job tomorrow, what would you do?

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She means to open her own shop. The word "means" here can be replaced with "..................".
   a) intends b) must c) needs d) indicates
2. The internet is an important means of communication. The word "means" here is similar in meaning to a/an ....
   a) intention b) way c) need d) indication
3. After being fired from the company, he .... nervous.
   a) seemed b) was supposed c) was meant to d) meant
4. I .... she must be delighted about getting the job.
   a) seem b) was meant c) 'm supposed d) suppose
5. .... you won the lottery, what would you do with the money?
   a) Supposed b) Mean c) Suppose d) Seem
6. .... you won a million pounds, what would you do ?
   a) Suppose b) Mean c) supposed d) Seem
7. Dieting means .... careful about which foods you buy.
   a) to being b) to be c) being d) be
8. The washing machine seems .... well, It's in a good condition.
   a) to repair b) to have repaired
   c) to have been repaired d) be repaired
9. Your support .... a lot to me as I was in bad need of money.
   a) seems b) was meant c) supposed d) meant
10. Kamal is busy nowadays. He .... a good job now.
   a) is seeming to have b) had
   c) seems to have d) seems has

Practice ... Language General Exercises



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My teacher .... to be happy. All his students had passed the exam.
   a) supposed b) seemed c) meant d) are supposed
2. It's blue, but it was .... to be purple.
   a) meant b) seemed c) supposing d) meaning
3. Amal .... to phone me last night, but she didn't.
   a) was supposed b) is supposed c) supposed d) is supposing
4. There .... to be a mistake in these figures.
   a) are supposed b) meant c) were supposed d) seems
5. I'm sorry. I didn't .... to break your vase.
   a) mean b) suppose c) seem d) supposed
6. These tablets .... be good for the nerves and sleeplessness.
   a) means to b) seem c) are meant d) seem to
7. The children have been playing for an hour now. They .... a wonderful time.
   a) are meant having b) are supposed having
   c) seem to be having d) were supposed to have
8. I .... to look after my younger brother while my parents are away.
   a) suppose b) 'm supposed c) am supposing d) supposing
9. Being a teacher means .... a lot of homework.
   a) to check b) to be checked c) checking d) checked
10. The high cost of housing .... that many young people can't afford to buy a house.
    a) seems b) means c) supposed d) is supposing
11. Why are you outside the factory? You .... to be working.
    a) seem b) mean c) are supposed d) are seemed
12. This old computer doesn't .... to be working properly.
    a) mean b) suppose c) need d) seem
13. I don't know how long Hany's been working on that project, but it .... like weeks.
    a) seems b) supposes c) means d) supposed
14. Factories are .... to employ a lot of people and satisfy our needs.
    a) seemed b) supposing c) meaning d) meant
15. He .... like an honest person, but then we found out he wasn't.
    a) supposed b) is meant c) seemed d) is supposed
16. "You weren't supposed to do that." means: ....
    a) You should do that, but you don't.
    b) You should have done it, but you didn't.
    c) You shouldn't have done it.
    d) You shouldn't do that, but you do.

17. People aren't supposed to get on the train without a ticket. This means ....
   a) it isn't a good idea for people to get on the train without a ticket
   b) it is against the law to get on the train without a ticket
   c) it is advisable for people not to get on the train without a ticket
   d) it is inadvisable for people not to get on the train without a ticket

18. One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect:
   a) It seems that he is innocent. b) He is seeming to be innocent.
   c) He seems to be innocent. d) He seems innocent.

19. One answer is grammatically correct:
   a) We seem to interrupt you while you were asleep.
   b) We didn't mean to interrupt you while you were asleep.
   c) We supposed to interrupt you while you were asleep.
   d) We weren't supposed to interrupt you while you are asleep.

20. One answer to the following sentence is grammatically incorrect:
   Amr seems .... a good day.
   a) that he has b) has c) to have d) to be having

Longman and Previous Exams

21. He .... to like the new T-shirt; it isn't fashionable. (Longman)
   a) doesn't seem b) isn't seemed c) isn't supposing d) not supposed

22. I'm .... to tidy my room before I start studying. (Longman)
   a) have b) seemed c) meaning d) supposed

23. He .... to be absent-minded; he didn't see the car coming towards him. (Longman)
   a) opposed b) supposed c) meant d) seemed

24. He .... have read many books; he is really knowledgeable. (Longman)
   a) seems to b) supposed to c) can't d) should

25. The factory .... to provide work opportunities for more than two hundred people. (Longman)
   a) supposed b) is meant c) is meaning d) seem

26. That piece of cloth .... to be a shirt, but the tailor made it a pair of trousers. (القاهرة - المعصرة)
   a) is supposed b) was supposed c) is meant d) is seemed

27. Computers .... to help people and all institutions carry out easier work. (الجيزة - العمرانية)
   a) supposed b) seems c) meant d) are meant

28. What .... do in a situation like this? (الشرقية - بلبيس)
   a) do we supposed to b) we are supposed to
   c) are we supposed to d) we should have to

29. .... we miss the train, what would we do then? (القاهرة - إدارة المقطم)
   a) Suppose b) Seem c) Mean d) Meaning

30. My homework .... to be full of mistakes; the teacher is angry with me. (أسوان)
   a) means b) supposes c) seems d) is seemed

Test yourself Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. All the patients at this hospital have .... health problems; it is specialised in treating patients with bone diseases.
   a) different b) similar c) sincere d) resourceful
2. The teacher .... a big problem with the slow learners in the school.
   a) has b) does c) performs d) owns
3. The head teacher seems to be liked by .... single person in the school.
   a) both b) all c) every d) each
4. The company where my father works has only 60 .... at reasonable salaries.
   a) employers b) sections c) employees d) officers
5. The famous actor is in charge of the publicity for next year's festival. The noun "publicity" can be the opposite of the noun "..................".
   a) privacy b) property c) probability d) acceptability
6. I bought my mother a new set .... kitchen knives as a birthday present.
   a) of b) for c) in d) with
7. The lazy worker was dismissed from his job. The verb "dismiss" is similar in meaning to the verb "..................".
   a) welcome b) retrieve c) defy d) fire
8. The report .... the importance of exercise to maintain a healthy body.
   a) deprived b) declined c) granted d) highlighted
9. I understand your .... about the new system, but do not share it.
   a) importance b) quarrel c) viewpoint d) treaty
10. The politician tried to make his speech more .... for the audience.
    a) entertain b) entertainment c) entertaining d) entertained
11. This maths problem is difficult; you can't do it .... your own.
    a) at b) on c) in d) about
12. The tour .... took the tourists around the Grand Egyptian Museum.
    a) pioneer b) serial c) speech d) guide
13. Mohamed Salah has become a .... of the successful Egyptian young man who can serve his country.
    a) signal b) claim c) symbol d) means
14. The film was .... for the violent and inappropriate scenes in it.
    a) criticised b) punished c) rewarded d) praised
15. The World Health Organisation provides the best .... for the exchange of views and ideas about world pandemics.
    a) firm b) corporation c) farm d) forum

Language

16. I can't join you for lunch. I'm .... attend a meeting in ten minutes.
a) supposing to b) supposing
c) supposed d) supposed to

17. These shoes don't .... to fit. They're a little small.
a) mean b) seem c) suppose d) want

18. What .... to do to improve your English?
a) do you seem b) are you meant
c) do you mean d) you are supposed

19. A: What is Ahmed's problem? B: I don't know, but he .... angry.
a) is meant to be b) is supposed to be
c) supposes to be d) seems to be

20. Don't wait for me. I .... to visit my uncle in hospital after school.
a) seemed b) 'm supposed c) am meaning d) supposed

21. She is determined to get a ticket for the concert even if it means .... a lot of money.
a) paying b) to pay c) to be paid d) to paying

22. The police are looking for him. He .... to have a criminal background.
a) supposes b) seems c) means d) is seemed

23. You're .... to start work at 8:30 every morning.
a) seemed b) meaning c) wanted d) supposed

24. What .... by "globalisation"?
a) are you meaning b) supposed to mean
c) do you mean d) are you seeming to mean

25. The internet .... to be more important than it really is.
a) supposes b) is supposed c) means d) seeming

26. Khalid's little boy is a live wire! He plays all day and never .... to get tired.
a) seems b) supposes c) means d) wants

27. I'm going to buy this car. It .... to be very good.
a) is seemed b) was seemed c) is supposed d) suppose

28. This is a painting of an elephant, but it was .... to be a horse!
a) seemed b) meant c) like d) supposing

29. He's so .... that he wouldn't give a beggar a crust of bread.
a) seemed b) supposed c) meant d) mean

30. You .... to play loud music after midnight. It disturbs the local residents.
a) are supposed b) aren't meant
c) are not supposed d) are seemed





Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

An email to a friend

• Write an email to your friend Hesham advising him how to use social media well.

Writing tips

LAYOUT OF AN E-MAIL

New message

From .... اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى

To .... اسم المُرسَل إليه وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى

Subject .... موضوع الرسالة

Hi Hesham,

I hope you are fine. This is my advice to you in order to use social media well and effectively. Social media is now a critical part of our lives, so we must use it carefully. Therefore, you can depend on social media for several purposes, such as communication, study, paying money, earning money and so on. But firstly you should decide on your goal and make a plan to achieve it. This will help to measure your results. Social media is not only for fun. Many businesses depend on it for publicity or to promote their products.

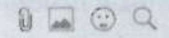
As students, we can benefit from it by learning language courses online, attending educational lectures, and downloading dictionaries.

I regularly read English novels and stories on some specialised websites and this helped me to improve my English.

The most important thing is that you shouldn't share your private details and information easily on social media because this is not completely safe nowadays. Also, don't log into weird sites or pages as this will waste your time without any benefit.

Thanks for your time

Bye



Send



Practice more

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى
قطع الفهم والتراجم لهاية الكتاب

(A) Reading Comprehension

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

While technology is taking control steadily over individual lives, the reading habit is fast vanishing into thin air. TV and the silver screen are filling the minds of the modern youth, taking the majority of their free time. We have to think seriously about how the growing generations will find time to read.

Video and television are responsible for the declining interest in reading among youth. They do nothing to build up reading skills. If the children's time is devoted to reading, the population could be better educated.

Reading a story is an active partnership between a writer and a reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest, but watching something is totally passive.

The problem is that many children read very slowly. It is hardly surprising that such children declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television.

Their difficulty is not reading the words – it is interpreting them. They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story. Only by reading daily a child will become a strong and independent reader.

Parents need to be convinced of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their time. Without the television, the child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Reading helps people to be ....

a) well-paid b) good actors c) well-educated d) good writers

2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

a) the youth b) video and television
c) children d) reading skills

3. According to the writer's view, TV is .... means of entertainment.

a) not an effective b) an encouraging
c) an effective d) not a cheap

4. The synonym of the word "independent" is "..................".

a) active b) intelligent
c) self-centred d) self-determining

5. **What is the reason behind the decline in the reading habit among youth?**

a) Lack of free time. b) Not going to schools.
c) Doing sports. d) TV and video.

6. **There is a fruitful partnership between a writer and a reader when ....**

a) a video is watched b) a short story is read
c) an article is published d) a book is sold

7. **Children, who read slowly, ...**

a) like TV b) speak fast
c) like reading d) are disabled

8. **The best title for the passage is "..................".**

a) The Importance of Reading b) Technology Pros
c) The Benefits of Technology d) Children's Preferences

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Uncle Azmy is my favourite family member. He is above sixty years old, but he has the power to lift a bag containing thirty kilos of potatoes: he always does so to help his wife, Aunt Fateema, as a sign of admiration. He is very healthy and always eats fruits and vegetables from his own field. He loves jokes and funny stories. My dad calls this silliness, that's why they are not on the same page. Dad was born five years before Uncle Azmy's birth, so he is wiser and more thoughtful.

When we gather as a family, Uncle Azmy must play a prank on someone. Last time, he secretly put hot sauce in his wife's dish. She got hot and her face was red. Instead of helping her, he tumbled around on the floor, laughing hysterically.

Nobody was surprised because that wasn't the first time to see such a situation. I got used to these deeds because I really understand him. This guy had a very strict life throughout his career as an officer. He wasn't allowed to even smile.

He always gave and took commands and instructions. When he retired, he was born again as he described his feeling. The only one who is against his actions is my father. He is a seventy-year-old retired man and prefers a strict lifestyle although he hasn't joined the army before.

Uncle Azmy gives me positive vibes about life. Age is never an obstacle to doing whatever you want. Once I tried to create a Facebook account for him, I was shocked when I knew that he had it a year before and had already one thousand friends. I immediately searched for him; his account was named Azmy Pranks. What an old man!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Although Mr Azmy is old, he is ....

a) wise b) weak c) strong d) helpful

2. Mr Azmy loves his wife so he ....

a) helps her carry heavy bags
b) buys fruits for her
c) plays silly pranks on her
d) calls her darling

3. Mr Azmy is .... years old.

a) sixty
b) about fifty
c) sixty five
d) seventy five

4. Mrs Fateema's face got red ....

a) because she put much hot sauce
b) because she was embarrassed
c) because of her husband's prank
d) when she saw the red sauce

5. The writer's father doesn't like his brother's tricks because ....

a) he does better tricks
b) he is an army officer
c) he thinks they are silly
d) the tricks are dangerous

6. What happened to Mrs Fateema wasn't a surprise as ....

a) everybody likes tricks
b) everybody knows Uncle Azmy's character
c) the writer told them about the trick previously
d) Uncle Azmy did that by mistake

7. The underlined word "vibes" means ....

a) feelings b) ideas c) components d) actions

8. The best title for the passage is "....................".

a) The Elderly Life
b) Mr Azmy's Rebirth
c) Cooperation and Love
d) Mr Azmy's Healthy Lifestyle

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. Mobile addiction has become one of the psychological problems which many young people suffer from. Doctors have special courses to treat it like any psychological disease.

a) أصبح إدمان الهاتف المحمول من المشاكل العصبية التى يعانى منها الكثير من الشباب، والأطباء لديهم دورات خاصة لعلاجه مثل أى مرض نفسى.

b) أصبح إدمان الهاتف المحمول من المشاكل النفسية التى يعانى منها الكثير من الشباب، والأطباء لديهم دورات خاصة لعلاجه مثل أى مرض نفسى.

c) أصبح إدمان الهاتف المحمول من المشاكل العصبية التى يعانى منها الكثير من الشباب، والأطباء لديهم دور خاص لعلاجه مثل أى مرض نفسى.

d) أصبح إدمان الهاتف المحمول من المشاكل النفسية التى يعانى منها الكثير من الشباب، والأطباء لديهم دورات خاصة لمعاملته مثل أى مرض نفسى.

2. Due to technology, advertising has become a real science. Some colleges have already created new departments which are specialised in this science.

a) بسـبب التكنولوجيا، أصبح الإعلان "علمًا" حقيقيًا ولقد قامت بعض الكليات بالفعل بإنشـاء أقسام جديدة متخصصة فى هذا العلم.

b) بسبب التكنولوجيا، أصبح الإعلام "علمًا" حقيقيًا ولقد قامت بعض الكليات بالفعل بإنشاء أقسام جديدة متخصصة فى هذا العلم.

c) بسبب التكنولوجيا، أصبح الإعلان "علمًا" حقيقيًا ولقد قامت بعض الكليات بالفعل بإنشاء مقررات جديدة متخصصة فى هذا العلم.

d) بسبب التكنولوجيا، أصبح الإعلان "علمًا" حقيقيًا ولقد قامت بعض الكليات بالفعل بتعيين كوادر جديدة متخصصة فى هذا العلم.

3. Egyptian history is full of great women who were ready to sacrifice their lives so that Egypt could get a better future. So, we should all remember them.

a) التاريخ المصرى يزدحم بالنساء العظميات المستعدات للتضحية بأرواحهن حتى تحصل مصر على مستقبل أفضل. لذا، يجب أن نتذكرهن جميعًا.

b) التاريخ المصرى ملىء بالنسـاء العظميات المسـتعدات للتضحية براحتهن حتى تحصل مصر على مستقبل أفضل. لذا، يجب أن نتذكرهن جميعًا.

c) التاريخ المصرى ملىء بالنساء العظميات المستعدات للتضحية بأرواحهن حتى تحصل مصر على مستقبل مختلف. لذا، يجب أن نتذكرهن جميعًا.

d) التاريخ المصرى ملىء بالنساء العظميات المستعدات للتضحية بأرواحهن حتى تحصل مصر على مستقبل أفضل. لذا، يجب أن نتذكرهن جميعًا.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. يجب ألا يصدق الناس أو يشاركوا كل ما يقرءون على صفحات وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى؛ فهى مليئة بالشائعات التى قد تدمر سمعة الناس واقتصاد البلاد.

a) People don't have to believe or share everything they read on social media pages. They are full of rumours that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.

b) People should not believe or divide everything they read on social media pages. They are full of rumours that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.

c) People should not believe or share everything they read on social media pages. They are full of fiction that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.

d) People should not believe or share everything they read on social media pages. They are full of rumours that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.

5. غيرت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي، وخاصة موقع فيسبوك، أسلوب تواصل الناس وخاصة الشباب؛ لذلك أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من الحياة الحديثة ولا يمكن للشباب الاستغناء عنها.

a) Social media, especially Facebook, have changed the way people communicate, especially young people. Therefore, they have become an important part of modern life and young people cannot stand them.

b) Social media, especially Facebook, have changed the way people connect, especially young people. Therefore, they have become an important part of modern life and young people cannot do without them.

c) Social media, especially Facebook, have changed the way people communicate, especially young people. Therefore, they have become an important part of modern life and young people cannot do without them.

d) Social media, especially Facebook, have changed the way people communicate especially young people. Nevertheless, they have become an important part of modern life and young people cannot do without them.

6. كثيرًا ما تُتهم وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي بانتهاك خصوصية المستخدمين رغم تأكيدها على حرصها على البيانات الشخصية لكل من يمتلك حسابًا بها.

a) Social media are often accused of violating the privacy of users, despite their assertion that they are keen on the personal data of everyone who has an account with them.

b) Social media are often accused of expecting the privacy of users, despite their assertion that they are keen on the personal data of everyone who has an account with them.

c) Social media are often accused of violating the privacy of owners despite their assertion that they are keen on the personal data of everyone who has an account with them.

d) Social media are often accused of violating the privacy of users, despite their doubt that they are keen on the personal data of everyone who has an account with them.

(C) Writing

4 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**

"Everyone should understand the importance of water in our life and the problems faced during scarcity of water."

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.



1 **Finish the following dialogue:**

Khalid and Marco are talking about global warming.

Khalid : I've just read a good book about global warming.

Marco : I'd like to read it. (1)..?

Khalid : Of course. I'll bring it to school tomorrow. I worry a lot about global warming.

Marco : Why?

Khalid : It has serious effects on our world.

Marco : (2).. . Scientists must help to stop it.

Khalid : Yes, but we can help to stop it.

Marco : How? What can we do?

Khalid : (3)... . That will help.

Marco : I already turn off the lights when I leave a room. What other things can we do?

Khalid : (4)... .

Marco : Yes, you're right. We can all do more to help the environment.

A Glimpse of Revelation II

2 **(A) Answer the following questions:**

1. How does the aspect of worship in Islam differ from the concept of worship in the West?
2. What distinguishes true worship in Islam?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. The true submission to Allah occurs when there is ....
   a) fear of punishment b) complete and full love for Allah
   c) fear of societal judgment d) hope for wealth
4. Economic activities considered worship in Islam ....
   a) only if they result in personal gain
   b) only if they involve dishonesty and deceit
   c) when remaining honest and truthful in them
   d) when they are solely for personal gain

King Lear

3 **(A) Answer the following questions:**

1. How was the King affected by Goneril and Regan's bad treatment?
2. How did Kent try to help the King when his two daughters treated him badly?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. .... follows Lear into the storm to try to help him.
   a) Gloucester b) Cornwall c) Edgar d) Oswald
4. Kent sent a soldier with a .... to Dover to ask Cordelia to help the King.
   a) letter b) present c) sword d) ring

4 **(A) Translate into Arabic:**

- The population explosion is a problem facing all the third-world countries, especially developing countries.

(B) Translate into English:

- القراءة تنمى العقل وتجعل الإنسان على وعى بما يدور حوله فى المجتمع والعالم الخارجى.

Unit 5

Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We need to run many .... adverts to spread our products widely.
   a) sponsored b) active c) shared d) achieved
2. The story of the terrible murder was given a high .... in today's papers.
   a) sight b) profile c) character d) view
3. The World Youth .... is held in Sharm El-Sheikh and is attended by young people from all over the world.
   a) Scenery b) View c) Seminar d) Forum
4. The weak students of the 6th grade were offered Saturday courses to .... their skills.
   a) subscribe b) outdate c) upgrade d) install
5. Text messaging enables people to keep in close .... at all times.
   a) link b) connection c) contact d) contraction
6. The project has been criticised as a waste of money. The antonym of the verb "criticise" is "..................".
   a) praise b) retreat c) denounce d) reverse
7. She .... to finish her homework, so she can't come with us.
   a) is supposed b) supposes c) is seemed d) is meaning
8. They are happy; they .... be having a nice time.
   a) are meaning to b) supposed to c) seem to d) won't
9. It .... that we must do our best to get the high marks.
   a) means b) seemed c) seems d) is meaning
10. There .... to be a problem with the trains this morning.
    a) is supposed b) is meant c) means d) seems
11. Finding a job means .... many interviews.
    a) attending b) to attend c) to be attended d) being attended
12. I want to see that film. It .... to be good.
    a) means b) meant c) seemed d) 's supposed

13. Planes are supposed to be the most comfortable .... of transport.

a) means b) mean c) meaning d) meant

14. There is no reason to .... she's lying.

a) suppose b) seem c) mean d) be supposed

15. One answer to the following sentence is incorrect:

"My uncle's new car ....".

a) seems like a luxurious one b) seems to be a luxurious one

c) seems a luxurious one d) is seeming to be a luxurious one

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Internet is full of useful information. You can find everything from food recipes, new jobs, news, and information on various topics. Most students use the internet to find information, because there is so much information about almost anything you can imagine to be found on the web.

Since anyone can put up anything there, you are likely to find false information. It is important to be able to tell the difference between false and correct information. The result for "pollution" will give you many different results and how do you know what to trust and what to use? Most people settle for the first three results. There are many things you should consider while searching on the web:

1- Don't use personal sites as they are presenting the page owner's opinions.

2- Trust the sites whose endings are the .com, .org or .edu.

3- Consider the date of the publishing. If it was written ten years ago, the facts are very likely to have changed. It is very important to use up-to-date facts.

4- It is a very good idea to check out the sources the author has used. Maybe they are even better than what the author has created.

5- Google the author and see if you can find any information on him/her.

6- It is often a good idea to see what sort of pages that link to the page you are looking up. These simple steps can help you to evaluate whether the information you have found is false or not. It is always important to remember that everyone can post anything on internet, and it is important to check your sources twice.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. Most students use the internet to ....

a) know the weather b) find jobs

c) find information d) know the current news

17. Because the internet is for everyone, we find ………………… .

a) bad things
b) false information
c) correct information
d) false and correct information

18. In order to find what we need quickly, we should be ………………… .

a) a) smart
b) youtubers
c) researchers
d) gamers

19. The synonym of the word "evaluate" is "………………".

a) know
b) value
c) recognise
d) find

20. For food recipes, new jobs, news, we use ………………… .

a) the Internet
b) the TV
c) the GPS
d) the CPR

21. To be smart online, you should ………………… .

a) use personal sites as they are presenting the page owner's opinions
b) trust the all sites
c) trust the sites whose endings are the .com, .org or .edu
d) open all the messages sent to you

22. The word that means "untrue" from the passage is ………………… .

a) Google
b) evaluate
c) result
d) false

23. The best title for the passage is ………………… .

a) Using the internet for finding news
b) Being smart online
c) Keeping your information secret
d) Sharing information

24. Choose the correct English translation:

– تُسهم المشروعات القومية الكبرى التى يتم تنفيذها فى كل أنحاء مصر فى حل الكثير من المشكلات الاقتصادية وتوفير فرص العمل للشباب الطامح إلى حياة أفضل.

a) The major international projects that are being implanted throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economic problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.
b) The major national projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solve many economic problems and provide job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.
c) The major national projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economic problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.
d) The major national projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economical problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- It is said that many bad habits such as smoking, drug addiction and violent behaviour usually start in teenage. So, teenagers should be careful not to do this at their age.

a) يُقال إن العديد من العادات السيئة مثل التدخين وإدمان الأدوية والسلوك السيئ تبدأ عادة فى سن المراهقة. لذلك، يجب أن يحرص المراهقون على القيام بذلك فى حياتهم.

b) يُقال إن العديد من العادات السيئة مثل التدخين وإدمان المخدرات والسلوك العنيف تبدأ عادة فى سن المراهقة. لذلك، يجب ألا يحرص الشباب على عدم القيام بذلك فى سنهم.

c) يُقال إن العديد من العادات السيئة مثل التدخين وإدمان المخدرات والسلوك العنيف تبدأ عادة فى سن المراهقة. لذلك، يجب أن يحرص المراهقون على عدم القيام بذلك فى عصرهم.

d) يُقال إن العديد من العادات السيئة مثل التدخين وإدمان المخدرات والسلوك العنيف تبدأ عادة فى سن المراهقة. لذلك، يجب أن يحرص المراهقون على عدم القيام بذلك فى سنهم.

26. Answer the following questions: (The play)

1. Do you think that Cornwall put Kent in the stocks in order to annoy the King? Why?
2. In your opinion, were Goneril and Regan agree about the way they treated their father?
3. If you were the King, would you ask Cordelia and her husband's help against her daughters? Why?

27. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Your friend will take part in a reading competition for Arab writers. He asks your advice about the sources he can use to research them. Give him your advice."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 405

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Unit 6
Learning from our mistakes





Reading : Two extracts from an abridged version of *A Christmas Carol* by Charles Dickens
Writing : An essay on your regrets
Listening : A radio programme about regrets
Speaking : Role-play about recognising mistakes
Language : Conditionals (zero, first, second and third)
Life Skills : Learning from our mistakes



Study ... Part 1 | Lessons 1 & 2





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
beg (v) (ged)	يرجو/يتوسل	fire (n) (v) (d)	نار/مدفأة/يطلق الرصاص/يفصل من العمل	sigh (v) (ed) (n)	يتنهد/يتحسر/تنهيدة
carol (n)	ترنيمة (أغنية دينية مسيحية)	mean (adj) (v)	بخيل/يعنى/يقصد		
Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد	pile (n) (v)	كومة / يتراكم		

Vocabulary on Reading Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
actually (adv)	بالفعل	faraway (adj)	بعيد	pay (v)	يدفع
alone (adj) (adv)	بمفرده	foggy (adj)	ضبابى/مغيم بالضباب	poor (adj)	فقير/مسكين
assistant (n)	مساعد/بائع	friendly (adj)	لطيف/ودود	probably (adv)	من المحتمل
boss (n)	رئيس العمل	including (prep)	مشتملًا على/بما فيه	race (n)	سباق
breath (n)	نفس/تنفس	large (adj)	كبير	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
continue (v) (d)	يستمر	life (n)	حياة	surprised (adj)	مندهش
disappointed (adj)	محبَط	mistake (n)	خطأ	tone (n)	نبرة صوت
dream (n) (v)	حلم/يحلم	nephew (n)	ابن الأخ/ابن الأخت	treat (v) (ed)	يعامل/يعالج
employer (n)	صاحب العمل	novel (n)	رواية	upset (v) (adj)	يضايق/يزعج/منزعج
enormous (adj)	ضخم	office (n)	حجرة مكتب		

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
call (v) (ed)	يتصل	international (adj)	دولى	regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
donation (n)	تبرع	invite (v) (d)	يدعو	waste (v) (d)	يهدر/يسرف
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	logical (adj)	منطقى	water (v) (ed)	يروى
generous (adj)	كريم	map (n)	خريطة		
health (n)	صحة	museum (n)	متحف		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. As the candles burned down, the family sang Christmas ...., and the father passed out the presents.
   a) films b) carols c) games d) operas
2. The homeless woman had to .... for money and food for her children.
   a) beg b) order c) refuse d) yell
3. The clerk .... heavily as he looked at the files which he had to finish.
   a) smiles b) cried c) fought d) sighed
4. The police .... two shots at the suspects before they surrendered.
   a) breathed b) designed c) fired d) warmed
5. The clothes we collected for the charity were in a .... on the floor.
   a) hole b) pile c) well d) pool
6. The old man's too .... to buy any new clothes even at Christmas.
   a) main b) generous c) kind d) mean
7. Leaving her previous job was a bad decision which Nour would soon ....
   a) regret b) repeat c) please d) rejoice
8. The tourists were .... to find that the museum was closed for repairs.
   a) disappointed b) appointed c) acquainted d) satisfied
9. Letting the water run while you brush your teeth .... a lot of water.
   a) benefits b) wastes c) keeps d) saves
10. Every .... should spend money on training for modern methods of customer service.
   a) customer b) buyer c) employer d) client

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

at the beginning	فى البداية	feel alone	يشعر بالوحدة	get lost	يضل الطريق
change his mind	يغير رأيه	feel healthy	يشعر بصحة جيدة	keep........ warm	يحافظ على الدفء
do exercise	يمارس تمرينات	get burnt	يحترق / يتأثر بحرارة الشمس	miss the train	يفوته القطار
ask for	يطلب	pay for	يدفع مقابل	smile at	يبتسم بوجه
breath out	زفير	plenty of	وفرة (كثير) من	work for	يعمل لصالح
feel about	يشعر بشأن	run off	يجرى بعيدًا		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
assist	يساعد	assistance assistant	مساعدة مساعد	----------------------	
continue	يستمر	continuation	استمرار	continuous	مستمر
donate	يتبرع	donation donor	تبرع متبرع	----------------------	
invite	يدعو	invitation	دعوة	inviting	داعٍ
regret	يأسف/يندم	regret	ندم	regrettable regretful	مأسوف عليه نادم
surprise	يفاجئ/يدهش	surprise	مفاجأة	surprised surprising	مندهش مفاجئ
treat	يعامل/يعالج	treatment	معاملة/علاج	treatable	يمكن علاجه
waste	يهدر/يسرف	waste	هدر/إسراف	wasteful	مبذر

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- I always **treat** my employees well. (v)
- My **treatment** of my employees affects work. (n)
- Some people think that mental illness is not **treatable**. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
assistant	مساعد	helper/aide		opponent/enemy	خصم/ عدو
beg	يرجو/يتوسل	request/urge		give/reply	يعطى
disappointed	محبط	depressed/dissatisfied		cheerful/comforted	مرح
donation	تبرع	charity/assistance		blockage/hindrance	غلق/منع
foggy	مغيم بالضباب	cloudy/misty		clear	صافٍ
generous	كريم	hospitable/charitable		mean/miserly	بخيل
mistake	خطأ	error/fault		correctness/soundness	صواب/سلامة
treat	يعامل	deal with/conduct		abandon/ignore	يترك
waste	يسرف/يهدر	exhaust/misuse		maintain/save	يحافظ على

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The article contains many spelling errors. The word "error" is a synonym of the word "..................".
   a) prize b) correctness c) mistake d) clearing
2. Sami had to refuse the dinner .... because of his appointment with the dentist.
   a) invite b) invitation c) invited d) invention
3. Doctors advise all people to .... exercise to keep healthy and feel relaxed.
   a) make b) note c) do d) neglect
4. Salah's parents paid .... him to go to Canada and complete his studies.
   a) at b) about c) in d) for
5. I hope my mother will change her .... about my friend Leila after she meets her tonight.
   a) head b) mind c) brain d) matter
6. The passenger arrived ten minutes late, so he .... the six o'clock train.
   a) missed b) lost c) arrived d) scored
7. I always advise my sister not to make unnecessary long calls as they are a .... of time.
   a) waste b) wasted c) wasteful d) wasteless
8. My cousin has been working .... an oil company for over twenty years.
   a) for b) on c) as d) at

Reading Text (1)

A Christmas Carol

It was the end of December. It was dark outside and the streets were foggy. Scrooge was a very rich businessman, but he was mean and people didn't like him. Scrooge was working in his office with his assistant, Bob Cratchit. He was very cold because Scrooge wouldn't pay for a big fire to keep them warm.

There was only a small fire and it was very far away.

"It's late. Can I go home, Mr. Scrooge?" Bob begged.

"Have you finished your work?" asked Scrooge.

Bob looked at the enormous pile of work left to do and sighed.

"You can't go home if you don't finish your work," continued Scrooge.

"If I finish all this work tonight, will you let me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning?" asked Bob.

"No," said Scrooge.

Suddenly the door opened and Scrooge's nephew, Fred, came into the office. He gave his uncle a friendly smile.

"Bah!" said Scrooge, "Why are you here? And why are you so happy? You're poor. What have you got to be happy about?"

"If you are so rich, why are you so sad?" replied Fred. "Perhaps if you were poor like me, you'd be happy like me, too."

"Have you come to ask me for money?" asked Scrooge in an unfriendly tone.

"No," replied his nephew. "I've come to invite you to dinner."

"Bah!" said his uncle.

Reading Text (2)



A Christmas Carol: After a dream

The next morning, Scrooge woke up in his bed. He'd had a terrible dream, but now he could see his mistakes. If he hadn't felt so alone, he wouldn't have cared only about money. And if he hadn't cared about money so much, he would have treated other people better. Then he would have had more friends, and he wouldn't have felt so alone. But now he would change. He ran to his window and saw a boy in the street. "You! Boy!" he shouted out of the window. "Do you know the butcher's shop?"

"Yes, Mr Scrooge," shouted the boy. He was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smile.[1]

"I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as a gift[2] from me to his family. Will you do this for me if I pay you?"



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- نستخدم مصدر الفعل بدون (to) بعد الفعل (see) كما يمكن استخدام (verb + ing).

٢- نستخدم (as) بمعنى كـ وتعبر عن الحقيقة وليس التشبيه.

"Of course," said the boy and then he ran off before Mr Scrooge changed his mind.

Scrooge went out in the street and said, "Good morning," to all the people he met and he smiled at them. Everyone was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smiling, but they replied,[3] "Good morning, Mr Scrooge," and that made Scrooge very happy.

Then he went to his nephew's house and asked if he could have dinner with him. Of course, his nephew smiled and invited him to come inside.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

٣- نستخدم الفعل فى صيغة المفرد بعد (everyone) ونستخدم ضمير جمع (they) للإشارة إليه.

- لاحظ أيضًا استخدام (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (see).

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

	Word	Example
1	**life** الحياة بشكل عام (لا تُجمع)	Poor people usually suffer much in life.
	a life طريقة العيش يسبقها أداة نكرة	Sami says that marriage has helped him live a happy life.
	the life حياة شخص أو فئة من الناس يسبقها أداة معرفة ويمكن أن تُجمع	I read an exciting book about the life of Nelson Mandela.
2	**work with** يعمل /يتعامل مع	All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.
	work for يعمل لدى /يعمل لصالح	- My brother works for a big company in the city. - We all should work for the improvement of our society.
	work in يعمل فى	I hope to work in medical research when I'm older.
	work on يعمل على (مشروع /إنجاز)	The writer said that he was working on a new novel.
	work as يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)	My grandfather worked as a journalist in Al-Ahram newspaper a long time ago.

	Word	Example
3	**treat** يعالج (يتخذ إجراءات العلاج)	Patients are treated with a combination of medication and exercise.
	cure يعالج /يشفى (من مرض)	- It might be several months before she's fully cured. - Many formerly fatal diseases can now be cured.
	heal تلتئم (الجروح والكسوروالحروق)	- The wound took a long time to heal. - Vitamin K is needed by the body for healing cuts and bruises.
4	**let** يترك /يسمح (المصدربدون to)	We let our children read simple stories.
	make يجعل (المصدربدون to)	We make our children read simple stories.
	cause يسبب (المصدر + to)	He caused the little girls to cry.
	allow يسمح (المصدر + to)	Using good seeds allows farmers to get better crops.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Several engineers worked .... the project of the new railway station.
a) with b) as c) for d) on

2. Due to modern medical advance, many types of cancer can now be ....
a) spread b) cured c) disappeared d) healed

3. "Al Ayam" is the name of TV serials about .... of Taha Hussein.
a) the life b) a life c) life d) lives

4. The fault caused the whole computer system .... down.
a) shutting b) shut c) shuts d) to shut

5. My brother is working .... a software developer for one of the biggest computer companies.
a) with b) as c) for d) on

6. Some people seem to let their kids .... whatever they like just to make them happy.
a) do b) does c) doing d) to do

7. It took three months for my broken arm to .... properly.
a) spread b) cure c) treat d) heal

8. Our new boss, Mr Essam, is a cheerful man who seems to love .... very much.
a) the life b) a life c) life d) lives



Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Workbook

1. When the library was redecorated, the librarian tidied up the books and put them in neat .... before arranging them on shelves.
   a) piles b) hays c) holes d) wreckages
2. It's not a good sight that some children may .... for money from tourists.
   a) order b) beg c) attack d) delay
3. The police think that the .... may have been started by a cigarette.
   a) shot b) job c) fire d) task
4. The UNESCO is one of the United Nations .... organisations.
   a) local b) vague c) intimate d) international
5. When her son passed all his final exams, my aunt .... with relief that it was all over.
   a) cheered b) sighed c) frowned d) yelled
6. After her husband died, the young mother was left to raise the two children ....
   a) lonely b) private c) alone d) particular
7. You have to .... for the tickets at some cinemas in cash.
   a) take b) borrow c) credit d) pay
8. The decision to borrow money from the bank was a serious .... as he paid much interest.
   a) mistake b) favour c) decision d) fight
9. By law, all .... have to offer a safe work environment for their workers.
   a) employees b) customers c) employers d) clients
10. The price of .... equipment such as fax machines and photo copiers has greatly risen lately.
    a) office b) club c) court d) plane
11. The charity may close unless a .... donor can be found within the next few months.
    a) mean b) miserly c) hasty d) generous
12. Teachers have been using visual aids such as .... and pictures in the classroom for a long time.
    a) machines b) chalk c) maps d) laps

13. Our neighbour is rather .... and he doesn't spend much money on his children.
- a) mean
- b) generous
- c) kind
- d) economical

14. Six people were killed in chasing the drug traffickers تجار المخدرات, ... a policeman.
- a) containing
- b) excluding
- c) dividing
- d) including

15. My grandmother is used to speaking in a calm and friendly ....
- a) tune
- b) tone
- c) turn
- d) behaviour

16. The decision to build a new road near the village is likely to .... a lot of farmers who may lose their land.
- a) rejoice
- b) pacify
- c) upset
- d) cure

17. Some people give a regular monthly .... for the charity while others vary the amount they give.
- a) volunteer
- b) detection
- c) fee
- d) donation

18. The young woman wasn't able to give me a .... explanation for her bad behaviour towards her mother.
- a) logical
- b) rash
- c) scientific
- d) derived

19. It is a known fact that smoking gives you bad ...., so you should stop it.
- a) breeze
- b) breath
- c) profit
- d) operation

20. My aunt has no children, that's why she considers her .... as her sons.
- a) nieces
- b) nannies
- c) nephews
- d) sisters

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. He knocked out his opponent in the third round. The noun "opponent" is an antonym of the noun "....................".
- a) enemy
- b) assistant
- c) competitor
- d) accuser

22. The young boy .... lost during hiking in the mountains and it took three days for the police to find him.
- a) got
- b) fell
- c) made
- d) did

23. When my little brother asked me to help him with his homework, I smiled .... him and agreed.
- a) in
- b) about
- c) at
- d) of

24. My grandfather is a very generous man who always gives us presents. The adjective "generous" is similar in meaning to "....................".
- a) useless
- b) mean
- c) miserly
- d) hospitable

25. Sami's family are very disappointed about his bad exam results. The synonym of the word "disappointed" is "....................".
- a) pleased
- b) depressed
- c) impressed
- d) infected

26. Leaving the heating on all the time wastes electricity. The antonym of the word "waste" is "..................".
a) maintain　b) damage　c) puzzle　d) ignore

27. My brother is determined to have a new job; nothing will make him .... his mind.
a) decide　b) plan　c) change　d) design

28. My brother and I both work .... the same company, but in different branches.
a) as　b) for　c) on　d) among

29. Ahmed wasn't able to attend the meeting as he .... the train to Benha.
a) lost　b) gained　c) caught　d) missed

30. My son always says he wishes I would stop .... him like a child.
a) treating　b) curing　c) healing　d) affecting

Longman and Previous Exams

31. He's too .... to buy a toy for his little nephew despite the money he has. (Longman)
a) main　b) mean　c) generous　d) sufficient

32. The children .... their father to take them to the funfair on Friday. (Longman)
a) agreed　b) looked　c) made　d) begged

33. Sorrowfully, this disease can't easily be .... (Longman)
a) disappeared　b) dealt　c) healed　d) cured

34. .... the beginning of the film, a mysterious man appeared to be doing strange things. (Longman)
a) At　b) In　c) Out　d) Away

35. He felt sorry for all the opportunities he had missed, so he .... out in despair. (Longman)
a) sighed　b) signed　c) sent　d) sighted

36. He .... me to help him because he was in trouble. (أسيوط - إدارة أسيوط)
a) sighed　b) apologized　c) begged　d) ignored

37. It was .... of my friend not to invite me. (القاهرة - إدارة الزاوية)
a) seem　b) mean　c) meant　d) suppose

38. We found an amazing photo in a/an .... of books in our basement. (المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم)
a) forum　b) pile　c) leaf　d) algae

39. All the students .... with relief after finishing their exam. (القاهرة - إدارة دار السلام)
a) sighted　b) sent　c) signed　d) sighed

40. Uncle Mohamed Hussein isn't mean but he is .... (الشرقية - إدارة بلقاس)
a) miser　b) wicked　c) generous　d) stingy



If Conditional Forms — حالات If الشرطية

The Zero Conditional — الحالة الصفرية

Type (0)

	Present simple		Present simple	
If / When	──────► مضارع بسيط	,	──────► مضارع بسيط	Zero conditional

We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are always true:

نستخدم الحالة الصفرية لنتحدث عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية (شىء لا نتحكم فيه) والأشياء التى دائمًا حقيقية:

If/When we mix yellow and blue, we get green.

If/When you drop something, it falls to the ground.

عندما يصبح الشىء عادة عند الشخص.

I always stay at home if/when I feel ill.

If/When I need advice, I always ask my father.



Notes: — ملاحظات

1. نستخدم when محل if فى الحالة الصفرية فقط، وإن كانت when هى الأكثر استخدامًا، لأن هناك جملًا لا تستخدم فيها if مثل الغرائز والأشياء غير المشروطة لأنها تحدث تلقائيًا.

- When I eat, I always begin with salad.

الجملة هنا تعبر عن غريزة الأكل فلو استخدمنا if يلزم الشرط فنقول (لو أكلت) وهذا غير معقول لأن الإنسان يأكل دائمًا.

2. الحقائق لا تحدد بزمن ولو حددنا زمنًا تتحول الحقيقة إلى حدث عادى يوضع فى أى زمن مستقبل أو ماضٍ:

- If you put this bottle of water in the freezer tomorrow, it will freeze.
- If you had put this bottle of water in the freezer yesterday, it would have frozen.

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
If we boil water, it evaporates.	Water evaporates if it is boiled.

The First Conditional — الحالة الأولى

Type (1)

If + Present simple (مضارع بسيط) , Subj. + will / may / can / should (للنصيحة) + Inf.

فعل أمر + باقى الجملة

- We use the first conditional to talk about events or situations that we think are probable or possible in the future:

◄ نستخدم الحالة الأولى للأحداث والمواقف التى نعتقد أنها محتملة أو ممكنة فى المستقبل.

- If he leaves early, he will be on time for the meeting.
- Tarek is ill. If he's better tomorrow, he'll come to school.
- If he doesn't repay the debt, he'll go to prison.

◄ نستخدم (should) فى جواب الشرط للنصيحة أو الاستحباب و(have to) للوجوب والإلزام.

- If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.
- If you lose your credit card, you have to ring the bank.

◄ يمكن استخدام may للاحتمال و can للاستطاعة.

- If you speak English well, you may get this job.
- If my father buys the new laptop tomorrow, I will be able to (can) do my research.

◄ تعبر الحالة الأولى عن وعد أو أمنية أو تهديد.

- If you come first in the English test, I will give you this good camera. (promise وعد)
- If I win the gold medal, I will be very famous. (wish أمنية)
- I won't lend you any money if you insist on spending it carelessly. (threat تهديد)

◄ يمكن أن يبدأ جواب الشرط فى الحالة الأولى بأمر (مصدر) أو نهى:

- If you reach the airport before 12, phone me.
- If Samy visits you, don't tell him about our meeting.

◄ لاحظ الفرق بين جملة العادات والجملة التى تحدد بزمن:

- If/When I have a fever, I stay in bed. — حقيقة عامة عند الشخص أن الحمى تقعده فى السرير.
- If I have a fever tomorrow, I'll stay in bed. — ليست حقيقة بل توقع حدث فى المستقبل.
- If I had a fever now, I'd stay in bed. — الشخص هنا ليس لديه حمى وهو يتخيل الموقف لذلك وضعت حالة ثانية.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When I read in bed, I .... asleep. It's a habit.
   a) fell b) would fall c) will fall d) fall
2. If I feel ill, I always .... at home.
   a) would stay b) stay c) will stay d) stayed
3. What .... if you feel unhappy?
   a) do you do b) would you do c) you did d) have you done
4. If you are late, ... a taxi.
   a) would take b) should take c) take d) will take
5. If it .... today, we won't go to the park.
   a) will rain b) rains c) rained d) had rained

The Second Conditional الحالة الثانية

Type (2)	If	Past simple ماضٍ بسيط	,	would / might / could	+ Inf.	Second conditional

- **We use the second conditional to talk about situations that are imaginary or unlikely in the present or future:**

◄ نستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن المواقف الخيالية وغير الممكنة فى المضارع والمستقبل.

- If I saw a ghost, I would run away. (unlikely to happen)
- If I discovered a planet, I would give it my name. (unlikely to happen)
- If I were a bird, I could fly. (I'm not a bird. Untrue in the present)

For advice

تُستخدم if للنصيحة كالآتى:

If I were you, I would/ wouldn't + Inf.

- If I were you, I'd study harder.
- If I were you, I wouldn't buy this expensive mobile.

The Third Conditional — الحالة الثالثة

Type (3)				
If	Past perfect (ماضى تام) → ,	would / could / might	have + P.P.	Third conditional

◄ تعبر الحالة الثالثة عن حدث مستحيل أو ندم أو انتقاد لأن الحدث تم فى الماضى وانتهى.

We use the third conditional to talk about past situations or actions that did not happen:

◄ نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للحديث عن المواقف الماضية أو الاحداث التى لم تتم.

- If I had locked the car, it wouldn't have been stolen. (I didn't lock it.)
- If he had behaved well, the teacher wouldn't have punished him. (He didn't behave well.)
- If they hadn't played badly, they would have won the match. (They played badly.)

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He isn't here. But if he were here, he .... you.
   a) will meet b) would meet
   c) can meet d) would have met
2. If she ...., she would have attended the party.
   a) was invited b) had invited
   c) were invited d) had been invited
3. If Ahmed .... a new car, he would buy a motorcycle.
   a) didn't buy b) bought
   c) had bought d) buys
4. What .... if you found a burglar in your house?
   a) will you do b) you did
   c) would you do d) did you do
5. If you had told me about your problem earlier, I .... you.
   a) would have helped b) would help
   c) had helped d) helped

Practice ... Language General Exercises



Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If Ali uses the computer for a long time, he always .... a headache.
   a) have b) will have c) has d) would have
2. Nabil isn't happy with his life. If he .... to his mother's advice, he would have gone on to university.
   a) listens b) had listened c) listened d) would listen
3. If the person disobeys his parents, he never .... happily.
   a) lives b) live c) will live d) lived
4. If he were offered another job, he .... it immediately.
   a) will take b) takes c) have taken d) would take
5. He .... a good job if he had got a degree.
   a) would get b) would have had c) got d) would have
6. He thinks that he .... crazy if he stays in his job without being paid.
   a) would go b) goes c) will go d) is going
7. If you work harder for the next week, I'm sure you .... your exam.
   a) won't pass b) pass c) 'd pass d) will pass
8. I didn't feel ill yesterday. If I had felt ill, I .... at home.
   a) will stay b) would have stayed c) would stay d) stayed
9. If Magdi had enough money, he .... a new mobile phone.
   a) buys b) will buy
   c) would have bought d) would buy
10. If a balloon is filled with hot air, it ....
    a) may rise b) would rise c) rises d) will rise
11. If I .... a car, I would have to give you a lift to the airport.
    a) had b) had had c) have d) was having
12. Ali would act in the school play if he .... good at acting.
    a) had been b) were c) will be d) would be
13. If they .... to stop the protest, there would have been a riot شغب.
    a) had tried b) tried c) try d) could try
14. If Hossam .... for the job, they .... him.
    a) applies/would choose b) applied/might choose
    c) applied/will choose d) applied/might have chosen
15. If you finish early, ...?
    a) you will help me b) you should help me
    c) helped me d) will you help me

16. If he had enough money, he .... the car.

a) would have bought b) will have bought
c) might buy d) might have bought

17. If he .... this book, he .... a lot of knowledge.

a) read/can get b) will read/can get
c) read/would be able to get d) read/will be able to get

Longman and Previous Exams

18. If Rami had listened more carefully to the instructions, he .... that mistake. Longman

a) wouldn't have made b) would have made
c) didn't make d) isn't making

19. If I hadn't been ill, I'd have worked harder. This means that I .... harder because I .... ill. Longman

a) hadn't worked/was b) didn't work/was
c) didn't work/am d) had worked/had been

20. If I .... a lot of money, I would have the chance to help the poor people in my area. Longman

a) had b) hadn't had c) have had d) have

21. If our garden .... after, the trees would have grown better. Longman

a) had been looked b) had looked
c) wasn't looked d) is being looked

22. Ice .... if it gets hot. Longman

a) is melting b) won't melt
c) melt d) melts

23. Which sentence of the following is grammatically correct?

a) If you want to buy a good carpet, you should go to Al-Hussein Market.
b) If you want to buy a good carpet, goes to Al-Hussein Market.
c) If you want to buy a good carpet, you would go to Al-Hussein Market.
d) If you want to buy a good carpet, will go to Al-Hussein Market.

24. Which sentence of the following is grammatically incorrect?

a) If we boil water to 100°C, it evaporates.
b) If water is boiled to 100°C, it evaporates.
c) When water boils at 100°C, it evaporates.
d) If water boils at 100°C, it is evaporated.

25. Which sentence gives the same meaning as the following sentence?
If Ahmed lived in a big city, he could find a job easily.

a) Ahmed didn't live in a big city, so he can't find a job.
b) Ahmed doesn't live in a big city, so he can't find a job.
c) Ahmed won't live in a big city, so he won't find a job.
d) Ahmed didn't live in a big city, so he found a job.

26. If you saw her, ... her to call me? (القاهرة - المعصرة)

a) you would tell | b) will you tell
c) tell | d) would you tell

27. I'm awfully sorry; if I .... free time, I'd have met you. (إدارة أسيوط)

a) hadn't had | b) had had
c) would have | d) had been

28. He would have visited a lot of historic places if the holiday he had .... longer. (قنا - نجع حمادي)

a) had | b) had had | c) had been | d) been

29. If I had used clothes, I .... them to charities. (الشرقية - بلبيس)

a) would give | b) will give
c) would have given | d) must give

30. If I had better time management skills; I .... complete my assignments more efficiently. (الشرقية)

a) can | b) could
c) could be | d) could have



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. The pharaohs used .... blocks of stone to build the Pyramids.
   a) enormous b) tiny c) intense d) useless
2. Vegetables which contain vitamin C are very important to our ....
   a) luck b) fortune c) wealth d) health
3. A/An .... is someone whose job is to help someone else of higher rank do their job.
   a) trainer b) assistant c) manager d) inventor
4. Careless students usually make more .... than careful students.
   a) rights b) corrections c) mistakes d) behaviours
5. If you are a/an .... worker, you must keep doing exercises to avoid being fat.
   a) office b) sports c) house d) field
6. The price of a room in this hotel is 300 pounds, ... breakfast.
   a) consisting b) including c) containing d) enclosing
7. The weather is clear today, so we can go on a picnic. The adjective "clear" is the opposite of the adjective "..................".
   a) foggy b) clean c) high d) pure
8. The manager told the secretary that she should .... sales data as top secret.
   a) cure b) heal c) treat d) advise
9. The Cancer Hospital has collected 200,000 pounds through online ....
   a) sales b) profits c) losses d) donations
10. Our limited resources were quickly exhausted. The verb "exhaust" here is the synonym for the verb "..................".
    a) waste b) spend c) save d) try
11. The students .... the P.E. teacher to play with them, but he refused.
    a) regretted b) begged c) managed d) regarded
12. Although he practised hard, he couldn't win the ...., but came fourth.
    a) champion b) path c) race d) passage
13. My uncle feels really .... after the death of his wife and he is always sad.
    a) alone b) alike c) happy d) relieved
14. I was .... with the grade I got in my maths exam because I had studied hard.
    a) delighted b) pleased c) appointed d) disappointed

15. After our children got married, moving to a smaller house was the .... thing to do.
a) logical b) legal c) movable d) legislative

Language

16. If I need advice about my life, I usually .... to my mother.
a) talk b) would talk c) had talked d) will talk

17. If I .... ill and missed the interview, I might have got the job.
a) had fallen b) hadn't fallen c) fell d) didn't fall

18. If I had had my mobile phone yesterday, I .... you.
a) would contact b) will contact
c) would have contacted d) contacted

19. If you go out, ... the porter to bring me the keys.
a) won't tell b) would tell c) will tell d) tell

20. If you .... to learn a musical instrument, you have to practise.
a) will want b) wanted c) want d) had wanted

21. I would have come home earlier if I .... you were worried.
a) knew b) 'd know c) know d) 'd known

22. Hanaa would have met the new teacher if she .... at school yesterday.
a) have been b) was c) were d) had been

23. If he hit the other car, he .... for the repair.
a) will pay b) would pay c) pays d) would be paid

24. If Nihal watches horror films, she .... at night.
a) will sleep b) wouldn't sleep c) does not sleep d) hadn't slept

25. When you put too much water in rice when you cook, it .... sticky as usual!
a) would get b) will get c) got d) gets

26. Would you mind if my brother .... in with me?
a) would go b) went c) go d) had gone

27. If I have a headache, I .... a cup of tea. It always makes me feel better.
a) drink b) will drink c) would drink d) drank

28. The teacher .... happy if we learnt this lesson by heart.
a) would have been b) will be
c) would be d) was

29. If Ahmed had read that book, he .... what happened at the end.
a) knew b) would have known
c) would know d) will know

30. If her dreams .... true, she would have been happy.
a) comes b) came
c) hadn't come d) had come

Study ... Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4





A Vocabulary

Key Phrases — العبارات الرئيسية

bring back	يعيد ذكريات	get on with	ينسجم مع	lose touch	يفقد الاتصال
fall out	يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف/يتعارك مع	hang out with	يقضي وقتا مع		
get into	يبدأ الاستمتاع	keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts — مفردات نصوص القراءة و الاستماع

apparently (adv)	بوضوح	go back (v)	يرجع/يعود	magazine (n)	مجلة
caption (n)	شرح/عنوان لصورة في جريدة أو مجلة	guess (v) (ed)	يخمن/يظن	mall (n)	مركز تسوق
chat (v) (ted) (n)	يدردش/دردشة	ignore (v) (d)	يتجاهل	memory (n)	ذاكرة/ذكرى
close (adj)	قريب/مقرب	improve (v) (d)	يحسن	wish (v) (ed) (n)	يتمنى/أمنية

Workbook Vocabulary — مفردات كتاب التدريبات

amount (n)	كمية	opposite (adj)	عكس/مقابل/مواجه لـ	pretty (adj)	جميل
conversation (n)	محادثة	organise (v) (d)	ينظم	primary school (n)	مدرسة ابتدائية
friendship (n)	صداقة	own (v) (ed)	يمتلك	rain (n) (v) (ed)	مطر/تمطر
high school (n)	مدرسة ثانوية	pocket (n)	جيب	relationship (n)	علاقة
leader (n)	قائد	polite (adj)	مؤدب	reunion (n)	إعادة جمع (اتحاد)/لم الشمل
necklace (n)	قلادة	prep school (n)	مدرسة إعدادية	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Maria .... out with some of her colleagues and decided to look for a new job.
   a) fell b) crossed c) became d) rose
2. On Mother's Day, I bought a gold .... for my lovely mum.
   a) machine b) necklace c) serials d) series
3. I've .... touch with all my old friends since we left high school.
   a) replaced b) removed c) stayed d) lost

4. Most young people in the neighbourhood usually hang .... at the mall as it has a cinema, a bowling alley and fast-food restaurants.

a) on b) in c) out d) at

5. The police officer said that the window had .... been forced open as the glass was smashed.

a) unlikely b) unfortunately c) untruly d) apparently

6. Many customers feel angry that their complaints were ....

a) assisted b) welcomed c) ignored d) applied

7. My health finally began to .... when I moved to a warmer part of the country.

a) prove b) remove c) move d) improve

8. Members should discuss any problems with their team ....

a) officer b) leader c) diplomat d) secretary

9. The college where I studied has an annual .... for former students.

a) reunion b) separation c) migration d) invitation

10. The bank clerk said that I must pay back the full .... that I owe by the end of the month.

a) quality b) account c) amount d) adjective

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

as usual كالمعتاد	feel sorry يشعر بالأسى	keep attention on يبقى اهتمامًا بـ
feel sad يشعر بالحزن	get worse يسوء	share sad moments يشارك اللحظات الحزينة
feel uncomfortable with يشعر بعدم الراحة مع	have a cold يصاب بالبرد	take an interest in لديه اهتمام بـ
argue with يجادل مع	go past يمر بـ	interested in مهتم بـ

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
appear يظهر	appearance ظهور/مظهر	apparent واضح/ظاهر
ignore يتجاهل	ignorance جهل	ignorant جاهل
improve يحسن	improvement تحسين	improved محسن
memorise يحفظ	memory ذاكرة	memorable بارز/جدير بالذكر

Examples تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

The moon appears in the sky. (v)
The appearance of the moon is impressive. (n)
The moon is very apparent among the clouds. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
apparently	بوضوح	obviously/clearly	vaguely/uncertain	بشكل مبهم/غير مؤكد
close	قريب/مقرب	nearby/intimate	far/distant	بعيد
guess	يخمن/يظن	suppose/presume	question/wonder	يتساءل
memory	ذكرى	remembrance/ memorisation	forgetfulness/ignorance	نسيان/تجاهل
organise	ينظم	arrange/coordinate	scatter/confuse	يبعثر/يربك
relationship	علاقة	relation/connection	separation/disconnection	انفصال

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I heard a rumour that she's leaving, but apparently, it's not true. The opposite of the adverb "apparently" is "..................".
   a) obviously b) vaguely c) clearly d) gradually
2. The trip in Alexandria brought .... a lot of happy memories of my childhood.
   a) about b) in c) back d) for
3. A good teacher should never make his students feel ....
   a) ignore b) ignorance c) ignoring d) ignored
4. My father was very tired when he arrived home late, ... usual.
   a) as b) in c) at d) on
5. Social media websites help you .... your attention on your friends' affairs.
   a) lose b) keep c) miss d) have
6. As his office is a mess, Rami needs someone to help him organise his papers. The word "organise" is a synonym of the word "..................".
   a) confuse b) damage c) explore d) arrange
7. To put out the fire, the fire engines went .... cars without stopping.
   a) for b) inside c) past d) into
8. Small cracks appeared in the wall. The noun of the verb "appear" is "..................".
   a) appears b) appearance c) appeared d) apparent



Reading Text (Workbook)

How are your friendships?

Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them[1] and, when you're in the middle of a conversation, when you're talking they start looking at their phone? When that happens, many people feel ignored and upset. And the problem may be getting worse because over 81% of Egyptian teenagers between the ages of 15 and 17 now own a phone.

Studies have shown that just having a mobile phone out while having a conversation makes friends feel uncomfortable with each other.[2] And many people think that when someone is using their phone, they are not being polite and not really listening. So, using a phone like this can damage even good friendships.

However, there are ways to have a phone without losing your friends.[3] Understanding the problem is important. So, the next time you are going to pick up your phone while talking to a friend, think about what you are doing and stop. Is your phone really more important than your friend? Perhaps you should keep your attention on the person you are talking to. And if a friend ignores you, tell them about it because they may not understand how it makes you feel.

So, if you want to be a kind and honest friend, keep your phone in your pocket and your eyes on your friendship.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام ضمير الجمع (them) للإشارة إلى الاسم (friend) لتشمل he/she.

٢- نستخدم صيغة المصدر (verb + ing) بعد أداة الربط (while) إذا لم يتبعها فاعل.

٣- نستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد كل حروف الجر ومنها (without).

Listening Text (1)



Scan & listen



Presenter:

In today's show, we're going back in time and looking at some of our regrets. Now I've got a message from Tarek. And Tarek has a story that, I think, will bring back memories for many of us. This is what he says ...

I used to talk to my family and play with my brothers after school. I also used to phone my grandparents and my cousins. But then I got into using social media more.

I started using social media to talk to my friends after school too. We all liked the same things. It was fun and we all got on with each other. Sometimes I'd hang out with them online for hours chatting.

I guess I lost touch with my cousins and my grandparents a bit. I still saw them sometimes, of course, but I didn't call them. I didn't tell my grandparents about my day at school.

But when my friends started falling out with each other online, I stopped chatting with them, too.(1) Now, I'm sorry. I shouldn't have ignored my family. I wish I'd kept in touch with my cousins more. I should have called my grandparents, and I wish I could change what happened.

Sadly, this kind of thing seems to happen so often these days. I guess, when we're getting into something new, we can forget to take an interest in the people who really care about us. Thank you for sharing your story with us, Tarek.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- نستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (stop) بمعنى «يتوقف عن.» أما إذا كانت بمعنى «يتوقف لكي» فيتبعها (المصدر + to).

Listening Text (2)



Scan & listen



Judy: Hoda was my best friend. We'd always hang out together at school. We made each other laugh a lot and we were very close.

Sometimes, we'd hang out together after school as well. We'd listen to music, look at magazines and chat for hours.

One weekend, we went shopping at the mall. We had a great time as usual, but that was when she showed me her new smartphone.

Apparently, it was a really good phone and Hoda couldn't stop using it all the time. She got really into social media and made lots of new friends online.

Listening Text (3) (Workbook)





Hoda : Hey, Lamia! Have you seen this from Ola? She's posted some old photos from when we were in prep school.

Lamia : Really? Let's see. But, I don't remember an Ola in our class.[1]

Hoda : Yes, you do. She used to sit opposite you in class and you would always fall out when we played any game together because you both wanted to be the leaders.

Lamia : Ahhh, yes. I remember now. I shouldn't have argued with her so much because she was a kind person really.

Hoda : Look! Here she is in the photo.

Lamia : Ahh, wow!

Hoda : ... and look at us! Oh, no way! Just look at your hair!

Lamia : Oh, that's terrible! And what about your dress!

Hoda : Oh no! Not that dress! It brings back so many bad memories. That was the dress I was wearing when I lost my favourite necklace. I wish I hadn't taken it to school that day.

Lamia : But the necklace was very pretty and if you hadn't taken it to school, Samira wouldn't have spoken to you about it and you two wouldn't have got on so well!

Hoda : That's true I guess, and we are still very good friends now.

Lamia : And look! There's the old group of friends we used to hang out with. I was sad when they moved away to go to high school and really wish we hadn't lost touch with them.

Hoda : Yes, we had some great times together and if we had stayed in touch, we would have been able to organise a school reunion.
I wish we hadn't left prep school! We had a lot less homework!

Hoda : That's true! Perhaps we can keep in touch with them on social media.

Lamia : Good idea! Let's post a message asking if anyone knows anything about them.



Notes on some sentences: ملاحظات على بعض الجمل

١- لاحظ استخدام أداة النكرة (an) قبل الاسم بمعنى (شخص ما يدعى).

Video Script



Charles Dickens was born in England in 1812. He wrote fifteen novels including Great Expectations, Oliver Twist, David Copperfield, and Hard Times. His most popular novel is probably A Christmas Carol, which was published in 1843.

In A Christmas Carol, Dickens wrote about some of the problems in Britain at that time. Many people were very poor and Dickens thought that rich people should be kinder and help the poor people who worked for them.

The main character is Ebenezer Scrooge. At the beginning of the story, he is mean and he won't help anyone, including his employee, Bob Cratchit, who is very poor with a large family and a sick child.

However, by the end of the story, Scrooge has changed and he sees life in a completely different way. We are told that Scrooge became as good a friend, as good an employer and as good a man as the good old city of London had ever seen.

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

	Word	Example
1	**title** عنوان رئيسى فى جريدة أو مجلة لمقال أو خبر/عنوان كتاب.	The titles of the main newspaper articles are usually printed in red capital letters.
	subtitle ١- عنوان فرعى (تحت عنوان رئيسى)/ عنوان فرعى لكتاب. ٢- ترجمة لفيلم أو فيديو تظهر مكتوبة أسفل الصورة.	- The subtitle of Taha Hussein's *Al Ayam* is "A personal autobiography". - I watched a French documentary in English subtitles about the First World War.
	caption تعليق مكتوب فوق أو تحت صورة مطبوعة أو منشورة.	The photo of the accident was published with the caption "Catastrophe" under it.

	Word	Example
2	**memory** ذاكرة/ذكرى (شيء معنوى غير ملموس)	- My grandfather suffers from memory loss. - He has lots of happy memories of his stay in Sharm El-Sheikh.
	souvenir تذكار (شيء مادى يُذكر برحلة/حدث)	I bought a model of the Eiffel Tower as a souvenir of Paris.
	anniversary ذكرى سنوية	October 2019 was the 25th anniversary of our parents' marriage.
3	**conversation** محادثة غير رسمية لتبادل معلومات (لا تكون غالبًا على التليفون أو إلكترونيًا)	I was having a conversation with a friend the other day.
	chat محادثة غير رسمية لتبادل الحديث (يمكن أن تكون على التليفون أو إلكترونيًا)	I've just had a chat with my friend online.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I watched a Jackie Chan film that was in Chinese with English ....

a) titles b) captions c) speeches d) subtitles

2. My sister spends hours on a .... with her friends on the WhatsApp application.

a) chat b) murmur c) rumour d) conversation

3. A student with a poor .... may suffer much at school.

a) memory b) souvenir c) memorial d) anniversary

4. The teacher showed us a group of pictures and asked us to think of a/an .... for each one of them.

a) title b) address c) caption d) rank

5. Mr Sameh bought her a diamond ring on their tenth wedding ....

a) memory b) memorial c) souvenir d) anniversary



Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook

1. Seeing those pictures on TV .... back all the bad memories about my accident.
   a) brought b) got c) bought d) repeated
2. I first .... into jazz music when I was at high school.
   a) filled b) lost c) gave d) got
3. The President's speech was good and I felt he .... in touch with people's needs.
   a) hung b) lost c) kept d) fell
4. Because of the high cost of living, many couples .... out over money.
   a) get b) fall c) hang d) stay
5. Mohamed has never .... on with his cousin and they often quarrel.
   a) went b) got c) come d) received
6. Egypt is keen on keeping a good .... with all world countries.
   a) relationship b) dispute c) race d) cure
7. The young man spent a couple of days .... out with his old friends as part of their vacation.
   a) changing b) hanging c) returning d) moving
8. Egypt does its best to .... its industry to limit our imports and save hard currency.
   a) prove b) approve c) disapprove d) improve
9. I .... that my father is angry with me after losing my new tablet.
   a) decline b) detest c) guess d) object
10. The language centre .... the language classes according to attendees' ability.
    a) organises b) dissolves c) derives d) detects
11. The old man dreams of a .... with his two sons who are working abroad.
    a) replay b) reunion c) rewinding d) rewriting
12. The spokesman .... the reporter's question and continued his speech.
    a) attended b) listened c) increased d) ignored
13. European countries have a tense .... with Russia due to the last war.
    a) relationship b) dispute c) race d) game
14. Many world .... met to discuss the environmental problems in Sharm El-Sheikh Climate Conference last November.
    a) armies b) enemies c) fighters d) leaders

15. It was Grandpa's greatest .... that one of his grandchildren would become a doctor.

a) struggle b) fight c) wish d) sorrow

16. It is not advisable to .... with other people about your personal life on the internet.

a) fight b) chat c) quarrel d) reverse

17. The server is designed to store huge .... of data on its hard discs.

a) solutions b) sums c) qualities d) amounts

18. Only .... relatives were invited to my sister's wedding party.

a) envious b) near c) close d) sorrowful

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

19. He began to lose his memory as he grew older. The synonym of the word "memory" is "..................".

a) remembrance b) souvenir c) memorial d) amnesia

20. The doctors fear that our grandfather's health condition will .... worse as he is very old.

a) pick b) turn c) get d) fall

21. Don't get too close to the fire. The antonym of the adjective "close" is "..................".

a) near b) nearly c) happy d) distant

22. Our neighbour left the children at home with the babysitter .... usual.

a) like b) as c) for d) in

23. We went .... all the new buildings on our way to the suburb.

a) on b) above c) past d) out

24. I guess that you'll be looking for a new job now. The verb "guess" is similar in meaning to "..................".

a) question b) wonder c) request d) suppose

25. I said hello but the teacher ignored me. The noun from the verb "ignore" is "..................".

a) ignores b) ignored c) ignorance d) ignorant

26. You should try to organise your time better. The verb "organise" is the opposite of "..................".

a) arrange b) coordinate c) collect d) confuse

27. She's always arguing .... her sister about sharing their clothes.

a) on b) for c) at d) with

28. Don't try to .... up your phone while talking to a friend.

a) hold b) raise c) move d) pick

29. The .... on the picture says, "This year's contest winners."
a) caption b) title c) subtitle d) address

30. Grandfather suffers from a weak .... due to his age and illness.
a) souvenir b) anniversary c) memorial d) memory

Longman and Previous Exams

31. Samar .... well with her new classmates, and they all adore her. [Longman]
a) quarrels b) gets along
c) falls out d) loses touch

32. He hung out with his friends. This means that he .... with them. [Longman]
a) spent time b) made trouble
c) lost contact d) stopped being friendly

33. The government .... an interest in people with special needs. [Longman]
a) does b) takes c) appears d) sits

34. A .... is an ornamental chain or string of beads or jewels worn round the neck. [Longman]
a) tie b) shoe c) ring d) necklace

35. I was surprised that he .... me completely; he pretended that he hadn't seen me. [Longman]
a) looked b) ignored c) recognised d) realised

36. You mustn't .... with your parents when they try to give you advice. [Longman]
a) argue b) deal c) cooperate d) agree

37. You brought me back to our great memories in our old village. This means that .... [Longman]
a) I reminded you to go back to our village
b) I could hardly remember what had happened before
c) you accompanied me to visit our old village
d) you made me remember our old memories in our village

38. I .... out with my friend because he revealed my secret. (القاهرة - إدارة المطرية)
a) felt b) filled c) fell d) failed

39. He didn't .... his brother when they were young, but they're good friends now. (الأقصر - إدارة إسنا)
a) fall out with b) bring back c) get on with d) go back

40. To lose touch .... someone means to stop communicating with them. (الجيزة - إدارة جنوب)
a) by b) in c) with d) about



Wish/ If only

- تستخدم wish/if only للتعبير عن تمنى شىء صعب الحدوث أو مستحيل.

- I wish I had longer legs.
- I wish I knew English.
- I wish I could play for the national team.

- وتعبر عن الندم فى الماضى.

- I wish I had studied hard last year.
- I wish I hadn't wasted my time yesterday.

- وهى تؤدى نفس معنى if ونرجع بالزمن درجة للوراء بعدها ولا نستخدم المضارع بعدها أبدًا.

- wish/if only + past simple — للتعبير عن المضارع وعكس الواقع
- wish/if only + past perfect — للتعبير عن الماضى والندم
- wish/if only + could/ would — للتعبير عن المستقبل

- I wish I lived in a bigger flat.
- I wish I had saved much money last year.
- I wish you would stop smoking.

- وتحتوى جملة wish غالبًا على فاعلين قبلها وبعدها ويمكن وضع that أو حذفها.

- I wish (that) Osama had invited me to his party last week.

- ويمكن استخدام to + inf إذا لم يأت فاعل بعدها.

- Ali wishes to get a rewarding job.

- لو كان الحدث يحتمل الحدوث نستخدم hope أفضل من wish.

- I hope you feel better tomorrow.

- لا نستخدم would عند اتفاق الضميرين لأنها تعطى معنى أن الشخص يستطيع فعل الشىء ولكنه لا يريد.

- I wish Ali would visit me so often.

- Ali wishes he would visit me so often. (✗)

الجملة السابقة خاطئة فكيف يتمنى أن يزورنى وهو يستطيع فعند اتفاق الضميرين نستخدم could.

Ali wishes he could visit me so often. (✓)

- أما could فتعطى معنى أن الشخص لا يستطيع فعل شىء ويتمنى لو أنه مختلف.

- I wish I could speak Spanish.

تبين الجملة السابقة أن الشخص لا يستطيع تحدث الإسبانية ويتمنى لو أنه يستطيع، ولو استخدمنا would فلا يستقيم المعنى إذ إن الشخص يعرف الإسبانية ولا يريد أن يتحدثها فلماذا يتمنى.

Alternatives to using if (بدائل If)

◂ هناك تعبيرات يمكن أن نستخدمها محل if وتؤدى نفس المعنى:

1 Provided that/ On condition that/ As (so) long as + جملة

- You can borrow my pen if/ provided that/ on condition that/ as long as you give it back.

◂ لا تحل هذه الكلمات محل if فى الحالة الثالثة لأنها تعبر عن المضارع والمستقبل فقط.

2 Suppose/ Supposing/ Imagine (that) + جملة

- Supposing/ Imagine (that) you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?
- Supposing it rains, will you still go for a picnic with him?

3 Unless + جملة مثبتة / Without + Noun or v.ing = If ... not

Unless لولم	+	فعل الشرط (جملة مثبتة)	,	جواب الشرط (جملة مثبتة أو منفية)
Unless		he had phoned me	,	I wouldn't have visited him.

- We can't enter the building if we don't wear/ unless we wear/ without wearing a helmet.
- If they hadn't had/ Unless they had had/ Without having a ticket, they wouldn't have been able to watch the match.

In case of/ In the event of + Noun = If + جملة

- Open the door in case of (if there is) an emergency.

In case = If

◂ نستخدم in case بدون of وتساوى if فى شكل الجملة وتختلف عنها فى المعنى لأنها تعنى فعل شيء لتجنب مشكلة محتملة فى المستقبل.

- Take this money in case you need some. فى حالة / ربما
- He took two photos in case one of them didn't come out.
- Chain the bike to the gate in case it is stolen. (~~not if~~)

But for + noun = Without = If ... not

- But for his advice, we would have got lost.

Should/ Were/ Had + sub. + verb

◂ تستخدم were / had / should بدلًا من if كأفعال مساعدة بعدها فاعل ثم فعل أساسى.

◂ تستخدم should بدلًا من if فى الحالتين الأولى والثانية ويأتى بعدها المصدر.

- Should the plane leave on time, I'll arrive in Paris at noon.
- Should he fail to be elected, it would be a great disappointment for him.

◂ تستخدم were بدلًا من if فى الحالة الثانية فقط ويأتى بعدها إما اسم أو صفة أو to + inf.

Were + subject + noun/ adjective   **Were + subject + to + Inf.**

- Were I you, I wouldn't tell anyone about it.
- Were the builders to finish the work to schedule, they would be rewarded.

◂ تستخدم had بدلًا من if فى الحالة الثالثة.

Had + subject + P.P.

- Had he advised me, I'd have passed my exams easily.

◂ فى النفى نضع not بعد الفاعل.

- Had he not advised me, I wouldn't have passed my exams easily.

If it weren't for/ If it hadn't been for = without

- If it weren't for the underground, I would reach my work late. (حالة 2)
- If it hadn't been for my father's help, I wouldn't have got a job easily. (حالة 3)

Note: ملاحظة هامة جدًا

If/ Unless + v.ing + verb

يجب مراعاة أن v-ing يمكن أن يكون فاعلًا فيأتى بعد if أو unless كالآتى:

- If swimming cures my breathing problem, I will join a sports club to do it.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... I had been so tired, I might have realised what was happening.
   a) If b) Without c) In case of d) Unless
2. .... he had a calculator, he would have answered quickly.
   a) If b) Were c) Had d) Unless
3. .... our team won the world cup, what would they do?
   a) Provided that b) On condition that c) Without d) Imagine that
4. .... your help, I would have failed.
   a) In case of b) Provided that c) Without d) Unless
5. Keep this number with you .... you need it later.
   a) provided that b) in case of c) unless d) in case

The Mixed Conditional

(We can mix types 2 and 3.)

- يمكن دمج الحالتين الثانية والثالثة إذا كان المعنى يتعلق بالماضى والمضارع معًا.
- If she knew him, she would have spoken to him yesterday.
- لو كانت تعرفه لتحدثت معه أمس.(المعرفة شيء عام وغير مخصصة بالماضى فهنا افتراض المعرفة)
- If you hadn't left all these dirty dishes, the place would look a bit tidier now.
- لو لم تترك كل هذه الأطباق المتسخة (ماضٍ) لكان المكان يبدو أكثر ترتيبًا الآن (مضارع)
- أصبح هذا النوع من الأسئلة هامًا جدًا لأنه يتماشى مع النظام الحديث للامتحانات الذى يعتمد على الفهم وليس الحفظ والتلقين فلو وجدت هذا المثال "لو كنت أطول، لكنت علقت الصورة أمس."
- أمس تدل على الماضى لو سيكون الحل الحالة الثالثة ولكن "لو كنت أطول" هذا افتراض أو شيء عكس الواقع وهل ممكن أن أكون أطول مما أنا عليه أمس فقط أم هذا شيء عام، إذا كان فيه جزء مضارع وجزء ماضٍ فالمضارع غير المتوقع أو مستحيل يصبح حالة ثانية وتعليق الصورة هذا موقف مخصص بالماضى يصبح حالة ثالثة.
- If I were taller, I would have hanged the picture yesterday.




Practise more

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'll never speak to her .... I live. She is so rude.
a) whereas b) as long as c) until d) unless

2. I really wish I .... so good at everything.
a) wasn't b) would be c) were d) am

3. .... knowing the truth, I wouldn't have called her.
a) Without b) If c) Provided that d) Unless

4. I've written it down for her, ... she forgets it.
a) so as to b) therefore c) in order to d) in case

5. I never studied at all when I was at school. I wish I .... harder.
a) would study b) could study c) hadn't studied d) had studied

6. Supposing there .... no rivers on earth, how would we get water for drinking?
a) were b) had been c) are d) have been

7. I'll eat lunch with you .... there is enough for both of us.
a) so as to b) therefore c) provided d) in case of

8. Nobody buys what they want .... they have enough money.
a) if b) unless c) so long as d) without

9. Were you .... harder, you'd get higher marks.
a) worked b) work c) had worked d) to work

10. I wish our history teacher .... us so much homework. I never have enough time to finish it.
a) would give b) shouldn't give c) wouldn't give d) doesn't give

11. I wish you .... making that stupid noise.
a) would stop b) wouldn't stop c) shouldn't stop d) stop

12. .... him today, he would know what happened.
a) If she meets b) Were she to meet
c) Unless she met d) Had she met

13. If it .... for medical staff's great efforts, many people might die.
a) haven't been b) hadn't been
c) weren't d) hadn't

14. .... her wonderful experience, she wouldn't have taken the job.
a) But for b) If c) with d) Unless

15. You still stand without doing anything. I wish you .... as you are told.
a) should do b) would do c) could do d) must do

16. I'm sure my son .... university life if he ...., but he is so shy.
a) would have enjoyed / had socialised b) will enjoy / socialises
c) would enjoy / socialised d) would enjoy / had socialised

17. If I .... taller, they would have taken me in the team yesterday.
a) wasn't b) had been c) have been d) were

18. .... watching this programme bothers you, you can stop it.
a) If b) Without c) In case of d) But for

19. If it .... your ambitions, we wouldn't have reached that great position.
a) weren't for b) hadn't been for c) wasn't d) had been

20. When you heat water to 100 degrees Celsius, it ....
a) will boil b) is boiled c) boils d) is boiling

21. If he read that article, he .... everything about global warming.
a) can know b) knows c) will know d) would know

Longman and Previous Exams

22. He feels sorry for insulting her. He wished he .... more polite. Longman
a) has been b) had been c) wasn't d) will be

23. I wish I hadn't spent all my money on silly things! This shows .... Longman
a) probability b) advice c) regret d) possibility

24. She would have failed if it .... for my support. So, she appreciated my help very much. Longman
a) hadn't been b) had been c) isn't d) were

25. .... on time, he wouldn't miss the lecture. Longman
a) Will he arrive b) Were he to arriving
c) Were he to arrive d) Has he arrived

26. If I were rich, I would help you. This means that I .... rich. Longman
a) am b) am not c) was d) wasn't

27. My brother stopped studying English and now he needs it for work. He wishes that he .... studying it. (المعصرة القاهرة)
a) hasn't stopped b) didn't stop
c) wouldn't stop d) hadn't stopped

28. .... they had much time, they would have studied better. (بنها - القليوبية)
a) If b) Were c) Had d) Should

29. If I were tall enough, I would join the police. This means that I .... tall. (منوف - المنوفية)
a) am b) am not c) was d) wasn't

30. He wishes he .... harder when he was at school. (بلبيس - الشرقية)
a) had studied b) would study c) has studied d) studied

31. I wish I .... so much money on clothes last week. Now I am broke. (البلينا - سوهاج)
a) won't spend b) didn't spend c) haven't spent d) hadn't spent

Test yourself Part 2 | Lessons 3 & 4



Take a test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. I guess you're mad at me for losing your sunglasses. The verb "guess" is an antonym of the verb "..................".
   a) wonder b) suppose c) presume d) declare
2. Mother usually .... with our aunt for hours on the phone every day.
   a) fights b) chats c) quarrels d) reverses
3. Doctors say that you will feel better if you .... your sad moments with your close friends.
   a) share b) divide c) split d) argue
4. Mona and Leila have been intimate friends since childhood. The adjective "intimate" is similar in meaning to the word "..................".
   a) hated b) far c) distant d) close
5. I usually buy my clothes at the .... near our house because of the variety of shops in it.
   a) theatre b) pharmacy c) mall d) restaurant
6. I need new computer parts which will make its .... more powerful.
   a) souvenir b) anniversary c) memorial d) memory
7. When the phone rang, my little brother .... it up immediately.
   a) held b) picked c) moved d) rose
8. Staying at this hotel brought .... sweet memories of our honeymoon.
   a) about b) in c) back d) for
9. The two sisters .... out over who will wear the new dress to the party.
   a) fell b) crossed c) became d) rose
10. I felt embarrassed when my teacher .... my question and moved on to the next point.
    a) assisted b) welcomed c) ignored d) applied
11. I advised my son to .... his study well to get high marks in exams.
    a) organise b) recognise c) realise d) specialise
12. The doctor said that the old man .... died of a heart attack and it wasn't a murder.
    a) unlikely b) fortunately c) luckily d) apparently
13. Mother always tells my little brother that it's not .... to talk with his mouth full.
    a) hasty b) rude c) polite d) greedy
14. My sister is really interested .... reading about the news of actors and actresses.
    a) at b) for c) in d) about
15. The two girls have had a long-standing .... since they were in primary school.
    a) conspiracy b) teenage c) childhood d) friendship

Language

16. If it doesn't start snowing, we .... go skiing this evening.

a) will b) don't c) wouldn't d) won't

17. We will be at work in time .... the bus comes soon.

a) unless b) provided that c) without d) in case of

18. I wish you .... It was a fantastic party.

a) had come b) could come c) may come d) would come

19. If she hadn't missed her flight, she .... in Spain now.

a) wouldn't be b) would have been c) would be d) will be

20. If I .... enough money, I .... around Europe. But, unfortunately, I am broke.

a) had/ would backpack b) had had/ would backpack
c) had/ would have backpacked d) have/ will backpack

21. I wish I .... the last bus. Now I'll have to walk.

a) didn't miss b) hadn't missed
c) wouldn't miss d) wouldn't have missed

22. .... he been cleverer, he wouldn't have made that silly mistake.

a) Should b) Hadn't c) Had d) If

23. He took some food with him .... there were no restaurants in the area.

a) but for b) if c) unless d) in case

24. He wishes his father .... him some shoes before the new term starts.

a) was buying b) was going to buy
c) would buy d) had bought

25. Should he .... his friends, he would invite them to his birthday party.

a) meets b) meet c) met d) had met

26. .... emergency, I will have to go to work on feasts.

a) But for b) Without c) In case of d) If

27. If only I .... busy yesterday. I could have helped you with the problem.

a) weren't b) haven't been c) wasn't d) hadn't been

28. You can take my bike .... you don't go far. I may need it later.

a) or else b) unless c) on condition that d) without

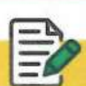
29. My uncle will go to London next week if he .... a cheap flight.

a) get b) gets c) got d) had got

30. If I exercised more, I would be much more fit and I .... so many health problems.

a) won't have b) would have
c) wouldn't have had d) wouldn't have





Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Write an essay of about 180 words about something that you regret. Draw pictures with captions for your regret.

Last summer, I was going to travel to Rome for a business trip. The plane was at six o'clock a.m. I woke up very early so that I wouldn't be late for the plane. I took a taxi and I arrived at the airport at 4 o'clock, an hour before the plane. I checked in and got ready for the plane. As it was still early for the plane, I decided to go to a café at the airport to have my coffee. I bought a big packet of biscuits to eat with the coffee.

The café was busy and I had to share a room with an old man. I had my handbag which I put on the table and went to bring my coffee to the counter. I returned back to the table. As I sat at the table, I saw the old man smiling at me. A packet of biscuits was on the table and I started to eat the first piece. Surprisingly, the old man took a piece, too. Each time I took a piece of biscuits, the old man took one. Soon, we ate all the pieces except for one piece left. The old man took it, cut it into two halves, took one half and gave me the other. I was very angry and I shouted at the old man very hard. However, the old man didn't say a word. He looked sad, then he left.

When I got on board the plane, I was surprised to see the old man on the same plane. I looked at him angrily and sat on my seat. I opened my handbag to take out a book I wanted to read on the plane. To my surprise, I found the packet of biscuits I bought. I forgot that I had put it in the bag before going to bring my coffee. The packet on the table belonged to the old man who didn't mind sharing it with me. Immediately, I went to the old man's seat and apologised to him. The man just smiled at me and said, "It's all right."



I am arriving at the airport.



I am sitting with the old man at the café.



I am shouting at the old man angrily.



I am finding the packet of biscuits in my handbag.

What can we learn from this embarrassing situation?



(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة فى قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You use energy every day. Energy is the ability to cause change. Any time you move, you are using energy. When you bounce a ball or ride a bike, you use energy from your body to make the ball or the bike move. Your parents cook food for you to eat. They use heat energy to change the food from raw to cooked. Not all energy is used as soon as you get it. Sometimes energy is stored to be used later.

Stored energy can be chemical energy stored in a battery or in your body. It can also be potential energy. Potential energy is based on the position of the object. A ball at the top of a hill has potential energy. A soccer player standing ready to kick a ball has potential energy, too.

Energy of motion is also called kinetic energy. Potential energy converts, or changes into kinetic energy when the thing or person begins to move. When the ball starts rolling downhill, kinetic energy is at work. When the soccer player kicks the ball, kinetic energy is at work there, too. Energy often changes forms.

When you switch on the light, electricity converts into light. When you eat, chemical energy from your food converts into thermal and mechanical energy that allows you to move and work. When you switch on a cell phone, chemical energy from the cell phone's battery converts into sound energy and light energy.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Energy is ....

a) the ability to bounce a ball
b) the ability to cause change
c) the ability to ride a bike
d) the ability to switch on the light

2. The other meaning of "change into" from the passage is ....

a) bounce b) kick c) store d) convert

3. Energy that is based on an object's position is called ....

a) potential energy
b) kinetic energy
c) thermal energy
d) mechanical energy

4. The antonym of the word "raw" is "......................".

a) uncooked b) fresh c) cooked d) natural

5. Kinetic energy is another term for the energy of ....

a) light b) sound c) bouncing d) motion

6. **When a person starts to move, ...**

a) his motion energy turns into a kinetic one

b) his motion energy turns into a chemical one

c) his kinetic energy turns into a chemical one

d) his potential energy turns into a kinetic one

7. **Which one is not mentioned in the passage?**

a) The energy in a battery.

b) The energy in a mobile phone.

c) The energy in a basketball.

d) The energy of heat.

8. **The best title for the passage is "......................".**

a) Types of Power

b) What Is Energy?

c) Sports and Energy

d) Energy Consumption

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Albert Einstein found school very difficult. His teacher would tap her pointer against the blackboard impatiently while she waited for him to answer her questions. But Albert always had to think about many things before he could answer. After all, he would say to himself, there are many different things to think about before you can say anything is absolutely certain. When his teacher wasn't asking Albert a question, Albert would think of a question to ask her. And often when he did, she would get red in the face and angry at Albert for thinking up questions she couldn't answer. The more Albert learned, the more ideas he found to think about. The more he thought, the more questions he asked.

He knew that the Earth, other planets, the moon, and the sun are just a part of what we call the universe. He knew that the universe is also made up of all the stars we can see with our eyes and millions and millions more than we can see only with the largest telescopes. He thought there must be some rules to explain why everything in the universe acts as it does. Finally, he believed he had some of the answers. And then people started asking him questions because he had answers for many things that scientists had been trying to figure out for many, many years.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **The phrase "would tap her pointer against the blackboard impatiently" means ....**

a) she was very happy

b) she was very angry

c) she was very ill

d) she was bored with teaching

2. When he was young, Albert Einstein ....

a) didn't care about learning

b) was very stupid

c) always made his teacher cry

d) was clever enough to think about everything

3. If Albert Einstein's teacher hadn't raised questions, ...

a) Albert would have asked her difficult questions

b) Albert would have left the class happily

c) Albert would have been angry

d) Albert wouldn't have answered them

4. The best title for the passage is "....................".

a) Albert Einstein's stupidity

b) Albert Einstein and his teacher

c) Albert Einstein and his deep thinking

d) Albert Einstein's early childhood

5. Albert Einstein concluded that ....

a) there is something called the Earth

b) the Earth is oval

c) we live in a massive universe

d) asking questions is useful

6. Albert took time to answer questions at school because ....

a) he was busy

b) he was stupid

c) the questions were difficult

d) he thought a lot

7. Albert's teacher's face got red when he asked her because ....

a) she didn't know the answer

b) the questions were embarrassing

c) the questions were off point

d) he was making fun of her

8. People always asked Albert about a lot of things as ....

a) he claimed prophecy

b) he was a physician

c) he knew many things

d) he was a clever student

(B) Translation

3 **(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

1. Friendship is one of the best things in life as friends can give you all the help and support to do better in your life.

a) الصداقة هى واحدة من أفضل الأشياء فى الحياة حيث يمكن للأصدقاء أن يقدموا لك كل المساعدة والدعم للقيام بعمل أفضل فى حياتك.

b) الصداقة هى واحدة من أفضل الأشياء فى الحياة حيث يجب للأصدقاء أن يقدموا لك كل المساعدة والدعم للقيام بعمل أفضل فى حياتك.

c) الصداقة هى واحدة من أفضل الأشياء فى الحياة حيث يمكن للأصدقاء أن يقدموا لك كل الماليات والدعم للقيام بعمل أفضل فى حياتك.

d) الصداقة هى واحدة من أفضل الأشياء فى الحياة حيث يمكن للأصدقاء أن يقدموا لك بعض المساعدة والدعم للقيام بعمل أفضل فى حياتك.

2. We can solve many of our social problems if we teach our children to realise and change their bad mistakes. Parents and schools have a great role in this.

a) يمكننا حل العديد من مشاكلنا الاجتماعية إذا علمنا أطفالنا التعرف على أخطائهم السيئة وتغييرها، وللوالدين والمدارس دور كبير فى هذا.

b) يمكننا حل العديد من مشاكلنا الاجتماعية إذا علمنا أطفالنا إدراك أخطائهم السيئة وتغييرها، وللوالدين والمدارس دور كبير فى هذا.

c) يمكننا حل العديد من مشاكلنا الاجتماعية إذا علمنا أطفالنا إدراك أخطائهم السيئة وتغييرها، وللوالدين والمدارس قاعدة كبير فى هذا.

d) يمكننا حل العديد من مشاكلنا النفسية إذا علمنا أطفالنا إدراك أخطائهم الجيدة وتغييرها، وللوالدين والمدارس دور كبير فى هذا.

3. The Olympic Games are now a political question as all athletes try hard to win so as to honour their country. So, the Games may have lost their original meaning.

a) أصبحت الألعاب الأولمبية الآن سؤالًا سياسيًا حيث يحاول جميع الرياضيين جاهدين الفوز من أجل تكريم بلادهم. لذلك، ربما فقدت الألعاب معناها الأصلى.

b) أصبحت الألعاب الأولمبية الآن مسألة سياسية حيث يحاول جميع الرياضيين جاهدين الفوز من أجل تكريم بلادهم. لذلك، ربما فقدت الألعاب ربحها الأصلى.

c) أصبحت الألعاب الأولمبية الآن مسألة سياسية حيث يحاول جميع الرياضيين جاهدين الفوز من أجل تكريم بلادهم. لذلك، ربما فقدت الألعاب معناها الأصلى.

d) أصبحت الألعاب الأولمبية الآن مسألة سياسية حيث يحاول جميع الرياضيين جاهدين الفوز من أجل إراحة بلادهم. لذلك، ربما فقدت الألعاب معناها الأصلى.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4. ما لم تحاول تطوير مهاراتك و اكتساب مهارات جديدة فلن تستطيع الحصول على أى ترقية أو مرتب أعلى فى هذه الشركة.

a) Unless you tried to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you would not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

b) Unless you try to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you will not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

c) Unless you had tried to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you would not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

d) Unless you try to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you are not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

5. صورت قصص نجيب محفوظ المجتمع المصرى بكل قيمه ومشاكله، فى الوقت الذى عاش فيه، وقد حصل على جائزة نوبل بسبب تأثيره الكبير فى الأدب العربى.

a) The stories of Naguib Mahfouz portrayed the Egyptian society with all its values and problems, at the time in which he lived. He was awarded the Nobel Prize because of his great influence on Arabic literature.

b) The stories of Naguib Mahfouz photographed the Egyptian society with all its values and problems, at the time in which he lived. He was awarded the Nobel Prize because of his great influence on Arabic literature.

c) The stories of Naguib Mahfouz portrayed the Egyptian society with all its values and problems, at the time in which he lived. He was rewarded the Nobel Prize because of his great influence on Arabic literature.

d) The stories of Naguib Mahfouz painted the Egyptian country with all its evaluations and problems, at the time in which he lived. He was awarded the Nobel Prize because of his great influence on Arabic literature.

6. يعانى الكثير من الناس من غلاء المعيشة فى العالم كله، فيجب على أفراد المجتمع العمل على زيادة الإنتاج وتغيير عاداتهم الاستهلاكية لمواجهة الأزمات المختلفة والزيادة المستمرة فى الأسعار.

a) Many people suffer from the high race of living all over the world, so society members must work to increase production and change their consuming habits to face various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

b) Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world, so society organs must work to increase production and change their consuming customs to face various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

c) Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world, so society members must work to increase production and change their consuming habits to stand various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

d) Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world, so society members must work to increase production and change their consuming habits to face various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Many people should be thanked due to their efforts towards us."

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Al-Azhar Corner



1 Finish the following dialogue:

Hend and Huda are talking about the mobile she has just bought.

Hend: You look sad! What's the matter?

Huda: (1).. .

Hend: What happened?

Huda: When I opened the box, the screen was damaged.

Hend: (2)..?

Huda: I ordered it last week.

Hend: When was the delivery?

Huda: (3).. . What should I do?

Hend: You should send an email to them.

Huda: (4).. .

A Glimpse of Revelation II

2 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. What intention should we have when we practice all daily activities including earning your livelihood?
2. Why do you think formal acts of worship has been constituted?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. We should follow the prophets of Allah to .... deviation.
   a) evade b) provide c) avoid d) invade
4. .... means the aim of giving money, food, help, etc. to people who are in need
   a) Livelihood b) Social c) Charity d) Submission

King Lear

3 (A) Answer the following questions:

1. How did Edmund misuse his father's confidence in him?
2. What lesson did King Lear learn from being in the storm with poor people?

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. As a reward for what he did, ... asked Edmund to work for him.
   a) Lear b) Albany c) Cornwall d) Goneril
4. King Lear was pleased with talking with Poor Tom and called him ....
   a) a writer b) a servant
   c) a duke d) a philosopher

4 (A) Translate into Arabic:

- Building a new, advanced society requires that all people cooperate with the government.

(B) Translate into English:

- إن زيادة الإنتاج أصبح واجبًا وطنيًا لأنه يمكننا من مواجهة مشكلة زيادة الأسعار في مصر.

Unit 6 Al-Adwaa Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mum always warns me not to be .... with my children so as not to be hated.
a) brave b) mean c) generous d) kind

2. The new cancer hospital on 6th of October City accepts .... from all people.
a) donations b) sales c) products d) crops

3. When I was in Alexandria, I spent most of the day .... out with my friends.
a) changing b) returning c) hanging d) moving

4. I realised that time was getting .... and we would have to hurry.
a) on b) back c) into d) about

5. My cousin has .... a keen interest in music since he was a child.
a) missed b) designed c) kept d) taken

6. The computer trouble was apparently caused by a programming error.
The synonym of the adverb "apparently" is "...............".
a) successfully b) vaguely c) temporarily d) clearly

7. .... an emergency landing, the pilot will inform the airport authorities.
a) If b) Unless c) In case of d) Provided that

8. If I .... my phone ringing, I would have to answer it.
a) had heard b) heard c) hear d) would hear

9. What .... if it rained next Friday?
a) should you do b) were you to do
c) did you do d) would you do

10. I wish we .... late for this film. I can't follow the story.
a) didn't arrive b) hadn't arrived
c) wouldn't arrive d) wouldn't have arrived

11. If you buy one T-shirt, you .... the second one free.
a) get b) would get c) will have got d) got

12. If you were more sensible, you .... to your boss like that.
a) don't speak b) wouldn't have spoken
c) wouldn't speak d) won't speak

13. Ehab .... fishing if he finishes all his work before the weekend.
a) had gone b) is going c) would go d) will go

14. I think I can fix it tomorrow. If not, you .... wait till Friday.

a) will have to b) might have c) mustn't d) won't

15. If anyone calls, ... them I'm not at home and I'll come back in an hour.

a) would have told b) would tell
c) tell d) will tell

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Some people argue that the pressures on international sportsmen and sportswomen kill the essence of sport—the pursuit of personal excellence. Children kick a football around for fun. When they get older and play for local school teams, they become competitive but they still enjoy playing. However, the individual representing his/her country cannot afford to think about enjoying him/herself; he has to think only about winning. He/She is responsible for an entire nation's hope, dreams and reputation. A good example is the football World Cup. Football is the world's most important sport. It is even more important now that the United States is seriously taking it up. Winning the World Cup is perhaps the summit of international sporting success. Mention "Argentina or Brazil" to someone and chances are that he/she'll think of football. In a sense, winning the World Cup "puts Argentina or Brazil on the map."

Sports fans and supporters get quite irrational about the World Cup. People in England felt that their country was somehow important after they won in 1966. Years ago, thousands of Scots sold their cars, and even their houses, and spent all their money travelling to Argentina, where the finals were played.

So, am I arguing that international competition kills the idea of sport? Certainly not! Do the Argentineans really believe that because eleven of their men proved the most skilful at football, their nation is in every way better than all others? Not really. But it's nice to know that you won, and that in one way at least your country is best.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. According to the passage, the United States ....

a) has begun to give much attention to football
b) is fond of playing football
c) has won the football World Cup
d) is getting sick of football

17. In the second paragraph, the word "summit" means the ....

a) highest point b) mountain top c) award d) summary

18. According to the passage, if a sportsman only thinks about winning, he will ....

a) fail to succeed b) be successful c) lose enjoyment d) be irrational

19. What is the author's attitude towards international games?

a) Nations that meet on a football field are unlikely to meet on a battlefield.
b) Nations that win the football World Cup are regarded as best in all aspects.
c) Nations that win in international games prove best on the sports field at least.
d) Nations that give much attention to international competitions are world-famous in many ways.

20. Winning an international game can make the country ....

a) strong b) weak c) famous d) occupied

21. In order to attend the final matches, the Scots ....

a) bought tickets online b) sold their properties
c) rent their watches d) bought TVs

22. According to the passage, people think that their country is important when ....

a) it comes first in a scientific competition
b) they support it in the stadium
c) they take the World Cup
d) they win a game

23. The best title for the passage is "....................".

a) The Importance of Football b) The History of Football
c) How People Think of Sport d) Sports and Argentina

24. Choose the correct English translation:

– واجبنا تجاه أصدقائنا أن نقدم لهم النصائح المفيدة والتى اكتسبناها خلال تجاربنا وتعلمناها من أخطائنا.

a) It is our duty towards our friends to offer them useful advices that we have won through our experiences and that we have learned from our mistakes.
b) From our duties towards our friends is to offer them useful advice that we have won through our experiments and that we have learned from our mistakes.
c) It is our duty towards our friends to request them useful advices that we have earned through our experiences and that we have learned from our mistakes.
d) It is our duty towards our friends to offer them useful advice that we have gained through our experiences and that we have learned from our mistakes.

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Some scientists believe that science has no limits. This can lead them to dangerous experiments which can create problems or even new viruses.

a) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حقوق وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو حتى فيروسات جديدة.

b) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو حتى فيروسات جديدة.

c) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو تقضى على فيروسات جديدة.

d) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تحل مشكلات أو تصنع لقاحات جديدة.

26. Answer the following questions: (The play)

1. If you were King Lear, would you go mad because of your daughters' behaviour with you? Why?
2. Do you think that Gloucester was right to hide the letter he received from Edmund? Why?
3. What good effect did King Lear's experience in the storm have on him?

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The job you dream of and your reasons for choosing it"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 405

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Units 5 & 6 Module Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many YouTubers resort to legal and illegal ways to make people .... to their channels.
   a) subscribe b) refine c) adopt d) exclude
2. Mandela became a/an .... of the struggle for human rights in Africa and the whole world.
   a) sculpture b) image c) symbol d) state
3. The lawyer represented the criminal at court. The verb "represent" is similar in meaning to "..................".
   a) differ b) act c) introduce d) speak for
4. The relationship between workers and .... should be good in order to achieve good profits.
   a) customers b) employers c) competitors d) clients
5. The New Capital has a/an .... airport that can receive planes from all over the world.
   a) local b) hostile c) intimate d) international
6. The school bus goes .... many students' houses on the way to school.
   a) past b) for c) with d) into
7. .... he had enough money, he wouldn't buy his needs.
   a) Without b) Unless c) If d) In case
8. Should she .... more information about Hany's situation, she would help him.
   a) had b) have c) to have d) had had
9. If I .... enough money in my twenties, I .... around Europe. But, unfortunately, I was broke.
   a) had/ would backpack b) had had/ would backpack
   c) had had/ would have backpacked d) have/ will backpack
10. It's too bad Hany isn't with us. If he were here, he .... the letter for us.
    a) 'd have translated b) will translate
    c) wouldn't translate d) could translate
11. Cookies are .... to make it easier for us to use the internet.
    a) meant b) seems c) suppose d) meaning
12. There .... to be so many choices and we've only got a limited amount of money.
    a) is supposed b) meant c) seem d) is meant
13. Collecting money .... to make us happy, but to some people, it has become an aim.
    a) means b) is meant c) is seeming d) supposed
14. Wael .... to be happy today. – You're right, he has just had good news!
    a) opposes b) supposes c) seems d) is seeming
15. Libraries .... to be places for reading.
    a) seem b) are meant c) supposed d) are meaning

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Animals that sleep during the day and come out at night are called nocturnal.

For desert-dwelling animals, being active at night allows them to escape the heat of the day and conserve water. Many snakes and rodents are examples of desert animals that prefer the night.

The darkness of night makes it easier for some animals to escape predators, especially if the animal is dark enough to blend into its surroundings. Then there's the hedgehog, a small nocturnal mammal that rolls up into a ball of spiny hairs when danger comes near. Because it is active only at night, it can usually wander around unseen. The skunk, another nocturnal animal, has the most smelly way to defend itself. Its fur is mostly black, which blends in with the darkness.

Of course, there are predators that are specially adapted for night hunting, so no prey animal is safe simply because it's nocturnal. Owls and certain species of cats are very effective nocturnal hunters because they have great night vision and excellent hearing. Another predator that's well-known for its nocturnal behaviour is the insect-eating bat. Instead of using their eyes to hunt for an insect dinner they use echolocation. What is echolocation? It works like this: The bat emits a very high-pitched sound. The sound is so high that people can't even hear it. When the sound hits an object it bounces, or echoes, back. From the sound of the echo the bat immediately knows the object's size and location. Its echolocation can also determine if an object is a yummy insect or something that can't be eaten like a plant or a tree.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. What is echolocation?
- a) A way of making high-pitched sounds that bats use to communicate.
- b) A method of making high-pitched sounds that bats use to avoid being eaten.
- c) A high-pitched sound that helps bats fly after dark.
- d) The ability to make a high-pitched sound that bats use to locate things in the dark.

17. Which is the best definition for the following?
For desert dwelling animals, being active at night allows them to escape the heat of day and to conserve water.
- a) living or residing
- b) nighttime hunter
- c) heat-loving
- d) healthy

18. Owls and certain species of cats can catch the prey easily because ....
- a) they can fly easily at night
- b) they both have feathers to leap silently down upon prey
- c) they have great night vision and excellent hearing
- d) they use echolocation

19. The synonym of the word "vision" is ....
- a) the ability to hear
- b) the ability to see
- c) the ability to catch
- d) the ability to think

20. Desert snakes and rodents are nocturnal animals as they ....
- a) sleep at night
- b) are active at night
- c) eat and drink at night
- d) like heat and sunny weather

21. The skunk can survive and keep its enemy away by ....

a) running fast
b) hiding in holes
c) releasing bad odour
d) humping on trees

22. What are the things that the bat doesn't eat?

a) Plants.
b) Insects.
c) Yummy prey.
d) Far prey.

23. The main idea of the passage is ....

a) how animals communicate
b) how bats fly
c) the desert snakes' life
d) animals' life at night

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- By implementing the right security measures on social media, users can significantly lower their chance of being a target of cyber attacks and ensure a safer online experience.

a) من خلال تنفيذ التدابير الأمنية الصحيحة على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، يمكن للمستخدمين تقليل فرصتهم فى أن يكونوا هدفًا للهجمات الإلكترونية بشكل كبير وضمان تجربة أكثر أمانًا عبر الإنترنت.

b) من خلال تنفيذ التدابير المالية الصحيحة على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، يمكن للمستخدمين تقليل فرصتهم فى أن يكونوا هدفًا للهجمات الإلكترونية بشكل كبير وضمان تجربة أكثر أمانًا عبر الإنترنت.

c) من خلال تنفيذ التدابير الأمنية الصحيحة على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، يمكن للمستخدمين زيادة فرصتهم فى أن يكونوا هدفًا للهجمات الإلكترونية بشكل كبير وضمان تجربة أكثر أمانًا عبر الإنترنت.

d) من خلال تنفيذ التدابير الأمنية الصحيحة على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، يمكن للمستخدمين تقليل فرصتهم فى أن يكونوا هدفًا للهجمات الإلكترونية بشكل كبير و استغلال تجربة أكثر أمانًا عبر الإنترنت.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- يمر العالم فى الوقت الحالى فترة من عدم الاستقرار الاقتصادى والسياسى مما يؤثر على مستوى المعيشة فى كثير من دول العالم و خاصة الدول النامية.

a) The world is currently going through a period of economic and political instability, which affects the space of living in many countries of the world, especially developed countries.

b) The world is currently going through a period of economic and political stress, which reflects the standard of living in many countries of the world, especially developing countries.

c) The world is currently going through a period of economic and social instability, which affects the standard of living in many countries of the world, especially developed countries.

d) The world is currently going through a period of economic and political instability, which affects the degree of living in many countries of the world, especially developing countries.

26. Answer the following questions: (The play)

1. Do you think that the King of France had good intentions when he sent the army to England?
2. Why do you think Kent didn't tell the gentleman he sent to Dover about his real identity?
3. If you were Gloucester, would you recognise Kent and Edgar?

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:
"Has the internet made society better?"

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Play

King Lear

By: William Shakespeare



Introduction

Texts

Exercises

Introduction

(A) The Writer (William Shakespeare) الكاتب (ويليام شكسبير)

- William Shakespeare was an English poet, playwright and actor. Shakespeare is considered the greatest writer in the English language. He wrote about 38 plays, 154 sonnets and two long narrative poems. His plays have been translated into every major living language and are performed more often than those of any other playwright.

- Shakespeare was born in Stratford-upon-Avon in 1564. His father was a merchant and his mother was a housewife. Shakespeare received little formal education, but he was clearly an excellent reader. He began writing plays in the late 1580s, and his first works were performed in the early 1590s. Shakespeare's career was successful and he became a wealthy man. He married Anne Hathaway in 1582, and they had three children. In 1601, Shakespeare withdrew to Stratford-upon-Avon, where he died in 1616.

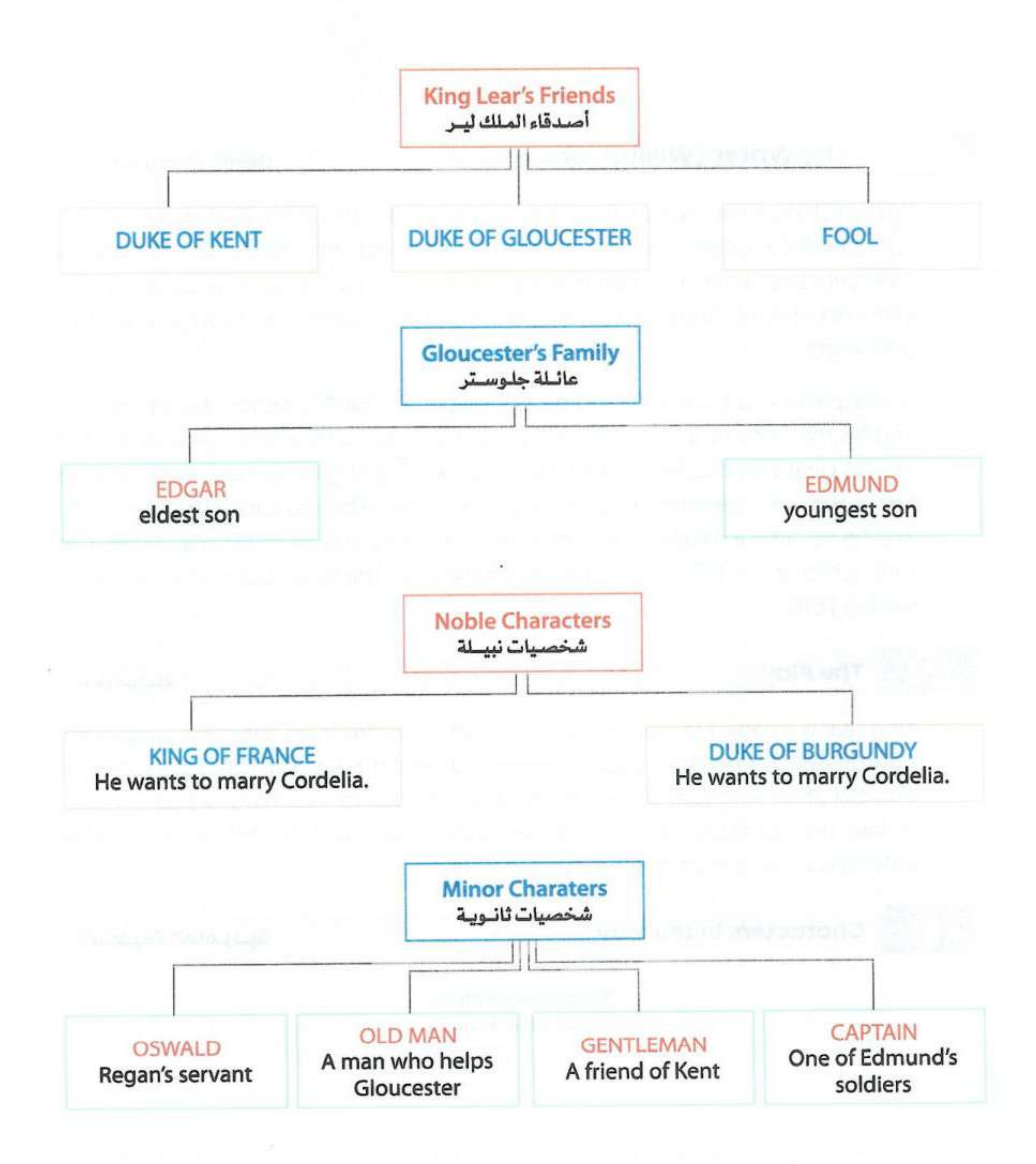
(B) The Play المسرحية

- King Lear is a tragic play written by William Shakespeare. It is a depiction تصوير of the slow descent into insanity جنون of the main character, King Lear. This occurs after his disposal of his kingdom to two of his daughters due to their flattery نفاق. This play studies the correlation between appearances and reality as well as the result of putting too much trust in appearance over reality.

(C) Characters in the Play شخصيات المسرحية

King Lear's Family
عائلة الملك لير

- GONERIL — eldest daughter
- ALBANY — Goneril's husband
- CORNWALL — Regan's husband
- CORDELIA — youngest daughter
- REGAN — second daughter


King Lear's Friends
أصدقاء الملك لير
DUKE OF KENT
DUKE OF GLOUCESTER
FOOL
Gloucester's Family
عائلة جلوستر
EDGAR
eldest son
EDMUND
youngest son
Noble Characters
شخصيات نبيلة
KING OF FRANCE
He wants to marry Cordelia.
DUKE OF BURGUNDY
He wants to marry Cordelia.
Minor Charaters
شخصيات ثانوية
OSWALD
Regan's servant
OLD MAN
A man who helps Gloucester
GENTLEMAN
A friend of Kent
CAPTAIN
One of Edmund's soldiers

Act I Scene i

Vocabulary — المفردات

act (n)	فصل (فى مسرحية)	honest (adj)	صادق
actions (n)	إجراءات/أفعال	kingdom (n)	مملكة
answer (n)	إجابة/رد	majesty (n)	جلالة/فخامة
beauty (n)	جمال	marry (v) (y ied)	يتزوج
call (v) (ed)	ينادى على	power (n)	قوة/سلطة
countryside (n)	ريف	promise (v) (d)	يعد
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ	queen (n)	ملكة
duke (n)	دوق (لقب نبيل)	riches (n)	ثروات
duty (n)	مهمة/واجب	scene (n)	مشهد (فى مسرحية)
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	sir (n)	سيد
feelings (n)	مشاعر	speech (n)	خطاب
fine (adj)	محترم	stranger (n)	شخص غريب
foolish (adj)	أحمق	sword (n)	سيف
forest (n)	غابة	third (n)	ثلث
hate (v) (d)	يكره	title (n)	لقب

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

give ... advice	يعطى ... نصيحة	put ... into words	يعبر عن ... بالكلمات
make ... happy	يجعل ... سعيدًا	say goodbye to	يودع
divide ... into	يقسم ... إلى	give away	يهب/يتبرع/يتخلى عن
give to	يعطى لـ	shout about	يصيح بشأن/يصرح بـ

Scene Text

Summary



[In King Lear's Palace]

(DUKE OF) GLOUCESTER: Ah, the Duke[1] of Kent!

Hello, my friend. Have you met my son, Edmund?

(DUKE OF) KENT: I haven't, Kent. He's a fine young man. You must be proud of him.

GLOUCESTER: I'm very proud of him.

EDMUND: I'm pleased to meet you, sir[2].

GLOUCESTER: Edmund is my second child. I also have another son, Edgar, who is about a year older than Edmund.

EDMUND: Listen! The King is coming.

[King Lear enters with Cornwall and Albany and his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia. Gloucester and Edmund leave.]

KING LEAR: Listen, everyone. I want to tell you all about my plan. I've decided to give everything in my kingdom[3] to my three daughters, Goneril, Regan and Cordelia. I will also give an answer[4] to the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy. They have both asked to marry my youngest daughter, Cordelia.

First, look at this map of my kingdom. I have divided[5] it into three. I want to give the largest part to the daughter who loves me the most. So tell me, my daughters, which of you loves me the most? Goneril, you are the eldest, so you can speak first.

GONERIL: Father, I love you more than anything. No child can love a father more than I love you. I love you more than health, beauty[6] and riches[7].

CORDELIA: *[To herself]* I love my father, but I don't know what to say!

KING LEAR: *[Pointing to the map]* Goneril, you can have all this land, with its green forests and beautiful countryside. Now, Regan, wife of Cornwall. What does my second daughter want to say?

REGAN: Father, Goneril has described her love for you very well. But I have more to say. Your love is the only thing that makes me happy. I love nobody as much as you.

CORDELIA: *[To herself]* What can I say? I don't have the words to say how much I love my father.

KING LEAR: Thank you, Regan. I will give a third[8] of our beautiful kingdom to you and your children.



(1) دوق (لقب الحاكم)
(2) سيدى
(3) مملكة
(4) إجابة / رد
(5) قسمت
(6) الجمال
(7) الغنى / الثروات
(8) ثلث

[To Cordelia] Now, Cordelia, my youngest daughter. What can you say to make me give you more than I gave to your sisters?

CORDELIA: I can say nothing, Father.

KING LEAR: Nothing? Cordelia, if you say nothing, I will give you nothing. Speak again.

CORDELIA: I cannot put my feelings into words. I love you as a daughter should love a father; but not more, and not less.

KING LEAR: But this is not kind, Cordelia. Change your speech a little, or your future will change, too.

CORDELIA: You have always been a good father and it is my duty[1] to love you, too. But my sisters say they only love you. How can this be true? Do they not love their husbands, too? If I marry, I will love my husband as much as my father.

KING LEAR: Cordelia. Do you really mean this? Can you be so young but also so cruel?

CORDELIA: Father, I am young, but I am honest.

KING LEAR: Then you are not my daughter any more. You are now a stranger to me. I don't know you.

KENT: But your majesty ...

KING LEAR: Be quiet, Kent! I loved Cordelia, and I wanted her to look after me when I was old. Now she must go! But first, call the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy! While we wait for them, listen to what I say: Goneril and her husband Albany, and Regan with her husband Cornwall, will have half of my kingdom each. They will have all the power and riches that come with being a king. All I want is to keep the title[2] of King, but they will have everything else.

KENT: Your majesty, what do you mean? I must speak honestly when my King is being foolish[3]. Your youngest daughter does not shout about[4] her love for you, but that doesn't mean she loves you the least. You mustn't give your country away[5] like this.

KING LEAR: Say nothing more to me, Kent!

KENT: I am not afraid to make you angry if it will help to protect you.

KING LEAR: Then you must go away, too! Leave!

KENT: Let me stay and give you good advice, King Lear. You must learn to see better.

KING LEAR: Oh, you are a cruel man!

[He puts his hand on his sword[6].]

(DUKE OF) CORNWALL: Your majesty, please stop!

KENT: I'll say it again, King Lear. You've done a terrible thing.



(1) واجب
(2) لقب
(3) أحمق
(4) تفصح عن
(5) تترك بلا مقابل
(6) سيف

KING LEAR: Kent! You've got five days to leave my kingdom, or you'll be killed. Go!
KENT: Then I'll say goodbye to you, my dear King.
[To Cordelia] I hope you stay safe, young lady, because you were honest. And now I say goodbye to all of you; I shall live my life in a new country.
[Gloucester enters with the King of France, the Duke of Burgundy and his men.]
GLOUCESTER: Here are the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy, your majesty.
KING LEAR: Burgundy, I will speak to you first. What do you expect to have if you marry my daughter Cordelia?
(DUKE OF) BURGUNDY: Your majesty, I only expect to have what you promised me.
KING LEAR: I am sorry, but things have changed. Sir, there she is. You can marry her.
BURGUNDY: I don't understand.
KING LEAR: You'll get my daughter and nothing more. Take her, or leave her. It's your choice.
BURGUNDY: I'm sorry, sir. I cannot marry her without some of your land.
KING LEAR: Then leave her, sir.
CORDELIA: Goodbye, Burgundy! I see now that you love things more than you love me, so I shall not be your wife.
KING LEAR: *[To the King of France]* So, the great King of France, I don't want you to marry someone I hate; so I suggest you give your love to a better girl.
(KING OF) FRANCE: But sir, Cordelia was your favourite daughter! It is very strange that she has suddenly lost all your love. I cannot believe that Cordelia could do anything terrible to anyone.
CORDELIA: *[To King Lear]* Father, understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words. Please tell him that I haven't done anything wrong to make you hate me.
KING LEAR: I shall not. Go! You will have nothing from me!
(KING OF) FRANCE: My beautiful Cordelia, you are richer for being poor and I love you more now that you are hated! I'm happy for you to be my wife.
[To the King] Your daughter will be the queen of my country. Say goodbye to them, Cordelia, although they've been unkind to you. You have lost your life here, but you'll find a better one with me.
KING LEAR: She is yours, King of France; I'll never see her face again.
[To Cordelia] Leave now; without my love. Come with me, Burgundy.
[King Lear leaves with Burgundy, Cornwall, Albany, and Gloucester.]

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual Questions

1. Who did Gloucester introduce to Kent?

من الذى قدمه جلوستر إلى كينت؟

• He introduced his younger son Edmund to him.

2. What plan did King Lear announce?

ما هى الخطة التى أعلنها الملك لير؟

• He announced his plan to divide his kingdom among his daughters.

3. How did King Lear test his daughters' love to him?

كيف اختبر الملك لير حب بناته له؟

• He asked them to tell him how much they loved him.

4. Why did King Lear get angry with Cordelia?

لماذا غضب الملك لير على كورديليا؟

• Because she couldn't express her love to him.

5. How did King Lear reward Goneril and Regan?

كيف كافأ الملك لير جونيريل وريجان؟

• He divided his kingdom between them.

6. How did King Lear punish Cordelia?

كيف عاقب الملك لير كورديليا؟

• He deprived her of her share of the kingdom.

7. Who objected to King Lear's decision? Why?

من اعترض على قرار الملك لير؟ لماذا؟

• Kent objected to it as he thought it was foolish of the King to divide his kingdom. He also thought that Cordelia was the one who really loved him.

8. According to King Lear, when did Kent have to leave the country?

وفقًا للملك لير، متى كان يجب أن يغادر كينت البلاد؟

• He had to leave the country within five days.

9. Who proposed to marry Cordelia?

من الذى تقدم للزواج من كورديليا؟

• The Duke of Burgundy and the King of France proposed to marry her.

10. What was the Duke of Burgundy's response when he knew about King Lear's punishment to Cordelia?

ماذا كان رد فعل دوق بورجوندى عندما علم بعقوبة الملك لير لكورديليا؟

• He withdrew his proposal of marriage.

11. **Prove that the King of France was an honest and good man.**

أثبت أن ملك فرنسا كان رجلاً صادقًا وصالحًا.

- He wanted to marry Cordelia although she was deprived of land and money.

12. **Where would Cordelia go after that?**

أين ستذهب كورديليا بعد ذلك؟

- She would go to France after marrying the King of France.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions

13. **In your opinion, is it right that King Lear asks his daughters to show their love to him through words? Why?**

في رأيك هل من الصحيح أن يطلب الملك لير من بناته إظهار حبهن له بالكلمات؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. People may deceive others with words while they don't really love them.

14. **If you were Cordelia, would you stop saying anything about your love to your father? Why? Why not?**

لو كنت مكان كورديليا، هل ستتوقف عن قول أي شيء عن حبك لوالدك؟

- No, I wouldn't. I would at least try to express my love to him with the words I can say.

15. **Do you think Cordelia made the right decision? Why? Why not?** (SB)

هل تعتقد أن كورديليا اتخذت القرار الصحيح؟ لماذا؟ ولم لا؟

- Yes, I do. She preferred to stick to her morals and didn't care about money.

16. **If you were King Lear, would you send Cordelia away because she didn't say how much she loved you? Why? Why not?** (SB)

لو كنت مكان الملك لير، هل سترسل كورديليا بعيدًا لأنها لم تقل كم تحبك؟ لماذا؟ ولم لا؟

- No, I wouldn't. A father shouldn't be so cruel to his daughter even if she made a mistake.

17. **If you were Kent, would you object to the King's decision? Why?**

لو كنت مكان كينت، هل ستعترض على قرار الملك؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. As a true lover of the King, I should give him the best advice.

18. **What do you think of King Lear's decision to send Kent away?**

ما رأيك في قرار الملك لير بإبعاد كينت؟

- I think it is a bad decision. He should appreciate that he wanted the best for him.

19. **If you were Duke of Burgundy, would you refuse to marry Cordelia? Why?**

لو كنت مكان دوق بورجوندي، هل كنت سترفض الزواج من كورديليا؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. Only a greedy person would refuse to marry a princess only because she would get no title or land.

20. **What do you think of the King of France's decision to marry Cordelia?**

ما رأيك في قرار ملك فرنسا الزواج من كورديليا؟

- I think it is a good decision. A good man should see that she is an honest girl who would make a good wife.

21. **If you were King Lear, would you be unkind to Cordelia because she couldn't say how much she loved you? Why? Why not?** (SB)

لو كنت مكان الملك لير، هل كنت ستكون قاسيًا مع كورديليا لأنها لا تستطيع أن تقول كم تحبك؟ لماذا؟ ولم لا؟

- No, I wouldn't. I would at least give her another chance or punish her but not so cruelly.

22. **Are actions more important than words or are words more important than actions? Why?** (SB)

هل الأفعال أهم من الأقوال أم الأقوال أهم من الأفعال؟ لماذا؟

- I think that actions are more important than words. Evil people can easily deceive others with words.

23. **"I love my father, but I don't know what to say!" What does this show about Cordelia?**

«أنا أحب والدى، ولكن لا أعرف ماذا أقول!» ماذا يظهر هذا عن كورديليا؟

- It shows that she is an honest girl, but she isn't good at expressing her feelings.

24. **"No child can love a father more than I love you." Why do you think Goneril says this?** (WB)

«لا يمكن لأى طفل أن يحب أباه أكثر مما أحبك.» فى رأيك لماذا تقول جونيريل هذا؟

- She wants to have the largest part of her father's land, so she says she loves him more than his other children.

25. **"I cannot put my feelings into words. I love you as a daughter should love a father; but not more, and not less." Do you agree with Cordelia? Why?**

«لا أستطيع أن أترجم مشاعرى إلى كلمات. أحبك كما ينبغى أن تحب الابنة الأب؛ ولكن ليس أكثر ولا أقل.» هل تتفق مع كورديليا؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't agree with her. Although she is honest, she can find the words or phrases that can satisfy her beloved father.

26. **"You mustn't give your country away like this." Do you agree with Kent when he said this? Why?**

«لا يجب أن تتخلى عن بلدك بهذه الطريقة.» هل تتفق مع كينت عندما قال هذا؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree with him. The King shouldn't divide his kingdom as it would make it weaker.

27. **"My beautiful Cordelia, you are richer for being poor and I love you more now that you are hated! I'm happy for you to be my wife." What does this show about the King of France?**

«كورديليا الجميلة، أنت أكثر ثراءً لكونك فقيرة وأنا أحبك أكثر الآن بعد أن أصبحت مكروهة! أنا سعيد لأنك زوجتى". ماذا يظهر ذلك عن ملك فرنسا؟

- It shows that he is a good and wise man who doesn't care about money. He appreciated Cordelia's honesty.

(c) Longman Exercises & Previous Exams

28. Do you think King Lear was right to decide to give the largest part of his kingdom to the daughter who loved him the most? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الملك لير كان على حق عندما قرر إعطاء الجزء الأكبر من مملكته لابنته التى أحبته أكثر؟

- No, I don't think so. He should have chosen the best and wisest person to rule the country.

29. "If I marry, I will love my husband as much as my father." Do you think Cordelia was right to give her husband and father the same love? Why?

«إذا تزوجت، فسأحب زوجى بقدر حبى لأبى.» هل تعتقد أن كورديليا كانت على حق فى منح زوجها وأبيها نفس الحب؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. The love to a father is different from her love for her husband.

30. From your perspective, do you see that it was cruel of Cordelia not to say how much she loved her father? Why?

من وجهة نظرك، هل ترى أنه كان من القسوة من كورديليا ألا تقول كم كانت تحب والدها؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I do. She should have thought of any words to satisfy her beloved father.

31. Should King Lear have listened to Kent's advice 'to learn to see better'? Why?

هل كان على الملك لير أن يستمع لنصيحة كينت «أن يتعلم الرؤية بشكل أفضل؟» لماذا؟

- Yes, I think he should. Kent was a good friend who wanted the best for his King.

32. Why do you think King Lear spoke to the Duke of Burgundy about Cordelia's marriage first before the King of France?

فى رأيك لماذا تحدث الملك لير إلى دوق بورجوندى بشأن زواج كورديليا أولًا أمام ملك فرنسا؟

- Maybe, he wanted Cordelia to marry someone inside the country.

Practice ...

Act I, Scene i Exercises



Practice more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. King Lear wanted to .... his kingdom into three parts. (SB)
   a) divide b) share c) connect d) collect
2. The old king had a large amount of .... like silver and gold. (SB)
   a) beauty b) riches c) power d) strength
3. Kent thinks that it's .... to tell Cordelia to go away. (SB)
   a) honest b) political c) foolish d) financial
4. When you have a .... to do something, you must do it. (WB)
   a) scene b) disguise c) title d) duty
5. King Lear decides to give his .... to his daughters. (WB)
   a) duke b) title c) kingdom d) sword
6. King Lear intended to give a .... of his kingdom to each daughter. (Longman)
   a) third b) three c) thirdly d) thirteen
7. What I liked most in my journey to Sinai is the natural .... of the landscape.
   a) riches b) beauty c) cost d) wisdom
8. It's difficult to .... all my feelings into words; actions are always stronger than words.
   a) appeal b) appear c) put d) take
9. I like my neighbours very much because they are good and .... people.
   a) cruel b) deceitful c) honest d) foolish
10. Only world leaders and noblemen were invited to the coronation تتويج of His .... the King of Britain.
    a) Minister b) Majesty c) Superior d) Officer

2 Answer the following questions:

1. In your opinion, what is King Lear's mistake?

   ....

2. Do you think that Goneril and Regan were honest in their love to their father? Why?

   ....

3. What do you think of Burgundy's decision not to marry Cordelia?

   ....

4. In your opinion, why didn't Goneril and Regan try to defend their younger sister?

....

5. In your opinion, do you think that a person sometimes doesn't know what to say to express their love to their father? Why? (Longman)

....

6. "I cannot put my feelings into words. I love you as a daughter should love a father; but not more, and not less." Do you agree with Cordelia's opinion? Why? (Longman)

....

7. Do you agree that King Lear did a terrible thing when he gave his kingdom to Goneril and Regan only? Why? (Longman)

....

8. Was King Lear right to make Kent leave the kingdom in five days? Why? (Longman)

....

9. If you were Cordelia, would you flatter the King and say false words to win part of the kingdom? Why? (Longman)

....

10. From your point of view, do you think that Kent was a faithful friend of King Lear? Why? (Longman)

....

Act I | Scenes i - ii

Vocabulary — المفردات

adult (n)	شخص بالغ	handwriting (n)	خط اليد
anger (n)	غضب	hide (v)	يخفي
beat (v)	يتغلب	income (n)	إيراد/دخل
believe (v) (d)	يصدق	inheritance (n)	ميراث
bring (v)	يُحضر	loyalty (n)	انتماء/إخلاص
conversation (n)	محادثة	pocket (n)	جيب
dead (adj)	ميت	power (n)	قوة/سلطة
deceive (v) (d)	يخدع	receive (v) (d)	يتسلم
decision (n)	قرار	respect (v) (ed)	يحترم
deserve (v) (d)	يستحق	succeed (v) (ed)	ينجح
exit (v) (ed)	يخرج	test (v) (ed)	يختبر
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل	throw (v)	يرمي
fool (n)	احمق	trust (n)	ثقة
forgive (v)	يغفر/يسامح	truth (n)	حقيقة/صدق

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

feel better	يشعر بتحسن	ill health	صحة معتلة
have a plan	لديه خطة	My heart is broken.	قلبي محطم (تعبير عن شدة الحزن)
angry with	غاضب من	loyalty to	إخلاص لـ
cruel to	قاسٍ مع	send ... away	يرسل ... بعيدًا
lie about	يكذب بشأن	stay with	يقيم مع

Scene Text

Summary



[In King Lear's Palace]

(KING OF) FRANCE: Cordelia, it is time to leave your country now. Say goodbye to your sisters.

CORDELIA: Goneril and Regan, I am sad to leave you both. My heart is broken[1]. Be good to our father. If he still loved me, I'd take good care of him! Please look after him well.

GONERIL: Don't tell us what to do, Cordelia.

REGAN: Yes, go to your husband. You've failed to do what your father asked you to do. Now, you've got what you deserve[2].

CORDELIA: I don't know what you are planning, sisters, but remember: everyone discovers the truth[3] in the end. Goodbye!

(KING OF) FRANCE: Come with me, my dear Cordelia.

[The King of France and Cordelia leave.]

GONERIL: Sister Regan, we must talk. I think our father will leave here tonight.

REGAN: I'm sure he will, and he'll leave with you. Next month, he'll stay with my husband Cornwall and I.

GONERIL: Our father always loved Cordelia the most, and a poor decision has made him send her away[4].

REGAN: He is becoming a little mad in his old age.

GONERIL: Even when he was younger and healthy, he was a difficult man. So we must be prepared for what ill[5] health and old age will bring.

REGAN: He was angry when he sent Kent away today. He will probably be angry more often in the future.

GONERIL: Let's sit together and talk. If our father still has some power, his anger[6] will become a problem for us.

REGAN: You are right. Let's think about what we can do.

GONERIL: We must do something and quickly.

[At the Duke of Gloucester's Castle. Edmund enters with a letter.]

EDMUND: My father Gloucester says that his first son, Edgar, will get his land when he dies. But why should I not have my inheritance[7] just because I'm twelve or fourteen months younger than my brother? Is it just because I'm the second son? I'm just as strong and kind as my brother, and as clever too. Well, elder brother, Edgar,



(1) قلبي محطم
(2) تستحق
(3) الحقيقة
(4) يطردها
(5) هزيل
(6) غضب
(7) ميراث

I will have your land. Our father loves me, his younger son, as much as he loves you. And I have a letter here. If this letter succeeds[1], then Edmund the younger son will beat the older son Edgar!

[Gloucester enters.]

GLOUCESTER: Ah Edmund, my son! Have you heard? The King has sent Kent away! And the King of France has left with Cordelia! And the King has left the palace tonight without his powers! This has all happened so quickly!

[Gloucester notices Edmund hiding the letter.]

What are you doing Edmund?

EDMUND: Nothing, Father.

GLOUCESTER: Why are you trying to hide that letter? What's in it?

EDMUND: Nothing, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Then, why did you hide it in your pocket? Let me see it.

EDMUND: Please forgive me, Father. It is a letter from my brother Edgar that I haven't finished reading yet, but I don't think you should read it.

GLOUCESTER: Let me see that!

EDMUND: OK, but I hope he only wrote this to test me and my loyalty[2] to my family,

GLOUCESTER: *[Reads the letter.]*

When we respect older people too much, it makes it hard for the young to live well. Our parents keep our money from us until we are too old to enjoy it. Older people only have power because we give it to them. Come and see me, so that we can discuss this. If our father were dead, you could enjoy half his income[3], and be loved by your brother Edgar.'

Did my son Edgar write this letter? When did you receive this? Who brought it?

EDMUND: It wasn't brought to me, sir. I found it. It was thrown in through my bedroom window.

GLOUCESTER: Are you sure the writing is your brother's?

EDMUND: Yes, it is his handwriting, Father.

GLOUCESTER: Has he ever talked to you about this before?

EDMUND: No, never. But I've often heard him say that when a son becomes an adult, he should be given some of his father's income.

GLOUCESTER: Oh, what a cruel son! Go and find him, Edmund. Where is he?



(1) ينجح
(2) إخلاص
(3) دخل

EDMUND: I don't know, Father. Please, don't be angry with my brother. Let's find out what he meant, then you can decide what to do. I'm sure he wrote this to test my love and loyalty to you, and for nothing more dangerous than that.
GLOUCESTER: Do you really think so?
EDMUND: Yes. Listen, I have a plan. I'll hide you somewhere tonight. I'll discuss it with my brother and you can listen to our conversation. Then you'll know what he really thinks.
GLOUCESTER: My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much. Edmund, find Edgar and make him talk to you. I want to know the truth.
EDMUND: I'll go and find him immediately.
GLOUCESTER: Find him, Edmund, and be careful. (to himself) What is happening? I cannot believe that Kent has been sent away! He is an honest man. It is all too strange.
[Gloucester exits[1]. Edgar enters.]
EDMUND: Ah, Edgar. There you are. How are you? When did you last see our father?
EDGAR: I am well, Edmund. I saw our father last night.
EDMUND: And did you talk to him?
EDGAR: Yes, we spent two hours together.
EDMUND: Did you say anything unkind to him? He's very angry with you at the moment. Please don't go near him until he's less angry.
EDGAR: Really? Then somebody has lied[2] about me.
EDMUND: That's what I'm worried about. Stay with me for now. I'll take you to see our father when he feels better. Here's my key. Oh, and if you go out, take your sword.
EDGAR: My sword? But why?
EDMUND: That's the best advice I can give you. Please, go quickly!
[Edgar exits.]
EDMUND: My brother and father trust[3] me, which makes them easy to deceive[4]. I need these two fools to make my plan work. If I can't get some land in the correct way, I'll have to be clever to get it.
[Edmund exits.]



(1) يخرج (من المشهد)
(2) كذب
(3) يثقوا
(4) يخدع

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual Questions

1. What did Cordelia ask her sisters before leaving England?

ماذا طلبت كورديليا من أختيها قبل مغادرة إنجلترا؟

- She asked them to take care of their father.

2. How did Goneril and Regan treat their sister Cordelia?

كيف عاملت جونيريل وريجان أختهما كورديليا؟

- They treated her badly saying that she failed to do what her father asked her to do.

3. What did Goneril and Regan warn each other from?

من ماذا حذرت جونيريل وريجان بعضهن؟

- They warned each other that there was something wrong with their father's mind, and in the future, his anger would become a problem for them.

4. Why will Edgar get his father's inheritance and not Edmund? (WB)

لماذا سيحصل إدجار على ميراث والده وليس إدموند؟

- Because Edgar is older than Edmund.

5. What was Edmund planning to do?

ماذا كان إدموند يخطط؟

- To take his elder brother's place.

6. What did Edmund show his father?

ماذا أظهر إدموند لوالده؟

- A letter which he said had been written by Edgar.

7. What was written in the letter Edmund showed to his father?

ماذا كُتب فى الرسالة التى أرسلها إدموند إلى والده؟

- The letter asked Edmund to help Edgar get rid of their father.

8. How did Edmund try to look good when his father was angry with Edgar?

كيف حاول إدموند أن يبدو خيرًا عندما غضب أبوه من إدجار؟

- He tried to defend his brother saying that Edgar wrote the letter in order to test his love and loyalty to his father.

9. According to Edmund, how would they discover the truth about Edgar?

طبقًا لإدموند كيف سيكتشفون الحقيقة بخصوص إدجار؟

- He said that he would hide his father somewhere while he discussed the matter with his brother and their father would listen to their conversation.

10. What did Edmund tell his brother Edgar?

ماذا قال إدموند لأخيه إدجار؟

- He said that their father was angry with him.

11. What did he advise him to do?

ماذا نصحه أن يفعل؟

- He advised him to hide from their father.

12. In what ways are Goneril and Regan like Edmund? (WB)

كيف تشبه جونيريل وريجان إدموند؟

- They were so dishonest that they deceived their family to get riches.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions

13. Do you think Regan and Goneril were sad to say goodbye to Cordelia? Why?

هل تعتقد أن ريجان وجونيريل كانا حزينين لتوديع كورديليا؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. They both wanted to get the biggest part of their father's kingdom.

14. Do you think that King Lear was right to give everything to Goneril and Regan? Why? Why not? (SB)

هل تعتقد أن الملك لير كان على حق فى إعطاء كل شىء لجونريل وريجان؟ لماذا؟ ولم لا؟

- No, I don't think so. From the beginning, they expressed their ingratitude and greed for power.

15. If you were Edmund, would you be angry that your elder brother will get the land when your father dies? Why?

لو كنت مكان إدموند، هل كنت ستغضب من حصول أخيك الأكبر على الأرض بعد وفاة والدكما؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. If brothers have a good relationship, they can enjoy their father's inheritance together.

16. What do you think of Edmund's plan to trick his father and brother?

ما رأيك فى خطة إدموند لخداع والده وأخيه؟

- I think it is an evil plan to ruin the relationship between them in order to get what he wanted.

17. If you were Gloucester, would you easily believe Edmund's story? Why?

لو كنت مكان جلوستر، هل كنت ستصدق قصة إدموند بسهولة؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. I would give Edgar a chance to defend himself.

18. Why do you think Edmund asked Edgar to carry a sword when he goes out?

فى رأيك لماذا طلب إدموند من إدجار أن يحمل سيفًا عندما يخرج؟

- I think he wanted his father to be sure that Edgar wanted to get rid of him.

19. If you were Edgar, would you be deceived by Edmund? Why?

لو كنت مكان إدجار، هل سيخدعك إدموند؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. I would meet Gloucester and find out the truth and defend myself against any accusations he might have against me.

20. "If he still loved me, I'd take good care of him!" What does this show about Cordelia?

«إذا كان لا يزال يحبنى، كنت سأعتنى به جيدًا!» ماذا يظهر هذا عن كورديليا؟

- I think it shows that she is a good daughter who really loved her father. She wasn't angry with him despite his decision to send her away.

21. If our father still has some power, his anger will become a problem for us." Do you think that Goneril and Regan want to take care of Lear, or do they want something else? (WB)

إذا كان والدنا لا يزال لديه بعض السلطة، فإن غضبه سيصبح مشكلة بالنسبة لنا. هل تعتقد أن جونيريل وريجان يريدان الاعتناء بلير، أم أنهما يريدان شيئًا آخر؟

- No, they don't want to take care of him. They worry that he will be a problem because he is angry and a little mad. They want his power.

22. "My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much." How do you think Gloucester felt when he said this?

«لا يمكن لابنى أن يكون بهذه القسوة مع أب يحبه كثيرًا.» برأيك، كيف شعر جلوستر عندما قال هذا؟

- I think he felt sad that Edgar wanted to get rid of him. He also doubted that Edgar would do such a thing.

23. "I need these two fools to make my plan work." What does this show about Edmund?

«أحتاج إلى هذين الأحمقين لإنجاح خطتى.» ماذا يظهر هذا عن إدموند؟

- It shows that he is an evil man who is ready to do anything to get what he wants. He is so ungrateful that he calls his own father a 'fool'.

(C) Longman Exercises & Previous Exams

24. If you were Cordelia, would you refuse to marry the King of France to continue living with your sisters? Why?

لو كنت مكان كورديليا هل كنت سترفض الزواج من ملك فرنسا لتستمر فى العيش مع أخواتك؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. Goneril and Regan don't seem to love her or care for her future.

25. If you were Gloucester, would you be deceived by Edmund's plot against his brother? Why?

لو كنت مكان جلوستر، فهل كنت سُتخدع بمؤامرة إدموند ضد أخيه؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. I would at least try to make sure of Edmund's accusations against Edgar.

26. Should a son be given his father's income when he becomes an adult? Why?

هل يجب أن يعطى الابن من دخل أبيه عندما يبلغ؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think that a father should give his son the chance to enjoy the income he would inherit later on.

27. Why do you think Edmund could deceive Gloucester and his son, Edger, so easily?

فى رأيك لماذا كان إدموند يستطيع خداع جلوستر وابنه إدجار بهذه السهولة؟

- Maybe, they are so innocent. Maybe, they trusted his brother and didn't doubt that he could think of deceiving him.

28. Do you think that inheritance deserves 'much conflict'? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الميراث يستحق "الكثير من الصراع"؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't. I think family is more important than inheritance even if it is worth a fortune.



Practice more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr Ahmed did not buy his house. It was a/an .... from his parents. (WB)
   a) invention b) robbery
   c) inheritance d) deceit
2. My younger brother always tells the .... He never lies. (WB)
   a) truth b) trust c) anger d) infection
3. The man in the market says that all his watches are new, but I don't .... him. I think they are all quite old. (WB)
   a) deny b) trust c) doubt d) punish
4. This email asking for money says it is from the bank, but I think it is trying to .... us. (WB)
   a) deceive b) deserve c) award d) forgive
5. You can go into the building one way and .... through a different door. (WB)
   a) stay b) break c) deceive d) exit
6. When someone .... your heart, they hurt your feelings and make you unhappy.
   a) breaks b) keeps c) sends d) loves
7. He was admired for his loyalty to his colleagues. "Loyalty" is similar in meaning to "....................". (Longman)
   a) envy b) popularity
   c) faithfulness d) hatred
8. Our team was very bad. We didn't .... to win the match. (Longman)
   a) conserve b) reverse c) observe d) deserve
9. My friend has never .... to me before, so I have no reason to doubt his word.
   a) trusted b) laid c) lied d) faced
10. In a fit of anger, King Lear sent Cordelia .... because she couldn't express her love to him.
    a) away b) in c) of d) out

2 Answer the following questions:

1. What do you think of Goneril and Regan's treatment for their sister?

....

2. In your opinion, was Gloucester right to give all his inheritance to Edgar only? Why?

....

3. If you were Edgar, would you trust Edmund so easily? Why?

....

4. If you were Gloucester, would you believe that Edmund wanted to defend his brother Edgar? Why?

....

5. If you were Cordelia, would you be loyal to the King after he had deprived you of everything? Why?

....

6. Regan said, "Yes, go to your husband. You've failed to do what your father asked you to do." Do you think that Cordelia really failed? Why? (Longman)

....

7. Goneril said, "Let's sit together and talk. If our father still has some power, his anger will become a problem for us." If you were in the place of Goneril and Regan, would you plot against your father, the King? Why? (Longman)

....

8. "Our parents keep our money from us until we are too old to enjoy it." Do you agree with Gloucester's opinion? Why? (Longman)

....

9. Do you agree that Edmund, Goneril and Regan had the same evil thoughts? Why? (Longman)

....

10. In what way did Cordelia get what she deserved? (Longman)

....

Act I Scenes iii - iv

Vocabulary المفردات

attack (v) (ed)	يهاجم	immediately (adv)	فورًا/في الحال
attendant (n)	مضيف/خادم	lady (n)	سيدة
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف	mad (adj)	غاضب/مجنون
cart (n)	عربة الخيل	notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ
disguise (v) (d)	يتنكر	palace (n)	قصر
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	pull (v) (ed)	يسحب/يشد
follow (v) (ed)	يتبع	rude (adj)	وقح
fool (n)	مهرج	servant (n)	خادم
guilty (adj)	مذنب	soldier (n)	جندي
hit (v)	يضرب	taste (n)	مذاق
hold (v)	يعلق/يمسك	wise (adj)	حكيم/عاقل

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

have a taste of her own medicine تجنى نتيجة عملها	have the power يمتلك القوة والسلطة
make problems يسبب المشكلات	the cart is pulling the horse العربة تجر الحصان (تعبير عن انقلاب الأوضاع)

Scene Text

Summary



[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with her servant Oswald.]

GONERIL: Did my father, King Lear, hit my servant[1]?

OSWALO: Yes, madam.

GONERIL: I must do something. His soldiers are starting to behave[2] badly, and my father gets angry about everything. When he comes here, I won't speak to him. I'll tell him that I am ill.

OSWALD: He's coming, madam; I can hear him.

GONERIL: Tell the other servants not to do what he asks them. If he's unhappy, he can stay with my sister. The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!

OSWALD: Yes, madam.

GONERIL: I'll write to my sister immediately and tell her my plans.

[She exits.]

[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Kent enters in different clothes.]

KENT: I've disguised[3] myself in different clothes, and I have changed how I usually speak, so I can help the man who told me to leave. I still love the King and I'll continue to work hard for him, but he won't know me.

[King Lear enters with soldiers and servants.]

KING LEAR: Get my dinner ready.

[A servant exits.]

[To Kent] Who are you?

KENT: I am a poor but honest man.

KING LEAR: What do you want?

KENT: I want to help you, sir.

KING LEAR: Do you know me?

KENT: No, sir; but I want to help you because I can see that you are an important man.

KING LEAR: What can you do?

KENT: I can give good and honest advice.

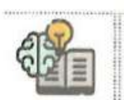
KING LEAR: Then follow me. You can be my servant.

[Oswald enters.]

You, where's my daughter?

OSWALD: I'm sorry, sir ...

[He exits.]



(1) خادم
(2) يتصرف
(3) تنكرت

KING LEAR: What did the man say? Call him back.
SOLDIER: He said that your daughter wasn't well.
KING LEAR: Why didn't he come back when I called him?
SOLDIER: Your Majesty, he was very rude[1]. I don't know what the problem is, but the servants, the Duke and your daughter are all being very unkind to you.
KING LEAR: I've noticed that, too. But where's my Fool? I haven't seen him for two days.
SOLDIER: He has been very unhappy since Cordelia went to France.
KING LEAR: Don't say her name to me! Go and tell Goneril that I want to speak to her.
[The soldier exits. Oswald and the Fool enter.]
Oh, you, come here! Who am I?
OSWALD: My lady's father.
KING LEAR: My lady's father? How rude!
[King Lear hits him.]
OSWALD: Don't hit me, my lord.
KENT: *[Hitting him]* Don't be rude to the King or I'll hit you, too!
KING LEAR: Thank you. You are a good man.
[Goneril enters.]
KING LEAR: What's the matter, Goneril? Why are you holding your head?
FOOL: You should worry, old King, because you gave everything away, rather than worrying about her head. One day, you will want everything back.
GONERIL: Father, are you encouraging[2] your men to behave badly? Your Fool says and does what he wants.
FOOL: Even a fool knows when the cart[3] is pulling the horse.
KING LEAR: Does anyone here know who I am? Tell me!
GONERIL: You're old and you should be wise[4]. But you're keeping a hundred soldiers here; they are noisy and rude. Please don't have so many soldiers, and only keep the men who can behave well.
KING LEAR: *[Angry]* What did you say? Call my soldiers. You won't have any more trouble from me, because now I have only one daughter left.
[Albany enters and he is very surprised.]
[To the soldiers] Prepare my horses.
ALBANY: Please, sir, wait.



(1) وقح
(2) تشجع
(3) عربة
(4) حكيم

KING LEAR: *[To himself]* Oh, why was I angry with Cordelia? She was not as rude to me as Goneril. Why was I so foolish?

ALBANY: Your Majesty, I don't know what's made you angry, but I'm not guilty[1].

KING LEAR: That might be true, but listen. If Goneril has a child one day, and the child is cruel to her, she will understand how I feel. Then she will have a taste of her own medicine[2].

[King Lear exits.]

ALBANY: What has happened, Goneril?

GONERIL: Nothing. Let him shout. He is a mad old man.

[King Lear enters again.]

KING LEAR: Goneril, you have told fifty of my soldiers to go!

ALBANY: What is the matter, sir?

KING LEAR: I'll tell you. *[To Goneril]* I cannot believe that you have the power to make me so unhappy. But you have. I still have one daughter left, and I am sure she will be kind to me when she hears what you have done. She will not be happy with you!

[King Lear exits with Kent and Attendants[3].]

GONERIL: Did you hear that, my husband?

ALBANY: You know how much I love you, Goneril, but ...

GONERIL: Do not say more.

[To the Fool] You, go.

[The Fool exits.]

GONERIL: Is it a good idea to let him keep a hundred soldiers to help him in his old age? They might attack[4] us.

ALBANY: I think you are worrying too much.

GONERIL: It's better to worry and be safe. I've written to my sister Regan and told her everything. I'm not angry with you because you asked me to be kinder to my father, but you are being foolish.

ALBANY: Maybe you know more than I do, Goneril, but I think you are making problems rather than solving them.

[They exit.]



(1) مذنب
(2) تتجرع من نفس الكأس
(3) الخدم/الحاشية
(4) يهاجمونا

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual Questions

1. According to Oswald, what mistake did King Lear make?

وفقًا لأوزوالد، ما الخطأ الذى ارتكبه الملك لير؟

- He hit a servant at Goneril's palace.

2. How does Goneril ask her servant to treat King Lear?

كيف طلبت جونيريل من خادمها أن يعامل الملك لير؟

- Goneril told her servants to be rude to him. She asks Oswald to keep Lear waiting when he needs something.

3. How did Kent prove that he is a good friend to the King?

كيف أثبت كينت أنه صديق جيد للملك؟

- He disguised himself as a poor man and went back to serve the King.

4. What did the soldier tell the King when he asked about his Fool?

ماذا قال الجندى للملك عندما سأله عن المهرج؟

- He told him that he had been unhappy since Cordelia went to France.

5. What was Oswald's answer when the King asked who he was?

ماذا كان جواب أوزوالد عندما سأله الملك من هو؟

- He said that he was his lady's father.

6. Why did Kent hit Goneril's servant?

لماذا ضرب كينت خادم جونيريل؟

- Because he spoke impolitely to King Lear.

7. What did Goneril blame her father for?

ما الذى ألقت به جونيريل باللوم على والدها؟

- She blamed him of encouraging his men to behave badly.

8. What request did Goneril make?

ما هو الطلب الذى قدمته جونيريل؟

- She asked him not to have so many soldiers and only keep the men who can behave well.

9. What did King Lear decide when Goneril made him angry?

ماذا قرر الملك لير عندما أغضبه جونيريل؟

- He decided to leave Goneril's palace.

10. What was Goneril's husband's reaction to this decision?

ماذا كان رد فعل زوج جونيريل على هذا القرار؟

- He didn't agree and tried to stop the King.

11. What did Goneril say about her father in front of her husband?

ماذا قالت جونيريل عن والدها أمام زوجها؟

- She said that he was a mad old man.

12. Why did Goneril write to her sister?

لماذا كتبت جونيريل لأختها؟

- She wrote to her to tell her about everything that happened with her father.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions

13. Goneril got bored with her father's behaviour so easily. Do you agree with her? Why?

شعرت جونيريل بالملل من تصرفات والدها بسهولة. هل تتفق معها؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't agree with her. She should be kind to her father even if he does something wrong when he becomes angry.

14. If you were Kent, would you be in disguise in order to help the King? Why?

لو كنت مكان كينت، هل ستتنكر لمساعدة الملك؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. King Lear acted so foolishly and he deserves to suffer the results of his foolish decisions.

15. Do you think that Albany is happy with his wife Goneril's behaviour? Why? (SB)

هل تعتقد أن ألبانى سعيد بتصرفات زوجته جونيريل؟

- No, I don't think so. He tried to calm the King and prevent his wife's bad treatment.

16. If you were Albany, would you try to prevent Goneril from treating her father so badly? Why?

لو كنت مكان ألبانى، هل ستحاول منع جونيريل من معاملة والدها بهذه الدرجة من السوء؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would certainly do this. He is the King who has given them everything and deserves to be treated with respect.

17. Do you agree with Kent when he hit Oswald? Why?

هل تتفق مع كينت عندما ضرب أوزوالد؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree with him. He is a servant and he shouldn't be rude to the King.

18. If you were King Lear, would you get angry and leave Goneril's palace? Why?

لو كنت مكان الملك لير، هل ستغضب وتترك قصر جونيريل؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. I would punish Goneril and use the soldiers to help me.

19. Do you think that Goneril has a good reason to worry about the soldiers who are with the King? Why?

هل تعتقد أن لدى جونيريل سببًا وجيهًا للقلق بشأن الجنود الموجودين مع الملك؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. The soldiers are in the service of the King and haven't made her any trouble so far.

20. "The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!" What does this tell us about how Goneril sees her father? (SB)

"لا يزال الرجل العجوز الأحمق يريد الحصول على السلطة التى منحها! ماذا يخبرنا هذا عن كيفية رؤية جونيريل لوالدها؟

- It shows that she is ungrateful to her father who has given her half of his kingdom.

21. "Even a fool knows when the cart is pulling the horse." What do you think the fool means by this sentence?

«حتى الأحمق يعرف متى تجر العربة الحصان.» برأيك ماذا يقصد الأحمق بهذه الجملة؟

- I think he wants to make the King understand that Goneril is now in charge and she demands that the King should obey her.

22. "It's better to worry and be safe." Why does Goneril say this to Albany? (SB)

«من الأفضل أن تقلق وأن تكون آمنًا.» لماذا تقول جونيريل هذا لألبانى؟

- She wants to tell him that she wants to avoid any problems that the King's soldiers might cause.

23. "Nothing. Let him shout. He is a mad old man." What does this show about Goneril?

«لا شىء. دعه يصرخ. إنه رجل عجوز مجنون.» ماذا يظهر هذا عن جونيريل؟

- It shows that she completely lost respect for her father. She is so rude and ungrateful that she calls her father mad.

(C) Longman Exercises & Previous Exams

24. If you were in Kent's place, would you help the King despite his bad treatment? Why?

لو كنت مكان كينت، هل ستساعد الملك رغم معاملته السيئة؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. A faithful friend should help his King in time of need.

25. "Even a fool knows when the cart is pulling the horse." What do you think Fool meant by "when the cart is pulling the horse"?

«حتى الأحمق يعرف متى تجر العربة الحصان.» فى رأيك، ماذا كان يقصد الأحمق بقوله «عندما تجر العربة الحصان»؟

- I think he wants to say that because of the King's foolish decision, his daughter became stronger than him and gave him orders.

26. Do you agree that everyone should have "a taste of their own medicine"? Why?

هل توافق على أنه يجب على الجميع أن "يذوقوا دواءهم (نتيجة أفعالهم)"؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree. Everyone should face the result of his actions whether good or bad.

27. "I'm not angry with you because you asked me to be kinder to your father, but you are being foolish." If you were in Albany's place, would you support the King or your wife, Goneril? Why?

«أنا لست غاضبة منك لأنك طلبت منى أن أكون أكثر لطفًا مع والدك، لكنك تتصرف بحماقة.» لو كنت مكان ألبانى هل ستدعم الملك أو زوجتك جونيريل؟ لماذا؟

- I would support the King. He is the one who gave him power and riches. A good citizen should also be loyal to his King.

28. If you were King Lear, would you feel sorry for giving Cordelia bad treatment after Goneril's bad behaviour with you? Why?

لو كنت مكان الملك لير، فهل ستشعر بالأسف على معاملة كورديليا السيئة بعد سلوك جونيريل السيئ معك؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. King Lear must have realised his mistake and known that only Cordelia really loved him.

29. "If Goneril has a child, she will have a taste of her own medicine." What does King Lear mean by this expression? (القاهرة - إدارة المعصرة)

"إذا أنجبت جونيريل طفلًا، فسوف تتذوق دواءها الخاص" ماذا يعنى الملك لير بهذا التعبير؟

- I think he means that Goneril's children, if she has any, will be ungrateful and rude to her as she has been with him.

30. Why do you think Lear was angry when Oswald called him my lady's father? (البحيرة - إدارة البحيرة)

فى رأيك لماذا كان لير غاضبًا عندما وصفه أوزوالد بوالد سيدتى؟

- I think he was angry because he wanted to always be called King. This is also a sign of disrespect.

31. Do you agree Kent gave a good example of honesty and faithfulness? How? (القليوبية - إدارة بنها)

.هل توافق على أن كينت أعطى مثالاً جيدًا للصدق والإخلاص؟ كيف؟

- Although the King had been angry and violent with him, he insisted on being beside the King to serve and protect him.

Practice ...

Act I, Scenes iii - iv Exercises



Practice more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He rarely makes mistakes. He is very .... and careful. (WB)
   a) arrogant b) rash c) foolish d) wise
2. We all respect him because he .... politely. (WB)
   a) fights b) shouts c) behaves d) regrets
3. Don't be ...., or you'll be punished. (WB)
   a) rude b) honest c) wise d) respectful
4. We have a very honest .... who never steals anything from the house. (WB)
   a) boss b) servant c) manager d) relative
5. The criminal tried to .... himself, so the police wouldn't recognise him. (WB)
   a) improvise b) revise c) disguise d) reinvent
6. If you did something bad, then you are .... of doing it. (WB)
   a) guilty b) free c) innocent d) criminal
7. A/An .... is someone whose job is to travel or live with an important person and help him or her.
   a) guide b) ambassador c) attendant d) crown
8. The criminal .... the old man with a broken bottle, but he was arrested.
   a) attached b) attacked c) attracted d) intended
9. Children have to .... their parents' hand when they cross the road.
   a) detest b) hold c) leave d) tie
10. The first thing I .... about the hotel room was the efficient air conditioner.
    a) told b) hated c) noticed d) delayed

2 Answer the following questions:

1. What do you think of Kent's behaviour with the King?

   ....

2. If you were King Lear, would you be easily deceived by Kent's disguise? Why?

   ....

3. "Oh, why was I angry with Cordelia? She was not as rude to me as Goneril. Why was I so foolish?" What does this tell us about the King?

   ....

4. In your opinion, should the King use his soldiers against Goneril and her husband? Why?

....

5. "You should worry, old King, because you gave everything away, rather than worrying about her head." Do you agree with the Fool when he said this? Why?

....

6. Goneril said, "The foolish man still wants to have the power that he's given away!" Do you think that the King deserves to be treated that way? Why? (Longman)

....

7. "Is it a good idea to let him keep a hundred soldiers to help him in his old age? They might attack us." Do you think that those soldiers could be more loyal to the King than his daughters? Why? (Longman)

....

8. Do you think that King Lear deserved the bad treatment of his daughters, Regan and Goneril? Why? (Longman)

....

9. "A friend in need is a friend indeed." Do you agree to this proverb? Why? (Longman)

....

10. "It's better to worry and be safe." Do you agree with Goneril's opinion? Why? (Longman)

....

Act II Scene i - ii

Vocabulary المفردات

arrest (v) (ed)	يقبض على	inherit (v) (ed)	يرث
back (n)	ظهر	injured (adj)	مصاب / مجروح
beggar (n)	متسول / شحاذ	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
blood (n)	دم	plot (v) (ted)	يتآمر
call out (v) (ed)	يصرخ	port (n)	ميناء
disbelief (n)	جحود / عدم ثقة	pretend (v) (ed)	يتظاهر
duty (n)	واجب	profit (v) (ed)	يربح / يستفيد
faithful (adj)	مخلص	reward (v) (ed)	يكافئ
follow (v) (ed)	يتبع	stab (n)	طعنة
get (to) (v)	يصل	stocks (n)	عمود خشبى فى التعذيب
guard (n) (v) (ed)	حارس / يحرس	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a stab in the back	طعنة فى الخلف (الظهر)	change one's mind	يغير رأيه
(be) in a fight	يكون فى قتال	feel angry	يشعر بالغضب
faithful to ...	مخلص لـ ...	pick up	يلتقط
go back	يرجع / يعود	plot against	يتآمر ضد

Scene Text

Summary



[In the Castle of the Duke of Gloucester. Edmund enters.]

EDMUND: *[To himself]* So, I hear that the Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. That's good! It will help my plan a lot. My father has a guard[1] ready to arrest my brother. But there's one more thing I should do first. Here's Edgar.

[Edgar enters]

Brother, can we talk? Our father's coming here soon, so you must go! He knows you are hiding here. But first, we must pretend[2] to fight. Pick up your sword. Quickly, before our father gets here[3]. Now run from here, brother.

[Calls out.][4] Help me!

[To his brother again] Goodbye, Edgar.

[Edgar exits.]

[To himself] If there's some blood on me, people will think I've been in a fight.

[He cuts his arm]

Father, father! Stop him, stop him! Help!

[Gloucester enters with servants.]

EDMUND: Look, at my arm, father, I'm injured.

GLOUCESTER: What happened? Where's Edgar?

EDMUND: He ran that way when I refused his plan.

GLOUCESTER: You there, follow[5] him!

[Some servants exit.]

What plan, Edmund?

EDMUND: His plan is to kill you, father. I told him that I loved you. Finally, when he understood that I didn't want to help with his terrible plan, he cut my arm with his sword. Then he saw that I was ready to fight him, and he quickly ran away.

GLOUCESTER: He'll not run very far. If he stays in this country, we'll soon find him. Then we'll arrest him. The Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. I will tell him that there's a reward[6] for any man who finds Edgar. And anyone who hides him will be arrested, too.

EDMUND: Father, I tried to persuade[7] Edgar to stop his plan, but he wanted to continue with it. I told him that I would tell you all about it.

"Do you think anyone will believe you?" Edgar said. "No. I'll say that it was all your idea. They know that you will profit[8] most if father dies, not me.'



(1) حارس (2) تتظاهر (3) يصل هنا (4) يصرخ (5) اتبع (6) مكافأة (7) يقنع (8) يفيد

GLOUCESTER: This is terrible! It is a stab in the back[1]. I'll stop people from leaving England's ports; Edgar won't leave the country. Thank you, my loving son Edmund. Now I will do everything to help you. You will inherit all my land.

[The Duke of Cornwall enters with his wife Regan and servants.]

CORNWALL: Gloucester, how are you, my friend?
Since I've arrived here, I've heard some strange news.

REGAN: If it is true, it is terrible news!

GLOUCESTER: Oh Regan, my heart is broken!

REGAN: Did your son really try to kill you? Your son Edgar?

GLOUCESTER: Yes, it's true! I wish it were different.

REGAN: I know Edgar spent time with my father's soldiers.

EDMUND: That's correct, madam, he spent some time with them.

REGAN: Then the soldiers have given him the idea of plotting against[2] his father, trying to kill him, so that he can use his father's money. I've just had a message from my sister Goneril about the soldiers. She has warned me to be careful of them. If they come to my house, I won't be there.

CORNWAll: Edmund, I hear that you've been a good son to your father.

EDMUND: It was my duty, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Edmund told me of Edgar's plan, and he got this cut on his arm when he tried to stop him.

CORNWAll: Is anyone following Edgar?

GLOUCESTER: Yes, I've sent some guards.

CORNWALL: The guards must arrest him. Edmund, I'd like you to work for me.
I need men like you that I can trust.

EDMUND: I'd be happy to help you, sir.

GLOUCESTER: I thank you, Cornwall.

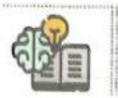
[They exit.]

[In the countryside. Edgar enters.]

EDGAR: I've heard people say that I'm guilty! But I was not caught, because I hid in this old tree. It's not safe for me to go to any port now. Guards are looking for me. So I must disguise myself as a beggar[3]. I will change my clothes and make my face and hair look dirty.

[He changes his clothes.] I'll wear these clothes of a poor man, and live outside under the rain. Nobody will see Edgar any more. From now, I'll call myself Poor Tom.

[Edgar exits.]



(1) طعنة في الظهر
(2) يتآمر ضد
(3) متسول

[Enter, Lear, Fool and Knight. Kent is in the stocks.]

KENT: Good morning, my lord.

KING LEAR: [Looks in disbelief[1] at Kent in the stocks.] What has happened? Who did this to you?

KENT: It was your daughter Regan and her husband Cornwall, sir.

KING LEAR: But you are working for the King! They should not do this to you! This is terrible.

Where's my daughter?

[King Lear exits.]

KENT: Fool, why has the King got so few soldiers now?

FOOL: He has no money, so he has fewer people to help him. But I'll be faithful[2] to him; the Fool will always stay and let the wise men run away.

[King Lear and Gloucester enter together.]

KING LEAR: Why don't they want to speak to me? You say they are sick? They are tired? That's no answer.

GLOUCESTER: I'm sorry your majesty, but you know that the Duke of Cornwall easily feels angry. He won't change his mind[3].

KING LEAR: What? He's angry! Well, I'm angry, too!

[He sees Kent in the stocks again.]

Why is he sitting in the stocks? Go and tell the Duke of Cornwall and his wife that I want to speak to them, now!

[Gloucester exits.]

KING LEAR: Oh, my heart, my unhappy heart!

[Cornwall, Regan, Gloucester and Servants enter]

REGAN: Father, I'm pleased to see you.

KING LEAR: My dear daughter Regan, your sister is nothing to me. Oh Regan, she's been so cruel to me! You won't believe how badly she has behaved.

REGAN: I don't think my sister could be unkind to you. If she has stopped your badly behaved soldiers, she has only done it to help you.

KING LEAR: I'm very angry with her!

REGAN: Father, please go back to my sister's house; you're the one who is wrong, not my good sister Goneril.

(1) تشكيك/ذهول
(2) صادق/مخلص
(3) يغير رأيه



Questions & Answers

(A) Factual Questions

1. Why did Edmund tell Edgar to run away?

لماذا طلب إدموند من إدجار أن يهرب؟

- According to Edmund, because someone had told their father where he was hiding and that he would be killed. In fact, Edmund wanted Edgar to leave to take his place.

2. Why did Edmund cut his own arm? (SB)

لماذا جرح إدموند ذراعه؟

- He wanted his father to believe that Edgar had tried to kill him.

3. What does Edmund say Edgar's plan is? (SB)

ماذا يقول إدموند عن خطة إدجار؟

- He says that his plan is to kill his father so that he can use his father's money.

4. Who does Regan think gave Edgar the idea?

من الذى تعتقد ريجان أنه أعطى إدجار الفكرة؟

- She thinks that the terrible influence of the King's soldiers as he used to spend time with them.

5. What is Edmund's evil complete plan?

ما هى خطة إدموند الشريرة الكاملة؟

- He planned to make his father and his brother hate each other. Then he would make Edgar leave. Finally, he wanted to make his father give him what he wanted to give Edgar.

6. What reward did Edmund have as a result of his plan?

ما هى المكافأة التى حصل عليها إدموند نتيجة لخطته؟

- Gloucester promised that Edmund would inherit all the land. Besides, Cornwall offered Edmund to work for him.

7. What did Goneril say in her letter to Regan?

ماذا قالت جونيريل فى رسالتها إلى ريجان؟

- She warned her against King Lear's soldiers.

8. Why did Edgar pretend to be a mad homeless person?

لماذا تظاهر إدجار بأنه شخص مشرد مجنون؟

- To hide from his father.

9. What did Edgar decide to call himself?

ماذا قرر إدجار أن يطلق على نفسه؟

- He decided to call himself Poor Tom.

10. Why was King Lear surprised when he arrived at Gloucester's castle?

لماذا تفاجأ الملك لير عندما وصل إلى قلعة جلوستر؟

- He was surprised to see his servant, the disguised Kent, in the stocks.

11. What was Regan's opinion when King Lear complained of Goneril's bad treatment of him?

ماذا كان رأى ريجان عندما اشتكى الملك لير من سوء معاملة جونيريل له ؟

- She thought that Goneril wasn't wrong and that she only wanted to help him.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions

12. In your opinion, why did Edmund say that Cornwall's visit to Gloucester's castle would help his plan?

فى رأيك، لماذا قال إدموند إن زيارة كورنوال لقلعة جلوستر ستساعد فى خطته ؟

- I think it will give him a chance to have Cornwall's trust and it may also lead to Edgar's punishment.

13. Why do you think Edmund asked Edgar to pretend that they were fighting?

لماذا تعتقد أن إدموند طلب من إدجار أن يتظاهر بأنهما يتقاتلان؟

- I think he wanted to prove that Edgar had bad intentions and that Edmund fought him to protect his father.

14. Why do you think Edgar obeyed Edmund completely?

لماذا تعتقد أن إدجار أطاع إدموند بالكامل؟

- I think that he trusted his brother completely and didn't suspect that he was plotting against him.

15. Cornwall asked Edmund to work for him, as he is a man to trust. Do you agree with him? Why?

طلب كورنوال من إدموند العمل معه لأنه رجل يستحق الثقة. هل توافقه ؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't agree with him. You shouldn't trust a man who revealed his brother's secret even if it wasn't good.

16. In your opinion, is Edgar right to disguise himself as a poor man? Why?

فى رأيك، هل إدجار محق فى التنكر بزى رجل فقير؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think he is. He wouldn't be easily found if he did so.

17. Did Cornwall do the right thing when he put Kent into the stocks? Why?

هل فعل كورنوال الشىء الصحيح عندما وضع كينت فى آلة التعذيب؟ لماذا؟

- No, he didn't. It is a very cruel way of punishing people. Besides, Kent is supposed to be working with the King.

18. What do you think of the way Regan met her father?

ما رأيك فى الطريقة التى التقت بها ريجان بوالدها؟

- I think it was a cold welcome which meant that she also turned her back on her father.

19. "I know Edgar spent time with my father's soldiers." Why do you think Regan said this?

«أعلم أن إدجار قضى بعض الوقت مع جنود والدى.» لماذا تعتقد أن ريجان قال هذا؟

- I think that she wanted to use this incident to prove that the King's soldiers are violent and criminals.

20. "But I'll be faithful to him; the Fool will always stay and let the wise men run away."
What does the Fool mean by this?

لكننى سأكون مخلصًا له؛ سيبقى الأحمق دائمًا ويهرب الحكماء. ماذا يعنى الأحمق بهذا؟

- I think he means that the King is in a dangerous situation that most people would leave him. Only the unwise are ready to face the consequences.

(C) Longman Exercises & Previous Exams

21. Most people think that money can lead to a lot of crimes. Do you agree to this opinion? Why?

يعتقد معظم الناس أن المال يمكن أن يؤدى إلى الكثير من الجرائم. هل توافق على هذا الرأى؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree. Because of money, Edmund plotted against his own brother and deceived his father.

22. Gloucester, "This is terrible! It is a stab in the back." Do you think that that stab was in the back of Gloucester or his son, Edgar? Why?

جلوستر: «هذا فظيع! إنها طعنة فى الظهر.» هل تعتقد أن تلك الطعنة كانت فى ظهر جلوستر أو ابنه إدجار؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think so. Edmund betrayed his own brother and his own father to get his brother's place.

23. Regan, "If she has stopped your badly behaved soldiers, she has only done it to help you." Do you agree with Regan's opinion? Why?

ريجان: «إذا أوقفت جنودك الذين يتصرفون بشكل سيئ، فهى فعلت ذلك فقط لمساعدتك.» هل تتفق مع رأى ريجان؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't agree. Goneril was ungrateful and disloyal to her father who gave her half of his kingdom.

24. If you were Edger, would you escape or try to prove that you were a victim? Why?

لو كنت مكان إدجار، هل ستهرب أم ستحاول إثبات أنك ضحية؟ لماذا؟

- I would try to confront my father to prove that I hadn't done anything wrong.

25. What might have happened if someone had seen Edmund cut himself?

ماذا كان سيحدث لو رأى شخص ما إدموند وهو يجرح نفسه؟

- I think this would have spoiled his plan and proved that he was a liar.

26. Edgar was a victim of his brother's plan. Explain (القاهرة - إدارة الزاوية الحمراء)

كان إدجار ضحية لخطة أخيه. اشرح.

- As he was innocent and believed his brother, his father was angry with him. He had to disguise himself as a mad, poor man living with the poor.

27. King Lear said, "Well I'm angry too." in Act II Scene II. Do you think he is right to feel angry? (الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية)

قال الملك لير "حسنًا، أنا غاضب أيضًا" فى المشهد الثانى من الفصل الثانى؟ هل تعتقد أنه على حق فى أن يشعر بالغضب؟

- Yes, I think so. He should feel angry because he was treated badly and his messenger was put in the stocks.

28. What do you think of the Fool? (سوهاج - إدارة البلينا)

ما رأيك فى المهرج؟

- I think he is a good man who remained loyal to the King. He is also a wise man who always gave advice through his funny remarks.

Practice ...

Act II, Scene i - ii Exercises



Practice more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All the ships had to remain in their .... due to the bad weather. (WB)
   a) platforms b) ports c) pavements d) routes
2. There was a .... at every door in the castle to help protect the king. (WB)
   a) guard b) racer c) cleaner d) clerk
3. My mother usually gives money to any .... she sees on the street. (WB)
   a) soldier b) secretary c) beggar d) officer
4. During the difficult times, the soldiers remained .... to the king. (WB)
   a) hopeless b) resentful c) hateful d) faithful
5. Everyone looked at him in .... when my brother said he wanted to climb the mountain. (WB)
   a) contentment b) disbelief c) anger d) resentment
6. This film didn't .... to me; I didn't enjoy it. (Longman)
   a) suit b) appeal c) prefer d) admire
7. Many companies will ....much from the rise in car prices.
   a) lose b) profit c) miss d) appear
8. A spy is someone who .... against his country and gives secrets to its enemy.
   a) innovates b) suspects c) plays d) plots
9. After his father's death, he .... a large house and a large sum of money.
   a) hated b) fainted c) credited d) inherited
10. Thieves were punished in the past by being put in the ....
    a) stuck b) stocks c) sticks d) stake

2 Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think that Edmund would be a faithful assistant for Cornwall? Why?

   ....

2. Why do you think Regan declared that her father's soldiers gave Edgar a motif to kill his father?

   ....

3. Why do you think Edgar didn't try to escape out of the country?

   ....

4. In your opinion, why did Kent ask the Fool about the reason why the King had so few soldiers?

....

5. Do you think that Regan would be different from Goneril with her father? Why?

....

6. Do you think that Edgar was naive enough to fall prey to his wicked brother, Edmund? Why? (Longman)

....

7. Should Gloucester have made sure that Edmund wasn't a liar? Why? (Longman)

....

8. Do you think it was a good decision for Edgar to disguise himself as a beggar? Why? (Longman)

....

9. Should King Lear have reconsidered his situation with Cordelia after Goneril and Regan's bad treatment? Why? (Longman)

....

10. "Father, please go back to my sister's house; you're the one who is wrong, not my good sister, Goneril," said Regan. Do you think Regan was right? Why? (Longman)

....

Act II Scene iii | Act III Scene i

Vocabulary — المفردات

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
apologise (v) (d)	يعتذر	patience (n)	صبر
bear (n)	دب	ring (n)	خاتم
blow (v)	تهب (الرياح)	room (n)	مكان/حيز
cave (n)	كهف	shelter (n) (v) (ed)	مأوى/يحمى/يقى
choice (n)	اختيار	spy (n) (v) (~~y~~ied)	جاسوس/يتجسس
disagreement (n)	خلاف	wet (adj)	مبلل/مطير
double (v) (d) (n)	يضاعف/ضعف	wind (n)	رياح
joke (n)	نكتة/فكاهة		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions — التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
at the right time	فى الوقت المناسب	go mad	يصاب بالجنون
lock somebody out	يحظر/يمنع من الدخول	turn someone's back on	يتجاهل/يتنكر لـ
for all time	للأبد	keep you warm	يبقيك دافئًا
set eyes on	تقع عيناه على	plot against	يتآمر ضد

Scene Text



[In the countryside.]

KING LEAR: Regan, I will not stay with your sister Goneril. Please, give me clothes, food and a bed. Remember, I am old.

REGAN: Please, father! Go back and stay with my sister.

KING LEAR: Never, Regan! She's told half of my soldiers to leave! She's been cruel and rude to me! I want rain to always fall on her head!

REGAN: You'll want the same to happen to me soon.

KING LEAR: No, Regan, I'll never say bad things about you. Goneril's eyes are cruel, but yours are kind. You would never turn your back on me(1). And you'd not lock me out(2) of your house. You understand how a daughter should help her father. You haven't forgotten that I've given you half of my kingdom.

REGAN: Father, why are you unhappy?

CORNWALL: Listen! Who's coming?

REGAN: It's my sister. She said in her letter that she would come soon.

[Goneril enters with Oswald].

KING LEAR: Who put my servant in the stocks? Regan, I hope that you didn't know about this.

[To Goneril] You shouldn't want to look at me. Oh Regan, why are you holding her hand?

GONERIL: Why shouldn't she hold my hand, father? What have I done wrong?

KING LEAR: Oh, how unhappy you've made me.

You're too cruel! Why won't you apologise(3) to me? And why is my servant in the stocks?

CORNWALL: I put him there, sir, because he didn't behave well.

KING LEAR: You? Was it you?

REGAN: Please, father, you're ill today. Stay with my sister until the end of the month. Then, if you ask half of your soldiers to leave, you can come and stay with me.

KING LEAR: Stay with her, and ask my soldiers to leave? No, I would rather sleep outside under the stars.

[To himself] Return with Goneril? I would prefer to stand in front of the King of France and ask him for food. Go back with her? I would prefer to be the servant of this terrible man. *[Points at Oswald]*

GONERIL: It's your choice, father.



(1) تتخلى عنى تدير/ظهرك لى
(2) تمنعنى من الدخول
(3) تعتذر

KING LEAR: Please, daughter, don't make me mad. I won't set eyes on you[1] again, my child; goodbye. We won't meet any more. But you will soon feel bad about what you've done. I'll be patient for now, and I'll stay with Regan with my hundred soldiers.

REGAN: That is not possible. My home isn't ready for you. Listen to my sister. Are fifty soldiers not enough for you?

GONERIL: My servants could help you.

REGAN: Yes, why not, father? We have enough servants. When you come to me (for now I see the danger of so many men), I ask you to bring just twenty-five soldiers. I won't have rooms for any more.

KING LEAR: But Regan, I gave you everything ...

REGAN: And you gave it to me at the right time!

KING LEAR: I gave you enough to live well for all time! I asked for just one thing - to keep a hundred soldiers. Are you really asking me to come with just twenty-five, Regan?

REGAN: Don't talk to me any more about this.

KING LEAR: *[To Goneril.]* Then I'll go back with you. Your fifty soldiers is double her twenty-five, so you must love me twice as much as she does.

GONERIL: Listen, father. You do not need twenty five, ten or even five soldiers in a house where we have fifty servants to look after you.

REGAN: Why do you even need one soldier?

KING LEAR: Why do I need them? Even the poorest beggars have things that they don't need. If you only give people what they need to live, then they are little more than animals. You are a lady. If you just want to stay warm, you don't need those beautiful clothes you're wearing. They don't keep you warm at all. But, if you ask me what I really need, I need patience![2] Oh, give me patience, or I will go mad![3]

[King Lear exits with Gloucester and the Fool. There is a huge storm.]

CORNWALL: We should go inside; there's a big storm coming.

REGAN: This house is small; there isn't room[4] for Lear and his soldiers.

GONERIL: Where is the Duke of Gloucester?

CORNWALL: He followed Lear.

[Gloucester enters.] Here he is.

(1) تقع عيني عليك / أراك
(2) صبر
(3) يجن جنوني
(4) مكان



GLOUCESTER: The King is very angry. He has called for his horse.

CORNWALL: Let him go. He won't listen to anyone.

GONERIL: Yes, don't try to stop him.

GLOUCESTER: But it is nearly night and strong winds are blowing. There is nowhere to shelter for many kilometres.

REGAN: That will teach him a lesson. Lock the doors. He has his soldiers with him, and who knows what they'll persuade him to do.

CORNWALL: Regan is right. Lock the doors, it's a wet night. Come in out of the storm.

[They exit.]

[In a field in the countryside. The storm continues. Kent enters with a soldier.]

KENT: Who's there, in this terrible weather? Where's the King?

SOLDIER: He's fighting with the wind and the rain. This terrible night would make a bear hide in a cave, but the King is running around outside without even a hat.

KENT: But who's with him?

SOLDIER: Only the Fool, who tries to make him happier with his jokes[1].

KENT: Sir, I trust you. I have got something to tell you. There's a disagreement[2] between the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall. They both have servants who are really spies[3] for the King of France. They have noticed that the Dukes are both against the King. Now the King of France has sent an army, and the French have spies at some of our ports. If you trust me, go quickly to Dover. There are people there who'll thank you when you tell them about the King's problems.

I'm not the person who you think. I'm really an important man. If you see Cordelia, show her this ring, and she'll tell you who I am. Here's some money. Oh, this storm! I must go and find the King. *[They exit.]*

[In another part of the field. The storm continues. King Lear enters with the Fool.]

KING LEAR: Blow winds, and let the rain fill our houses with water! Let lightning[4] cut a tree in two, and burn my white hair!

FOOL: Oh, old man, go inside, and ask your daughters to forgive[5] you!



(1) نكات
(2) خلاف
(3) جواسيس
(4) البرق
(5) يغفر/يسامح

KING LEAR: I'm a poor, weak old man. Why is the weather being cruel to me, like my daughters?

[Kent enters.]

KING LEAR: Who's there?

FOOL: Ah, here's someone who is both a wise man and a fool.

KENT: Oh no, why are you here? Even bears want to stay in their caves on a night like this. There's so much wind and rain! The storm is terrible. Your majesty, there's a poor man's hut[1] near here. It will shelter you from the storm. Stay there and rest, while I go to the house of your hard-hearted[2] daughters.

KING LEAR: When I asked for you, they did not let me in their house, so I'll force them to allow you in. But I think I'm going mad!

[To the Fool.] How are you, my boy? I'm cold.

Where's the straw[3]? It's strange how I now want to have horrible things such as a bed of straw to sleep on!

[King Lear exits with Kent.]



(1) كوخ
(2) قلوبهم كالحجر/القاسية قلوبهم
(3) قش

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual Questions

1. What did Regan ask her father to do?

ماذا طلبت ريجان من والدها؟

• She asked him to go home with Goneril and send away fifty of his men.

2. What did Lear remind Regan and Goneril of?

بماذا ذكّر لير ريجان وجونيريل؟

• He reminded them that he had given them everything he had.

3. What was Regan's reply when he said this?

ماذا كان رد ريجان عندما قال ذلك؟

• She said that he gave it at the right time.

4. Why did Lear say Goneril loves him twice as much as Regan?

لماذا قال لير إن جونيريل تحبه ضعف ما يحبه ريجان؟

• Because she will allow him to keep twice as many men.

5. What did Lear come to realise after his daughters' behaviour?

ماذا أدرك لير بعد سلوك بناته؟

• He realised that his two elder daughters felt no love or kindness towards him and that giving everything had been a terrible mistake.

6. What did Goneril ask her father at the end of their conversation?

ماذا طلبت جونيريل من أبيها في نهاية محادثتهم؟

• She asked him to give all his soldiers away, as her servants would look after him.

7. Why did Lear go out in the storm?

لماذا خرج لير في العاصفة؟

• Because he felt he couldn't stay with either of his daughters.

8. Who went out in the storm with Lear?

من الذى خرج فى العاصفة مع لير؟

• Kent and the Fool went out with him.

9. Why does Gloucester feel sorry for King Lear?

لماذا يشعر جلوستر بالأسف تجاه الملك لير؟

• Because he is out in the storm with no shelter and nowhere to go.

10. What did Goneril ask Gloucester to do? Why?

ماذا طلبت جونيريل من جلوستر؟ لماذا؟

• She asked him to lock the door because King Lear had his soldiers with him, and they would persuade him to do something.

11. How did the King of France plan to invade England?

كيف خطط ملك فرنسا لغزو إنجلترا؟

• He had spies among the servants of both the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall. He sent an army, and the French had spies at some of England's ports.

12. Why does Kent give the soldier his ring? (WB)

لماذا أعطى كينت للجندى خاتمه؟

• The ring is for Cordelia, so she will know who he is.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions

13. If you were King Lear, would you ask Regan for food and clothes? Why?

لو كنت مكان الملك لير، هل كنت ستطلب من ريجان الطعام والملابس؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. I would either use my soldiers to get my rights back or try anything else.

14. "Goneril's eyes are cruel, but yours are kind. You would never turn your back on me." Do you agree with King Lear when he says this? Why?

«عيون جونيريل قاسية، لكن عينيك لطيفتان. لن تديرى ظهرك لى أبدًا.» هل تتفق مع الملك لير عندما قال هذا؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't agree. Goneril and Regan are the same.

15. What do you think of the way Regan and Goneril treat their father?

ما رأيك فى الطريقة التى عاملت بها ريجان و جونيريل والدهما؟

- I think it was a cruel and hateful way. They were ungrateful to their father who has given them everything.

16. "And you gave it to me at the right time!" What does Regan mean when she says this?

«ولقد أعطيتنى إياها فى الوقت المناسب!» ماذا تعنى ريجان عندما تقول هذا؟

- I think she means that he gave them his kingdom just before he began to get mad because of his old age.

17. "Your fifty soldiers is double her twenty-five, so you must love me twice as much as she does." Do you think that the King is wise to say this?

«خمسون جنديًا لديك هو ضعف خمسة وعشرين جنديًا، لذا يجب أن تحبنى ضعف ما تحبه هى.» فهل ترى أن الملك عاقل فى قول هذا؟

- No, I don't. This argument is wrong. He is repeating his mistake of judging by appearance, just as he did when he asked his daughters to tell him how much they loved him.

18. King Lear preferred to go out in the heavy storm to stay with Regan or Goneril. What does this show about his feelings?

فضل الملك لير الخروج فى العاصفة الشديدة على البقاء مع ريجان أو جونيريل. ماذا يظهر هذا عن مشاعره؟

- It shows that he became completely hopeless and he is beginning to get mad.

19. Do you think that the King realised his mistake when he gave his power away? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الملك أدرك خطأه عندما تخلى عن سلطته؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think so. He realised that when he was treated badly by his two ungrateful daughters.

20. If you were Gloucester, would you agree to lock the doors and leave the King outside in the storm? Why?

لو كنت مكان جلوستر، فهل توافق على إغلاق الأبواب وترك الملك بالخارج وسط العاصفة؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. The King would be in great danger in the storm, although he has the right to be treated with honour.

21. Why do you think only the Fool stayed with the King during the storm?

لماذا تعتقد أن المهرج فقط هو الذى بقى مع الملك أثناء العاصفة؟

- I think he is loyal and loving to his King.

22. In your opinion, did the King of France send the army only to save the King? Give reasons for your answers.

فى رأيك هل أرسل ملك فرنسا الجيش فقط لإنقاذ الملك؟ أعط أسبابًا لإجاباتك.

- No, he was waiting for a chance to invade England. That's why he has spies inside the Dukes' palaces as Kent said.

23. Do you think that it is right that Kent sends a letter to Dover where the French army is? Why?

هل تعتقد أنه من الصواب أن يرسل كينت رسالة إلى دوفر حيث يتواجد الجيش الفرنسى؟ لماذا؟

- I think it isn't right to cooperate with a foreign army against your country. However, he may have sent to Cordelia only to save the King.

24. **Do you think Cordelia will want to help her father? Why? Why not?** (SB)

هل تعتقد أن كورديليا تريد مساعدة والدها؟ لماذا؟ ولم لا؟

- Yes, Cordelia will want to help her father because she genuinely loves him.

(C) Longman Exercises & Previous Exams

25. **If you were in Goneril's place, would you tell half of the King's soldiers to leave? Why?**

لو كنت مكان جونيريل، هل كنت ستطلب من نصف جنود الملك أن يغادروا؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. It was the King's condition before giving her half the kingdom to keep the title and a hundred soldiers.

26. **"I'd prefer to stand in front of the King of France and ask him for food." What do you think of King Lear's feelings? Did he deserve to be treated that way? Why?**

«أفضل الوقوف أمام ملك فرنسا وأطلب منه الطعام.» ما رأيك فى مشاعر الملك لير؟ فهل كان يستحق أن يعامل بهذه الطريقة؟ لماذا؟

- I think he was miserable to say this. He certainly didn't deserve to be treated that way after all that he did for his daughters.

27. **Do you agree with Goneril and Regan's behaviour towards their father? Why?**

هل توافق على تصرفات جونيريل وريجان تجاه والدهما؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't agree. They treated him so badly although he had been so generous to them.

28. **"I want rain to always fall on her head." What do you think King Lear meant by these words?**

«أريد أن يسقط المطر دائمًا على رأسها.» فى رأيك، ماذا كان يقصد الملك لير بهذه الكلمات؟

- I think he meant to curse يلعن his daughter for her ingratitude and bad treatment of him.

29. **Why do you think that Regan and Goneril wanted the King to abandon his soldiers?**

فى رأيك لماذا أرادت ريجان وجونيريل أن يتخلى الملك عن جنوده؟

- I think that they both feared that the King would use his soldiers against them and regain power.

30. **To what extend do you think the King become a helpless and powerless man? Why?** (المنوفية - إدارة الباجور)

- He became so helpless and powerless that he asked his daughter for food and clothes. I think that is a clear result of his foolish decision to divide his kingdom.

31. **Do you think King Lear was right when he gave his kingdom to his two daughters Goneril and Regan? Why?** (القليوبية - إدارة قها)

- No, I don't think so. His two daughters were so ungrateful that they denied him keeping his soldiers and being treated as the King.

32. **Blindness was shown in two persons. Who do you think they were? What did they do?** (سوهاج - إدارة طما)

- I think it was shown in both King Lear and Gloucester. They both trusted their bad children and sent away their good ones.

33. **Goneril and Regan were unfaithful daughters. Explain.** (المنوفية - إدارة قويسنا)

- They both only wanted to get power and money. They both called their father foolish and old. They even left him out in the storm without protection.

34. **If you were King Lear, how would you re-act to the two daughters' betrayal?** (الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس)

- I would try to regain my power back with the help of the loyal men and then punish them for their betrayal.

Practice ...

Act II Scene iii & Act III Scene i Exercises



Practice more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My bedroom is so small that there isn't enough .... for a desk. (SB)
   a) hole b) palace c) room d) gap
2. He plotted against his country. He was a .... (SB)
   a) noble b) patriot c) spy d) modal
3. We can .... in this shop until the rain stops. (SB)
   a) shelter b) escape c) appear d) reply
4. Nurses need to have a lot of .... so they can be kind to people. (WB)
   a) anger b) beauty c) patience d) power
5. I think I will .... mad if I need to do this again. (WB)
   a) talk b) send c) come d) go
6. Please, don't turn your .... on me. (WB)
   a) side b) head c) front d) back
7. Honestly, I loved the little boy the moment I .... eyes on him. (Longman)
   a) fell b) set c) hit d) sat
8. The criminal wore a .... beard and moustache to be fully disguised. (Longman)
   a) free b) fake c) fair d) fire
9. Alarmingly, the hole in the ozone layer has .... in size recently.
   a) doubled b) formed c) reduced d) deteriorated
10. A .... is a large hole in the side of a hill, cliff, or mountain, or one that is underground.
    a) well b) cave c) funnel d) channel

2 Answer the following questions:

1. What do you think of Cornwall's treatment of the King?

   ....

2. If you were King Lear, would you agree to give all the soldiers away to stay with your daughter? Why?

   ....

3. Do you agree with King Lear when he went out in the storm? Why?

   ....

4. Why do you think Kent and the Fool accompanied the King in the storm?

....

5. Do you think that Kent was right to ask the soldier to go to Dover with his ring? Why?

....

6. "If you ask me what I really need, I need patience! Give me patience, or I'll go mad!" What do you think King Lear needs patience for? (Longman)

....

7. Why do you think King Lear decided to go out during the big storm at night? (Longman)

....

8. Should Regan and Goneril have prevented King Lear from going out during the strong wind? Why? (Longman)

....

9. "Father! Go and stay with my sister." What does this reflect about Regan's character? (Longman)

....

10. Did the King of France make the right decision when he had spies at some ports in England? Why? (Longman)

....

Act III Scenes iii – iv

Vocabulary المفردات

blanket (n)	بطانية	hut (n)	كوخ
burn (v)	يحرق	lightning (n)	برق
force (v) (d)	يجبر	philosopher (n)	فيلسوف
forgive (v)	يغفر/يسامح	rise (n)	ينهض
go into (v)	يدخل	stomach (n)	معدة
hard-hearted (adj)	قاسى القلب	straw (n)	قش
homeless (adj)	بلا مأوى/مشرد	torch (n)	كشاف/شعلة
horrible (adj)	رهيب	try (v) (y-ied)	يحاول

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

walk in someone's shoes	يكون فى موقف شخص ما	go around	يتجول
win the trust	يكسب الثقة	keep away from	يبتعد عن

Scene Text

Summary



[At Gloucester's castle. Gloucester enters with Edmund.]

GLOUCESTER: Oh, Edmund, I don't like the way Goneril and Regan are behaving with their father! When I asked them to help Lear, they told me not to talk about him or to look after him.

EDMUND: That's very cruel of them!

GLOUCESTER: Go to them; but do not say anything. There is some disagreement between the two Dukes and maybe something even worse than that. I got a letter tonight ...

[To himself.] No, it's too dangerous to talk about it to him.

[To Edmund] I have locked the letter in my bedroom. Some of the French army have already arrived in England. We must help King Lear. I will go and look for him and help him. You go and talk to the Duke of Cornwall and do not tell him where I am. If he asks for me, tell him I'm ill and have gone to bed. Strange things are happening, Edmund. Please be careful.

[He exits.]

EDMUND: [To himself.] I'll go and tell the Duke immediately about your worries for the King, father. I will tell him about that letter, too. Then I'll get rewarded for this, and I'll win the trust that my father loses. The younger man rises[1] as the old man falls!

[He exits.]

[In a field in front of a hut. King Lear enters with Kent and the Fool.]

KENT: Here is a hut where we can shelter, my lord. Please, go inside. This terrible storm makes it impossible for anyone to stay outside.

KING LEAR: Oh, my cruel children! You sent me out into a terrible storm like this. Oh Regan, Goneril! Your kind old father gave you everything! But I'll go mad if I think about this. I won't think about it anymore!

KENT: Please, go inside.

KING LEAR: *[To the Fool.]* You go in first, my boy.

[The Fool goes into the hut.]

Poor homeless people, you are always outside when there's a cruel storm. How can your hungry stomachs and old clothes help you when it rains? Why have I not thought about this before? Rich people should try walking in a poor person's shoes[2], and then the world would be a better place for us all.

[The Fool enters. He has just come out of the hut and he's very frightened.]



(1) يرتفع /ينهض

(2) يجربون العيش مكان الفقراء

FOOL: Don't go in there, sir. There's a mad man in that hut.

KENT: Who's in there?

FOOL: A mad man! He says his name is Poor Tom.

KENT: Who are you? Come out here.

[Edgar enters disguised as a madman called Poor Tom.]

EDGAR: Keep away from me!

KING LEAR: Are you mad like me? Have you given everything to your two daughters?

EDGAR: Nobody gives anything to Poor Tom.

KING LEAR: Have his daughters done this to him?

[To Edgar.] Don't you have anything?

FOOL: No, he only has a blanket.

KING LEAR: Only cruel daughters could have made a man so poor. Who were you?

EDGAR: I was a servant, who was very proud.

KING LEAR: It would be better if you were dead than go around with nothing but a blanket on a night like this!

FOOL: Look, here comes a walking fire. *[Gloucester enters carrying a torch.]*

KING LEAR: Who's this?

GLOUCESTER: What's your name?

EDGAR: My name is Poor Tom, and I once had six shirts to wear and a horse to ride, but now all I have is mice[1] to eat.

GLOUCESTER: Has your majesty nobody to help you apart from this mad man? Why have our children grown up to be so terrible, my lord? Why do they hate their fathers?

EDGAR: Poor Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER: Come inside with me, your majesty. I didn't want to do what your cruel daughters asked me to do. They asked me to lock the doors and leave you outside on this terrible night. I've come to find you and take you home, where there's a fire and food ready for you.

KENT: My lord, please accept this man's offer and go to the house.

KING LEAR: First, let me talk to this philosopher[2].

What are you researching?



(1) فئران (2) فيلسوف

EDGAR: I am researching how to keep warm and to kill mice.
KENT: *[To Gloucester.]* Ask him again, my lord. He's beginning to go mad. He thinks the poor man is a philosopher.
[Gloucester holds his torch it in front of him and looking at Edgar and Kent, but they are both disguised.]
GLOUCESTER: I'm not surprised Lear is mad. His daughters want him to die. Ah, that good man, Kent! He knew what would happen – the poor man! I'm almost mad myself. I have a son who tried to kill me. No father loved his son more than I loved him. What a night this is! Please, your majesty, come with me.
EDGAR: Tom's cold.
GLOUCESTER: Go into your hut, Tom; keep yourself warm.
KENT: This way, your majesty.
KING LEAR: *[Pointing to Edgar.]* I am going with him!
KENT: My lord, let him bring the poor man with us.
GLOUCESTER: OK. Sir, come on; come with us.
KING LEAR: Let's go then, my good philosopher.
[They exit.]

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual Questions

1. Why did Gloucester feel upset and take Lear's side against Regan, Goneril and their husbands?

لماذا شعر جلوستر بالانزعاج وانحاز إلى جانب لير ضد ريجان وجونيريل وأزواجهما؟

- Because Regan and Cornwall had stopped him from helping Lear.

2. What was in the letter which Gloucester received?

ماذا كان فى الرسالة التى تلقاها جلوستر؟

- Some of the French army have already arrived in England.

3. What did Gloucester ask Edmund to tell Cornwall?

ماذا طلب جلوستر من إدموند أن يخبر كورنوال؟

- He asked Edmund to tell him he was ill and had gone to bed.

4. How did Edmund betray his father?

كيف خان إدموند والده؟

- He told Cornwall that his father took Lear's side and he told him about the letter that his father received.

5. Where did Kent and Lear take shelter?

أين لجأ كينت ولير؟

- They took shelter in a small dirty hut.

6. What did Lear feel for the first time?

بماذا شعر لير للمرة الأولى؟

- He felt sorry for people who had no houses and only old, thin clothes to wear.

7. Why did the Fool run out of the hut?

لماذا جرى المهرج من الكوخ؟

- Because there was a mad man in the hut.

8. Who did they find in the hut?

من وجدوا فى الكوخ؟

- They found Edgar disguised as Poor Tom.

9. What did Lear believe was the reason for Tom's madness?

ماذا اعتقد لير فى سبب جنون توم؟

- He believed that Tom became mad because he had given everything to his daughters.

10. Why did Gloucester come to the place?

لماذا جاء جلوستر إلى المكان؟

- He came to take King Lear to a warmer place.

11. In Gloucester's opinion, why did Lear go mad?

فى رأى جلوستر، لماذا أصيب لير بالجنون؟

- Because his daughters have treated him so badly that his mind cannot bear his feelings of anger and sorrow.

12. Why did Gloucester say that he is almost mad?

لماذا قال جلوستر أنه على وشك الجنون؟

- As he had a son who tried to kill him. No father loved his son more than he loved him.

13. Who did King Lear take with him?

من الذى أخذه معه الملك لير؟

- He insisted on taking Poor Tom whom he called 'Philosopher' with him.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions

14. King Lear says, "Rich people should try walking in a poor person's shoes". What would rich people learn if they were poor for some time? (SB)

يقول الملك لير «يجب أن يجرب الأغنياء حياة الفقير» ماذا سيتعلم الأغنياء لو كانوا فقراء لبعض الوقت؟

- They would know about poor people's suffering and thus try to help them.

15. How do you think this comment by King Lear shows a change in his way of thinking? (SB)

كيف تعتقد أن هذا التعليق للملك لير يظهر تغييرًا فى طريقة تفكيره؟

- This was the first time the King had ever seen how poor people lived in his kingdom. So, he thought it was bad not to know about those people's life.

16. Think about the weather in this section of the story. What are the similarities between the weather and what is happening in King Lear's life? (SB)

فكر فى الطقس فى هذا القسم من القصة. ما أوجه التشابه بين الطقس وما يحدث فى حياة الملك لير؟

- Both are turbulent and unstable.

17. Why do you think Gloucester didn't tell Edmund about the content of the letter he had?

في رأيك لماذا لم يخبر جلوستر إدموند بمحتوى الرسالة التى كانت لديه؟

- I think it was so dangerous that he didn't want his own son to know about it.

18. "I'll go and tell the Duke immediately about your worries for the King, Father. I will tell him about that letter, too." What does this show about Edmund?

«سأذهب وأخبر الدوق على الفور عن مخاوفك بشأن الملك يا أبى. سأخبره عن تلك الرسالة أيضًا.» ماذا يظهر هذا عن إدموند؟

- It shows that he is an evil and greedy man who is ready to sacrifice his father's life in order to become important for the Duke.

19. What does Edmund mean when he says, "The younger man rises as the old man falls"? (SB)

ماذا يقصد إدموند عندما يقول: «ينهض الشاب بينما يسقط العجوز»؟

- Those in power now are losing it and he sees the opportunity to take it.

20. Is Edmund a good son to his father? Why? Why not? (SB)

هل إدموند ابن صالح لأبيه؟ لماذا؟ ولم لا؟

- No, because he deceived his father.

21. **Why does King Lear say he won't think any more about how his daughters have treated him?** (SB)

لماذا يقول الملك لير إنه لن يفكر بعد الآن فى كيفية معاملة بناته له ؟

- Because if he thinks about it anymore, he believes he will go mad.

22. **Why do you think Poor Tom does not tell King Lear who he really is?** (SB)

في رأيك لماذا لا يخبر توم المسكين الملك لير بحقيقته ؟

- He might be worried that King Lear will tell his father about him.

23. **In your opinion is King Lear going mad? Give your reasons.** (SB)

فى رأيك هل أصبح الملك لير مجنونًا؟ أعط أسبابك.

- Yes, I think so. He describes Poor Tom as a Philosopher. He prefers to stay in the storm without shelters.

24. **Why do you think King Lear calls Poor Tom a philosopher?** (SB)

في رأيك لماذا يدعو الملك لير توم المسكين بالفيلسوف؟

- Possibly because he sees Poor Tom as someone who is trying to make sense of the world just like King Lear is.

(C) Longman Exercises & Previous Exams

25. **If you were in King Lear's place, would you forgive your daughters, Goneril and Regan? Why?**

لو كنت مكان الملك لير، هل كنت ستسامح ابنتيك جونيريل وريجان؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. They proved to be so ungrateful and cruel to him after all that he had done to them.

26. **If you were in Edger's place, would you tell King Lear about your real name? Why?**

لو كنت مكان إدجار، هل كنت ستخبر الملك لير عن اسمك الحقيقى؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. It isn't safe to do this while his father is still angry with him.

27. **How do you think Goneril and Regan are like Edmund?** (قنا - إدارة نجع حمادى)

- They were ungrateful to their fathers and betrayed them.

28. **What do you think of Edmund? Why?**

- I think he is an evil person. He tricked his father and brother. He even betrayed his own father and told Cornwall about his father's secret to get a position with him.

29. **Who do you think is responsible for what had happened to King Lear?**

(المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم)

- Although we can blame Regan and Goneril, I think that King Lear himself is responsible for this because of his foolish decision to give his power away.

30. **In your opinion what is the moral you have learnt from "King Lear"?** (الدقهلية - إدارة المنزلة)

- I think we can learn that we shouldn't judge by words. We should test people's love with actions.



Practice more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandmother is scared of thunder and .... She hides under the stairs. (WB)
   a) lightning b) lighting c) wind d) breeze
2. In the past, people used to light a .... with fire. Today, we use batteries. (WB)
   a) sword b) torch c) bow d) pot
3. Hatem could be a .... because he likes to think about important questions. (WB)
   a) photographer b) journalist c) philosopher d) painter
4. My horse loves to sleep on a bed of fresh .... (WB)
   a) corn b) straw c) sofa d) cucumber
5. We got lost in the mountains and spent the night in a wooden .... (WB)
   a) cave b) spring c) hut d) well
6. The .... young man dealt with the little child violently. (Longman)
   a) generous b) hard-hearted c) young d) kind-hearted
7. My parents usually .... me for the mistakes I make. They show me how to behave well instead, and I benefit from their advice. (Longman)
   a) fire b) punish c) forgive d) forget
8. Doctors were .... to work impossibly long hours during the COVID-19 pandemic.
   a) fired b) dismissed c) deprived d) forced
9. To understand my decision, you have to .... in my shoes!
   a) live b) walk c) keep d) run
10. I always ask my children to keep .... from the kitchen so as to avoid accidents.
   a) in b) away c) of d) for

2 Answer the following questions:

1. What do you think of Gloucester's decision to look for and help the King?

   ....

2. Edmund was ready to do anything to reach his evil goals. Do you agree? Why?

   ....

3. Is King Lear right to call Poor Tom a philosopher? Why?

....

4. If you were Edgar, would you tell Gloucester your real identity? Why?

....

5. If you were Cornwall, would you trust Edmund after betraying his own father? Why?

....

6. "Blow winds, and let the rain fill our houses with water! Let lightning cut a tree in two and burn my white hair." What do you think these words reflect about King Lear at that time?

....

7. Do you agree that the weather was cruel to King Lear like his daughters? Why?

....

8. Why do you think King Lear said he wouldn't think any more about how his daughter had treated him?

....

9. Why do you think Long Lear welcomed the storm?

....

10. "Rich people should try walking in a poor person's shoes." What do you think King Lear meant by this?

....

Advanced General Exercises

- **Advanced General Exercises**
- **Advanced General Exercises Answers**



Unit 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should wash the dress in cold water, so the colours don't ....
a) match b) bleed c) raise d) add

2. If you keep on lifting those heavy weights, you'll do yourself a/an ....
a) attention b) benefit c) injury d) loss

3. The Americans established a naval .... on the Japanese island in the 1950s.
a) space b) table c) column d) base

4. El Maraei is a leading manufacturer of .... dairy products.
a) label b) origin c) source d) publicity

5. Our old neighbour .... her husband by ten years.
a) attached b) deceased c) survived d) divorced

6. Nowadays, many young people .... against traditional values.
a) refer b) reject c) react d) reform

7. Our prep school headmistress was a .... woman who rarely smiled.
a) severe b) dangerous c) creative d) collaborative

8. It will take about an hour to get there, ... for traffic delays.
a) allow b) allowing c) allowed d) allowance

9. We had a party last night .... spend all morning cleaning up the mess.
a) I must have b) I've been to c) I've had to d) I need

10. I have lost my keys. I ought .... them in a safe place.
a) that I put b) to have put c) to be putting d) to put

11. There was no one else in the post office. I .... in a queue.
a) didn't need to wait b) needn't wait
c) mustn't wait d) needn't have waited

12. Dina .... have been at school yesterday. The list of the absentees didn't include her name.
a) must b) can't c) needn't d) mustn't

13. I'm taking an umbrella. It .... rain.
a) should b) must c) may d) has to

14. You mustn't take photos near military places. This means that ....
a) you can't b) you are allowed c) it's unnecessary d) it isn't good

15. **A:** .... he finish the report before 10 p.m.?
B: No, he needn't. The boss hasn't asked for it yet.
a) Mustn't b) Need c) Does d) Needs

16. You mustn't ride a bicycle in this park. It's ....
a) necessary b) inadvisable c) not allowed d) unnecessary

Unit 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I watched a good movie .... the life and work of Nelson Mandela.
   a) writing b) devastating c) celebrating d) disrespecting
2. The police can really help you in the .... of an emergency.
   a) event b) accident c) incident d) story
3. Police officers were able to .... useful information from the company's financial records.
   a) exert b) tie c) extract d) deny
4. In fact, I .... it a rule never to make any friend who could not be useful to me.
   a) did b) devised c) damaged d) made
5. It is believed that the tiger is .... to India.
   a) kept b) native c) availed d) distracted
6. Unfortunately, internet websites are full of improper .... stories about famous people's life.
   a) spicy b) sweet c) successful d) valid
7. We need to create a/an .... in which business can prosper.
   a) air b) breath c) climate d) location
8. I have to say, with all due ...., that I don't think your solution will work.
   a) case b) cause c) design d) respect
9. Mr. Sobhi works in a .... school.
   a) medical famous German b) German famous medical
   c) famous German medical d) German medical famous
10. Abeer and Omar are the same height. They are .... each other.
    a) as tall as b) taller than
    c) as tall than d) more tall than
11. For .... information about the flights, you can call the travel agency.
    a) farther b) further c) farthest d) furthest
12. .... information we have is not enough to proceed.
    a) Late b) Little c) A little d) The little
13. He considered his friends either geniuses or idiots, and I fell into the .... category.
    a) latter b) later c) latest d) late
14. One of the following sentences isn't correctly structured:
    a) What a big car he has! b) How big a car he has!
    c) What a big car has he! d) How big his car is!
15. We cannot act until .... orders from our boss.
    a) far b) further c) the farthest d) farther
16. They are waiting for the .... updates in this matter.
    a) latter b) late c) last d) latest

Unit 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Saline .... is a mixture of salt and water which has many medical uses.
a) transmit b) transport c) solution d) deduction

2. 5,000 new flats are to be built, but this is just a drop in the .... for such a vast country.
a) ocean b) lake c) sea d) rain

3. If you click on this ...., it will make you able to get to your bank account.
a) connection b) contact c) link d) way

4. No doctor at the hospital was .... for comment about the accident as they were all busy.
a) replaceable b) available c) helpful d) acceptable

5. These days, poor people find it very difficult to .... their keep.
a) win b) award c) apply d) earn

6. When I read the job ...., I found it suitable for me and applied for it immediately.
a) interview b) prescription c) description d) division

7. Competition between the two companies is .... up.
a) warning b) cooling c) decreasing d) heating

8. The firefighters .... the fire in the building after three hours.
a) contained b) involved c) enclosed d) included

9. I like to have the radio on while ....
a) I study b) I'm studying c) studying d) all are possible

10. Always turn your television off ....
a) before you leave home b) when you went to bed
c) as soon as you got bored d) after you have fallen asleep

11. He'll drink coffee while he .... for the bus.
a) is waiting b) wait c) was waiting d) has waited

12. Now that the rain's stopped, ... to walk?
a) can you want b) are you wanting c) do you want d) have you wanted

13. I promised my father .... the full marks in the next exam.
a) will get b) would get
c) to get d) am going to get

14. My friend is very intelligent. He .... the test easily.
a) is going to pass b) will pass c) is passing d) would pass

15. Look out! A car .... towards you.
a) is coming b) is going to come c) will be coming d) will come

16. "Shall I carry your bag for you?" The right situation for the sentence is ....
a) request b) promise
c) offer d) on-the-spot decision

Unit 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Building the New Capital in Egypt took a great .... of time and effort.
   a) part b) quality c) section d) deal
2. Our team has won six basketball .... in the local championships.
   a) titles b) names c) headings d) addresses
3. My wife wasn't well enough to .... visitors, so we cancelled the party.
   a) receive b) deliver c) invite d) enlist
4. Opening remarks are important since they set the .... for the rest of the job.
   a) music b) tone c) sign d) report
5. My cousin, Sameh has a/an .... for making friends easily.
   a) comment b) present c) gift d) image
6. The story of the murder was important enough to make the ....
   a) differences b) interests c) addresses d) headlines
7. The architect drew the new shopping centre in ....
   a) section b) general c) progress d) record
8. The runner won a gold medal and broke the Olympic .... by 44 records.
   a) prize b) headline c) record d) medal
9. That was a question nobody .... answer.
   a) could b) cannot c) can d) should
10. You .... the job. Why didn't you use a chance?
    a) may take b) can take
    c) had to take d) could have taken
11. It rained heavily every day during their holiday, so they .... have had a very nice time.
    a) can't b) must c) should d) could
12. Two hundred years ago, not many people .... read or write.
    a) couldn't b) could c) can't d) could have
13. She could have taken the underground to save time and money, but she ....
    a) couldn't b) doesn't c) hasn't d) didn't
14. Nader .... have carried the desk by himself. Someone must have helped him.
    a) shouldn't b) should c) could d) couldn't
15. Why did you tell your friends about the secret? You .... nothing about it.
    a) should have said b) could have said
    c) shouldn't have said d) couldn't say
16. My younger brother .... swim 4 years ago, but he .... swim very well now.
    a) could/can b) can/could c) could/can't d) couldn't/can

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young artist asked the expert to .... his drawings.
   a) prepare b) redetect c) criticise d) deform
2. The actress is very clever at presenting her best .... to the camera.
   a) director b) profile c) character d) view
3. The .... of the food in this restaurant makes it look very tasty.
   a) reformation b) updating c) reflection d) presentation
4. The patient's brain is regularly .... so that doctors can detect the progress of his disease.
   a) scanned b) skimmed c) scaled d) stated
5. I usually .... my children from their school. It's part of my daily routine.
   a) connect b) hand c) collect d) deliver
6. Most people object to the new factory as they want to preserve the .... of their neighbourhoods.
   a) feeling b) character c) direction d) assumption
7. I missed the .... flight to New York, so I spent the night at the airport.
   a) connecting b) contacting c) communicating d) commuting
8. When the photographer .... the film, he was astonished by what he saw.
   a) manufactured b) designed c) spread d) developed
9. The children in our street do not like that man. They say he is ....
   a) seem b) suppose c) supposed d) mean
10. Hard exercises are meant .... before the match.
    a) to do b) to have done c) to be done d) done
11. .... likely that they will lose the election.
    a) It seem b) It seems c) He seems d) They seem
12. The plan is .... to be a secret, but everybody .... to know about it.
    a) meant/seems b) seemed/meant
    c) seemed/seems d) supposes/means
13. Students are supposed to listen to the teacher's explanation. This is ....
    a) not necessary b) predictable c) prohibited d) obligatory
14. He stayed in Europe more than his friends ....
    a) supposed b) seemed c) needed d) meant
15. Galileo is supposed .... the telescope.
    a) having invented b) to invent
    c) to have invented d) have invented
16. Charles Dickens' writings seem .... by his life experiences.
    a) to influence b) influential
    c) to be influenced d) to be influencing

Unit 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The businessman made a .... of cash on the sale of one of his companies.
   a) hole b) mountain c) pile d) hill
2. The Health Minister has come under .... from all sides because of the accident in the hospital.
   a) rocket b) fire c) pocket d) shot
3. I'm going to the park outside the city for a .... of fresh air.
   a) breath b) push c) quantity d) quality
4. International schools in New York accept children from all .... and religions.
   a) heights b) wealth c) competitions d) races
5. The carpenter .... the wood with a waterproof sealant مادة عازلة to protect it.
   a) cured b) treated c) processed d) operated
6. Samy shouldn't let his elder brother .... him around like that.
   a) depart b) accept c) boss d) head
7. Sales of the products at present low prices would be a .... of the company's investment.
   a) waste b) miss c) profit d) benefit
8. I'll tell you what happened, but I don't want to get .... all the reasons why it happened.
   a) back b) into c) on d) out
9. If I had heard my phone ringing, I .... it.
   a) would have had to answer b) would have to answer
   c) would answer d) would have answer
10. Would you know what to do .... a heart attack?
    a) but for b) in case c) in case of d) providing
11. When you heat water to 100 degrees Celsius, it ....
    a) will boil b) is boiled c) is boiling d) boils
12. If I had gone to university, I .... a lawyer now.
    a) would have been b) would be c) will be d) am
13. .... studying Turkish bothers you, you can stop it.
    a) If b) Without c) In case of d) But for
14. If I .... taller, they would have taken me in the team yesterday.
    a) wasn't b) had been c) were d) have been
15. If I .... a car, I .... you a lift.
    a) had/would have given b) had/would have to give
    c) had had/would have to give d) had had/would give
16. You're free to do whatever you want .... you respect the rules.
    a) provide b) unless c) even if d) provided

Answers Advanced General Exercises

Unit 1

1. b) bleed
2. c) injury
3. d) base
4. a) label
5. c) survived
6. c) react
7. a) severe
8. b) allowing

- تستخدم bleed هنا بمعنى (يختلط اللون بآخر).
- يستخدم التعبير do oneself an injury بمعنى (يسبب ضررًا لنفسه).
- تستخدم base هنا بمعنى (قاعدة عسكرية).
- يستخدم التعبير own label/own brand بمعنى (منتج من ماركة محددة).
- يستخدم survive هنا بمعنى (يعيش أكثر من شخص آخر).
- يستخدم react against بمعنى (يرفض /يكره).
- تستخدم severe هنا بمعنى (جاد/حازم).
- تستخدم allow for بمعنى (مع احتساب).

9. c) I've had to
10. b) to have put
11. a) didn't need to wait
12. a) must
13. c) may
14. a) you can't
15. b) Need
16. c) not allowed

Unit 2

1. c) celebrating
2. a) event
3. c) extract
4. d) made
5. b) native
6. a) spicy
7. c) climate
8. d) respect

- تستخدم celebrate هنا بمعنى (يحتفى /يمجد شخصا أو حدثا).
- يستخدم التعبير in the event of بمعنى (فى حالة حدوث).
- تستخدم extract هنا بمعنى (يستخلص /يستنتج).
- يستخدم التعبير make it a rule بمعنى (يتأكد من فعل شيء دائمًا).
- تستخدم native هنا بمعنى (موجود أساسا فى مكان محدد).
- تستخدم spicy هنا بمعنى (مثير و غير لائق).
- تستخدم climate هنا بمعنى (الجو المحيط أو الشعور السائد).
- يستخدم التعبير with all (due) respect بمعنى (مع كل الاحترام اللازم).

9. c) famous German medical
10. a) as tall as
11. b) further
12. d) The little
13. a) latter
14. c) What a big car has he!
15. b) further
16. d) latest

Unit 3

1. c) solution
2. a) ocean
3. c) link
4. b) available
5. d) earn
6. c) description
7. d) heating
8. a) contained

- تستخدم solution هنا بمعنى (محلول).
- يستخدم التعبير a drop in the ocean بمعنى (قطرة فى محيط/جهد قليل بالنسبة لشيء أكبر).
- تستخدم link هنا بمعنى (رابط لموقع أو صفحة إنترنت).
- تستخدم available هنا بمعنى (موجود لأداء عمل).
- يستخدم التعبير earn their keep بمعنى (يكسب قوت يومه).
- تستخدم job description هنا بمعنى (طبيعة الوظيفة أو مهامها).
- تستخدم heat up هنا بمعنى (يزداد حدة).
- تستخدم contain هنا بمعنى (يحتوى النار أو يطفئها).

9. d) all are possible
10. a) before you leave home
11. a) is waiting
12. c) do you want
13. c) to get
14. b) will pass
15. a) is coming
16. c) offer

Unit 4

1. **d)** deal
2. **a)** titles
3. **a)** receive
4. **b)** tone
5. **c)** gift
6. **d)** headlines
7. **a)** section
8. **c)** record

- تستخدم deal هنا بمعنى (قدر/مقدار).
- تستخدم title هنا بمعنى (لقب فى لعبة أو مسابقة).
- تستخدم receive هنا بمعنى (يستقبل ضيوفًا).
- يستخدم التعبير set the tone بمعنى (يحدد الاتجاه السائد فى مقابلة أو مكان).
- تستخدم gift هنا بمعنى (موهبة).
- يستخدم التعبير make the headlines بمعنى (يظهر فى عناوين الأخبار).
- يستخدم التعبير in section بمعنى (على مقاطع/أجزاء).
- يستخدم التعبير break the record بمعنى (يحطم الرقم القياسى).

9. **a)** could
10. **d)** could have taken
11. **a)** can't
12. **b)** could
13. **d)** didn't
14. **d)** couldn't
15. **a)** should have said
16. **d)** couldn't/can

Unit 5

1. **c)** criticise
2. **b)** profile
3. **d)** presentation
4. **a)** scanned
5. **c)** collect
6. **b)** character
7. **a)** connecting
8. **d)** developed

- تستخدم criticise هنا بمعنى (يحكم على/يفحص جيدًا).
- تستخدم profile هنا بمعنى (صورة فوتوغرافية بأحد جوانب الوجه).
- تستخدم presentation هنا بمعنى (طريقة عرض).
- تستخدم scan هنا بمعنى (يجرى فحصًا بالأشعة).
- تستخدم collect هنا بمعنى (يحضر شخصًا من مكان).
- تستخدم character هنا بمعنى (الميزة المعروفة عن مكان).
- يستخدم التعبير connecting flight بمعنى (رحلة جوية مكملة (ترانزيت) إلى مكان).
- يستخدم التعبير develop the film بمعنى (يقوم بطبع الصور الفوتوغرافية على أحد أفلام الكاميرا).

9. **d)** mean
10. **c)** to be done
11. **b)** It seems
12. **a)** meant/seems
13. **d)** obligatory
14. **a)** supposed
15. **c)** to have invented
16. **c)** to be influenced

Unit 6

1. **c)** pile
2. **b)** fire
3. **a)** breath
4. **d)** races
5. **b)** treated
6. **c)** boss
7. **a)** waste
8. **b)** into

- يستخدم التعبير a pile of cash بمعنى (قدر كبير من المال).
- يستخدم التعبير under fire بمعنى (معرض للنقد الشديد).
- يستخدم التعبير a breath of air بمعنى (نسمة من الهواء).
- تستخدم race هنا بمعنى (عرق/جنس بشرى).
- تستخدم treat هنا بمعنى (يعالج خشبًا بمادة كيميائية).
- تستخدم boss هنا بمعنى (يمارس سلطة/تحكم).
- تستخدم waste هنا بمعنى (إهدار لموارد).
- تستخدم get into هنا بمعنى (يعرض/يناقش).

9. **a)** would have had to answer
10. **c)** in case of
11. **d)** boils
12. **b)** would be
13. **a)** If
14. **c)** were
15. **b)** had/would have to give
16. **d)** provided

Dictionary

الكلمات الواردة بقطع الفهم وأسئلة الترجمة



achievement	إنجاز	distinguished	مميز
acquire	يتطلب	dreadful	مروعة
addiction	إدمان	dwelling	مسكن
adolescence	المراهقة	echolocation	تحديد الموقع بالصدى
alternatives	البدائل	economic	اقتصادى
aspire	طموح	emitting	ينبعث
attempts	محاولات	epidemic	وباء
attention	انتباه	essence	جوهر
awareness	وعى	evaporation	تبخر
basically	أساسًا	evil deeds	أعمال شريرة
boon	نعمة	evolve	تطور
boost	يعزز	exaggerated	مُبَالَغ فيه
bounce	وثب	exclude	إسْتَبْعَد
cactus	صبار	facilities	مرافق
cardiovascular	القلب والأوعية الدموية	factor	عامل
catalysts	المحفزات	feed	يغذى / غذاء
challenges	التحديات	flush	الاحمرار
characterised	تتميز	food shortage	نقص الغذاء
charity	خيرية	generations	أجيال
civilised	متحضر	greed	جشع
consume	تستهلك	guarantee	يضمن
contribute	يساهم	hedgehog	قنفذ
convenience	راحة	humanity	إنسانية
coordination	تنسيق	humble	متواضع
cubs	أشبال	hysterically	بشكل هستيرى
customs	عادات	illegal immigration	الهجرة غير الشرعية
data	بيانات	illogical	غير منطقى
demolish	هدم	impact	تأثير
deviation	انحراف	individual games	الألعاب الفردية

kinetics	الحركية	relieve	يخفّف
knot	عقدة	repeat	يعيد
limits	حدود	reptiles	الزواحف
literature	الأدب	reputation	سمعة
mammal	الحيوان الثديى	rim	حافة
manufacturer	المصنعة	rodents	القوارض
mass media	وسائل الإعلام	rucksack	حقيبة الظهر
methods	طُرق	rumours	شائعات
mines	مناجم	sacrifice	تضحية
miserable	بائس	shuttle	مكوك
national unity	وحدة وطنية	silicate	سيليكات
nightmare	كابوس	silliness	سخافة
nocturnal	ليلى	spiny	شوكى
obesity	بدانة	spread	انتشار
obstacle	عقبة	stability	استقرار
opposes	يعارض	strict	حازم
organism	كائن حى	suitable	مناسب
perseverance	مثابرة	swallow	ابتلاع
political question	مسألة سياسية	syrup	شراب
portray	تصوير	talents	المواهب
poverty	فقر	trial	محاكمة
predators	الحيوانات المفترسة	unemployment	البطالة
privacy	خصوصية	vanish	يتلاشى
psychological	نفسى	yogurt	زبادى
real	حقيقى		



New Hello!

الصف الثانى الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Ongoing Assessment, Skills & Final Revision

11

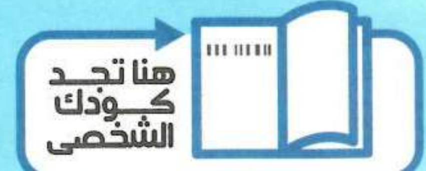
By

Emad Fawzy
Mohamed Abdel Aal
Ahmed Fadel
Ayman M. Ebrahim

راجع إجاباتك

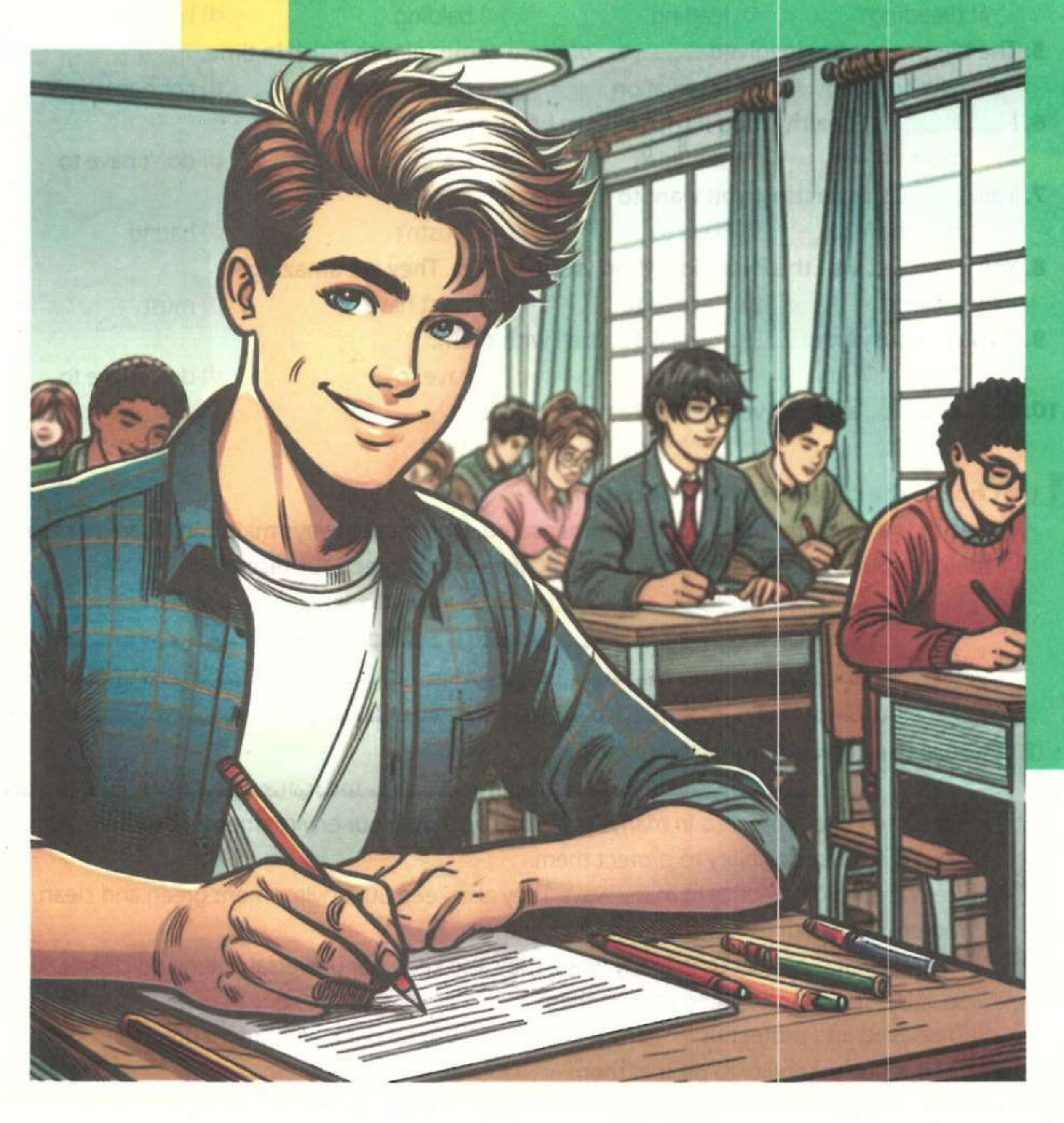
نزل إجابات الكتاب بصيغة PDF





Part 1

Ongoing Assessment



Unit 1 Quiz 1 on Part (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The lifeguard pulled the boy out of the swimming pool and did a .... for him saving his life.
a) VCR b) CV c) CPR d) MRI

2. The fire has caused .... damage to the building that it collapsed.
a) simple b) severe c) light d) safe

3. When I told my mother I had lost the mobile, she .... with anger.
a) represented b) reacted c) preferred d) protected

4. The doctor pressed tightly on the wound to stop the ....
a) breeding b) leading c) balding d) bleeding

5. The big project has involved .... of three companies to finish in time.
a) collaboration b) reservation c) preservation d) condensation

6. I .... eat healthy food if I'm going to be an athlete.
a) must b) shouldn't c) need d) don't have to

7. You .... exercise if you want to lose weight.
a) don't have to b) have to c) mustn't d) had to

8. You .... visit the Pyramids when you're in Giza. They are amazing.
a) mustn't b) needed to c) don't have to d) must

9. If you are busy, you .... play football with them.
a) didn't have to b) must c) have to d) don't have to

10. You .... eat food with a lot of salt or fat in it.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) have to

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Health is a treasure that can't be compensated. One must always maintain cleanliness in their surroundings, so as to avoid the risk of catching infectious diseases.

a) الصحة كنز لا يمكن تعويضه. يجب على المرء دائمًا الحفاظ على النظافة فى محيطه لتجنب خطر الإصابة بالأمراض الموسمية.

b) الصحة كنز لا يمكن تجنبه. يجب على المرء دائمًا الحفاظ على النظافة فى محيطه لتجنب خطر الإصابة بالأمراض الخطيرة.

c) الصحة كنز لا يمكن تعويضه. يجب على المرء دائمًا الحفاظ على النظافة فى محيطه لتجنب خطر الإصابة بالأمراض المعدية.

d) الصحة كنز يمكن تعويضه. يجب على المرء دائمًا الحفاظ على النظافة فى محيطه لتجنب تعرض الإصابة بالأمراض المعدية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

الأشجار تغذينا وتحمينا من نواح كثيرة، كما أنها تحافظ على بيئتنا خضراء ونظيفة؛ لذلك تقع على عاتقنا مسئولية حمايتها.

a) Trees feed and protect us in many ways. They also keep our environment green and clean. So, it is our responsibility to protect them.

b) Trees feed and detect us in many ways. They also keep our environment green and clean. Moreover, it is our responsibility to protect them.

c) Trees feed and protect us in many ways. They also keep our universal green and clean. So, it is our responsibility to protect them.

d) Trees feed and protect us in many ways. They also keep our environment green and clean. So, it is our possibility to protect them.

Unit 1 Quiz 2 | on Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think my son had a cold – he has been .... and sneezing all day.
   a) coughing b) training c) smiling d) breathing
2. Our teacher had always .... in a friendly manner towards us.
   a) believed b) behaved c) cured d) misbehaved
3. The effect of the reform programme would help to .... the Egyptian economy.
   a) detach b) attract c) reduce d) boost
4. I should never have gone to the party in the first ....!
   a) place b) post c) position d) situation
5. The Art Design .... consists of both lectures and practical workshops.
   a) coarse b) section c) course d) centre
6. You .... pay to go into the museum. It is free to enter.
   a) don't need b) had to c) don't have to d) have to
7. Leila .... work hard if she wants to pass her exams.
   a) had to b) must c) mustn't d) needn't
8. You .... forget to bring a coat to the mountains. It will be cold!
   a) have to b) must c) don't have to d) mustn't
9. You .... buy a ticket before you get on the train.
   a) have to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) had to
10. Which book .... read if you are interested in having a healthy heart?
    a) you have to b) must you c) did you have to d) mustn't you

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- A sportsperson probably does not suffer from obesity or underweight problems, because sports certainly help the body remain fit and healthy.

a) ربما لا يعانى الرياضى من التوتر أو مشاكل نقص الوزن. لأن الرياضة بالتأكيد تساعد الجسم على أن يبقى لائقًا وصحيًا.

b) ربما يعانى الرياضى من السمنة أو مشاكل نقص الوزن. لأن الرياضة بالتأكيد تساعد الجسم على أن يبقى لائقًا وقويًا.

c) بالتأكيد لا يعانى الرياضى من السمنة أو مشاكل نقص الوزن. لأن الرياضة بالتأكيد تساعد الجسم على أن يبقى لائقًا وصحيًا.

d) ربما يعانى الرياضى من السمنة أو مشاكل نقص الوزن. لأن الرياضة بالتأكيد تساعد الجسم على أن يبقى لائقًا وصحيًا.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- يُعتبر توفير المياه مسئولية عالمية لكل شخص يعيش على الأرض، ولتوفير المياه يتعين علينا تنفيذ العديد من المشروعات التى تساعد فى الحفاظ عليها.

a) Saving water is a national responsibility of every person living on Earth, and to save water, we have to implement several projects that help conserve it.

b) Saving water is a global responsibility of every person living on Earth, and to save water, we have to complement several projects that help conserve it.

c) Saving water is a global responsibility of every person living on Earth, and to save water, we have to implement several projects that help reserve it.

d) Saving water is a global responsibility of every person living on Earth, and to save water, we have to implement several projects that help conserve it.

Unit 1 Al-Adwaa Unit Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you draw or write in pencil, you can always rub out your .... with an eraser.
a) mistakes b) figures c) perceptions d) solutions

2. The students constantly had to be reminded .... their roles in the school play.
a) in b) about c) at d) for

3. The .... on the player's knee was carried out by a team of surgeons at a German hospital.
a) operation b) process c) research d) inspection

4. Several villages along the .... of the river were affected by the floods.
a) certificate b) line c) degree d) course

5. Doctors say that our .... system works better if we eat healthy food.
a) emergency b) immune c) athletic d) injured

6. If you don't like the job, you should never have taken it in the first ....
a) situation b) position c) place d) location

7. They .... see us talking or they'll suspect something.
a) had to b) mustn't c) didn't have to d) can

8. A: Can we meet on Thursday morning?
B: Sorry, no. I .... go to the dentist at 11:00.
a) had to b) mustn't c) have to d) shouldn't

9. He's got a lung problem and he .... go to hospital every two weeks.
a) has to b) doesn't have to c) mustn't d) have to

10. Ali .... his car to the market yesterday as it was very nearby.
a) must have driven b) had to drive
c) doesn't have to drive d) needn't have driven

11. A: Ola lost her passport. .... get a new one?
B: No, she didn't. She found it in her purse.
a) Did she have to b) Will she have to c) Does she have to d) Is she having to

12. When did he .... give the books back?
a) has to b) have to c) have got to d) had to

13. Mr Ali : Hi, Ahmed. Where's your dad?
Ahmed : Oh, he .... go to work because there was an extra task although it was his day off.
a) had got to b) must c) had to d) doesn't have to

14. You .... a lot of conference calls in your last job, did you?
a) didn't have to do b) have to do
c) has to do d) needn't have done

15. You .... be a genius to see that it's not going to work.
a) didn't have to b) needn't c) can't d) are supposed

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Our survival has always wholly depended on the natural resources of the Earth. The natural resources are the blessing that has provided us with abundant elements to make our life comfortable and prosperous.

Resources are things that we use. Natural resources come from the Earth. Many of our natural resources are limited. This means that they will not last forever. Some resources are renewable. This means the resource can be replaced or grown. You can plant a new tree when you cut one down. Other resources are not renewable. This means that they cannot be replaced or grown. You can dig coal out of the ground. Once the coal is used, it is gone.

Many of the Earth's natural resources are limited, but people can help conserve those resources. When you try to conserve a natural resource, you use less of it so it does not get used up so fast. One way that people conserve fuel, like gasoline, is by riding a bicycle or walking. This works well when the distance is short. We don't have to drive everywhere.

Water is a very important natural resource. We all need it to live. We can conserve water by making sure that our pipes and faucets do not leak. We can also conserve water by making smart choices. One choice is to use the dishwasher and washing machine only when they are full. Another choice is to turn off the water when you brush your teeth. We can all make a difference!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. Many of our natural resources will not last forever, so they are ....

a) without end b) sustainable c) permanent d) limited

17. Riding a bicycle or walking can help ....

a) find new resources b) use up energy
c) conserve fuel d) conserve water

18. Why is water such an important natural resource?

a) Because it is nonrenewable. b) Because we all need it to live.
c) Because we use it in washing. d) Because it can be replaced.

19. The best title to the passage is "......................".

a) How to keep our natural resources
b) Water is a natural resource
c) Coal, oil and natural gas are nonrenewable resources
d) Our renewable resources of energy

20. Natural resources are around us like ....

a) fuel and electricity b) bicycles and wind
c) gasoline and water d) coal and logs

21. Renewable resources are those which can ....

a) be used up slowly b) be replaced or grown
c) be invented in labs d) conserve fuel

22. Although many of the Earth's natural resources are limited, it's possible to ....

a) waste them b) sell them
c) import them d) save them

23. If your destination is not far, it's better ....

a) to go on foot b) to take a taxi
c) not to go anywhere d) to buy an electric car

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Health care is considered an important element in increasing production. A healthy worker can work harder and more efficiently than a sick one.

a) تُعتبر الرعاية الاجتماعية عنصرًا هامًا فى زيادة الإنتاج. لا يمكن للعامل المصاب أن يعمل بجدية أكبر و بكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

b) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا هامًا فى زيادة الإنتاج. يمكن للعامل المصاب أن يعمل بجدية أكبر و بكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

c) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا هامًا فى زيادة الإنتاج. لا يمكن للعامل السليم أن يعمل بجدية أكبر و بكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

d) تعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا هامًا فى زيادة الإنتاج. يمكن للعامل السليم أن يعمل بجدية أكبر و بكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- نبهت أزمة فيرس كورونا الكثيرين إلى أهمية اتباع إجراءات صحية سليمة للوقاية من الأمراض و تعزيز الحياة الصحية فى كل مراحل الحياة.

a) The coronavirus case alerted many people to the importance of following sound health measures to prevent diseases and promote a healthy life at all stages of life.

b) The coronavirus crisis alerted many people to the importance of following sound health measures to prevent diseases and promote a healthy life at all stages of life.

c) The coronavirus crisis altered many people to the importance of following sound health measures to prevent diseases and change a healthy life at all stages of life.

d) The coronavirus crisis mentioned many people to the importance of following unique health measures to prevent diseases and defy a healthy life at all stages of life.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think Cordelia was wise not to say much about her love to her father? Why?

....

....

2. King Lear isn't tolerant of people who don't agree with him. Do you agree? Why?

....

....

3. If you were the King of France, would you marry Cordelia despite her father's anger with her? Why?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

- The role of mass media such as television in spreading awareness about the importance of a healthy lifestyle.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The chef asserted that we should make sure to add the right .... of salt to the recipe.
   a) account b) quality c) length d) amount
2. My friend often .... together with his friends after work.
   a) goes b) makes c) gets d) pretends
3. Medals are usually worn only on ceremonial ....
   a) accidents b) occasions c) prohibitions d) intentions
4. The Galápagos Islands is home to several .... species of trees.
   a) dangerous b) native c) modern d) deadly
5. Refreshments will be .... for free at the college's reception party.
   a) served b) reserved c) saved d) perplexed
6. The curry was too hot; it was the .... thing I've ever eaten!
   a) spicier b) spicy c) spiciest d) most spicy
7. People in the countryside often cook food that's .... than the food people eat in cities.
   a) more traditional b) traditional c) the most traditional d) traditionally
8. Many people think that nut biscuits are .... the other biscuits on the menu.
   a) good than b) better than c) the best d) so good as
9. Vegetable curry costs 3 pounds and all the other meals at the restaurant cost .... than that.
   a) much b) most c) more d) many
10. Butter biscuits are .... of all the other biscuits in the market.
    a) much sweeter b) sweet c) sweeter d) the sweetest

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Nature provides us with a variety of foods. From fruits to vegetables, from dairy food to seafood, everything is available.

a) توفر لنا الطبيعة مجموعة متنوعة من الأطعمة. من الفاكهة إلى الخضار، من منتجات الألبان إلى المأكولات البحرية، كل شيء رخيص.

b) توفر لنا الطبيعة مجموعة ثابتة من الأطعمة. من الفاكهة إلى الخضار، من منتجات الألبان إلى المأكولات البحرية، كل شيء متاح.

c) توفر لنا الطبيعة مجموعة متنوعة من الأطعمة. من الفاكهة إلى الخضار، من منتجات الألبان إلى المأكولات البحرية، كل شيء متاح.

d) توفر لنا الطبيعة مجموعة متفرقة من الأطعمة. من الفاكهة إلى الخضار، من منتجات الألبان إلى المأكولات البحرية، كل شيء مفيد.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- الانضباط فى العمل هو سر تقدم الشعوب، عندما يكون الشخص ملتزمًا فى عمله، يزداد الإنتاج و يتطور.

a) Discipline at work is the secret of peoples' progress. When a person is committed to his/her work, the production increases and gets developed.

b) Discipline at work is the secret of peoples' progress. When a person is connected to his/her work, the production increases and gets developed.

c) Discipline at work is the secret of peoples' responsibility. When a person is committed to his/her work, the production increases and gets developed.

d) Discipline at work is the secret of peoples' progress. When a person is committed to his/her work, the deduction increases and gets developed.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Good families teach their children to treat other people with ....
   a) disrespect b) rudeness c) power d) respect
2. Egypt faces a lot of .... problems which need creative ideas to solve.
   a) modern b) complicated c) implied d) updated
3. Most of the meat .... of factories must be checked well.
   a) examples b) purchases c) fashions d) products
4. I usually meet most of my close .... in Eid El-Fitr and Eid Al-Adha.
   a) enemies b) relatives c) heroes d) opponents
5. One of the good uses of Facebook and Twitter is that people can .... their ideas with each other.
   a) share b) divide c) spill d) unite
6. Why does he always come to see me at .... possible time?
   a) bad b) the worst c) worse d) badly
7. That hotel is .... building in the town.
   a) the oldest b) older than c) the eldest d) elder
8. I didn't spend as much money as you. You spent .... money than me.
   a) much b) more c) many d) most
9. The meal didn't cost as much as I expected. The meal cost .... I expected.
   a) little b) the least c) less than d) more than
10. Kareema's hair isn't as long as it used to be. Kareema used to have .... hair.
   a) the longer b) a long c) longest d) longer

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Success is something that needs determination. No one can achieve success without facing different and difficult conditions in life.

a) النجاح هو شيء يحتاج إلى العزيمة. لا أحد يستطيع أن يحقق النجاح دون تجنب ظروف مختلفة وصعبة فى الحياة.
b) النجاح هو شيء يحتاج إلى العزيمة. لا أحد يستطيع أن يحقق النجاح بمواجهة ظروف مختلفة وصعبة فى الحياة.
c) النجاح هو شيء يحتاج إلى العزيمة. لا أحد يستطيع أن يحقق النجاح دون مواجهة ظروف مختلفة وصعبة فى الحياة.
d) النجاح هو شيء يحتاج إلى الصبر. لا أحد يستطيع أن يحقق النجاح دون مواجهة ظروف مختلفة سهلة فى الحياة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- الصداقة الحقيقية هى ما يعطينا سببًا للبقاء أقوياء فى الحياة فنحن نحتاج إلى صداقة حقيقية لنكون سعداء.

a) True friendship is what gives us a result for staying strong in life. We need true friendship to be happy.
b) True friendship is what gives us a reason for staying strong in life. We need temporary friendship to be happy.
c) True friendship is what gives us a reason for staying healthy in life. We need true friendship to be happy.
d) True friendship is what gives us a reason for staying strong in life. We need true friendship to be happy.

Unit 2 Al-Adwaa Unit Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourists usually enjoy safari trips in distant places in Egypt. The synonym of the adjective "distant" is "..................".
   a) nearby b) familiar c) isolated d) far-fetched
2. My grandfather has a very .... view of women thinking that they shouldn't have higher positions.
   a) developed b) modern c) old-fashioned d) common
3. As a national tradition, most Americans .... Thanksgiving and Fourth of July!
   a) coordinate b) collaborate c) cooperate d) celebrate
4. We all need to learn to accept people who have different .... from ours.
   a) releases b) treaties c) riches d) beliefs
5. A .... is a written set of questions which you give to a large number of people to collect information.
   a) questionnaire b) license c) degree d) permission
6. My friend has worked hard to .... his goal and become a doctor.
   a) score b) achieve c) fight d) astonish
7. Ayman is a successful sportsman, but his brother is .... than him.
   a) as successful b) most successful c) more successful d) more successfully
8. My sister has a soft voice, but my teacher's voice is .... than hers.
   a) so soft b) more soft c) softest d) softer
9. I always arrive at school a little later .... my schoolmates.
   a) as b) than c) from d) to
10. I am afraid his situation is going from bad to ....
    a) worse b) worse than c) worst d) badly
11. It's becoming .... to attract new customers. What we need is a new strategy.
    a) hard and hard b) harder and hardest c) hard and harder d) harder and harder
12. I'm walking as fast as I can. I can't walk ....
    a) faster than b) faster c) fastest d) fast and fast
13. Osama is as tall as his brother. This means that they are the same ....
    a) length b) age c) height d) width
14. She was happy when she got the job, but two weeks .... she was fired.
    a) latter b) later c) latest d) last
15. I think I have a .... more patience than you.
    a) more b) lot of c) few d) little

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If we look around us, we see motion happening everywhere. We see it in the movement of vehicles, people walking, aeroplanes flying, a ball rolling and animals running. Basically, it is an important part of our lives. However, there is much more to motion and it has a great impact on many things that we are part of. We can watch things around us move. When something is in motion, it changes its position. Objects can move from one place to another. They can move in many directions. If you roll a ball, it might move in a straight line. It might also move in a curve. A swing can move back and forth. A light switch can move up and down. Fans have blades that move in a circle. If you want to know if something is moving, you can compare it to other things around it that are not moving. If the things behind the object are changing, the object is probably moving. If they are not changing, the object is probably not moving.

You can measure the distance an object moves. Just measure the distance between where it was when it started to move and where it was when it stopped.

Distance can be measured in inches, feet, yards or miles. Those measurements are in the customary system. It can also be measured in millimetres, centimetres, metres and kilometres. Those measurements are in the metric system.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. When something is in motion, what does it change?

a) Size. b) Height.

c) Position. d) Weight.

17. How does a swing move?

a) Up and down. b) Back and forth.

c) Back and up. d) Back and right.

18. How does a light switch move?

a) Back and up. b) Back and forth.

c) Back and right. d) Up and down.

19. What are the units of measurement you could use to measure distance?

a) Inches, feet, yards or miles. b) Inches, pounds, grimes or miles.

c) Tones, kilograms, yards or miles. d) Hectares, feet, tones or miles.

20. We know that something is moving when ....

a) it makes noise b) objects behind it are changing

c) balls are moving around it d) it exceeds a mile

21. The distance between the start point of an object and the ending point means that ....

a) the object moved b) the object was stable

c) the object is heavy d) the object will move

22. The word "impact" in the passage can be replaced by the word ....

a) move b) effect

c) change d) response

23. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to a ....

a) moving object b) direction

c) straight line d) ball

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Our world consists of different types of cultures. These cultures have varieties of dishes of food which are commonly used in every country.

a) يتكون عالمنا من أنماط مختلفة من الحضارات. تحتوى هذه الثقافات على أنواع من الأطباق المستخدمة خاصة فى كل بلد.

b) يتكون عالمنا من أنماط متشابهة من الثقافات. تحتوى هذه الحضارات على أنواع من الأطباق المستخدمة عادة فى كل بلد.

c) يتكون عالمنا من أنماط مختلفة من الثقافات. تحتوى هذه الثقافات على أنواع من الأطباق المستخدمة بصورة عامة فى كل بلد.

d) يتكون عالمنا من أنماط مختلفة من الثقافات. تحتوى هذه الثقافات على أنواع من الأطباق المستخدمة عادة فى معظم البلدان.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- الغذاء المفيد هو الغذاء الذى يحتوى على جميع العناصر الغذائية وبكميات مناسبة لاحتياجات الجسم، لكن معظم الناس يهتمون بالطعم ولا يهتمون بالمكونات.

a) Useful food is the food that contains all the nutrients and in suitable quantities for the needs of the body, but most people care about the taste not the ingredients.

b) Useful food is the food that contains all the nutrients and in suitable qualities for the needs of the body, but most people care about the taste not the ingredients.

c) Useful food is the food that contains all the nutrients and in suitable quantities for the needs of the body, but most people care about the taste not the compounds.

d) Useful food is the food that excludes all the nutrients and in suitable quantities for the needs of the body, but most people care about the taste not the ingredients.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Cordelia, would you ask your two sisters to look after their father before leaving with her husband? Why?

....

....

2. Do you think that Edmund has the right to share his father's inheritance? Why?

....

....

3. "I need these two fools to make my plan work." Do you agree with Edmund's opinion about his father and his brother? Why?

....

....

27. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

- You tell your English online friend about the food which the Egyptian people eat at different festivals and occasions. Your name is Kareem and your email address is: kareem@gmail.com. Your friend is Miller and his email address is: miller100@gmail.com

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 3 Quiz 5 | on Part (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should work hard to achieve gradual and .... economic growth which will eventually lead to great progress.
   a) temporary b) movable c) avoidable d) sustainable
2. I was impressed by the .... of dishes in the restaurant.
   a) mixture b) variety c) collaboration d) collocation
3. Many cleaning products contain .... that can be harmful.
   a) chemicals b) ingredients c) toxin d) recipes
4. .... is animals, such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm.
   a) Livestock b) Dairy c) Household d) Poultry
5. Rice is the main .... for more than half of the world's population.
   a) ingredient b) receipt c) crop d) chemical
6. The police in my country are known to be very brave and strict. They .... any thief easily.
   a) are arresting b) will arrest c) would arrest d) will be arresting
7. This time next week, I .... for the airport.
   a) have left b) will leave c) will be leaving d) leave
8. Before I go to China next year, I .... some Cantonese.
   a) am learnt b) am going to learn c) learn d) was learning
9. This building is old. It .... at any time.
   a) will collapse b) is collapsing
   c) collapses d) is going to collapse
10. I .... the project with other members and see what they think about it.
    a) will discuss b) will be discussing c) am discussing d) discussed

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Global warming has become a serious problem and needs more attention. It is not a result of a single cause but several causes.

a) أصبح الاحتباس الكونى مشكلة خطيرة وتحتاج إلى مزيد من الاهتمام. إنه ليس نتيجة لسبب واحد ولكن لأسباب عديدة.

b) أصبح الاحتباس الحرارى مشكلة خطيرة وتحتاج إلى مزيد من الاهتمام. إنه ليس نتيجة لسبب واحد ولكن لأسباب عديدة.

c) أصبح الاحتباس الحرارى مشكلة خطيرة وتحتاج إلى مزيد من الاهتمام. إنه ليس نتيجة لسبب خطيرولكن لأسباب عديدة.

d) أصبح الانخفاض الحرارى مشكلة خطيرة وتحتاج إلى مزيد من الاهتمام. إنه ليس نتيجة لسبب واحد ولكن لأسباب عديدة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

يحتاج الجميع إلى تناول طعام صحى أكثرمن أى وقت مضى، لذا يجب أن نشجع عادات الأكل الجيدة التى تساعد أجيالنا القادمة على أن تكون بصحة جيدة.

a) Everyone needs to eat healthier food than ever before, so we should encourage good eating habits that help our future generations be healthy.
b) Everyone needs to eat healthier food than ever before, so we should discourage good eating habits that help our future generations be wealthy.
c) Everyone needs to eat healthier food than ever before, so we should encourage good eating habits that help our future companies be healthy.
d) Everyone needs to eat healthier ingredients than ever before, so we should encourage good eating habits that help our future generations be healthy.

Unit 3 — Quiz 6 | on Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The lady was relieved when she knew that the dress is also .... in larger sizes.
   a) readable b) acceptable c) available d) probable
2. Police experts are still collecting .... at the scene of the crime.
   a) fiction b) art c) evidence d) science
3. These photographs are a direct .... with the past.
   a) method b) link c) space d) travel
4. We're looking for someone to .... our secretary who has just retired.
   a) replace b) place c) renew d) destroy
5. Why don't we have breakfast .... for a change? The weather is very nice.
   a) indoor b) indoors c) outdoor d) outdoors
6. In the future, scientists and engineers .... hard to reduce the effects of climate change.
   a) will be worked b) will be working c) will have worked d) work
7. Don't ask Ahmed to cook the meat – he .... it.
   a) is burning b) is going to burn c) will be burning d) will burn
8. I'm still not feeling very well, so I think I .... the doctor some time this week.
   a) am going to see b) won't see c) seeing d) see
9. Hala .... us to organise the party at 7 tomorrow. This is arranged.
   a) will be helping b) will help c) helps d) is going to help
10. I haven't tidied my room yet, but I promise I .... it this afternoon.
   a) do b) will do c) am going to do d) have done

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Junk food does not only damage the heart but the liver as well. It causes diabetes amongst people from an early age.

a) الوجبات السريعة لا تضر القلب فقط، ولكن الكلى أيضًا. فهى تسبب مرض السكرى بين الناس فى سن متأخرة.

b) الوجبات السريعة لا تضر القلب فقط، ولكن الكبد أيضًا. فهى تسبب مرض السكرى بين الناس فى سن مبكرة.

c) الوجبات السريعة لا تضر القلب فقط، ولكن الكبد أيضًا. فهى تسبب مرض السكرى بين الناس فى سن متأخرة.

d) الوجبات الدسمة لا تضر القلب فقط، ولكن الكبد أيضًا. فهى تسبب مرض السكرى بين الناس فى سن مبكرة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- التخطيط الجيد هو أحد العناصر الأساسية التى تساعد الشخص على أن يكون ناجحًا، به تستطيع تحقيق حتى أصعب الأهداف فى الحياة.

a) Good planning is one of the essential elements that helps a person to be successful, with which you can achieve even the most difficult goals in life.

b) Good explaining is one of the essential elements that helps a person to be successful, with which you can achieve even the most difficult goals in life.

c) Good planning is one of the proper elements that helps a person to be successful, with which you can achieve even the most difficult goals in life.

d) Good planning is one of the essential elements that helps a person to be aimful with which you can achieve even the most difficult goals in life.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In my ...., we should support all efforts to end disputes and wars in the world.
a) site b) view c) thought d) detection

2. The first thing I noticed about the little girl was her blue eyes. The antonym of the verb "notice" is "........................".
a) intend b) protect c) regard d) ignore

3. Egypt is hoping to achieve .... economic growth which will improve people's lives.
a) movable b) sustainable c) temporary d) detestable

4. Hard work, patience and determination are the essential .... for success.
a) chemicals b) paints c) ingredients d) components

5. A/An .... is a very simple plant without a stem that grows near or in water.
a) yield b) crop
c) algae d) hydroponic

6. The researchers need to .... samples of children in their study about the new virus.
a) consist b) enclose c) include d) detect

7. Riham is going on holiday soon. This time next week, she .... in the Mediterranean Sea.
a) will sail b) 'll be sailing c) sails d) 'll sail

8. A: We haven't got any sugar.
B: I know. I .... some this afternoon.
a) won't buy b) will have bought
c) will be bought d) am going to buy

9. My little grandchild .... three next Friday.
a) is going to be b) will have been
c) will be d) would be

10. In two years' time, Imam .... English at university.
a) will be studying b) will study
c) will be studied d) studies

11. I .... to the Book Fair to buy the books I need. This is my intention.
a) will have gone b) am going to go
c) am going d) will go

12. No one will meet you when you arrive. I........................, and Galal will be working at that time.
a) will study b) study
c) will be studying d) will have studied

13. We will all be having dinner and .... the next holiday.
a) discussing b) discuss
c) are discussing d) have discussed

14. I love Assuit. I .... there next year.
a) won't go b) go
c) will probably go d) am not going to go

15. The band .... England next May. They have already made arrangements.
a) will visit b) are going to visit c) visit d) are visiting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Reading is a very good habit that one needs to develop in life. Good books can inform you, enlighten you and lead you in the right direction. Reading is important because it is good for your overall well-being.

You read all the time. Sometimes you read just for fun. Other times you read for schoolwork. No matter what you are reading, what you read has meaning. You can connect with what you read.

Making connections is important. It's giving your brain a place to store what you read. Your brain is like a file box. The new information is kept in a safe place. You can think about it later. When you want to use the information, it's there in your brain. The more connections you make, the better. If you have a lot of connections, your brain can work faster. If you have many ways to think about something, the information will be easier to find.

There are different ways to connect as you read. One kind of connection is self-to-text. This is when you realise something you read in a story has happened to you in your own life. Usually, this kind of connection comes with the emotions you felt at that time. It may make you feel happy, afraid, or sad. Another kind of connection is text-to-text. This is when reading a story reminds you of a story you have read before. The last kind of connection is text-to-world. It reminds you of something you have seen happen to someone you know or have seen in the news.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. No matter what you are reading, it is ....

a) beneficial b) useless c) harmful d) destructive

17. When you remember something that happened to you through reading, it's .... connection.

a) a self-to-self b) a self-to-text
c) a text-to-text d) a text-to-world

18. The more connections you make, the .... your brain works.

a) more difficult b) slower c) faster d) harder

19. The antonym of the word "realise" is "......................".

a) take in b) become conscious c) understand d) misunderstand

20. When we make connections while reading, this is good for ....

a) heart b) brain c) muscles d) education

21. A text-to-world connection happens when ....

a) you relate something to a piece of news
b) you remember a personal experience
c) you relate a story to another story
d) you read in foreign countries

22. Reading benefits people when they ....

a) read for fun b) read in the morning
c) read for school work d) just read

23. The writer is comparing our brain to ....

a) a book b) a library c) a file container d) a computer

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The concept of sustainability is applied towards the production of food using farming techniques and practices that help to conserve natural resources.

a) يُطبق مفهوم الاستدانة على إنتاج الأغذية باستخدام تقنيات وممارسات الصناعة التى تساعد على الحفاظ على الموارد الطبيعية.

b) يُطبق مفهوم الاستدامة على إنتاج الأغذية باستخدام تقنيات وممارسات الثقافة التى تساعد على الحفاظ على الموارد الطبيعية.

c) يُطبق مفهوم الاستدامة على إنتاج الأغذية باستخدام تقنيات وممارسات الزراعة التى تساعد على الحفاظ على الموارد الطبيعية.

d) يُطبق مفهوم الاستدامة على إنتاج الأغذية باستخدام تقنيات وممارسات الزراعة التى تساعد على الحفاظ على الموارد الصناعية.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- فى حين أن زيادة الوزن أصبحت إحدى مشكلات الدول الغنية، لا يزال الناس فى بعض الدول الفقيرة يعانون من سوء التغذية، بل يصابون بالمرض بسبب الغذاء غير الآمن.

a) While overweight has become a problem for rich companies, people in some poor countries still suffer from malnutrition and even get sick because of unsafe food.

b) While overweight has become a problem for rich countries, people in some poor countries still avoid malnutrition and even get sick because of safe food.

c) While overweight has become a problem for rich countries, people in some remote countries still suffer from malnutrition and even get sick because of unsafe food.

d) While overweight has become a problem for rich countries, people in some poor countries still suffer from malnutrition and even get sick because of unsafe food.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Should Kent be punished for hitting Oswald? Why?

....

....

2. What do you think of the Fool's remarks on King Lear's situation?

....

....

3. In your opinion, is Goneril right to object to the behaviour of her father and his soldiers and followers? Why?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

In the future, more and more food will be made in labs. Would you prefer this kind of food? State your opinion.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 4 Quiz 7 on Part (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I had to buy a new suit because .... dress is preferable at job interviews.
a) normal b) formal c) occasional d) feast

2. Our nursery teacher didn't punish any child who did wrong severely. She just ....
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

3. Bill Gates, the designer of Windows computer systems, is really a great ....
a) searcher b) editor c) explorer d) innovator

4. It is a good idea to talk to your students in a friendly ....
a) sound b) tone c) intention d) note

5. The website hasn't even given us the most .... information about our research topic.
a) great b) unimportant c) trivial d) basic

6. It was supposed to be a secret. You .... have told her.
a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) could

7. My father always encourages me .... useful things and not to waste my time.
a) to do b) not to do c) to doing d) to be done

8. The meat is a bit burnt. You .... have cooked it for so long.
a) can't b) should c) shouldn't d) couldn't

9. Soha's late. She .... have forgotten about the meeting.
a) should b) can't c) couldn't d) could

10. I thought I saw Youssif in town, but I .... have been wrong.
a) should b) could c) shouldn't d) couldn't

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- People who are willing to take the risk, will successfully achieve their goals. If you just dream about something without doing anything, you will fail.

a) الأشخاص الذين يتجنبون المخاطرة، سوف يحققون أهدافهم بنجاح. إذا كنت تحلم بشىء ما دون أن تفعل شيئًا، فسوف تفشل.
b) الأشخاص الذين يرغبون فى المخاطرة، سوف يحققون أهدافهم بنجاح. إذا كنت تحلم بشىء ما دون أن تفعل شيئًا، فسوف تفشل.
c) الأشخاص الذين يرغبون فى المخاطرة، سوف يحققون أمنياتهم بنجاح. إذا كنت تحلم بشىء ما دون أن تفعل شيئًا، فربما تفشل.
d) الأشخاص الذين يرغبون فى المخاطرة، سوف يحققون أهدافهم بنجاح. إذا كنت تتوقع شيئًا ما دون أن تفعل شيئًا، فسوف تفشل.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- كل ما نستخدمه فى حياتنا اليومية هو نتاج التكنولوجيا، ومع ذلك فقد تتسبب فى أضرار جسيمة للبيئة المحيطة بنا.

a) Everything we use in our daily lives is a cause of technology. However, it can cause serious damage to our surroundings.
b) Everything we use in our daily lives is a product of technology. However, it can cause serious benefits to our surroundings.
c) Everything we use in our daily lives is a product of technology. However, it can cause serious damage to our surroundings.
d) Everything we use in our usual lives is a product of technology. Therefore, it can cause serious damage to our surroundings.

Unit 4 Quiz 8 on Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The actor was really angry at the rude .... on his post.
   a) contents b) images c) comments d) symbols
2. The .... of the story we studied last year was "*Treasure Island*".
   a) address b) title c) speech d) text
3. The mobile has become the easiest way to .... in touch with other people.
   a) leave b) sleep c) keep d) move
4. Facebook is the most widely used social .... website in the world.
   a) service b) media c) status d) work
5. The computer company is doing an extensive .... on their new software.
   a) inspection b) search c) survey d) estimation
6. A: Where's Ahmed's camera?
   B: He .... have taken it with him. It's not here.
   a) ought to b) can't c) should d) could
7. The plan .... wrong, but in fact it was a great success.
   a) should have gone b) must have gone c) could have gone d) can't be
8. My teacher always advises us .... during exams.
   a) to cheat b) not to cheat c) to cheating d) to be cheated
9. A: I've done the washing up for you.
   B: Oh, you really .... have!
   a) should b) can't c) shouldn't d) may
10. She .... have gone to the party with her friends, but she didn't.
   a) must b) could c) can't d) couldn't

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Education makes us better users of technology. It certainly provides the technical skills necessary for using technology.

a) يجعلنا التعليم مستهلكين أفضل للتكنولوجيا، وهو بالتأكيد يوفر المهارات التقنية اللازمة لاستخدام التكنولوجيا.
b) يجعلنا التعليم مستخدمين أفضل للتكنولوجيا، وهو بالتأكيد يوفر المهارات التقنية اللازمة لاستخدام التكنولوجيا.
c) يجعلنا التعليم مستخدمين أفضل للتكنولوجيا، وهو بالتأكيد يوفر المهارات الصناعية اللازمة لاستخدام التكنولوجيا.
d) يجعلنا التعليم مستخدمين أفضل للتكنولوجيا، وهو بالتأكيد يوفر النظريات التقنية اللازمة لاستخدام التكنولوجيا.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- إن الهواء الذى نتنفسه والماء الذى نشربه والوقود الذى نحرقه هو منحة من الله، لذلك تزداد الحاجة إلى الحفاظ على المصادر الطبيعية وتحقيق التوازن بينها.

a) The air we breathe, the water we drink, and the fuel we burn are a gift from God, so the need to preserve and balance natural resources increases.
b) The air we breathe, the water we drink, and the import we burn are a gift from God, so the need to preserve and balance natural resources increases.
c) The air we breathe, the water we drink, and the fuel we burn are a gift from God, so the need to serve and balance natural resources increases.
d) The air we breathe, the water we drink, and the fuel we burn are a gift from God, so the need to preserve and balance international resources increases.

Unit 4 Al-Adwaa Unit Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It isn't a good idea to .... your personal information on websites that you can't trust.

a) derive b) post c) analyse d) revise

2. I totally disagree .... the common view that money is the main cause of happiness.

a) for b) in c) about d) off

3. We use the .... "cm" for "centimetres", without any full stop after it.

a) indication b) domination c) declaration d) abbreviation

4. Egypt holds the record of winning the most .... in Africa Cup of Nations of football.

a) titles b) names c) headings d) addresses

5. The seriousness of the opening statement of the manager set the .... for the meeting.

a) note b) tone c) sound d) part

6. The story of the new car make was reported on the business .... of the newspaper.

a) title b) college c) section d) degree

7. I expect him .... to dinner.

a) coming b) come
c) to come d) should come

8. Our son promised to clean his room, but it is still messy. He .... it.

a) cannot clean b) couldn't have cleaned
c) can't clean d) shouldn't have cleaned

9. You missed a great party last night. You .... have come. Why didn't you?

a) might b) must c) should d) can't

10. He .... have committed this crime. He wasn't even in the city that night.

a) might b) must c) shouldn't d) couldn't

11. ".................... on the grass as it is wet." Said the gardener.

a) Don't walk b) Walk
c) To walk d) Not to walk

12. Although it was raining heavily, I .... reach my city in time.

a) couldn't b) was able to
c) should d) am able to

13. I don't know why he hasn't called me back. He .... my number.

a) might be forgetting b) must have forgotten
c) could have forgotten d) might forget

14. He .... have taken the train to work yesterday, but he preferred the bus.

a) couldn't b) might
c) must d) could

15. Hazem .... the pencil case at his brother. He might have harmed him.

a) should have thrown b) should throw
c) shouldn't have thrown d) didn't have to throw

▶ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

You may have seen pictures of astronauts. They float around in space. They fly in a space shuttle. Have you ever wondered why they float? Your feet stay firmly on the ground. Why don't theirs? When you drop something, why does it fall? The answer to these questions is something called gravity. It affects everything we do. Gravity is essential for life on earth. Many years ago, a man named Sir Isaac Newton wondered about gravity, too. He watched and tested the way things move and fall on Earth. He wrote his ideas down. Scientists today use a lot of his ideas. Those ideas are now considered laws of science. Gravity is a force that makes all objects attracted to each other. The bigger the object is, the more it attracts things. Since nothing on Earth is bigger than planet Earth itself, all the things and people on Earth are attracted to it. Everything is pulled towards the centre of the planet. That is why things fall to the ground. It is also why people and things stay on the ground instead of floating around in space. Earth is even large enough to attract our moon. That's why we can see it in our sky!

Gravity keeps our muscles and bones, up and working. Gravity allows earth to retain its atmosphere. Gravity, being able to store its energy as "potential energy", allows us to harness it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. Why do your feet stay on the ground instead of floating?

a) Because they are heavy. b) Because there isn't enough air.
c) Because of gravity. d) Because the Earth is very small.

17. Why are things and people attracted to Earth?

a) Because the Earth is attractive.
b) Because the Earth is bigger than other objects.
c) Because there is magnetism in things and people.
d) Because people like the Earth.

18. What can we see in the sky because of gravity?

a) The planets. b) The stars.
c) The sun. d) The moon.

19. The synonym of the word "essential" is "....................".

a) secondary b) unnecessary c) vital d) optional

20. Which best described Newton's Law of Universal Gravitation?

a) Gravity pulling depends on the length of its orbit.
b) The smaller the object, the greater the force.
c) The largest object exerts a force pulling every other object to it.
d) All objects exert a gravitational force on all other objects.

21. Which has a stronger force of gravity, the Earth or the moon?

a) The Earth. b) The moon.
c) They are the same. d) The moon has no gravity.

22. Which has the strongest gravitational pull?

a) The Earth. b) The moon.
c) The sun. d) The North Star.

23. Because of gravity, everything is pulled to the .... of the planet.

a) margin b) centre c) left d) ground

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- **Some people believe that text messaging is a literary disease that will lead to the downfall of the language. However, young people believe that it is a way of innovation.**

a) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية مرض أدبي سيؤدى إلى انهيار اللغة. لذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للتحضر.

b) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية تغير أدبي سيؤدى إلى انهيار اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للتقدم.

c) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل الإلكترونية مرض أدبي سيؤدى إلى انهيار اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للتواصل.

d) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية مرض أدبي سيؤدى إلى انهيار اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للابتكار

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- يتزايد تأثير الهواتف المحمولة فى حياتنا يومًا بعد يوم من خلال الخدمات المختلفة التى توفرها، والشباب حول العالم، بالتأكيد هم الأكثر انفعالا بتكنولوجيا الهواتف من الأجيال التى تسبقهم.

a) The impact of mobile phones in our lives is increasing day by day through the various services they provide, and young people around the world are certainly more excited by mobile technology than the generations before them.

b) The impact of mobile phones in our lives is doubling day by day through the various services they provide, and young people around the world are certainly more excited by mobile technology than the generations after them.

c) The impact of mobile phones in our lives is increasing day by day through the various services they provide, and old people around the world are certainly least excited by mobile technology than the generations before them.

d) The impact of mobile phones in our lives is increasing day by day through the various services they improve, and young people around the world are probably more excited by mobile technology than the generations before them.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. **If you were Edgar, would you easily agree to your brother's advice and escape? Why?**

....

....

2. **What do you think of Regan's reply to the King's complaint about Goneril?**

....

....

3. **"But I'll be faithful to him; the Fool will always stay and let the wise men run away."**
Do you agree with the Fool when he said this? Why?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

- **The mobile phone and social media have affected our social relations badly. Do you agree? Why? Why not?**

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 5 Quiz 9 on Part (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather was a very .... and honest man who would never betray anyone.
   a) doubtful b) distant c) reliable d) disorganised
2. The new engine can .... reduce the amount of petrol used by cars.
   a) affectingly b) effectively c) depressively d) excitedly
3. Due to security reasons, every shop should .... security cameras.
   a) break b) smash c) attach d) install
4. The rich man began .... antiquities many years ago.
   a) cutting b) dragging c) collecting d) detecting
5. King Lear is the main .... of the play we study this year.
   a) role b) character c) part d) servant
6. Although the ticket may .... to be expensive, it is good value for money.
   a) mean b) be supposed c) seem d) be meant
7. Strange as it may ...., my father has never been to Cairo.
   a) seem b) be supposed c) mean d) suppose
8. A calculator .... to help you do mathematical calculations quickly.
   a) supposed b) seems c) means d) is meant
9. The exam .... to start at 10:00 sharp, but the teacher was late.
   a) is supposed b) was supposed c) is seemed d) is meant
10. You .... to listen during the lecture, not talk.
    a) seem b) mean c) are supposed d) suppose

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Everyone should set goals in their lives. This will help them become positive citizens in the society.

a) يجب على البعض وضع أهداف فى حياتهم. فسوف يساعدهم ذلك على أن يصبحوا مواطنين إيجابيين فى المجتمع.
b) يجب على الجميع وضع أهداف فى حياتهم. فسوف يساعدهم ذلك على أن يصبحوا موظفين إيجابيين فى المجتمع.
c) يجب على الجميع وضع أهداف فى حياتهم. فسوف يساعدهم ذلك على أن يصبحوا مواطنين إيجابيين فى المجتمع.
d) يجب على الجميع تتبع أهداف فى حياتهم. فسوف يساعدهم ذلك على أن يصبحوا مواطنين إيجابيين فى البيئة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- على الرغم من أن أنشطة البشر قد تسببت فى أضرار جسيمة للمناخ والنظام البيئى، إلا أنه لم يفت الوقت للبدء من جديد ومحاولة إصلاح ذلك.

a) Although human activities have caused serious damage to the climate and ecotourism, it is not too late to start again and try to fix it.
b) Although human activities have caused serious damage to the climate and ecosystem, it is not too early to start again and try to fix it.
c) Although human activities have caused serious damage to the climate and ecosystem, it is not too late to start again and try to fix it.
d) Due to human activities have caused serious damage to the climate and ecosystem, it is not too late to start again and try to fix it.

Unit 5 — Quiz 10 | on Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The government is doing great efforts to help people who are .... to drugs.
a) addicted b) attained c) attacked d) applied

2. Winning the Premier League can be Mohamed Salah's .... in his career so far.
a) headlight b) light c) highlight d) favour

3. The film .... the way some bad employers treat their employees.
a) punished b) criticised c) rewarded d) praised

4. It can take a long time to .... a new drug for any new disease.
a) install b) reform c) develop d) treat

5. The .... we had at the trip was very affecting as we lost one of our friends.
a) reward b) experience c) award d) experiment

6. Although it .... strange, I have never drunk coffee!
a) means b) seems c) supposed d) is supposed

7. You aren't supposed to smoke in here. It means that it is not ....
a) predicted b) necessary c) advisable d) allowed

8. ATM's .... to let a bank's customers withdraw cash when they need it.
a) meant b) seem c) are meant d) supposed

9. It .... to rain today as the weather forecast said it would be sunny.
a) wasn't supposed b) was supposed c) was meant d) seemed

10. I didn't want to annoy him. I only .... to make him forget about his sadness.
a) seemed b) meant c) supposed d) seem

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Peace and harmony will be maintained through citizenship. When citizens have the spirit of brotherhood, they will support one another.

a) سيتم الحفاظ على السلام والوئام من خلال المواطنة. عندما يتمتع المواطنون من روح الأخوة، فإنهم سيحبون بعضهم البعض.
b) سيتم انتشار السلام والوئام من خلال الوطنية. عندما يتمتع المواطنون بروح الأخوة، فإنهم سيدعمون بعضهم البعض.
c) سيتم الحفاظ على السلام والوئام من خلال المواطنة. عندما يتمتع المواطنون بروح الأخوة، فإنهم سيدعمون بعضهم البعض.
d) سيتم الحفاظ على السلام والوئام من خلال الوطنية. عندما يتمتع المواطنون بروح الأخوة، فإنهم سيتغلبون على مشاكلهم.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- هناك مزايا مختلفة لقراءة الكتب. فهي تحسن معرفتنا في كثير من الموضوعات. علاوة على ذلك، فإن القراءة تجعلنا أكثر حكمة.

a) There are various advantages to reading books. It improves our knowledge of many topics. Moreover, reading makes us wiser.
b) There are various prizes to reading books. It provides our knowledge of many topics. Moreover, reading makes us wiser.
c) There are various advantages to reading books. It proves our knowledge of few topics. Moreover, reading makes us wiser.
d) There are various attempts to reading books. It improves our knowledge of many topics. Whoever, reading makes us wiser.

Unit 5 Al-Adwaa Unit Test

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Emails and Facebook comments are usually scanned for keywords in order to deliver .... advertising to interested customers.

a) targeted b) irrelevant c) derived d) inspected

2. She got fired from her first job for always being late. The synonym of the word "fire" is "........................".

a) fight b) dismiss c) hire d) sack

3. .... are small pieces of information which tell websites where we've been on and what we were looking at.

a) Uploads b) Downloads c) Antiviruses d) Cookies

4. The doctors .... the patient's condition from "serious" to "good".

a) updated b) dated c) upgraded d) outdated

5. Facebook may be considered the most famous internet .... with millions of users.

a) forum b) seminar c) presentation d) reflection

6. I don't think the student was .... attention to what the teacher was saying as he did the wrong homework.

a) having b) paying c) replying d) devising

7. I .... to attend the seminar. The manager expects me to do so.

a) 'm supposed b) am meaning c) seemed d) am seemed

8. The washing machine .... to have been repaired. It's running perfectly now.

a) supposed b) seems c) is supposing d) meant

9. The car .... to be private, but the older son used it as a taxi.

a) seem b) is supposing c) meant d) was meant

10. My brother .... to lose his friend's toys.

a) seems b) was not supposed
c) is supposed d) was supposed

11. This isn't the road we need. It .... clear that there is a mistake.

a) is supposed to b) is meant
c) seems d) is supposed

12. The conference .... to start tomorrow.

a) is supposed b) will suppose
c) supposed d) is supposing

13. The flashing light .... that you must stop.

a) seems b) means c) is supposed d) is meant

14. Everything goes well. It .... that they know what they're doing.

a) is supposed b) is meant c) seems d) is seemed

15. She is very healthy. She .... to take very good care of herself.

a) seems b) is c) has d) is going to

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Heba had worked in nursing for many years. She was in charge of four other nurses and she was respected by each member of the staff at the hospital. It was difficult and sometimes very stressful work. She was responsible for the health of a lot of people. However, she always felt happy when people recovered and finally went home again. She always found this very rewarding.

She worked such long hours that it was sometimes difficult to be sociable after work. She usually went home and watched a film on television with her family. She found this a good way to unwind.

It was a Tuesday morning. Heba had started work very early that day and she was doing her regular check on the patients. She gave them their medicine and made sure that they were comfortable. Then she went to check on a new patient. He was in a private room, separate from the other patients. He was a man who had been sent to hospital the night before after a bad traffic accident.

Heba looked at the man, who was unconscious when he first arrived. Heba had seen him before. He was a famous actor who everybody in her family knew and liked. The doctor said that he had suffered a bad head injury from the crash. He was so ill that he would have to stay in hospital for many weeks. But something was very strange. Heba had seen him in a film the week before. In the film, he had to go to hospital after an accident, and he later died. Heba didn't want that to happen in her hospital!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. Why was the man who came to hospital unconscious?

a) He had fallen asleep. b) He was not alive.
c) He had had a bad accident. d) The nurse did not know.

17. Why do you think that he was in a private room?

a) He was very poor. b) He had a dangerous disease.
c) He didn't like other people. d) He was famous.

18. What was unusual about the actor coming to hospital?

a) The same thing had happened to him in a film.
b) He had never been there before.
c) He was never usually ill.
d) He usually had private doctors.

19. Where does this text come from?

a) A science magazine. b) A newspaper article.
c) A poem. d) A story.

20. What does the underlined word "that" refer to?

a) The actor dying. b) Heba's job as a nurse.
c) What the doctor told her d) Other strange things.

21. What do you think the word "unwind" means?

a) Go to sleep. b) Sit down. c) Relax. d) Make money.

22. Heba was responsible for .... nurses.

a) five b) four c) six d) two

23. The man had been sent to hospital on ....

a) Thursday b) Friday c) Monday d) Sunday

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- It is a must to teach children how to use the internet safely; otherwise, they will fall prey to hackers who may attack their personal information.

a) يجب تعليم الأطفال كيفية استخدام الإنترنت بأمان؛ وإلا فإنهم سيقعون رهينة للقراصنة الذين قد يهاجمون معلوماتهم الشخصية.

b) يجب تعليم الأطفال كيفية استخدام الإنترنت بأمان؛ وإلا فإنهم سيقعون فريسة للمستخدمين الذين قد يهاجمون معلوماتهم الشخصية.

c) يجب تعليم الأطفال كيفية استخدام الفيسبوك بأمان؛ وإلا فإنهم سيقعون فريسة للقراصنة الذين قد يهاجمون معلوماتهم الشخصية.

d) يجب تعليم الأطفال كيفية استخدام الإنترنت بأمان؛ وإلا فإنهم سيقعون فريسة للقراصنة الذين قد يهاجمون معلوماتهم الشخصية.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- يعتبر الاحتيال الإلكتروني أحد أهم التهديدات التي تواجه مستخدمي الإنترنت؛ ولذا تحاول الحكومات وضع الضوابط التي يمكن أن تؤمنهم وتقبض على المجرمين.

a) Cyber fraud is one of the most important threats facing internet customers; therefore, governments are trying to set detections that can secure them and arrest criminals.

b) Cyber fraud is one of the most important mistakes facing internet users; therefore, governments are trying to neglect regulations that can secure them and arrest criminals.

c) Cyber fraud is one of the least important threats facing internet users; therefore, governments are trying to set expectations that can secure them and arrest criminals.

d) Cyber fraud is one of the most important threats facing internet users; therefore, governments are trying to set regulations that can secure them and arrest criminals.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. "I would prefer to stand in front of the King of France and ask him for food." What does this sentence show about the King's feelings at this stage?

....

....

2. If you were King Lear, would you regret what you had done with Cordelia after the bad treatment of Goneril and Regan? Why?

....

....

3. Do you think that Kent meant to work against his country when he sent the soldier with his ring to Dover? Why?

....

....

27. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

- You had a bad experience buying some clothes online. Tell your friend about it. Your name is Rahma and your email address is rahma10@yahoo.com. Your friend is Esraa and her email address is esraa200@yahoo.com.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We all felt .... when we couldn't buy tickets for the final match.
a) appointed b) disappointed c) disagreed d) imparted
2. My parents are still .... my younger brother as a child although he is 18 years old.
a) treating b) curing c) healing d) affecting
3. Mona really .... wasting her time on that film; it was very boring.
a) pleases b) agrees c) regrets d) rejoices
4. The longest running .... in the Olympics is the "Marathon".
a) match b) path c) race d) passage
5. The new student in our class is ....; he refuses to lend anything to us.
a) main b) generous c) benevolent d) mean
6. .... it doesn't rain tomorrow, we will go out for a walk.
a) If b) Unless c) In case of d) Should
7. If she plans things properly, she never .... into a mess.
a) got b) will get c) would get d) gets
8. If you saw her, ... her to call me?
a) tell b) you would tell c) would you tell d) will you tell
9. We wouldn't have taken the train if we .... the tickets.
a) had booked b) hadn't booked c) booked d) didn't book
10. What .... if you are in trouble?
a) do you do b) you will do c) you would do d) did you do

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Pollution affects the quality of life more than one can imagine. And this caused many fatal diseases to humans.

a) يؤثر التلوث على كيفية الحياة أكثر مما يتخيله المرء، وقد تسبب هذا فى العديد من الأمراض المميتة للبشر.
b) يؤثر التلوث على جودة الحياة أكثر مما يتخيله المرء، وقد تسبب هذا فى العديد من الأمراض المميتة للبشر.
c) يؤثر التلوث على جودة المعيشة أكثر مما يتخيله المرء، وقد تسبب هذا فى القليل من الأمراض المميتة للبشر
d) يؤثر التلوث على نوعية الحياة أكثر مما يتخيله المرء، وقد تسبب هذا فى العديد من الأخطاء المميتة للبشر.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- لقد قاد العلم والتكنولوجيا الحضارة الإنسانية إلى الكمال، ومع ذلك، يمكن أن يؤدى سوء استخدامهما إلى عواقب وخيمة.

a) Science and technology have led human cultivation to perfection. However, their misuse can have serious consequences.
b) Science and technology have led human civilisation to restriction. However, their misuse can have serious consequences.
c) Science and technology have led human civilisation to perfection. However, their misuse can have serious consequences.
d) Science and technology have directed human civilisation to perfection. However, their misunderstand can have serious consequences.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Publishing the report about the murder brought .... sad memories to the relatives of the victim.
   a) about b) in c) back d) for
2. My cousin usually argues with his father about .... out with his friends for a long time.
   a) changing b) hanging c) returning d) moving
3. The .... on the picture about the accident made us very angry.
   a) caption b) title c) subtitle d) address
4. My grandfather is 70 years old, but he still has a strong ....
   a) souvenir b) anniversary c) memorial d) memory
5. .... up a phone while talking to your friend can leave a bad impression on him.
   a) Holding b) Raising c) Moving d) Picking
6. Supposing you saved a lot of money, what ....?
   a) you'd do b) would you do
   c) will you do d) would you have done
7. We'll spend the day in the countryside .... that the weather is good.
   a) should b) unless c) providing d) whether
8. .... Ahmed to travel abroad, he would take his family with him.
   a) Were b) Unless c) Should d) If
9. .... his carelessness, he wouldn't have been punished.
   a) In case of b) If c) If it weren't for d) Without
10. .... low blood pressure, consult your doctor immediately.
    a) Provided that b) In case of c) If it hadn't been for d) But for

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- I cannot imagine my life without my family. They are my first teachers who taught me to face the difficulties of life.

a) لا أستطيع تخيل حياتى بدون عائلتى. إنهم معلمى الأوائل الذين علمونى مواجهة صعوبات الحياة.

b) لا أستطيع تخيل حياتى بدون عائلتى. إنهم معلمى الأوائل الذين علمونى مواجهة صعوبات التعليم.

c) لا أستطيع توقع حياتى بدون عائلتى. إنهم معلمى الأوائل الذين علمونى تجنب صعوبات الحياة

d) لا أستطيع تخيل حياتى بدون أصدقائى. إنهم معلمى الأوائل الذين علمونى مواجهة صعوبات الحياة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- ربما يكون الوقت أعظم شىء لدينا. كل شخص لديه الفرصة لتحقيق أقصى استفادة من الوقت بطريقة تعود عليه بالنفع.

a) Maybe time is our greatest thing. Everyone has the opportunity to make the most of the time in a way that respects them.

b) Maybe time is our greatest thing. Everyone has the reason to make the most of the time in a way that benefits them.

c) Maybe time is our happiest thing. Everyone has the opportunity to use most of the time in a way that benefits them.

d) Maybe time is our greatest thing. Everyone has the opportunity to use most of the time in a way that benefits them.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Arab Summit Conference is usually attended by most Arab .... every year.
a) leaders b) employers c) businessmen d) traders

2. Thank you for your donation. It was very generous of you. The antonym of the adjective "generous" is "......................".
a) precious b) miserly c) strange d) charitable

3. The driver .... with relief when the car stopped a few metres before the edge of the cliff.
a) sighed b) cried c) fought d) pleaded

4. A .... is a Christian religious song sung at Christmas usually by a choir at church.
a) track b) concerto c) sonnet d) carol

5. Mr Ehab fell .... with his neighbour because of damaging his garden fence.
a) out b) in c) off d) by

6. The material has been .... with resin to make it waterproof.
a) healed b) treated c) retreated d) fired

7. If you need money, I .... you some.
a) can lend b) won't lend c) lent d) would lend

8. If you finish early, ... me a ring?
a) you will give b) will you give
c) you would give d) would you have given

9. Oil floats if you .... it on water.
a) are pouring b) had poured c) poured d) pour

10. Nawal .... at school tomorrow if she feels better.
a) would be b) will be c) would have been d) is

11. If she hadn't gone there, she .... killed.
a) wasn't b) wouldn't have been
c) hasn't been d) wouldn't be

12. If I .... about his difficulty, I would have helped him.
a) had been known b) knew
c) know d) had known

13. If I .... a lottery, I would spend all my time travelling.
a) had won b) won
c) win d) was winning

14. A: Which conditional is used to talk about past situations that did not happen? B: ....
a) The zero conditional b) The first conditional
c) The second conditional d) The third conditional

15. We wish we .... the matter seriously and phoned the doctor from the beginning.
a) took b) taken c) had taken d) have taken

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Giraffes aren't the only animals with long necks. The African gerenuk's name means "giraffe -necked" in the Somali language. They stand on their hind two legs and extend their necks to reach leaves on tall shrubs. They also use their front legs to pull down branches. This enables them to feed on bushes from six to eight feet in height. The gerenuk's diet consists of leaves from thorn bushes. They also eat buds, flowers, fruit and climbing plants. They do not require water as they get all the moisture they need from their food.

The gerenuk has a small head with large eyes and ears. Males have stout, ringed horns. Related to gazelles, they have scent glands in front of their eyes and on their knees. They use the glands to mark territory. Small groups of female gerenuks may live together with their young or with unattached males. Females range over a territory of one to two miles traversing the males' territory. Fawns are born in thickets apart from the group. The mother keeps the fawn hidden for a time. She leaves to feed but returns to nurse. The mother removes scents that would attract predators by cleaning or eating the fawn's waste.

One way that gerenuks warn others in the group of danger is by making a loud bleat. They communicate with their young with soft bleats. The antelopes make buzzing sounds when alarmed, and they may whistle when annoyed. Predators of the gerenuk include lions, cheetahs, and leopards. Wild dogs and jackals also prey on gerenuks. Habitat loss and destruction threaten gerenuks. This makes it difficult for them to find food and shelter from predators. Conserving the thickets is one way to maintain the survival of this long-necked antelope.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. Which of the following can be the best title for this passage?

a) "The Giraffe's Cousins". b) "The Long-Necked Antelope".
c) "Leaf Eaters". d) "Hidden Fawns".

17. .... are the way by which this animal communicates with each other.

a) Fawns b) Shrubs c) Horns d) Bleats

18. Which of the following can be the best summary for the third paragraph?

a) Generuks are very vocal animals.
b) Gerenuks warn group members in danger.
c) Gerenuks are silent animals.
d) Gerenuks communicate with their young.

19. The antonym of the underlined word "hind" is "....................".

a) front b) back c) beneath d) previous

20. After reading the passage, what do you think the two features that this animal has?

a) It eats leaves and has a small head.
b) It has natural predators and can whistle when annoyed.
c) It has a long neck and does not need water.
d) The mother cares for the young, and the males have horns.

21. This animal does not need water as it ....

a) has enough water in its body b) gets moisture from the plants it eats
c) has enough moisture in its long legs d) can store too much water as camels

22. What does the underlined word "territory" mean as it used in the passage?

a) Globe. b) Society. c) District. d) Nation.

23. This kind of animal has many enemies as the ....

a) fox b) turtle c) antelope d) leopard

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- There are many reasons for admitting our mistakes. This enables us to build better relationships and allows us to take responsibility in our lives.

a) هناك العديد من الأسباب للاعتراف بأخطائنا. هذا يمكننا من بناء علاقات أفضل ويسمح لنا بتحمل المسئولية فى حياتنا.

b) هناك العديد من الأسباب لتفادى أخطائنا. هذا يمكننا من بناء علاقات أفضل ويسمح لنا بتحمل المسئولية فى حياتنا.

c) هناك العديد من الأسباب للاعتراف بأخطائنا. هذا يمكننا من بناء علاقات أفضل ويسمح لنا بالتفكير فى المسئولية فى حياتنا.

d) هناك العديد من الأسباب للاعتراف بعيوبنا. هذا يمكننا من بناء روابط أفضل ويسمح لنا بتحمل المسئولية فى حياتنا.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- إن الشخص الناجح هو الذى يتصرف طبقا لأهداف مُعدة مسبقًا يعمل على تحقيقها، أما الشخص الذى ليس له أهداف فإنه سوف يظل فى مكانه.

a) A successful person is the one who acts according to pre-set goals that he/she is working to relief, and a person who has no goals will remain in his/her place.

b) A successful person is the one who acts according to pre-set goals that he/she is working to achieve, and a person who has few goals will remain in his/her place.

c) A successful person is the one who acts according to pre-set goals that he/she is working to achieve, and a person who has no goals will remain in his/her place.

d) A successful person is the one who acts according to pre-set goals that he/she is working to achieve, and a person who has no goals will run in his/her place.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Gloucester, would you help the King despite Cornwall and Regan's instructions? Why?

....

....

2. Why do you think King Lear insist on taking Poor Tom with him to the place Gloucester had prepared for him?

....

....

3. King Lear and Gloucester are similar in many ways. Do you agree? Why?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

- As well as hard work, correcting mistakes helps a person to succeed. State your opinion.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Part 2
SKILLS



Part 2

(1) Reading Comprehension

(2) Translation

(3) Writing

1 Reading Comprehension

READING MODES أوضاع القراءة

هناك أوضاع /أنواع متعددة من القراءة وكل واحد منها يقدم مشاركة مختلفة فى النص وطرقًا مختلفة للإدراك ووقتا مختلفًا تقضيه فى التفكير فيما قرأته. ومع ذلك، فإنها جميعًا تساهم فى تحسين فهم الكلام المكتوب، ومن أهمها:

Skimming
القراءة السريعة

It means reading a text quickly to get a general idea of the meaning.

وهذا يعنى قراءة النص بسرعة للحصول على فكرة عامة عن المعنى.

Scanning (diagonal reading)
المسح (القراءة المائلة)

It means reading a text quickly in order to find specific information, e.g. figures or names.

وهذا يعنى قراءة النص بسرعة للعثور على معلومات محددة، على سبيل المثال أرقام أو أسماء.

Extensive reading
القراءة الواسعة

It refers to a type of reading in which students read large quantities of material to get a general understanding of a text.

وهذا يشير إلى نوع من القراءة يقرأ فيه الطلاب كميات كبيرة من المادة المعروضة، للحصول على فهم عام للنص.

Intensive reading
القراءة المكثفة

It refers to a type of reading in which students read in detail with specific learning aims and tasks.

يشير إلى نوع من القراءة يقرأ فيه الطلاب بالتفصيل مع أهداف ومهام تعليمية محددة.

Analytical reading
القراءة التحليلية

Reading to identify inference, make conclusions, and evaluate logic and the writer's craft.

يشير إلى نوع من القراءة التحليلية والاستنتاجات وتقييم حرفية الكاتب.

Study reading
القراءة الدراسية

Reading and outlining; note making; mapping. Material/Purpose Textbooks, problem-solving material; information to be recalled for testing; literature.

يشير إلى نوع القراءة التى تتعلق بالتلخيص وعمل ملاحظات والتنسيق أو التخطيط، ويشمل هذا النوع كتب النصوص ومحتوى لحل المشكلات، والمعلومات المطلوب استدعاؤها للاختبار، والأدب.

General reading
القراءة العامة

Read actively with an inquiring mind, recognising main idea and important details.

يشير إلى نوع من القراءة يعتمد على التعرف على الأفكار العامة والتفاصيل المهمة.

GENERAL STRATEGIES FOR READING COMPREHENSION

1. Previewing (Using Prior Knowledge)
2. Predicting
3. Identifying the Main Idea & Summarisation
4. Making Inferences
5. Visualising

Previewing
(Using Prior Knowledge)
المعاينة السريعة
(استخدام المعرفة السابقة)

When students preview text, they tap into what they already know that will help them to understand the text they are about to read. This provides a framework for any new information they read.

عندما يقوم الطلاب بمعاينة النص، فإنهم يؤكدون ما يعرفونه بالفعل، والذى سيساعدهم على فهم النص الذى هم على وشك قراءته. يوفر هذا إطارًا لأى معلومات جديدة يقرءونها.

Predicting
التنبؤ

When students make predictions about the text they are about to read, it sets up expectations based on their prior knowledge about similar topics. As they read, they may mentally revise their prediction as they gain more information.

عندما يقوم الطلاب بعمل تنبؤات حول النص الذى هم على وشك قراءته، فإنه يضع التوقعات بناءً على معرفتهم السابقة حول موضوعات مماثلة. أثناء قراءتهم، قد يراجعون عقليًا تنبؤاتهم أثناء حصولهم على مزيد من المعلومات.

Identifying the Main Idea and Summarisation
تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية والتلخيص

Identifying the main idea and summarising requires that students determine what is important and implicit. In this process, they try to understand the author's purpose in writing the text.

يتطلب تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية والتلخيص أن يحدد الطلاب ما هو مهم. وضمنيًا فى هذه العملية يحاولون فهم غرض المؤلف من كتابة النص.

Making Inferences
القيام بالاستدلالات

In order to make inferences about something that is not explicitly stated in the text, students must learn to draw on prior knowledge and recognise clues in the text itself.

من أجل عمل استنتاجات حول شيء غير مذكور صراحة فى النص، يجب أن يتعلم الطلاب الاعتماد على المعرفة السابقة، والتعرف على القرائن فى النص نفسه.

Visualising
التصور

Students can take advantage of illustrations that are embedded in the text or create their own mental images or drawings when reading text without illustrations.

يمكن للطلاب الاستفادة من الرسوم التوضيحية المضمنة فى النص أو إنشاء صور أو رسومات ذهنية خاصة بهم عند قراءة نص بدون رسوم توضيحية.

توجيهات عامة لقطعة الفهم

يجب اتباع الآتى عند حل سؤال قطعة الفهم:

١ نقرأ القطعة قراءة سريعة استكشافية، ولا نتوقف عند المفردات الصعبة، ويفضل البعض أن يقرأ الأسئلة أولًا.
٢ نقرأ الأسئلة مرة أخرى لتحديد المعلومات التى نبحث عنها.
٣ نقرأ القطعة للمرة الثانية لنبحث عن إجابات الأسئلة.
٤ التمهل فى فهم السؤال ومعرفة معنى كلمات الاستفهام.
٥ التمهل فى استخلاص الإجابة؛ فقد تكون إجابة السؤال الأول فى الفقرة الثانية، وليس شرطًا أن تكون فى الفقرة الأولى.
٦ عدم الانزعاج من عدم معرفة المفردات والجمل الصعبة الواردة فى القطعة، فالمفردات الصعبة واردة لا محالة.
٧ يلزم فهم المعنى العام وتطويع المفردات حسب موضوع القطعة، مع استخدام القدرة على التخمين.
٨ قد نجد إيضاح الكلمة الصعبة فى العبارة التالية لها.
٩ قبل اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة تأكد من أن الإجابات الأخرى غير صحيحة بالمرة.

Comprehension Exercises

Passage No. 1

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Plants are important to us. All the food that we eat comes either directly or indirectly from plants. However, the question is, what do plants eat? Well, they do not actually eat the way we do, but they make their own food. The process by which this takes place is called photosynthesis.

Plants make food in their leaves. The leaves contain a pigment called chlorophyll which gives the leaves their green colour. Besides chlorophyll, plants also need the light from the sun to help in their food production. Besides the sun, plants can also make food with the use of other light sources such as a light bulb. For photosynthesis to take place, plants also need carbon dioxide that is found in the air. Animals and people help in providing carbon dioxide for the plants to make food when they breathe out.

Lastly, but just as important, plants make use of their roots to absorb the nutrients found in the soil to help them make food. When all these different things are present, plants can then make food. In the process of making food, plants release oxygen, which is beneficial to animals and people. Plants, animals and people are dependent on one another to survive, plants provide oxygen for animals and people to breathe, and animals and people provide carbon dioxide for the plants to make food.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where does photosynthesis take place?
a) In the plants' leaves. b) In the plants' trunk.
c) In the plants' roots. d) In the plants' fruit.

2. What does the pigment in the tree do?
a) It gives chlorophyll. b) It gives the leaves their colour.
c) It gives the tree its food. d) It gives us oxygen.

3. Animals and people provide carbon dioxide for the plants to ....
a) kill them b) absorb nutrients found in the soil
c) colour the leaves d) help them make their food

4. The antonym of the word "providing" is "......................".
a) offering b) delivering
c) withdrawing d) making available

5. People and plants are similar as ....
a) they depend on others to live b) they both make their own food
c) they use pigment d) they need nourishment

6. Although animals eat plants, they are necessary to give them ....
a) photosynthesis b) carbon dioxide
c) nutrients d) oxygen

7. The function of the root system is to absorb the nutrients found in the soil and ....
a) keep the tree strong through high winds
b) absorb carbon dioxide
c) give off oxygen
d) give their green colour

8. Plants, animals and people are .... one another to survive.
a) independent of b) getting rid of c) in need of d) afraid of

Passage No. 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The hall was already full. The judges had taken their places at the table in front of the stage. There was thunderous applause as the compère walked on the stage. He announced the start of the finals in the school singing competition. Backstage, the finalists were all nervously waiting for their turn to perform.

From an initial group of 24, the judges had eliminated half and chosen these remaining contestants to take part in the finals. The competition soon began. Each contestant came out and gave his or her best performance. There were some who did not sing as well as they wanted to. When all the finalists had performed, they went back on stage again, this time to perform as a group. Then they went backstage to await the results. They were all so nervous. Some of them burst into tears. The judges took quite a long time to decide. They were all so good.

Finally, the compère went on stage to announce the top three winners who will win lots of attractive prizes. There were screams of joy as well as tears of disappointment. The students filed out of the hall when it was all over. All the school staff–teachers and the headmaster–congratulated the winners on their efforts and took photographs with them.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The above passage describes ....
- a) a national singing competition
- b) an inter-school singing competition
- c) a school singing competition
- d) a community singing competition

2. There were .... contestants at the finals.
- a) 12
- b) 20
- c) 22
- d) 24

3. The contestant performed .... during the finals.
- a) with the judges
- b) as a group only
- c) individually only
- d) individually and in a group

4. 'Tears of disappointment' means ....
- a) the contestants who lost cried
- b) the contestants were disappointed with the prizes
- c) the contestants who won cried
- d) the contestants were disappointed with the judges

5. Because all the contestants performed well, ...
- a) the judges took a long time to arrive at their decision
- b) they were given valuable prizes
- c) the school staff took photographs with them
- d) all of them were confident and sure about winning

6. The synonym of the word "eliminated" is "......................".
- a) announced
- b) declared
- c) excluded
- d) included

7. The competition was about ....
- a) a masterpiece of writing
- b) a piece of art
- c) literature and poetry
- d) sports

8. All the school staff–teachers and the headmaster ....
- a) were happy to take part in the competition
- b) were disappointed with the losers
- c) didn't show any feelings towards the students
- d) were happy with the winners

Passage No. 3

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The bell rang. Miss Fareeda had just finished explaining the last sum to the class. Before she could say another word, some of the students stood up. They were ready to head to the canteen. Miss Fareeda told them sternly, "There isn't any need to rush. There's plenty of food and time for you to have your recess." She insisted that the class went for their recess in an orderly manner.

However, once she was out of sight, the boys started jostling each other down the stairs. There was a lot of pushing, shoving and laughing. Suddenly, there was a loud thud followed by a scream. Everyone on the stairs stopped in their tracks.

It turned out that one of the boys in front had missed a step and fallen. He landed hard on his elbow. The bone jutted out. The boy was whimpering in pain. His friend quickly helped him up and brought him to the office. The principal took one look at the injury and immediately called for an ambulance. While waiting, the other boys in the group were questioned. When told what they were doing on the stairs, the principal shook his head. The injured boy and his friends hung their heads in shame. They apologised for their behaviour. The principal said, "Let this be a lesson to you."

The injured boy was then brought to the hospital. The following week, he returned to school with a cast around his arm.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What was the lesson the class had just before the bell rang?

a) Physics. b) English. c) Maths. d) Chemistry.

2. What caused the loud thud?

a) A boy had fallen down the stairs.
b) Some stairs fell over.
c) There was a fight on the stairs.
d) Some boys were running down the stairs.

3. The boys didn't follow ....

a) the school rules b) Miss Fareeda's advice
c) the traffic rules d) the right stairs

4. The antonym of the word "sternly" is "......................".

a) firmly b) severely c) strictly d) softly

5. As soon as the principal took one look at the injury, he ....

a) called for the ambulance b) blamed Miss Fareeda's
c) screamed loudly d) did nothing

6. The boys realised that they were .... and apologised for their behaviour.

a) innocent b) happy c) guilty d) brave

7. As the boy was screaming, it's thought that ....

a) he was punished by his teacher
b) his arm was broken
c) he had been informed about something bad
d) something bad happened to one of his friends

8. The story teaches us ....

a) to follow other people's advice especially the elderly
b) not to walk down the stairs
c) to keep casts at schools for emergencies
d) to walk quickly or run

Passage No. 4

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I have lived here since I retired last year. My house has a good, clear view of a lake. It's only about a hundred metres from the lake. The road is between my house and the lake. Now I've never been interested in the lake monster, until last Tuesday, I thought it was just a good story to attract tourists. But I've had to change my mind after last Tuesday's experience.

I got up as usual at about 7 and went into my garden. Something attracted my attention to the lake. There was almost no mist that morning, and I could see there was something moving quite fast, going north, in the middle of the lake. It looked like a giant snake, with its head and part of its body above water.

It was about thirty metres long. I rushed into the house to get my camera, but when I was back, it had gone.

I waited and it appeared again, this time nearer the road and my house. I could see it clearly. I managed to take several photographs of it. They haven't come out very well, but one or two of them show the creature quite clearly.

At one point, it swam straight towards me, but then a lorry passed on the road and perhaps it heard the noise of the engine because it disappeared again.

I reckon the whole incident lasted for about fifteen minutes, because it was a quarter past seven the last time I looked at my watch. I've never seen anything so strange in my life.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How long has the writer been retired?

a) A week. b) A month. c) A year. d) Two years.

2. What is there between the house and the lake?

a) Another lake. b) A lorry. c) A monster. d) A road.

3. The writer first thought that the monster was a/an ....

a) reality b) imaginary story c) non-fiction d) truth

4. The writer could see the monster because ....

a) there was no mist
b) he got up early
c) the monster moves fast in front of him
d) he was waiting to see it eagerly

5. The monster disappeared the second time because it ....

a) heard a lorry passing b) saw the writer
c) saw the camera d) saw a snake

6. The synonym of the word "reckon" is ....

a) know b) suppose c) realise d) grasp

7. If you saw a monster one day, you would be ....

a) impressive b) amazing c) frightened d) surprising

8. The writer could take .... clear photos of the monster.

a) a lot of b) several c) many d) few

Passage No. 5

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many people who are looking for a pet dog get a puppy. Puppies are cute, friendly, and playful. But there are good reasons why you should consider getting an adult dog instead.

You have to teach a puppy how to behave. The puppy is housebroken. You have to teach the puppy not to jump up on your guests or chew on your shoes. This is a lot of work.

On the other hand, an adult dog will already know how to do all of the previously mentioned things. Many adult dogs have already been housebroken.

Many adult dogs will not jump on or chew things that you do not want them to jump on or chew. Puppies also have a lot of energy and want to play all of the time. Puppies will not always sleep through the night or let you relax as you watch television.

On the other hand, most adult dogs will wait on you to play. What is more, they will sleep when you are sleeping and are happy to watch television on the couch right beside you.

There is one last reason why you should get an adult dog instead of a puppy. When most people go to the pound to get a dog, they get a puppy. This means that many adult dogs spend a lot of time in the pound, and some never find good homes. So if you are looking to get a dog for a pet, you should think about getting an adult dog. They are good pets who need good homes.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The author thinks that puppies are ....
a) bad pets because they take too much work to own
b) friendly, playful, and hardworking
c) not as cute as adult dogs
d) not as playful as adult dogs

2. As used in paragraph 2, which is the best synonym for "behave"?
a) Listen. b) Understand. c) Train. d) Act.

3. Based on information in the passage, which of the following statements is false?
a) Puppies have a lot of energy. b) Puppies need a lot of attention.
c) Many people get a puppy as a pet. d) Adult dogs do not need to eat very much.

4. The phrase "On the other hand" is used to ....
a) contrast previous information b) support the upcoming paragraph
c) highlight an example d) contradict a later statement

5. A: Why should you get an adult dog instead of a puppy? B: Because ....
a) puppies always sleep through the night
b) puppies don't need to learn how to walk nicely on a leash
c) adult dogs have less energy than puppies do
d) adult dogs jump on and chew things

6. It's clear that the writer of the article ....
a) prefers puppies to adult dogs b) prefers adult dogs to puppies
c) prefers to get both of them at a time d) doesn't like pet dogs

7. According to the passage, puppies can cause troubles unless they are ....
a) small b) cute c) sleep d) trained

8. Dogs always have names like ....
a) people b) cats c) puppies d) lions

2 Translation

مع تغير نظام الترجمة من عام لآخر هناك نوعان من الترجمة إما الترجمة العادية المتعارف عليها وإما الاختيار من متعدد ولكل نوع مهارة معينة يجب معرفتها للإجابة الصحيحة:

النوع الأول (الترجمة من الإنجليزية إلى العربية والعكس)

Translation from English into Arabic

الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية

١. نحدد أجزاء الجملة من حيث الفاعل والفعل والمفعول - أو تكملة الجملة - ونبدأ الترجمة للعربية بالفعل كلما أمكن.

٢. يُحَوَّل المبنى للمجهول إلى المبنى للمعلوم ولكن إذا كان المبنى للمجهول واقعيًا فلا بأس.

٣. يمكن استخدام كلمات وحروف مثل "الواو، من، ثم، كذلك، لهذا، الفاء" لربط المعنى.

٤. يمكن إضافة كلمة أو أكثر للسياق لكى يستقيم المعنى.

٥. نخمن الكلمة الصعبة من التى قبلها أو التى بعدها أو من سياق الجملة.

٦. يمكن التخمين باستخدام مقاطع أول وآخر الكلمة.

٧. إذا لم نستطع التخمين لا نترك مكانها فارغًا.

٨. نلتزم بزمن الجملة فى الترجمة، المضارع يترجم إلى مضارع والماضى يترجم إلى ماض.

٩. نترجم المضارع التام have/ has + P.P إلى: لقد + الفعل الماضى.

Translate into Arabic:

1. The government does its best to enable the Egyptian citizen to face the rising cost of living.

....

....

2. Interest in education and science has become one of the most important aims that the Arab Republic of Egypt tries to achieve.

....

....

3. Computer skills are very necessary to face the severe competition in the labour market.

....

....

4. We should give due care to small productive projects for the youth to solve the problem of unemployment and raise the standard of living.

....

....

5. We must encourage Egyptian businessmen to invest their money in reclaiming the desert to create job opportunities and solve the problem of housing.

....

....

6. Improving products, increasing exports and reducing imports are necessary to achieve economic stability.

....

....

Translation from Arabic into English

الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى اللغة الإنجليزية

تحتاج الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى الإنجليزية إلى مهارة خاصة يتم التدريب عليها من خلال الأجزاء الآتية:

Part (1)

1 تكوين الجملة:

◄ الجملة الإنجليزية الخبرية تتكون من:

Subject الفاعل	verb الفعل	object المفعول	adverb الحال	place المكان	time الزمن
The boy	studies	his lessons	carefully	at home	every day.

مع ملاحظة ان الكلمة الدالة على الزمن يمكن أن تُوضع أول الجملة أو آخرها.

Yesterday, we received an important message from our office in Italy.
We received an important message from our office in Italy yesterday.

◄ الصفة ليس لها مكان فى الجملة فهى تستخدم قبل الاسم أو بعده مسبوقة بـ **v. to be**

I watched an interesting film.
The film I watched was interesting.

◄ وهناك أسماء معينة تستخدم الصفة بعدها، وهى:

everyone/ everybody/ everything/ anyone/ anybody/ anything/ no one/ nobody/ nothing/ someone/ somebody/ something

Did you meet anyone important during your stay in Italy?
I didn't buy anything useful from the exhibition.

◄ والصفات تأتى أيضا بعد **stative verbs** وليس الحال:

He looks happy. The food tastes nice. He seems angry.

2 لاحظ الزمن الذى تكون عليه الجملة (هل هو ماضٍ أم مضارع أم مستقبل؟):

◄ اعتاد أخى أن يشترى كثيرًا من الحلوى ولكن الآن لا يفعل.

My brother used to buy a lot of sweets, but now he doesn't.

3 فاعل الجملة فى اللغة العربية هو الفاعل فى الجملة الإنجليزية والضمير المستتر فى العربية يظهر فى الإنجليزية.

◄ تحاول الحكومة تحسين الوضع الاقتصادى للبلاد بجذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية.

The government tries to improve the economic situation of the country by attracting foreign investments.

4 يمكن ان يكون الفاعل v.ing اذا بدأت الجملة العربى باسم فاعل مثل:

◂ إن زراعة الأشجار أو قراءة الكتب أو أكل اللحوم أو مشاهدة التلفاز أو ممارسة الرياضة، ... إلخ.

يقوى لعب كرة القدم أجسامنا.

Playing football strengthens our bodies.

ويجب ملاحظة أن أى جملة تبدأ بـ v.ing فهى مفرد أى يكون الفعل الأصلى:

(is/ was/ has/ does/ v-s / v-es)

5 نترجم قد أو لقد و بعدهما فعل ماضٍ إلى المضارع التام.

لقد نظفت والدتى الشقة وطهت الطعام.

My mother has cleaned the flat and cooked the food.

6 نترجم لقد إلى زمن الماضى البسيط إذا كان فى الجملة كلمة من كلمات الماضى البسيط.

لقد اتصلت بصديقى مرتين أمس.

I phoned my friend twice yesterday.

7 إذا لم نجد فعلًا فى الجملة إذًا هى جملة اسمية وفى هذه الحالة فالفعل يكون V. to be أو V. to have حسب المعنى (يكون / يملك).

ان العلم هو العمود الفقرى لتقدم أى دولة.

Science is the backbone of the progress of any nation.

لدينا ظروف صعبة هذه الأيام.

We have difficult conditions these days.

Exercises

1 تلعب القراءة دورا هاما فى حياتنا لأنها تمدنا بالمعرفة فى شتى المجالات.

....

2 يعطينا السلام فرصة ذهبية لتنفيذ العديد من المشاريع المفيدة فهو يوفر المال المنفق على الأسلحة.

....

3 السياحة شىء ضرورى لزيادة الدخل القومى ولتنفيذ العديد من المشاريع الإنتاجية الضخمة.

....

4 يعانى عالمنا فى الوقت الحاضر كثيرًا من المشكلات مثل الاحتباس الحرارى وندرة المياه ونقص إنتاج الغذاء.

....

5 يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية على قراءة أفضل الكتب فى العلم والطب والهندسة.

....

6 لدينا العديد من الموارد الاقتصادية التى لو أحسنا استغلالها لأصبحنا من أرقى الأمم.

....

7 لقد ساعد الحاسب الآلى الإنسان على توفير الوقت والجهد وأداء الحسابات بسرعة وبسهولة.

....

Part (2)

استخـدام العطـف بـ and هام جدا

1 بيـن الأفعـال: يكـون الزمـن بعـدها هو نفـس الزمـن الذى قبلـها.

We suggested going out and visiting the Pyramids.
We decided to go out and visit the Pyramids.
We went out and visited the Pyramids.

◄ ونحذف المكرر بعدها للحفاظ على نسق الكلام والجملة وعدم ركاكة الأسلوب.

لقد نجح أخى وحصل على درجات عالية.

My brother has succeeded and got high marks.

◄ حذفنا he has بعد and والفعل got تصريف ثالث.

قُبض على اللص وأرسل إلى السجن.

The thief was arrested and sent to prison.

بعد and حذفنا he was وأبقينا على التصريف الثالث.

2 بيـن الأسمـاء:

◄ نضع comma لأكثر من اسمين و and قبل آخر آسم وإن كان وضع and قبل كل الأسماء جائز وممكن.

I met Ahmed, Osama, Ali and Waleed.
I met Ahmed and Osama and Ali and Waleed.

فلربما كان الشخص يتذكر الأشياء واحدا تلو الآخر ولا يستطيع حصرهم فهو يستخدم and ليقف ثم يتذكر شيئًا آخر وهكذا...+....

3 بيـن الصفـات:

◄ إذا لم تكن هناك أداة العطف "و" فالصفات تترجم من الآخر للأول ولا نضع and ولا comma وعلى اعتبار أن أول صفة للرأى وإن كان هناك أكثر من صفة للرأى فبينهما comma.

تنفذ الحكومة العديد من المشروعات الصناعية القومية الضخمة المفيدة.

The government is carrying out (carries out) a lot of useful huge national industrial projects.

◄ وإن كانت هناك أداة العطف "و" فالصفات تترجم من الأول للآخر ونضع and قبل آخر شىء يذكر.

تعانى العديد من الدول الافريقية والآسيوية من المجاعات والفقر والأمراض والفيضانات.

Many African and Asian countries suffer from famines (starvations), poverty, diseases and floods.

◄ الاسم الجمع العام لا يأخذ the وكذلك الاسم المفرد العام (غير المخصص)

تعطينا الأشجار الظل والأخشاب و الثمار والأكسجين.

Trees give us shade, wood, fruit and oxygen.

◄ الأسماء المعنوية (غير المحسوسة) التى تشير إلى شىء عام لا تأخذ the.

إن التسامح والحب والإخلاص والتعاون من أسمى الصفات الإنسانية.

Tolerance, love, loyalty and cooperation are of the best human qualities.

◄ يُترجم الفعل المضارع فى اللغة العربية إلى زمن المضارع البسيط أو المضارع المستمر.

تبذل الحكومة أكثر جهدها لإيجاد فرص عمل للشباب.

The government is doing (does) its best to provide job opportunities for youth.

يعانى كثير من الناس من ارتفاع الأسعار والبطالة خاصة فى الدول النامية.

A lot of people suffer (are suffering) from the rise in prices and unemployment, especially in developing countries.

◄ طريقة تكوين المضاف والمضاف اليه.

مع العاقل والحيوان والزمن والمكان نضيف الملكية باستخدام 's أو s'.

نستخدم 's إذا لم ينتهِ الاسم المفرد أو الجمع بـ s

نستخدم s' إذا انتهى الاسم المفرد أو الجمع بـ s

ذيل القطة	the cat's tail	يد الولد	the boy's hand
أرجل الضفادع	frogs' legs	حجرة الأولاد	the boys' room
مباراة اليوم	today's match	حجرة الأطفال	the children's room
عمل الأسبوع	the week's work	سكان مصر	Egypt's population
عمل الأسابيع	the weeks' work		

ومع الجماد والأسماء المعنوية لا نستخدم 's أو s' ولكن نستخدم ... the ... of:

نستخدم the قبل الاسم المضاف النكرة و of قبل المضاف إليه المعرفة.

مشكلة التلوث	the problem of pollution	pollution problem
جامعة القاهرة	the University of Cairo	Cairo University
مستوى المعيشة	the standard of living	living standard
نقص الطعام	the shortage of food	food shortage

لقد كسر اللص باب المنزل.

The thief has broken the door of the house.

◄ ويمكن أن نستخدم ... the ... of مع العاقل إذا كان الاسم مكونًا من كلمات كثيرة.

the daughter of one of my friends

◄ ولاحظ الملكية للاسم المركب:

my sister-in-law's car

my mother-in-law's hat

Exercises

1 يجب أن نعتنى بالأطفال ونربيهم جيدًا من جميع النواحى فهم شباب المستقبل.

....

2 الماء ضرورى للحياة وله فوائد كثيرة للإنسان والحيوان فيجب أن نحافظ عليه.

....

3 أجاب الطالب الذكى عن كل الأسئلة الصعبة ولذلك حصل على درجات عالية.

....

4 تحاول الحكومة حل مشكلة البطالة ورفع مستوى المعيشة فى كل مكان.

....

5 يجب أن ندرك قيمة العلم لأنه سلاح الأمم وأساس حضارتها ومصدر تقدمها وازدهارها.

....

Part (3)

- فى الغالب لا نترجم الفعل يعمل أو يقوم إذا جاء معه فعل آخر.

تقوم الأم بمساعدة زوجها فى تربية الأولاد.

Mother is helping (helps) her husband in bringing up children.

- المفعول المطلق لا يترجم وتحول الصفة إلى حال.

يؤثر التلوث على الإنسان تأثيرا سيئا.

Pollution affects man badly.

- بعض الأفعال يأتى بعدها حرف جر فى اللغة العربية ولا تأخذ حرف جر فى اللغة الإنجليزية.

affect	يؤثر على	admire	يعجب بـ
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	suspect	يشك فـ
feel	يشعر بـ	include	يشتمل على
join	يلتحق بـ	sacrifice	يضحى بـ
enjoy	يتمتع بـ	recognise	يتعرف على
arrest	يقبض على	obtain/ get	يحصل على
reach	يصل إلى	fear	يخشى أن
seek	يبحث عن	should/ must	يجب أن

يريد صديقى أن يلتحق بكلية الطب.

My friend wants to join the Faculty of Medicine.

- "إن" لا تترجم ولكن "أن" تترجم إلى **that**

إن الصداقة شىء جميل فى الحياة.

Friendship is a beautiful thing in life.

يعتقد الناس أن المال يجلب السعادة.

People think that money brings happiness.

Exercises

1 تهدف السياسة التعليمية الجديدة إلى تحسين النظام التعليمى وخلق جيل جديد واعٍ بمشكلات بلده.

....

2 تقوم الدولة بتوفير فرص عمل للشباب من خلال إقامة مشروعات ضخمة فى المدن الجديدة.

....

3 دمر الزلزال المدينة تدميرا كاملا وأصيب كثير من الأشخاص إصابات بالغة .

....

4 إن التدخين يدمر الصحة ويضيع المال وإن غير المدخنين يعيشون حياة أكثر صحة من الآخرين.

....

5 لقد استمتعنا بالحفلة أمس وشعرنا بالسعادة لرؤية أصدقائنا القدامى.

....

6 لقد أثبتت مصر أنها لا تخشى الإرهاب الذى لا يعرف فقط إلا الخراب وأنها جادة فى القضاء عليه.

....

7 يعتقد البعض أن النجاح فى الحياة هو الحصول على المال فقط وأن الفقر مصدر الشقاء والبؤس.

....

النوع الثانى (نظام الاختيار من متعدد)

◄ عند اختيار الترجمة الصحيحة أصبح من اللازم والضرورى على الطالب أن يمتلك مهارة قوية جدا للحصول على الدرجة كاملة فلو أخطأ فى أى شىء تصبح الإجابة خطأ كاملا ولهذا يجب على الطالب أن يمتلك قدرات معينة منها:

١- معرفة المهارات الخاصة بالترجمة غير الحرفية.

٢- معرفة المصطلحات والأفعال الاصطلاحية (phrasal verbs) وفى بعض الأحيان الأمثال.

٣- معرفة القواعد كلها من الأزمنة والمفرد والجمع والنكرة والمعرفة وغيرها.

٤- معرفة الفوارق الدقيقة بين الكلمات من حيث spelling والمعنى وغير ذلك.

٥- معرفة المعانى المختلفة للكلمات فبعض الكلمات لها أكثر من معنى.

٦- علامات الترقيم هامة جدا فى الترجمة.

٧- الدراية الكاملة بكيفية الترجمة الصحيحة فإذا عرف الطالب كيف يترجم عرف كيف يختار.

◄ وإليك بعض النقاط الهامة عند اختيار الترجمة.

١- مقارنة الأربع اختيارات بدقة واتباع نظام الاستبعاد مع أول اختلاف.

٢- الفروق يمكن أن تكون فى الهجاء أو اختلاف المعنى أو حروف الجر.

٣- يمكن أن يكون الاختلاف فى زمن الفعل أو حروف الجر.

A) Choose the correct English translation:

- لقد زار الرئيس مدينتنا النظيفة وكرم الطلاب المتفوقين.

a) The President visited our clean city and honour the outstanding students.
b) The President has visited our clean city and honoured the outstanding students.
c) The President visits our clean city and honours the outstanding students.
d) The President visited our clean city and has honoured the outstanding students.

عند اختيار الترجمة الصحيحة فى الجملة السابقة نجد الفرق فى الزمن من مضارع بسيط إلى ماضى بسيط إلى مضارع تام ونجد أن الترجمة تبدأ بـ (لقد) والتى تحتاج الى المضارع التام والعطف بـ and يكون مضارعًا تامًا أيضًا ولكن مع حذف المكرر وهو he has فتصبح الترجمة الصحيحة هى الاختيار (b)

B) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Learning foreign languages helps us read the best books on science, medicine and engineering.

a) تعلم اللغات الأجنبية يساعدنا على قراءة أفضل الكتب فى العلم والدواء والبناء.

b) يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية على قراءة الكتب الجيدة فى العلم والطب والبناء.

c) يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية على قراءة أفضل الكتب فى العلم والطب والهندسة.

d) تعلم اللغات الأجنبية يساعدنا على قراءة أفضل الكتب فى الفن والدواء والهندسة.

يعتمد اختيار الترجمة الصحيحة فى الجملة السابقة على الفرق فى المعنى فكلمة **medicine** تعطى معنى الدواء والطب فالاختيار الصحيح هو(c)

2 The computer has helped man to save time and effort and to perform calculations quickly and easily.

a) ساعد الحاسب الآلى الإنسان على إنقاذ الوقت والجهد وأداء الحسابات بسرعة وبسهولة.

b) لقد مكن الحاسب الإلكترونى الإنسان على توفير الوقت وأداء الحسابات بسرعة وبسهولة.

c) ساعد الحاسب الآلى الرجل على توفير الوقت والجهد وأداء الحسابات بسرعة وبسهولة.

d) لقد ساعد الحاسب الآلى الإنسان على توفير الوقت والجهد وأداء الحسابات بسرعة وبسهولة.

يعتمد اختيار الترجمة الصحيحة فى الجملة السابقة على الفرق فى المعنى فكلمة **save** تعطى معنى ينقذ أو يوفر أو يحمى وأيضا، على ترجمة المضارع التام وهو (لقد) فالاختيار الصحيح هو(**d**).

Translation General Exercise

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. With the change in society, our lifestyle, opinions, beliefs and the overall behaviour of people change, too.

a) بالتغير الاجتماعى، يتغير نمط الحياة والآراء والمعتقدات وسلوكنا العام أيضًا.
b) مع التغيير فى المجتمع، تتغير المعتقدات والآراء وسلوك الحياة ونمطنا العام أيضًا.
c) مع التحدى الاجتماعى، تتغير معتقداتنا وآراؤنا وسلوك حياتنا ونمطنا العام أيضًا.
d) مع التغيير فى المجتمع، يتغير نمط حياتنا وآراؤنا ومعتقداتنا وسلوك الناس العام أيضًا.

2. We must realise the value of science because it is the weapon of nations, the basis of their civilisation, and the source of their progress and prosperity.

a) يجب أن ندرك قيمة العلم لأنه سلاح الأمم وأساس حضارتها ومصدر تقدمها ورخائها.
b) يجب أن ندرك القيمة العلمية لأنه سلاح الأمم وأساس الحضارة ومصدر تقدمها وازدهارها.
c) يجب أن ندرك قيمة العلم فى تطور سلاح الأمم وأساس الحضارة ومصدر التقدم والازدهار
d) يجب أن ندرك قيمة العلم لأنه سلاح الوطن وأصل حضارتها ومنبع التقدم والرخاء.

3. The state provides job opportunities for young people by setting up huge projects in new cities.

a) تمد الولاية فرص عمل للشباب من خلال تأسيس مشروعات ضخمة فى المدن الجديدة.
b) تزود الدولة فرص عمل لصغار السن بواسطة تأسيس مشروعات هائلة فى المدن الجديدة.
c) تقوم الدولة بتوفير فرص عمل للشباب من خلال إقامة مشروعات ضخمة فى المدن الجديدة.
d) الولاية تزود فرص عمل لصغار الناس بواسطة إقامة مشروعات ضخمة فى المدن الجديدة.

4. Egypt has proved that it does not fear terrorism, which knows nothing but destruction, and that it is serious about eliminating it.

a) لقد أثبتت مصر أنها لا تخشى الإرهاب الذى لا يعرف فقط إلا الخراب وأنها جادة فى القضاء عليه.
b) لقد حسنت مصر السياحة التى لا تعرف الخراب وأنها جادة فى رقيها وازدهارها.
c) لقد أثبتت مصر أنها لا تخاف على السياحة لا تعرف الخراب وأنها جادة فى تشجيعها عليه.
d) لقد أثبتت مصر أنها لا تخشى الإرهاب الذى لا يعرف شيئا إلا الخراب وأنها مخلصة فى قطع جذوره.

5. Egypt is trying to improve its economy by implementing many huge projects in all fields and creating job opportunities for young people.

a) تحاول مصر تحسين اقتصادها عن طريق تنفيذ الكثير من الموضوعات الضخمة فى جميع الحقول وإيجاد فرص عمل للشباب.
b) تحاول مصر إقامة اقتصادها عن طريق تخطيط الكثير من المشروعات الضخمة فى جميع الحقول وإيجاد فرص عمل للشباب.
c) تحاول مصر تطوير اقتصادها عن طريق إنشاء الكثير من المشروعات الضخمة فى كل المجالات وإيجاد حظوظ عمل للشباب.
d) تحاول مصر تحسين اقتصادها عن طريق تنفيذ الكثير من المشروعات الضخمة فى جميع المجالات وإيجاد فرص عمل للشباب.

6. As a result of being clean and sustainable, nuclear power must be used to provide electricity in many fields, especially in a world of ever increasing population.

a) نتيجة لكونها نظيفة ومستدامة، يجب استخدام الطاقة النووية لتوفير الكهرباء فى العديد من المجالات وخاصة فى عالم يتزايد عدد سكانه بالتدريج.
b) نتيجة لكونها نظيفة ومستدامة، يجب استخدام الطاقة الذرية لتوفير الكهرباء فى العديد من المجالات وخاصة فى عالم يتزايد عدد سكانه باستمرار
c) نتيجة لكونها نظيفة ومستدامة، يجب استخدام الطاقة النووية لتوفير الكهرباء فى العديد من المجالات وخاصة فى عالم يتزايد عدد سكانه باستمرار
d) نتيجة لكونها نظيفة ومستدامة، يجب استخدام الطاقة النووية لتوفير الطاقة فى العديد من المجالات وخاصة فى عالم يتزايد عدد سكانه باستمرار

7. Since you are ill, I'll ask someone else to clean the upstairs and put everything in order to be ready for the guests.

a) منذ أنك مريض، وأنا سأطلب من شخص آخر تنظيف الطابق العلوى ووضع كل شيء فى ترتيبه لنكون جاهزين للضيوف.

b) منذ أنك مريض، سأطلب من شخص آخر تنظيف الطوابق العلوية ووضع كل شيء فى ترتيبه لنكون جاهزين للضيوف.

c) بما أنك مريض، سأطلب من شخص آخر تنظيف الطابق العلوى ووضع كل شيء فى ترتيبه لنكون جاهزين للضيوف.

d) بما أنك مريض، سأطلب من شخص آخر تنظيف السلالم العلوية ووضع كل شيء فى ترتيبه لنكون جاهزين للضيوف.

Longman Exercises:

8. Sports have a significant impact on how we learn new skills and maintain our physical and mental health. Additionally, sports could improve relations between many countries.

a) للرياضة تأثير كبير على كيفية تعلمنا لمهارات جديدة والحفاظ على صحتنا الجسدية والعقلية. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، يمكن للرياضة تحسين العلاقات بين العديد من الدول.

b) للرياضة تأثير كبير على كيفية تعلمنا لمهارات جديدة والحفاظ على صحتنا الجسدية والنفسية. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، يمكن للرياضة تحسين العلاقات بين العديد من الشعوب.

c) للرياضة تأثر كبير على كيفية تعلمنا خططًا جديدة والحفاظ على صحتنا الجسدية والعقلية. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، يمكن للرياضة تحسين العلاقات بين العديد من الأفراد.

d) للرياضيات تأثير كبير على كيفية تعلمنا لمهارات جديدة والحفاظ على صحتنا الجسدية والعقلية. ومع ذلك، يمكن للرياضة تحسين العلاقات بين العديد من الدول.

9. Russia and Ukraine are some of the largest producers of wheat in the world. So, experts believe that the Russian-Ukraine war has greatly affected food prices all over the world.

a) تُعد روسيا وأوكرانيا من أكبر منتجى البترول فى العالم. لذلك، يعتقد الخبراء أن الحرب الروسية الأوكرانية أثرت بشكل كبير على أسعار الوقود فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

b) تُعد روسيا وأوكرانيا من أكبر منتجى القمح فى العالم. لذلك، يعتقد الخبراء أن الحرب الروسية الأوكرانية أثرت بشكل كبير على أسعار المواد الغذائية فى دول العالم الثالث.

c) تُعد روسيا وأوكرانيا من أقل منتجى القمح فى العالم. لذلك، يعتقد الخبراء أن الحرب الروسية الأوكرانية لن تؤثر بشكل كبير على أسعار المواد الغذائية فى جميع أنحاء العالم العالم.

d) تُعد روسيا وأوكرانيا من أكبر منتجى القمح فى العالم. لذلك، يعتقد الخبراء أن الحرب الروسية الأوكرانية أثرت بشكل كبير على أسعار المواد الغذائية فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

10. Human Rights Watch criminalises harming children or women in war. It also seeks to provide appropriate living conditions during military operations.

a) تجرم منظمة هيومن رايتس ووتش إيذاء الأطفال أو النساء فى الحرب. كما تسعى إلى توفير الظروف المعيشية المناسبة أثناء العمليات العسكرية.

b) إن منظمة الأمم المتحدة تجرم قتل الأطفال أو النساء فى الحرب، كما تسعى إلى توفير الظروف المعيشية المناسبة أثناء العمليات العسكرية.

c) تجرم منظمة هيومن رايتس ووتش إيذاء الرجال أو النساء فى المعارك، كما تسعى إلى توفير الظروف المعيشية المناسبة أثناء العمليات العسكرية.

d) تسعى منظمة حقوق الإنسان (هيومن رايتس ووتش) إلى تجريم إيذاء الكبار أو النساء فى الحرب، كما تسعى إلى توفير الظروف المعيشية المناسبة أثناء العمليات العسكرية.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

1. لقد استمتعنا بوقتنا على الشاطئ وتناولنا أشهى الاطعمة.

a) We've enjoyed our time at the beach and ate the most delicious foods.
b) We enjoyed our time at the beach and eaten the most delicious foods.
c) We've enjoyed our time at the beach and eaten the most delicious foods.
d) We enjoyed our time at the beach and ate the more delicious foods.

2. دمر الزلزال المدينة تدميرًا كاملًا وأصيب كثير من الأشخاص إصابات بالغة.

a) The earthquake destroyed the city complete destruction, and many people were seriously injured.
b) The earthquake destroyed the city completely, and many people were seriously injured.
c) The earthquake destroyed the city complete, and many people were injured seriously.
d) The earthquake complete destroyed the city, and many people were injured seriously.

3. تفخر مصر دائمًا بنسائها البارزات اللواتي لعبن أدوارًا لا يمكن إنكارها في مختلف المجالات وساهمن في تطور المجتمع.

a) Egypt has always been pride of its outstanding women who have played deniable roles in various fields and contributed to the development of society.

b) Egypt has always been proud of its outstanding women who have played undeniable rules in different fields and contributed to the development of society.

c) Egypt has always been proud of its outstanding women who have played undeniable rules in various fields and contributed at the development of society.

d) Egypt has always been proud of its outstanding women who have played undeniable roles in various fields and contributed to the development of society.

4. على الرغم من أن السفر للخارج له بعض العيوب، إلا أنه يجعل الشخص مستقلًا عن الآخرين ويمكنه من اكتساب خبرات ومعارف جديدة.

a) Although travelling abroad has some disadvantages, it makes a person independent on others and enables him to acquire new experiences and knowledge.

b) Although travelling abroad has some disadvantages, it makes a person independent of others and enables him to acquire new experiences and knowledge.

c) Although travelling aboard has some disadvantages, it makes a person independent of others and enables him of acquiring new experience and knowledge.

d) Although travelling abroad has some disadvantages, it makes a person independent on others and enables him to acquire new experience and knowledges.

5. لقد ساهمت الحكومة في حل مشكلة المواصلات بإنشاء طرق و كباري علوية جديدة، فعدد المركبات يزداد كل يوم و الطرق تصبح شديدة الازدحام بحيث يتعذر على السائقين استخدامها.

a) The government has contributed to solve the transport problem by building new roads and flyovers, as the number of vehicles increases every day and the roads become so congested that drivers cannot use them.

b) The government has contributed to solving the transport problem by building new roads and flyovers, as the number of vehicles increase every day and the roads became so congested that drivers cannot use them.

c) The government has contributed to solving the transport problem by building new roads and overpasses, as the number of vehicles increases every day and the roads become so congested that drivers cannot use them.

d) The government has contributed to solve the transport problem by building new roads and flyovers, as the number of vehicles increase every day and the roads became so congested that drivers cannot use them.

6. لم أره منذ سنوات، لكن عندما رأيته في الشارع، تذكرته على الفور لأنه كان أعز أصدقاء الدراسة عندما كنت في المرحلة الابتدائية.

a) I hadn't seen him for years, but when I saw him, I remembered him at once because he was my best school friend when I was in primary school.

b) I haven't seen him for years, but when I saw him, I remembered him at once because he was my best school friend when I was in elementary school.

c) I hadn't seen him for years, but when I saw him, I realised him at once because he was my best school friend when I was in primary school.

d) I hadn't seen him for years, but when I saw him, I reminded him at once because he was my best school friend when I was in preparatory school.

7. يجب التأكيد دائما على أن الصناعة و الزراعة و السياحة هى المصادر الرئيسية لدخلنا القومى، وأنه لا سبيل للازدهار والرقى وتجاوز عقبات الاقتصاد إلا بتحسينهم والاهتمام بهم.

a) It must always be emphasised that industry, agriculture and terrorism are the main sources of our national income, and that there is no way for prosperity, advancement and overcoming the obstacles of the economy except by improving and caring for them.

b) It must always be asserted that industry, culture and tourism are the main resources of our national income, and that there is no way for prosperity, advancement and overcoming the obstacles of the economy except by improving and caring for them.

c) It must always be emphasised that industry, agriculture and tourism are the main sources of our international income, and that there is no way for prosperity, advancement and overcoming the obstacles of the economy except by improving and caring for it.

d) It must always be asserted that industry, agriculture and tourism are the main sources of our national income, and that there is no way for prosperity, advancement and overcoming the obstacles of the economy except by improving and caring for them.

8. إن اتباع نظام غذائى يساعدك كثيرًا فى الحفاظ على وزن طبيعى وصحة جيدة. لذا يجب أن تعى أن المعدة مفتاح لصحة جيدة فى حالة إتباع العادات الغذائية السليمة.

a) Following a diet will greatly help you maintain a normal meal and good health. Therefore, you must be aware that the stomach is the key to good health if you follow good eating instructions.

b) Following a diet will greatly help you maintain a normal height and good health. However, you must be aware that the stomach is the key to good health if you follow good eating habits.

c) Following a diet will greatly help you maintain a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you must be aware that the stomach is the key to good health if you follow good eating habits.

d) Following a diet will greatly help you continue a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you must be aware that the stomach is the key to good wealth if you follow good eating habits.

9. يجب على قادة الدول الكبرى وضع خطة لتوزيع المنتجات الغذائية على سكان العالم لضمان حصول الجوعى على الغذاء، وخاصة فى البلدان التى تعانى من المجاعة والجفاف.

a) Peoples of major countries must plan for importing food products to the world's population to ensure everyone's access to food, especially in countries suffering from famine and drought.

b) Leaders of big continents must plan for distributing food products to the world's population to ensure everyone's access to wealth, especially in countries suffering from famine and drought.

c) Leaders of major countries must plan for distributing food products to the world's population to ensure everyone's access to food, especially in countries suffering from famine and drought.

d) Leaders of major countries must plan for producing food products for the world's population to ensure everyone's access to food, especially in countries suffering from lack of food.

10. تعانى العديد من الشعوب فى الإفريقية من المجاعة التى تقتل الآلاف منهم وخاصة الأطفال، لذا إنها لمسئولية الدول العظمى أن تساهم فى حل تلك المشكلة الخطيرة.

a) Many people in the world suffer from wars, which kill thousands of them, especially children, so it is the responsibility of the great powers to contribute to solving this serious problem.

b) Many people in Africa suffer from famine, which kills hundreds of them, especially children, so it is the responsibility of the great powers to contribute to providing more food.

c) Many people in Africa suffer from famine, which kills thousands of them, especially children, so it is the responsibility of the major powers to contribute to solving this serious problem.

d) Many people in Africa suffer from famine, which kills thousands of them, especially women, so it is the responsibility of the rich countries to contribute to solving this serious problem.

3 Writing

Writing

Paragraph | Essay | Email

1 Paragraph writing — كتابــة الفـقرة

◄ الفقرة هي موضوع صغير مكون من مجموعة من الجمل يحمل فكرة معينة. وعند كتابة موضوع إنشاء عن موضوع ما، يجب اتباع قواعد الكتابة الصحيحة حتى تساعد القارئ على فهم ما تريد. والفقرة عبارة عن سلسلة من الجمل منظمة ومتماسكة، وكلها مرتبطة بموضوع واحد. ويجب تنظيم الجمل ليكون الموضوع شيقًا ولا يؤدي إلى الملل. وتتطلب الكتابة معرفة القواعد والإلمام بمفردات لغوية معقولة، وينقسم الموضوع إلى ثلاثة أجزاء:

Paragraph structure

- Topic sentence — جمــلة الموضــوع
- Supporting sentences — جمــل داعــمة
- Concluding sentence — جمــلة الخاتــمة

(A) Topic sentence — جمــلة الموضــوع

◄ هي الجملة الأولى في الفقرة. توضح الجملة الافتتاحية الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة. أي أنها توضح ما تدور حوله الفقرة بأكملها.

(B) Supporting sentences — جمــلة داعــمة

◄ هي الجمل التي تناقش وتظهر الموضوع أو الفكرة المسيطرة باستخدام الحقائق والحجج والتحليل والأمثلة وغيرها من المعلومات .

(C) Concluding sentence — جمــلة الخاتــمة

◄ هي تلخيص (Summary) لما تم مناقشته باختصار بدون ذكر أي تفاصيل جديــدة.

Model Paragraph

Topic sentence	There are three reasons why I prefer running to other sports.
Supporting sentences	One reason is that running is a cheap sport. I can practise it anywhere at any time with no need for a ball or any other equipment. Another reason why I prefer running is that it is friendly to my heart. I don't have to exhaust myself or do excessive efforts while running. Finally, I prefer this sport because it is safe. It isn't as risky as other sports like gymnastics, racing or horseback riding.
Concluding sentence	For all these reasons, I consider running the best sport of all.

2 Essay writing كتابة المقال

◄ لابد أن يتعلم الطالب بمساعدة المدرس كيفية كتابة موضوع الإنشاء (المقال) سواء كان المطلوب كتابة أو اختيار من متعدد، وأن الطالب لن يستطيع الاختيار من متعدد إلا إذا أتقن الكتابة، ومن هنا يجب على الطالب أن يتعلم ماذا يكتب فى المقدمة (Introduction) وجملة الموضوع (Thesis) والهيئة أو المقال نفسه (Body) والخاتمة (Conclusion)، وأن يتدرب الطالب على كتابة المقال كثيرا لأن هناك العديد من أنواع المقال لن يستطيع الطالب أن يتقنها فى وقت قصير.

وسنتناول بمشيئة الله شرح هذه الأنواع وكيفية الكتابة فيها وتقسيم أفكارها بالتفصيل.

Essay structure

Introduction المقدمة	Body paragraphs فقرات الموضوع أقلها فقرتان	Conclusion الخاتمة

◄ وتنقسم الموضوعات إلى أربعة أنواع أساسية، وتندرج تحتها العديد من الأشكال التى يطلب منا الكتابة عنها وهى:

Kinds

Persuasive إقناعى	Narrative سردى	Descriptive وصفى	Expository تفسيرى

(A) Persuasive essay المقال الإقناعى

◄ المقال الإقناعى (Persuasive) يجادل فيه الكاتب عن رأيه هو فقط ليقنعنا بوجهة نظره، سواء مع أو ضد، ولا يكون الموضوع إلا وجهة نظر واحدة، ولا يحتمل الإيجابيات والسلبيات ويذكر الكاتب رأيه مرتين؛ مرة فى جملة الموضوع ومرة فى الخاتمة.

◄ وفى هذا النوع يكتب أى عدد من الفقرات فى الـ Body وأقلها اثنتان بالإضافة إلى المقدمة والخاتمة.

لاحظ

يطلق على المقال الإقناعى أيضا المقال الجدلى (Argumentative) أو مقال الرأى (Opinion)، ولكن المقال الجدلى أكثر رسمية من المقال الإقناعى وفيه يثبت الكاتب رأيه أو نظريته أو فرضيته بحقائق ومعلومات قوية. ويذكر الحجج ويعطى أسبابا توضح فكرته وسيتم تناوله بالشرح لاحقا.

◄ ولدراسة المقال الإقناعى (Persuasive) انظر فى الشرح المرفق للموضوع الآتى:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on "The internet is the backbone of our life."

"The internet is the backbone of our life"

العنـــوان:

جملة المقدمة لابد أن تكون شيقة وتجذب الانتباه وتقرر حقيقة الشيء بغض النظر عما سنكتب عنه من مميزات أو عيوب.

The internet has become part and parcel جزء لا يتجزأ of everyone's life. It is used by most people and everywhere. I believe that the internet has become the backbone of our modern age. It can be used in different institutions for many purposes and for communication.

Thesis statement

أما جملة الموضوع فهى رأيك وما تريد أن تقنعنا به.

One advantage of the internet is that **it is used in many places for different purposes. At schools, students use it for learning and getting information on different subjects. Doctors at hospitals depend on it for getting the recent researches in medicine, treating people and performing operations. In addition, banks can't do without it. It's also used at airports, factories and homes.**

As well as being used for the educational, medical and transportation purposes, the internet is widely used for communication. It has made the whole world a small village. It's an amazing tool to know what is happening around the world. Families use it for sending and receiving emails, photos and documents. In addition, **we use it to share stories and our different hobbies with others.**

فى الموضوع الإقناعى تقسم الأفكار إلى اثنتين أو ثلاث أو أكثر، وكل فقرة تحمل فكرة، ولابد من وضع جملة أساسية تبين الفكرة.

وعند ربط الأفكار المتشابهة نختار كلمات انتقالية مناسبة، فالفكرة الواحدة تحتاج إلى أدوات ربط الإضافة مثل in addition, besides.

Another advantage of ... is that

ونحتاج إلى أساليب متعددة لكتابة جمل منها كلمات الاستفهام وأفعال محفوظة، ثم ترتيب الجمل حسب الأفكار.

Another advantage of the internet is that **it is used in business. Many companies and people use it to advertise about or sell their products. It has become cheaper and faster than the other means used for advertisement. People can buy and sell things from their homes instead of renting shops. It saves time, money and energy.**

In conclusion, **the internet is an incredible tool to make our life easier and more comfortable. It's used in all institutions: banks, schools, hospitals and factories. It's used for communication. Personally, I can't imagine my life without the internet.**

الخاتمــة:

وهى تلخيص الفقرات السابقة فى جملة أو جملتين، مع إعادة جملة الموضوع التى هى رأيك الذى تريد إقناعنا به. ويمكن وضع نصائح أو توصيات أو تنبؤ بشيء أو تصور شيء فى المستقبل.

(B) Narrative essay

المقال السردى

◂ فى كتابة المقال السردى، أنت تحكى قصة أو حدثا قمت به أو قام به غيرك، أو قمت بتأليفه فى الامتحان. المقالات السردية هى روايات قصيرة تتضمن شخصيات وحوارات وحكايات مختلفة. يجب أن تكون هناك بداية صحيحة ونقطة تحول ونهاية للقصة.

◂ يجب على الكاتب أن يستخدم الكثير من الظروف والصفات لرواية القصة.

◂ ويجب أن يكون ترتيب الأفكار بطريقة معينة، مثل:

Introduction	Background information/setting the scene	المعلومات التى لديك عن الحدث
Paragraph 2	Describing the event	وصف الحدث
Paragraph 3	The response to the event	رد الفعل والاستجابة تجاه الحدث
Conclusion	The final outcome	المحصلة النهائية

An event you remember from your childhood

Introduction

In 2010, my family and I went to attend my uncle's wedding in a small village in Assuit, four hundred kilometres from where we live. We were driving back home again on the new army road when a disaster happened.

Body

As it was a good motorway, my father was driving at a breakneck speed. Unfortunately, it was raining heavily and my father wanted to overtake a bus in front of him. I was sitting in the back seat with my younger sister. It was very cold, but we were wearing heavy coats. Suddenly, the car started to slide on the road. My father tried to control the car, but it crossed over onto the other side of the road.

We had been very lucky, there had been no cars coming while we were crossing the other side of the motorway. As soon as the car stopped, we got out finding that the car windows had been broken and there was glass everywhere. Fortunately, none of us had been injured.

Conclusion

After our car had been repaired, we went to visit our family again. This time it wasn't raining and my father drove slower. I've never forgotten this bad experience.

ومن أمثلة المقالات السردية:

1. A trip you will never forget
2. Your first day at a new school
3. The best birthday party you've ever had
4. A life lesson you have learned
5. Helping a stranger
6. A time you misjudged someone and felt ashamed.
7. Your first time driving
8. Your first plane trip and the experience of flying
9. A time you were punished
10. Getting in a car accident

(c) Descriptive essay (place/people)

المـقال الوصفــى

◂ فى المقال الوصفى يصف الكاتب شخصية أو مكانًا أو حدثًا بتفاصيل متعمقة. تتم كتابة المقالة الوصفية بطريقة تشبه الصورة التى فى ذهن القراء وفيما يتعلق بجميع الحواس. يجب أن يكون القارئ قادرًا على شم، وشعور ورؤيـة، وسماع ما يقرأ.

◂ دائمًا ما يأتى المقال المتعلق بالمكان بعنـوان

1. A place you visited and you will never forget.
2. A place you should visit.

Introduction	The location and a brief history of the building or the place الموقع وتاريخ موجز للمبنى أو المكان
Paragraph 2	The architectural adjectives/material used/style of building الصفات المعمارية/المواد المستخدمة/أسلوب البناء
Paragraph 3	Why it is popular — لماذا هـو مشهور؟
Conclusion	Your personal opinion — رأيك الشخصى

The Citadel of Saladin in Cairo

Introduction

The Citadel of Saladin is a splendid building on a hill overlooking the old city of Cairo. It was built in the 12th century by King Saladin and his brother, King El-Addel. Apart from the mosques, the Citadel hosts four more interesting museums: the Military Museum, the Police Museum, the Royal Carriages Museum, and the Qaser El Gawhara Museum.

Body

The Citadel, as well as its walls, was built out of stone. It took eight years to complete. Work began in 1176 and finished in 1183. The appearance of the Citadel is different today from the original one. It has been enlarged and reshaped by the various leaders.

For many centuries, it was the seat of the king and his government in Egypt. Throughout different stages of Egyptian history, the Citadel has always played a significant role in Egyptian politics. In fact, the Citadel has defended Egypt against many violent attacks throughout time.

Today, the Citadel of Saladin is one of the most popular historical sites of Cairo and is included in almost every capital tour. Located at the top of a high cliff, the Citadel also provides tourists with magnificent views over the bustling city of Cairo. You can visit the Citadel of Saladin both day and evening.

Conclusion

In my point of view, it's worth visiting as it's one of the most interesting places in Egypt. I visited it 10 years ago, and I'd like to go there again. I think I'll have a very pleasant time there.

(D) Expository essay

المـقال التـفسـيرى

- عندما تكتب مقالًا تفسيريًا، فأنت تشرح شيئًا لجمهورك. المقالات الإخبارية هى أمثلة جيدة للكتابة التوضيحية، مثلها مثل أى قطعة تركز على الأسئلة الخمسة (من وماذا وأين ومتى ولماذا).
- فى المقالات التفسيرية، يشرح الكاتب فكرة أو عملية أو أدبًا أو مقالًا أو أحداثًا من وجهة نظره الخاصة. المقال التفسيرى هو نوع من الكتابة يميل إلى شرح شيء ما أو توضيحه بطريقة تجعله واضحًا للقراء، ولا يوجد مكان للخيال هنا، فكل المعلومات حقيقية. ومن أنواع المقالات التفسيرية ما يلى:

1 Process essay

المقال الخاص بالعمليات التصنيعية

- تشرح المقالة الخاصة بالعمليات عملية صنع أو عمل شيء ما.

2 Comparison essay

مقال المقارنات

- يشرح مقال المقارنة الأشياء المتشابهة والمتباينة بين شيئين.

3 Cause/ Effect essay

مقال السبب والنتيجة

- يشرح مقال السبب والنتيجة سبب شيء ما ثم آثاره على شيء آخر.

4 Problem/Solution essay

مقال المشكلة والحل

- يقدم مقال المشكلة /الحل مشكلة وحلها للقراء.

Expository essay (Sample)

Introduction	You present your essay topic and your thesis statement, hooking your reader with interesting facts. تقدم موضوع مقالتك وبيان أطروحتك رابطًا القارئ بحقائق مثيرة للاهتمام.
Paragraphs 2/3	Each paragraph in the body of the essay should focus on its own issue that helps develop and support the topic sentence. Make sure you're using factual information to support your thesis. يجب أن تركز كل فقرة فى نص المقالة على القضية التى تساعد فى تطوير ودعم جملة الموضوع. تأكد من أنك تستخدم المعلومات الواقعية لدعم الموضوع.
Conclusion	In your conclusion, you restate your thesis statement and summarise the points you made in your body paragraphs. فى الختام، تعيد صياغة جملة الأطروحة، وتلخص النقاط التى ذكرتها فى فقرات الموضوع.

Sample Expository Essays

Friendship:

Introduction

Friendship plays an important role in everyone's life. It is based on the simple rules of trust and honesty. It is the most wonderful relationship that every person can have if he or she is loyal, dependable, kind, caring, and loving. True friends try to avoid conflicts and do everything possible to make their relations stronger. A true friendship is a reward for all the good we do in our life.

Main body

A true friend is a person you can always count on when you face challenges and serious problems. He or she always offers a shoulder to cry on in case something wrong happens. Your friend always listens to your problems, gives you a good piece of advice, and never talks behind your back. A true friend is never envious of your achievements. This person respects you and keeps all your secrets. A true friend is there for you in times of need, he makes you smile when you forgot how to, and lift you up when you can't lift up yourself.

A true friendship is something that can't be expressed with words. Friendship is being able to cry together. Friendship is being foolish together. It is being mad at each other. True friends are always ready to protect each other from being hurt emotionally and physically. It takes time and patience to build a strong friendship and achieve trust between two friends. It is very important to have somebody with whom you can share your thoughts freely.

Conclusion

A good friendship is very difficult to find. That is why we should appreciate this social relationship that is based on understanding and feelings. There are a lot of benefits of friendship. We just need friends to live happily. Lasting friendship is a blessing for everybody. We don't have to pretend to be someone else when we spend time with our friends. They give us total freedom to be who we really are. We should be grateful to people who make us happy. A true friend is one of the most precious possessions that one can have in his life.

وهذه أشكال أخرى للموضوعات التى تأتى فى الامتحان ولها أفكار خاصة:



(A) Pros and cons/ Advantages and disadvantages essay

مقال المزايا والعيوب

المقال الذى يحتوى على المزايا والعيوب له العديد من المسميات، منها:

Discussion/pros and cons/advantages and disadvantages/merits and demerits/contrast/for and against

وهذا النوع يحتوى على أربع فقرات: المقدمة فقرة والموضوع فقرتان والخاتمة فقرة واحدة وفى المقدمة نذكر كلا الرأيين ونكتب فقرة للمزايا وأخرى للعيوب، والكاتب يذكر رأيه فى الخاتمة بعد كلمة personally

Is the internet useful for everyone?

The internet has become part and parcel of everyone's life. It is used by most people and everywhere. Although some people can't live without it and use it positively, other people say that it has a lot of disadvantages and has negative effects on societies.

العنوان

جملة المقدمة لابد أن تكون شيقة وتجذب الانتباه وتقرر حقيقة الشىء بغض النظر عما سنكتب من مميزات أو عيوب.

Thesis statement

أما جملة الموضوع فهو ذكر طرفى الجدال وكلا الرأيين

On the one hand, those who are in favour of the internet say that it is considered the backbone of our life. One advantage of the internet is that it can help all people do their work easily and quickly. Many people such as teachers, doctors and engineers can't do without it as it's a tool to achieve their work. It enables us to do researches on different subjects. Besides, it is used for communication and getting news and information all over the world.

فى الموضوع الذى يحمل مزايا وعيوبا نكتب ٤ فقرات واحدة للمقدمة وفقرة للمزايا وأخرى للعيوب وأخر فقرة للخاتمة ونحتاج إلى أساليب متعددة لكتابة جمل منها كلمات الاستفهام وأفعال محفوظة، ثم ترتيب الجمل حسب الأفكار.

On the other hand, some people think it is bad and has a lot of demerits. They say one disadvantage of the internet is that it wastes the time. The person spends much time chatting and forgets to do many useful things. Another disadvantage of the internet is that it affects our health badly when we use it excessively. In addition, young people are addicted to using the internet and don't do their schoolwork or homework. Besides, it's expensive nowadays to have an internet access at a high speed.

وعند تغيير الفكرة من المزايا للعيوب نستخدم كلمات انتقالية مثل:

on the other hand, /However

وكلمات انتقالية داخل الفقرة مثل:

In addition/ Besides, etc.

To sum up, although the internet is an incredible tool to get information and communication, some people object to using it saying that it has some disadvantages. Personally, I think we can't do without the internet and I can't imagine life without it. I think its merits outweigh the demerits, so we should use it carefully and avoid using it excessively.

الخاتمة

وهى تلخيص الفقرات السابقة فى جملة أو جملتين، مع إعادة جملة الموضوع مع ذكر رأيك مسبوق بكلمة Personally. ويمكن وضع نصائح أو توصيات أو التنبؤ بشىء أو تصور شىء فى المستقبل.

(B) Argumentative essay

المقال الجدلى

An argumentative essay is an essay that uses evidence and facts to support the claim it's making. Its purpose is to persuade the reader to agree with the argument being made rather than just the author's thoughts and opinions.

- المقال الجدلى هو مقال يستخدم الأدلة والحقائق لدعم الادعاء الذى يقدمه. والغرض منه هو إقناع القارئ بالموافقة على الحجة المقدمة بدلًا من مجرد أفكار وآراء المؤلف.
- على سبيل المثال، لنفترض أنك أردت كتابة مقال جدلى يوضح أن Dream Park وجهة رائعة للعائلات. لا يمكنك أن تقول فقط إنه مكان رائع لأنك اصطحبت عائلتك إلى هناك واستمتعت به. لكى تكتب مقالًا جدليًا، يجب أن يكون لديك حقائق وبيانات لدعم حجتك، مثل عدد مناطق الجذب الملائمة للأطفال فى Dream Park، والمزايا الخاصة التى يمكنك الحصول عليها مع الأطفال، واستطلاعات الرأى للأشخاص الذين زاروا Dream Park كعائلة واستمتعت به.

يعتمد المقال الإقناعى على المشاعر، فى حين أن الجدلى يستند إلى أدلة يمكن إثباتها.

Introduction	Basic information about the issue and the thesis statement. معلومات أساسية عن القضية وجملة الموضوع.
Paragraph 2	Arguments to back up your opinion. You'll present a series of supporting details to defend your argument giving pieces of evidence or facts. الحجج والتفاصيل لدعم رأيك وللدفاع عن حجتك بتقديم أدلة أو حقائق.
Paragraph 3	Arguments that prove the weakness of opposing claims. الحجج التى تثبت ضعف الادعاءات المعارضة.
Conclusion	Summarise the main idea of your argument. تلخيص الفكرة الأساسية.

الفرق بين المقالات الجدلية والمقالات ذات المزايا والعيوب هو أن الكاتب فى المقالات الجدلية يذكر وجهة النظر المخالفة ويدحضها بالأدلة والبراهين، ولكن موضوعات المزايا والعيوب يذكر الكاتب كلا الرأيين، مع ذكر رأيه فى النهاية.

Is it right to blame social media for the use of incorrect grammar?

Introduction

People are now dependent on the internet to perform their everyday tasks, and they are creating a language of their own. OMG and LOL have become a trend in the ways of communication of people. Since the birth of social media, it has been noticed that the younger generation is getting bad at grammar.

فى الجملة الأولى والثانية نذكر الواقع الفعلى للشىء بدون ذكر رأينا ولكن فى آخر جملة من المقدمة (Thesis) نذكر ما نريد دحضه أو الدفاع عنه.

Body

People are getting bad at grammar and writing well-structured essays and sentences. It's a serious problem to make an entire society unable to structure logical sentences which kills the language and makes upcoming generations dumb. People do not give any significance to focus on their education and grammar while they are spending time on social media.

Most of the younger generation likes to spend time on social media platforms like Facebook, Twitter, Snapchat, Instagram, etc. Such platforms have become the source of their learning and practice. They use "u" instead of "you" and "r" instead of "are" to shorten the length of words. Similarly, individuals create abbreviations for phrases like using "OMG!" "WAU?" which are referred to as "Oh my God!", and "What about you?". This advanced way has entirely changed the way individuals use to connect with each other in emotional as well as learning aspects.

فى الفقرتين أو الثلاث الخاصة بـ (Body) نستخدم الدلائل والحجج، وليس الكلام العاطفى، ونستخدم إحصاءات وخبرات ومقولات الأشخاص الآخرين ولا نكتب عن المزايا والعيوب، وكل فقرة تحتوى على (Topic sentence) لبيان ما نتحدث عنه داخل الفقرة.

Conclusion

There is no wonder why the younger generation is getting noticeably bad at grammar. As high school and college students spend most of their time on social media platforms, they have started using the same language of slang in their academic papers as well. Personally, I think that parents, government, and educational institutes need to come up with a solution that can help students get a strong grip on their grammar skills while using social media platforms.

الخاتمة
وهى تلخيص الفقرات السابقة فى جملة أو جملتين مع إعادة جملة الموضوع مع ذكر رأيك مسبوقًا بكلمة Personally. ويمكن وضع نصائح أو توصيات أو التنبؤ بشيء أو تصور شيء فى المستقبل.

(C) Biography

السيرة الذاتية

- والمقالات الخاصة بوصف الأشخاص تسمى Biography وهى السيرة الذاتية لشخص تحبه أو له تأثير عليك، ودائمًا ما يأتى المقال المتعلق بالمكان بعنوان:

- The person you admire most.

- للكتابة عن شخص تعرفه أو تحبه أو له فضل أو تأثير عليك أن تتخذ أفكارًا معينة وطريقة يجب أن تتبعها ليخرج مقالًا جيدًا، وتذكر أنه فى الامتحان لن تجبر على الكتابة عن شخص معين، ولكن تختار أنت الشخص الذى تكتب عنه، ولذلك يمكن أن تعد الأفكار والمعلومات من الآن أو أن تجهز موضوعًا عن شخصية فى كل مجال وفقرات هذا الموضوع تكون كالتالى:

Introduction	The person's birth, family and early school or life. Why you admire him/her. ولادة الشخص وأسرته ومدرسته المبكرة أو حياته. لماذا أنت معجب به / بها.
Paragraph 2	First steps in the person's successes and the developments in his/her career. الخطوات الأولى فى نجاحات الشخص والتطورات فى حياته / حياتها المهنية.
Paragraph 3	What made the person famous and his/her interests. His/Her influence on society. ما الذى جعل الشخص مشهورًا وما هى اهتماماته / اهتماماتها. تأثيره / تأثيرها على المجتمع؟
Conclusion	The end of his/her career, life in retirement. نهاية حياته / حياتها المهنية والحياة فى التقاعد.

Write about someone you admire.
Write about a sportsperson, scientist or writer from your country.

Introduction

The person I admire most is Professor Mostafa El-Sayed. Professor Mostafa El-Sayed is a famous Egyptian chemist or medical researcher. He was born in 1933 in El Gharbia Governorate. His parents died when he was ten years old. He graduated from the Faculty of Science at Ain Shams University in 1953.

Body

During his studies, he did many scientific experiments that enabled him pass his exams successfully. In 1961, he became a professor in the University of California. Dr El-Sayed's success depends on working in teams. Much of Dr El-Sayed's research is done with his team in the laser laboratory at Georgia Tech.

Professor Mostafa El-Sayed is well known for his research in biochemistry and nanoscience. Using nanoscience research, he has developed, or created new ways of treating cancer. His wife died of cancer in 2005, so he started to think of using nanotechnology to treat cancer. He has received many prizes and medals for science.

Conclusion

In 2008, he was awarded the US national medal of science. Professor Mostafa El-Sayed said that he works hard for humans not for prizes.

(D) A book review

تلخيص كتاب / قصة

عند الكتابة عن قصة أعجبتك أو كتاب أعجبك وترشحه لأشخاص آخرين أحيانًا لا تعرف من أين تبدأ وكيف تنسق الأفكار وكيف تختم على الرغم من كثرة الأفكار التى فى ذهنك، والآن سوف نساعدك على استخراج أفكار لم تكن فى الحسبان وتنسيق الأفكار بطريقة صحيحة والتى ستساعدك على الكتابة بسرعة وبطريقة منظمة.

عند الكتابة فى مثل هذه الموضوعات نفكر فى الآتى:

- The name of the book and author. — اسم الكتاب أو القصة واسم المؤلف.
- Your opinion of the book. — رأيك فى الكتاب أو القصة.
- The type of book/the novel. — نوع الكتاب أو القصة.
- The setting. — الخلفية (المكان والزمان)
- When it was published. — متى نشرت.
- The main character(s). — الشخصية أو الشخصيات الرئيسية.
- What happens to the main character? — ما الذى حدث للشخصية الرئيسية؟
- The turning point in the story. — نقطة التحول فى القصة.
- Why you enjoyed the story and the message. — لماذا أعجبتك القصة وما الرسالة التى تحملها.
- Why you would recommend it. — لماذا ترشحها للآخرين.

ويتم تنسيق الإجابة على العناصر السابقة فى شكل الفقرات الآتية:

Paragraph 1	The facts and details about the novel/book.
Paragraph 2	Describe the main characters and relation.
Paragraph 3	What happened in the story and the turning point.
Paragraph 4	Say why you enjoyed it and what the message of the story is.

- Think of a novel you have enjoyed reading and you would recommend to other people.
- Write a book review about the last novel you read.

Introduction

My favourite novel which I consider the best novel I've ever read is "Oliver Twist". It was written by Charles Dickens who was one of the most famous writers during his time. He wrote it in London in the nineteenth century. It was first published in 1837 in a weekly magazine.

Body

The story is about a young orphan who experiences the best and the worst of life. The main character is Oliver Twist whose mother dies when he is a baby and he goes to an orphanage where the conditions for the children are terrible. Oliver is soon forced to work in the workhouse, but his life doesn't improve.

There is a turning point when he meets Jack Dawkins, who is a thief working for Fagin. Fagin is a man who uses children to steal. Oliver is forced to join the gang, but he is caught by the police as they think that he is trying to rob a man in the street. However, Oliver is very lucky as he is rescued by a kind man called Mr. Brownlow. The rest of the story is about the fight between the evil Fagin and the kind Brownlow to keep Oliver.

Conclusion

To sum up, the story is about the struggle between the good and evil. Dickens used the novel as a means to expose the terrible conditions that children lived in and the danger of criminals using them for their own benefits. I would recommend it to anyone who enjoys action stories which have a happy ending.



3 Email writing

• تطبق نفس قواعد كتابة المقال السابقة لأن كلًا منهما ينتج من تكوين الجمل السليمة، إلا أن البريد الإلكترونى أسهل لأن به شكلًا معينًا يستطيع كل طالب أن ينفذه، ويكون عادة أقل حجمًا من المقال المعتاد (رغم أن معدى الأسئلة يطلبون نفس العدد من الكلمات كالمقال)، ويمكن تقسيمه أيضًا إلى فقرات تتضمن المقدمة والموضوع والخاتمة، مع ملاحظة أن هناك نوعين من البريد الإلكترونى:

Email

A) Formal Email

هذا النوع تم استخدامه حديثًا من جانب الهيئات والشركات للتعامل مع بعضها البعض أو التعامل مع العملاء والموظفين والمتقدمين للوظائف المختلفة، وهذا النوع يتميز بلغة أكثر رسمية بعدم وجود جمل التحيات والمجاملات المتعارف عليه.

B) Informal Email

هذا النوع يتضمن رسائل التواصل بين الأشخاص، مع كتابة الجمل فى الموضوع بشكل أقل رسمية بتضمين جمل التحيات والمجاملات المتعارف عليها؛ لأن الرسالة عادة ما تكون بين الأصدقاء أو الأقارب أو المعارف.

Layout of an Email

New message

From .... اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى

To .... اسم المرسل إليه وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى

Subject .... موضوع الرسالة

Dear/Hi ....,

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sender name

اسم المُرسِل

Send

A Sample of a Formal Email

New message •••



From tdbusiness@hrdtt.com — اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى

To jim62@hrdtt.com — اسم المرسل إليه وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى

Subject A thank you message — موضوع الرسالة

Dear Mr Jim Shaffer,

On behalf of our entire team at our company, we would like to take this opportunity to thank you sincerely for taking out so much time and effort to meet us last Monday. Our meeting was very enlightening and we all had a very good experience.

The meeting helped us to communicate and understand your company's goals and objectives. It also helped us a great deal to learn about the various kinds of development projects that are presently undergoing in your company. We also hope that you liked our small presentation.

We thank you sincerely for the business you brought to us. And I hope that we both reach great heights in the near future. Thanks for your help and support. We ensure that we will do our best to deliver outstanding results. As per the discussion, I have attached in this email a rough project plan for our next venture.

Thank you once again for the wonderful meeting.

Yours sincerely,

Robert Spooner

Senior Vice President

Send

A Sample of an Informal Email

New message

From sami@gmail.com — اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى

To john@gmail.com — اسم المرسل إليه وعنوان البريد الإلكترونى

Subject A visit plan — موضوع الرسالة

Hi John,

I am so glad that you are planning to visit my country. I know you like to travel when the weather is moderate, so I suggest you come in December or January and I promise you will experience better weather. I hope when you come, you stay with me, but I can book a hotel if you want.

As you know, I always have a plan for myself, so I have made a plan for us. At first, we should go to the Pyramids and the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. After that, we will go to the Red Sea coast area. I'm sure you will love Sharm El-Sheikh where you will enjoy the beautiful scenery and the marvellous water sports. Sharm El-Sheikh is one of the most famous places for tourists. If you could stay for more than ten days, we can go to Luxor and Aswan where you will enjoy the famous Ancient Egyptian temples and the Valley of the Kings.

Please, contact me when you book your ticket, so I will be at the airport to meet you.

With love,

Sami

Send

General Exercises

A) Write an essay of ONE HUNDRED EIGHTY (180) words on:

1 The most successful day in my life.

2 A story ending in "....... At last, I found safety after the bad experience in the forest."

3 Some people believe that internet access must be limited to students. Give your opinion.

4 How should we encourage industry in Egypt?

5 The importance of practising a useful hobby.

6 A person you look up to as a role model or an example to be followed.

7 Everyone should have a role in building our country.

8 Your ambitions for a better life.

9 Hard work is the key to success.

10 How to make good use of your spare time.

11 Great projects provide job opportunities and better living conditions for all Egyptians.

12 Tolerance and cooperation are the keys to the development of any society.

13 The qualities of a good teacher.

14 The school you dream of.

15 Life today is better than in the past.

B) Write an email of ONE HUNDRED EIGHTY (180) words on:

1 You are studying English at a private language school attended by many international students. You are planning a surprise birthday party for a friend who has been feeling particularly sad and homesick. Write to another classmate and invite him/her to the party.

2 You borrowed an important book from a classmate last term. You now realise your classmate has returned home overseas and you still have the book. Write an email to him/her.

3 You live in an English-speaking country and you want to do some voluntary, unpaid work in a developing country. Write an email to a company called Cultural Expeditions, which organises such trips.

4 You live in a small university town. Last week, you drove to a big city about two hours away to buy a new laptop at a good price. You worked on the laptop all week and finished writing a long assignment that is due shortly. However, this week, the laptop doesn't even switch on. Write to the store.

5 You are going to take a short holiday in London and you want to rent a holiday apartment while you are there. Write to the tourist information office.

Part 3

General Revision







Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
amount (n)	مقدار/كمية	infection (n)	عدوى	serve (v) (d)	يخدم/يقدم طعامًا
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل بـ	occasion (n)	مناسبة	severe (adj)	شديد/خطير
CPR	عملية الإنعاش الرئوى	perform (v) (ed)	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	technique (n)	طريقة/أسلوب
eat out (v)	يأكل بالخارج	prepare (v) (d)	يعد/يجهز	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
get together (v)	يتجمع / يتقابل	react (v) (ed)	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل		

Helpful Vocabulary — مفردات مساعدة

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
achieve (v) (d)	يحقق	diet (n)	نظام غذائى	instructions (n)	تعليمات
act (v) (ed)	يتصرف/يمثل	disease (n)	مرض	kit (n)	عدة / طقم أدوات
advertisement (n)	إعلان	educate (v) (d)	يعلم/يدرس	label (n) (v) (led)	ملصق / يضع ملصقًا
area (n)	منطقة	else (adv)	آخر	major (adj)	رئيسى
athlete (n)	شخص رياضى	emergency services (n)	خدمات الطوارئ	menu (n)	قائمة طعام
athletic (adj)	رياضى	encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	muscle (n)	عضلة
bandage (n)	ضمادة (للجرح)	event (n)	حدث	native (adj)	أصلى
base (n)	أساس	examination (n)	فحص/اختبار	normal (adj)	طبيعى
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف	executive director (n)	مدير تنفيذى	old-fashioned (adj)	ذو طراز قديم
belief (n)	اعتقاد/إيمان	exist (v) (ed)	يوجد	operation (n)	عملية
bleed (v)	ينزف	extract (n) (v) (ed)	مقتبس/يقتبس	options (n)	اختيارات
boost (v) (ed)	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس	festival (n)	مهرجان	organ (n)	عضو
breathing (n)	التنفس	first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية	perfect (adj)	كامل / ممتاز
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل	flat (adj)	مسطح/مستوٍ	performance (n)	أداء
cell (n)	خلية	gather (v) (ed)	يتجمع/يجمع	persuasive (adj)	مقنع
champion (n)	بطل رياضى	heart centre (n)	مركز القلب	pioneer (n)	رائد
chest (n)	صدر	immune system (n)	الجهاز المناعى	press (v) (ed)	يضغط
chopstick (n)	عصا الأكل الصينية	improve (v) (d)	يحسن	products (n)	منتجات
collaboration (n)	تعاون/اشتراك	include (v) (d)	يشتمل على/يتضمن	protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
complicated (adj)	معقد	injury (n)	إصابة	questionnaire (n)	استبيان/استطلاع رأى

rare (adj) نادر	share (v) (d) يشارك	survive (v) (d) ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
recent (adj) حديث	sign (n) علامة	turkey (n) ديك رومى
relatives (n) أقارب	sudden (adj) مفاجئ	unfortunately (adv) لسوء الحظ
respond (v) (ed) يستجيب	suitable (adj) مناسب	vertically (adv) عموديًا
responsibility (n) مسئولية	support (n) (v) (ed) دعم/يدعم/يساند	wrap (v) (ped) يلف
separate (adj) (v) (d) منفصل/يفصل	surface (n) سطح (الجزء الأعلى من الشيء)	

Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

achieve a great deal of يحقق قدرًا كبيرًا من	fall asleep ينام فجأة/يغلبه النعاس	in the first place فى المقام الأول
around the country حول البلد	feel strong and healthy يشعر بالقوة والصحة	make noise يحدث ضوضاء
around the world حول العالم	find it hard to يجد من الصعب أن	make notes يدون ملاحظات
at any time فى أى وقت	for example على سبيل المثال	make sure about يتأكد من
at least على الأقل	get ... ready يجهز/يعد ...	perform a play يمثل مسرحية
by that time بحلول ذلك الوقت	get better يتحسن	show respect يظهر الاحترام
do an action يقوم بالتصرف	get ill يصاب بمرض	sound nice يبدو لطيفًا
do/perform CPR يجرى عملية التنفس الصناعى	go abroad يسافر للخارج	sound perfect يبدو رائعًا (ممتازًا)
do sport يمارس رياضة	have an infection يصاب بعدوى	stay healthy يبقى بصحة جيدة
do the course يدرس منهجًا تعليميًا	have the flu يصاب بالإنفلونزا	take up a new sport يمارس رياضة جديدة

Phrases & Prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

amount of كمية من	keep out of يبتعد عن	take place يحدث
ask about يسأل عن	lock ... together يغلق ... معًا	tell ... about يخبر ... عن
care about يهتم بـ	look at ينظر إلى/يفحص	wait for ينتظر
catch up with يلحق بـ/يجارى/يعرف أحوال	reply to يرد على/يستجيب لـ	wrap ... around يلف ... حول
come off يسقط/يخرج من مكانه	rise up يرفع (يرتفع) لأعلى	
disagree about لا يوافق (يعترض) على	spend on ينفق على	write about يكتب عن
happy with سعيد بـ	start with يبدأ بـ	

Derivatives
المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك/تصرف	behavioural	سلوكى
believe	يعتقد	belief	اعتقاد	believable	يمكن تصديقه
collaborate	يتعاون/يشارك	collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	collaborative	تعاونى
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
explain	يشرح/يفسر	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory	تفسيرى
immunise	يحصن/يوفرمناعة	immunity	مناعة	immune	منيع/مناعى
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسن	improved	محسن
infect	يعدى	infection	عدوى	infected infectious	مصاب بعدوى مُعدٍ
injure	يصيب/يجرح	injury	إصابة/جرح	injured	مصاب/مجروح
operate	يقوم بعملية/يشغل	operation	عملية جراحية	operative	جراحى/مشغل
perform	يؤدى	performance	أداء	performing	مؤدٍّ
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع
produce	ينتج	producer product production	منتج منتَج إنتاج	productive	منتج
react	يقوم برد فعل	reaction	رد فعل	reactive	ذو رد فعل
support	يدعم/يساند	support	دعم/مساندة	supporting supportive	داعم مساند

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
behave	يتصرف	act/react	misbehave	يسيء التصرف
belief	اعتقاد	concept/faith	doubt/disbelief	شك
boost	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس	push/improve/support	hinder/decrease	يعوق/يقلل
brilliant	بارع/رائع	excellent/magnificent	ordinary/common	عادى
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	commemorate/honour	reproach/ignore	يعاتب/يوبخ/يتجاهل
collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	participation/partnership	isolation/disunion	عزلة/عدم اتحاد

gather	يتجمع	assemble/collect	separate/scatter يفصل
improve	يحسن	advance/enhance	decline/deteriorate يتدهور
infection	عدوى	contagion/contamination	sterility/sanitation تعقيم/الصحة العامة
injury	إصابة	wound/harm	remedy/cure علاج
old-fashioned	ذو طراز قديم	outdated/old	fashionable/modern ذو طراز حديث
perform	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	act/operate	halt/fail يتوقف/يفشل
persuasive	مقنع	convincing/conclusive	discouraging/unconvincing مثبط/غير مقنع
press	يضغط	squeeze/compress	release/extend يطلق/يمد
react	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل	proceed/respond	cease يتوقف
respect	احترام	appreciation/esteem	disrespect/dishonour عدم احترام
responsibility	مسئولية	duty/liability	irresponsibility/distrust عدم مسئولية/عدم ثقة
separate	منفصل	isolated/disconnected	connected/combined متصل
severe	شديد/خطير	acute/extreme	gentle/mild بسيط/لطيف/معتدل
share	يشارك	distribute/participate	gather/combine يجمع
suitable	مناسب	appropriate/convenient	inconvenient/improper غير مناسب
support	دعم	assistance/aid	hindrance/discouragement إعاقة/تثبيط
traditional	تقليدى	conventional/classical	modern/new حديث/عصرى

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1		
another آخر (للمفرد)		I had to change my old suit with another one.
other ١- الآخر (بمعنى أن هناك اثنين فقط) ٢- آخرون (للجمع/اسم لا يعد)		- I can't find my other shoe. - I've got some other friends I'd like to invite.
others الآخرون (يأتى بعدها فعل ووضعت "s" بعد حذف الاسم)		Some people are at greater risk from the virus than others.
else ١- آخر/أيضًا (تستخدم بعد كلمات تبدأ بـ (some - any - every - no) ٢- آخر/أيضًا (تستخدم بعد أدوات الاستفهام)		- There's something else I'd like to talk about as well. - Where else can we meet?

	Word	Example
2	**sign** ١- لافتة (ورقية/معدنية) لمعلومة/تحذير/تعليمات ٢- إشارة إلى (حدث يدل على حقيقة)	- The sign in the store window says "OPEN". - All the signs point to him as the guilty party.
	signal ١- إشارة (تليفون/إذاعة/تليفزيون) ٢- إشارة (ضوئية/صوتية) كدليل أو إعطاء إذن لشيء.	- Satellite dishes receive television signals. - The teacher gave us the signal to finish what we were doing.
	landmark علامة بارزة (تميز مكانًا) مثل برج أو مبنى	The Empire State Building is a familiar landmark on the New York skyline.
3	**athlete** رياضى (شخص يمارس رياضة وخاصة ألعاب القوى)	The athletes are training hard for the Olympics.
	athletic رياضى (صفة لوصف شخص أو شيء رياضى)	He was a true champion, a man among men, known for his kindness as well as athletic powers.
	athletics ألعاب القوى (مجموعة من الألعاب تشمل الجرى والقفز والرمى)	Athletics is largely an individual sport.
4	**special** خاص (من نوع خاص)	I don't want an ordinary wedding. I want something special.
	private خصوصى (خاص بشخص أو مجموعة محددة)	He didn't want to discuss his private life.
5	**operation** ١- عملية جراحية ٢- عملية إنجاز (عمل/نشاط) لشركة أو منظمة	- She's going to need an operation on her ankle. - Britain will carry out a joint military operation with the US.
	process ١- عملية طبيعية أو صناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شيء ٢- عملية إجرائية (سلسلة من الخطوات لإتمام شيء)	- Breathing and the circulation of blood are life processes. - Learning a foreign language can be a long process.
6	**advertisement** إعلان عن منتج أو افتتاح مكان تجارى أو وظيفة	The advertisement will appear in three magazines.
	announcement إعلان عن/إذاعة خبر	The minister will make a formal announcement tomorrow.
7	**organ** عضو من أعضاء الجسم	The liver is an extremely complex organ.
	member عضو/فرد فى مجموعة كنادٍ أو فريق	She's a member of the local band.
8	**champion** بطل رياضى	The show will be opened by the former world boxing champion.
	hero بطل فى المجتمع أو فى قصة أو فيلم أو مسرحية	His father was a war hero, a former fighter pilot.

	Word	Example
9	**arrive** ١- يصل (لا يتبعه مفعول) ٢- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بعد حروف الجر in/at)	- When will the plane from Paris arrive? - We arrived at the house very late after the party.
	reach ١- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بدون حرف جر) ٢- يصل إلى شيء معنوى	- We were the first people to reach the party. - Finally, they reached their goal and became professional footballers.
10	**event** ١- حدث مهم ٢- حدث مرتب (مثل حفل موسيقى/مؤتمر سياسى)	- Getting married is a major event in anyone's life. - The conference was an important social event.
	incident ١- حدث (عارض/غير معتاد) ٢- حدث (فى فيلم/قصة/مسرحية)	- The report describes a number of related incidents. - The film was boring and it didn't have many incidents.
	accident حادث (شيء خاطئ أو مؤذ حدث بغير ترتيب)	Ahmed had an accident at work and had to go to hospital.
11	**menu** ١- قائمة طعام (فى مطعم) ٢- قائمة (مهام/إعدادات) فى جهاز	- He looked at the menu and decided to have the salad. - Select PRINT from the main menu.
	list قائمة (أشياء أو مهام تم إعدادها)	Make a list of all the things you have to do.
12	**outdoor (adj)** بالخارج/خلوى (خارج الأماكن المغلقة...) يأتى بعدها اسم	The programme of outdoor activities includes skiing, climbing, and hiking.
	outdoors (adv) بالخارج (خارج الأماكن المغلقة...) تصف فعلًا ولا يأتى بعدها اسم	They could play outdoors.

Practice...

Module (1)
Vocabulary Question Bank

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. This powerful computer can .... many tasks at once.
a) think b) assign c) make d) perform

2. Most of the buildings in El Moez Street in Cairo are in the .... style dating back to many years ago.
a) traditional b) fashionable c) modernised d) recent

3. Fortunately, the old building could .... the earthquake with little damage.
a) appear b) die c) survive d) vanish

4. Heart surgery .... have improved considerably in the last few years.
a) processes b) techniques c) fashions d) quantities

5. Clubs insist that children must have a medical examination if they want to .... up a new sport.
a) make b) change c) play d) take

6. He'd been running and he was breathing hard. The noun from the verb "breathe" is ....
a) breathless b) breathy c) breathed d) breathing

Group 2

1. My friend was given .... by a medical doctor, who I'm convinced saved his life.
a) CPR b) VCR c) CV d) VAR

2. In all five-star hotels, meals can be .... to you in your room.
a) sold b) served c) prepared d) consumed

3. The training has .... the students to deal with any small medical emergency.
a) expired b) accepted c) appeared d) prepared

4. We aren't used to eating .... a lot. We prefer our mother's cooking.
a) inside b) down c) out d) across

5. Major changes have taken .... in the Egyptian society in the last few years.
a) part b) place c) apart d) down

6. The virus has infected many people. The adjective from the verb "infect" is ....
a) invective b) infection c) infectious d) infects

Group 3

1. The goalkeeper is very clever and can .... quickly in penalty kicks.
a) react b) represent c) introduce d) inspect

2. My brother doesn't like wearing suits; he only wears them on formal ....
a) accidents b) assignments c) promotions d) occasions

3. Mary .... the new job with a party for family and friends.
a) celebrated b) rejected c) recommended d) reminded

4. Several train passengers got serious injuries in the crash. The antonym of the noun "injury" is ....
a) wound b) remedy c) cure d) operation

5. All patients had a complete physical .... after the ambulances brought them to hospital.
a) surgery b) examination c) treatment d) operation

6. I asked my wife to make a .... of the ingredients she needs for the pizza.
a) list b) menu c) brochure d) notice

Group 4

1. It is important that children and teenagers should get the right .... of sleep.
   a) amount b) quality c) offer d) expectance
2. The economists say that money is needed to .... the tourism industry in Egypt.
   a) decrease b) prove c) raise d) boost
3. The accident victim was .... from the wounds in her face and hands.
   a) bleeding b) paining c) relieving d) breeding
4. The medical company announced that the research for the new vaccine was done in .... with the University of Oxford.
   a) examination b) coherence c) collaboration d) inspection
5. Nurses are taught how to .... CPR as part of their first-aid course.
   a) do b) make c) design d) cooperate
6. Melt the butter over a gentle heat. The adjective "gentle" can be the opposite of the adjective "....................".
   a) nice b) ordinary c) severe d) giant

Group 5

1. To fight this new virus, you must try hard to make your .... system stronger.
   a) security b) immune c) alarm d) nerve
2. It is believed that cycle helmets may reduce head .... by up to 80 percent.
   a) quarrel b) process c) invention d) injury
3. I have read only some .... from the new novel, but I liked it much.
   a) addresses b) experiments c) extracts d) headlines
4. There is a widespread .... that multinational companies have too much power.
   a) religion b) belief c) science d) community
5. All doctors and experts say that a good diet helps you to .... healthy.
   a) lose b) stay c) make d) do
6. More money is needed to boost the industry. The antonym of the verb "boost" is "....................".
   a) approve b) improve c) support d) hinder

Group 6

1. The island's .... bird population began disappearing due to exposure to diseases.
   a) foreign b) native c) international d) vague
2. The young politician is a very .... speaker, so he was chosen for the parliament.
   a) aggressive b) convinced c) disorganised d) persuasive
3. Selling the house was our only .... to overcome our financial problems.
   a) result b) rise c) option d) relevance
4. All the fans were impressed by their team's .... at the final match.
   a) training b) performance c) relaxation d) avoidance
5. The mother wrapped a scarf .... her child's neck as it was cold.
   a) around b) away c) about d) off
6. He retired immediately after the end of the war. The synonym of the adverb "immediately" is "....................".
   a) instantly b) lately c) hardly d) slowly

Group 7

1. During pandemics, governments have to force people to stay home to stop the spread of the disease ....

a) infect b) infected c) infectious d) infection

2. Please tell the children to go and play somewhere .... I'm trying to work.

a) another b) other c) others d) else

3. Most Egyptian families usually .... together at important festivals such as Eid El Adha and Christmas.

a) serve b) get c) make d) perform

4. In some parts of Africa, there is a .... food shortage because of droughts.

a) severe b) gentle c) high d) deep

5. Most people are more .... in the morning.

a) produce b) production c) productive d) product

6. My wife and I have separate bank accounts. The antonym of the adjective "separate" is "....................".

a) disconnected b) connected c) combined d) relied

Group 8

1. Regular mild exercise will help to strengthen your .... as much as training.

a) muscles b) vessels c) skin d) brain

2. A working woman has to deal with a lot of family and work ....

a) rights b) promotions
c) research d) responsibilities

3. The old man should be able to lead a perfectly .... life after the heart operation.

a) fair b) uneven c) strange d) normal

4. I heard a/an .... on the loudspeaker saying that the hypermarket was closing in 10 minutes.

a) intention b) commercial
c) announcement d) advertisement

5. My aunt has a severe allergic .... to penicillin and some other drugs.

a) react b) reaction c) reactive d) operative

6. Everyone should keep an emergency first-aid .... in their car.

a) tool b) instrument c) device d) kit



B Language

Unit 1

1 Necessity

2 Lack of necessity

1 Necessity الضرورة

Present		Past		Future	
have to	It's necessary for ... to + inf.	had to	It was necessary for ... to + inf.	will have to	It will be necessary for ... to + inf.
has to					
must					
have got to		no past			
has got to					
need to/ needs to		needed to		will need to	

It is necessary for all of us to fight diseases.

All of us must/ have to/ have got to/ need to fight diseases.

It was necessary for him to find a job to support his family.

He had to find a job to support his family. ضرورة فى الماضى وتم فعلها.

It will be necessary for the new government to solve the problems related to health and education.

The new government will have to solve the problems related to health and education.

have to/ must الفرق بين

have to	ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج ليس لديك اختيارفى فعلها. ▸ As I'm very ill, I have to wait until the doctor arrives.
must	**strong advice** للنصيحة القوية ▸ You must wash your hands before you eat. **a warm invitation** دعوة حارة ▸ You must come and see us at the weekend. **a strong reminder to ourselves** تذكير قوى لأنفسنا ▸ We must remember to buy the medicine for our grandmother.
mustn't	**prohibition** المنع والحظر والتحريم ▸ You mustn't drive fast on this road. The maximum speed limit is 60 k/h. **strong negative advice** للنصيحة القوية المنفية ▸ You mustn't play football in the flat. You may break something.

2 Lack of necessity عدم الضرورة

Present		Past		Future	
don't have to doesn't have to needn't (to بدون) don't/doesn't need to	It isn't necessary for ... to + inf.	didn't have to لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء فلم نفعله needn't have + P.P. لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء ولكن تم فعله didn't need to	It wasn't necessary for ... to + inf.	won't have to won't need to	It won't be necessary for ... to + inf.

- It isn't necessary for her to buy many dresses.
- She doesn't have to/ needn't/ doesn't need to buy many dresses.
- It wasn't necessary for me to travel abroad.
- I didn't have to travel abroad. لم يكن واجبًا فلم أفعل.
- I needn't have travelled abroad. لم يكن واجبًا ولكنى فعلت.

Unit 2

Adjectives (comparatives – superlatives)

	Adjective الصفة		Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
One syllable			er + than	the + est
	tall	طويل	taller than	the tallest
	young	صغير السن	younger than	the youngest
	soft	ناعم	softer than	the softest
One syllable ending in "e"			r + than	the + st
	large	واسع	larger than	the largest
	wide	عريض	wider than	the widest
	تضعيف الحرف الساكن وإضافة:			
One syllable ساكن + vowel + ساكن			er + than	the + est
	big	كبير الحجم	bigger than	the biggest
	hot	ساخن	hotter than	the hottest
	نحذف حرف y ونضيف:			
Two syllables ending in "y"			ier + than	the + iest
	heavy	ثقيل	heavier than	the heaviest
	happy	سعيد	happier than	the happiest

	Adjective الصفة		Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
Two or more syllables			more + adjective	the most + adj.
	modern	عصرى/حديث	more modern than	the most modern
	expensive	غالٍ	more expensive than	the most expensive
Irregular adjectives	حالات خاصة تحفظ:			
	good	جيد	better than	the best
	bad	سيئ	worse than	the worst
	little	قليل	less than	the least
	much/many	كثير	more than	the most
	far	بعيد	farther/ further than	the farthest/ furthest

as + adj. + as/ not as (so) + adj. + as	تساوى وعدم تساوى الصفات
Omar is as clever as Ahmed.	فى التساوى الصفة بين as ... as
Eman isn't so/as young as her sister Rana.	فى نفى التساوى isn't as/so ... as
Special cases	حالات خاصة
Rana is the younger of two sisters.	فى التفضيل بين اثنين the + er/more
Gold is much/a lot more expensive than wood.	قبل المقارنة مع الفارق الكبير far/much/a lot
Silver is a bit/a little cheaper than gold.	عند الفرق القليل rather a bit/a little
No boy in the class is cleverer than Ahmed.	نستخدم no فى المقارنة.
I've never met a stronger person than Ali.	نستخدم never فى المقارنة.
Ali is the strongest person I've ever met.	نستخدم ever فى التفضيل.
Summer is less cold than winter.	less قبل أى صفة فى المقارنة.
The fewer mistakes you make, the higher marks you get.	صفة مقارنة the + ... صفة مقارنة The كلما ....، كلما ....

Practice... Language Question Bank

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Group 1

1. She .... take this medicine because she isn't ill.
a) must b) doesn't have to c) doesn't need d) has to

2. You .... visit the White Desert when you're in Farafra. It's amazing!
a) needn't b) didn't have to c) had to d) must

3. The manager .... travel to London to attend an important conference last week.
a) had to b) didn't have to c) doesn't have to d) mustn't

4. I .... wash my father's car; my brother had already washed it.
a) had to b) didn't have to c) don't have to d) mustn't

5. You .... whisper. Nobody can hear us.
a) must b) didn't have to c) have to d) don't have to

6. You .... drive so fast. It's very dangerous.
a) don't need b) don't have to c) must d) mustn't

7. Fahmy .... wear a tie at work. It's the rule of his company.
a) has to b) must c) have to d) mustn't

8. Yesterday, I .... stay at home with my brother as my parents were out.
a) didn't have to b) must c) had to d) mustn't

9. Children .... play with matches or cleaning liquids.
a) have to b) must c) needn't d) mustn't

Group 2

1. You .... to take an umbrella. It isn't raining.
a) needn't b) don't need c) mustn't d) need

2. You .... wash your hands before you eat.
a) must b) don't have to c) need d) needn't

3. We .... lock the car. It's safe here.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) can't d) should

4. You aren't permitted to stay here. You .... stay here.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) needn't d) should

5. I'm going to the shops because I .... buy some tea.
a) mustn't b) don't need to c) need to d) has to

6. You .... pass your exams or the university will not accept you.
a) had to b) have to c) didn't have to d) don't have to

7. You .... forget to do your homework tonight. The teacher wants it tomorrow.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) have to d) must

8. You .... more pills, you look recovered.
a) may not have taken b) can't take
c) needn't take d) shouldn't have taken

9. Mother: .... wash your hands before eating.
Son: OK!
a) It's necessary b) It's a must to c) You needn't d) You can't

Group 3

1. You .... have an appointment to see our manager. You can go and see him when you want.
a) must b) don't need c) have to d) don't have to

2. You .... open the door on any account when I'm out.
a) needn't b) can c) may d) mustn't

3. If we have no money to take a taxi, we .... on the bus.
a) must have got　b) had to get
c) will have to get　d) should have got

4. Writing your phone number is .... You don't have to write it.
a) obligatory　b) a necessity　c) a must　d) optional

5. "As he was very rich, he didn't have to look for jobs." This means ....
a) he looked for jobs, but it wasn't necessary
b) he didn't look for jobs as he thought it wasn't necessary
c) he was blamed for looking jobs as it wasn't necessary
d) he didn't look for jobs, but it was necessary

6. "He needn't have come early. It's still 7 a.m." means ....
a) he didn't come early as it wasn't necessary
b) he came early as it was necessary
c) he came early, but it wasn't necessary
d) he didn't come early, but it was necessary

7. "He had to phone the bank to ask about his account." This means ....
a) he phoned the bank, but it wasn't necessary
b) he didn't phone the bank as he thought it wasn't necessary
c) he didn't phone the bank, but it was necessary
d) he phoned the bank as it was a must

8. "He didn't have to call me late at night." This means ....
a) he shouldn't have called me late at night
b) he needn't have called me late at night
c) it wasn't obligatory to call me late at night
d) it wasn't a good idea not to call me late at night

9. I love holidays as I .... get up early.
a) needn't　b) can　c) may　d) mustn't

Group 4

1. I'm not keen on football. For me, it is .... important thing.
a) the least　b) the most　c) the best　d) the little

2. Mr Naser is the .... director that can solve your problems.
a) more intelligent　b) intelligent　c) most intelligent　d) intelligence

3. Some think that the more money you have, the .... you become.
a) happy　b) happier　c) happiest　d) more happy

4. The .... experience in my life was when I saw a big bear in the wild.
a) frightening　b) least frightening
c) most frightening　d) more frightening

5. Abeer is as tall as Omar. They are the same ....
a) high　b) tall　c) height　d) length

6. Mr Hamdy is the .... teacher I've ever had. His students respect him much.
a) inspiring　b) most inspiring
c) much inspiring　d) more inspiring

7. Tamer is a much calmer person than Omar, so before their exams Omar was much .... Tamer.
a) more nervous than　b) nervous than
c) more nervous as　d) more nervous

8. The .... animal which I have seen in Egypt is a camel.
a) most big　b) biggest　c) more big　d) bigger

9. Video cassettes are not .... DVDs.
a) moderner than　b) so modern so　c) as modern like　d) as modern as

Group 5

1. This English exercise is the .... exercise in the book!

a) more challenging than　b) more challenging
c) most challenging　d) biggest challenging

2. No one in my family is .... my grandfather. He is the oldest person.

a) older than　b) elder　c) younger than　d) the youngest

3. All the other books in the library are .... than the book I am reading.

a) interesting　b) most interesting
c) more interesting　d) much interesting

4. The apple tree and the pear tree are both the same height. They are .... each other.

a) as tall as　b) taller than　c) most taller　d) most tallest

5. .... water flooded into the house than I expected.

a) Few　b) More　c) Much　d) Most

6. There are .... people here than promised to come.

a) fewer　b) many　c) less　d) much

7. Tennis is a far .... game than football.

a) hardest　b) hard　c) harder　d) hardly

8. The more you protest, the .... guilty you look!

a) many　b) much　c) most　d) more

9. The red bicycle is .... the blue one.

a) more cheaper than　b) not as expensive so
c) the most expensive　d) not as expensive as

Group 6

1. The fish that live in the ocean .... the fish that live in rivers and lakes.

a) are different　b) are as different as
c) are the most different　d) are different from

2. .... should help and support the poor.

a) The richest　b) The rich people　c) The rich　d) The richer

3. When we reached the beach, the rain became ....

a) the heaviest　b) more heavy　c) more heavier　d) heavier and heavier

4. "For me, English is an easy subject, but geography is rather difficult." This means ....

a) I find geography more difficult than English
b) I find geography much easier than English
c) I find geography as difficult as English
d) I find English more difficult than geography

5. Which one of the following is an adjective?

a) A liar.　b) Patient.　c) The poor.　d) An amateur.

6. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?

a) Ali and Hazem are of the same height.　b) Ali is more taller than Hazem.
c) Ali is as tall than Hazem.　d) Ali isn't as taller as Hazem.

7. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

a) Mercedes is more expensive than Fiat.
b) Mercedes is much more expensive than Fiat.
c) Mercedes isn't so cheap as Fiat.
d) Mercedes is more much expensive than Fiat.

8. You .... walk or play on the railway track. It's forbidden.

a) mustn't　b) don't have to　c) must　d) have to

9. They .... reservations at the restaurant, but they did.

a) should have made　b) needn't have made
c) didn't have to make　d) had to make

Practice... **Skills Question Bank**

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Group 1

People from long ago used to live in groups in caves or in jungles. They wandered from place to place hunting animals and looking for food like nuts, roots, wild fruits and berries.

Then later, people began to settle along or near rivers because they were sources of water, food, trade and transport. They used the river water for drinking, cooking and washing. Their animals also drank from these rivers.

The rivers were full of fish. Rivers also made good farmland for these early river settlers. During the yearly flood, rivers carried along with them river mud which was very fertile. This fertile soil was left behind after each flood. Thus, river banks or valleys were suitable places for farming. The people started to cultivate their own crops.

Besides the fertile soil, rivers were also used as a form of transport. Men began to use rafts and boats as a form of water transport to carry their extra food. They sailed to another part of the river to trade with the other settlers. So, they became farmers as well as traders. When they began to travel up and down the rivers, they learnt about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers.

As trade and transport grew, the population also grew. These river settlements grew into cities, and these cities became centres of great civilisations like those found in early Egypt, India and China. These civilisations had powerful governments with many laws and government workers.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All the statements are true EXCEPT: ....

a) As trade and transport grew, the population of river settlements also grew
b) As the river settlements grew, they became cities and centers of civilisation
c) Egypt, India and China were at one time centers of great civilisation
d) Egypt, India and China were the only important and powerful countries in the world to have rivers

2. The word "cultivate" can best be replaced with ....

a) grow b) look for c) irrigate d) obtain

3. The best title for this passage would be ".................".

a) River water b) River cities
c) Rivers and the beginning of civilisation
d) Rivers and the customs and beliefs of the settlers

4. Rafts and boats helped the people living near the rivers to be ....

a) farmers b) farmers and traders
c) travellers d) sailors

5. "They wandered from place to place" means they ....

a) were surprised b) travelled c) settled d) developed

6. The river banks were suitable for farming for the early settlers because ....

a) the land is used once a year b) the river is used for transport
c) people settled down there d) the soil was fertile

7. The land isn't as fertile as in the past because ....

a) people wandered from place to place b) there is no more flood
c) the people started to cultivate their own crops
d) there are great civilisations

8. Trade and transport help .... to appear.

a) people b) civilisations c) fertile soil d) rafts

Group 2

Today, many people use natural ways to cure illnesses that don't cause side effects. 'Acupuncture' and 'biofeedback' are two popular methods. Doctors have been using 'acupuncture' in China for over two thousand years. It involves pushing needles into the skin at special points around the body. Ancient Chinese philosophers believed that they were connected to different organs and could cure diseases. Today, 'acupuncture' is used in many countries, and studies show that it works especially for headaches, backaches and smoking. Since 1950, doctors in China have also been using 'acupuncture' in major operations. Patients are awake and know what is happening in the operation, but they feel little or no pain. Scientists think that the needles make the body produce a chemical called 'endorphin' that helps to reduce the feeling of pain.

Another natural way to cure illnesses is 'biofeedback'. It uses technology to help people control their internal organs. For example, if a person has a problem with sleeping, he/she is connected to a special computer that shows the activity of the brain. The person is then asked to do some mental exercise to relax. When the brain activity falls and the person is relaxed, the computer makes a noise. Slowly, the person learns what type of mental exercise can help him/her to reduce the activity of the brain.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Doctors in China have been using 'acupuncture' in major operations for ....

a) 60 years b) 69 years
c) 63 years d) 73 years

2. Endorphin .... the feeling of pain.

a) increases b) expands
c) decreases d) grows

3. The word .... is the best synonym to the word "awake".

a) unfamiliar b) conscious
c) unaware d) ignorant

4. According to the passage, which one of the following is not true?

a) Natural ways to cure illnesses don't cause side effects.
b) Technology can be used in natural ways to cure illnesses.
c) While using 'acupuncture', people know what is happening.
d) Robots can help people with sleeping problems.

5. Using natural ways to cure illnesses is ....

a) harmless b) unnatural c) ambiguous d) harmful

6. Using 'acupuncture' in operations means ....

a) pushing needles into the skin at special points around the body
b) using technology to help people control their internal organs
c) connecting to a special computer that shows the activity of the brain
d) making the person unconscious during the operation

7. The best title for the passage is "...................".

a) Using 'acupuncture' to cure illnesses
b) Using 'biofeedback' to cure illnesses
c) Using natural ways to cure illnesses
d) Using the computer to cure illnesses

8. 'Acupuncture' and 'biofeedback' are two popular methods used ....

a) in Egypt b) in China
c) all over the world d) in Europe

Group 3

Hala and Salwa were best friends. They were together so much of the time that people say that they were like an inseparable twin. They did everything and went everywhere together. One day, however, something happened that almost caused their friendship to break.

Hala had already made plans with Salwa to watch a show. At the last minute, Hala's mother **had an errand to run**, and someone had to look after her sister. Salwa was disappointed, but said that she would still wait for Hala and watch the show together. The next morning, Hala overheard Salwa telling another friend, "It was a wonderful show. I saw it last night and it was fabulous." Hala got upset. She walked past Salwa and gave her an angry look. Salwa was puzzled. Why was Hala angry with her? When Salwa called out to Hala, she ignored her. After school, Salwa waited for Hala, as usual, for their walk home together. However, Hala just walked on alone, Salwa ran after her and asked, "What's the matter, Hala? Why are you avoiding me like this?" Hala answered angrily, "You broke your promise. Friends aren't supposed to do that." Salwa realised what the problem was and laughed. "I went to a different show. I will never break my promise to you. You are my best friend." Hala apologised to Salwa and they were best friends again.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The phrase **"had an errand to run"** means ....

a) go for a ride
b) to go for a walk
c) to solve a problem
d) to do a task

2. The antonym of the word "disappointed" is "....................".

a) frustrated
b) satisfied
c) furious
d) upset

3. When did Hala and Salwa come to be friends again?

a) When Hala looked angrily at Salwa.
b) When Salwa lied to Hala.
c) When Salwa laughed at Hala.
d) When Salwa told Hala the truth.

4. Why did Hala have to cancel watching the show with Salwa?

a) To look after her sister.
b) To go to another show.
c) To make Hala angry.
d) To go with her mother.

5. "Hala and Salwa were like an inseparable twin". This means that ....

a) they live together
b) they hate each other
c) they can't leave each other
d) they work in different places

6. Hala was wrong when she ....

a) apologised to Salwa
b) looked after her sister
c) ignored her friend
d) walked home with Salwa

7. Good friends ....

a) shouldn't depend on each other
b) shouldn't think badly of each other
c) should live together
d) should break their promises

8. The best title for the passage is "....................".

a) Friends should be strict with each other
b) Friendship could be broken because of doubt
c) How to end friendship
d) Friends should watch shows together

2 Translation:

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Group 1

- A good role model serves as an example of inspiring and motivating us to work hard to uncover our true inner potential.

a) تُعد القدوة الجيدة مثالاً يُلهمنا ويحفزنا على العمل الجاد للكشف عن إمكاناتنا الداخلية الحقيقية.

b) يعتبر دور النموذج الجيد مثالاً يُلهمنا ويحفزنا على العمل الجاد لمعرفة إمكاناتنا الداخلية الحقيقية.

c) يُعد النموذج دورًا جيدًا يُلهمنا ويحفزنا على العمل الجاد لمعرفة طاقاتنا الداخلية الحقيقية.

d) تُعد القدوة دورًا جيدًا يُلهمنا ويمكننا من العمل الجاد لمعرفة طاقاتنا الداخلية الصادقة.

Group 2

- Money can be used for building new industrial plants, improving health care and solving the problems of housing and transport.

a) يمكن استخدام الأموال لتكوين نباتات صناعية وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والنقل.

b) يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والنقل.

c) يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء نباتات صناعية وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل المنازل والنقل.

d) يمكن أن يستخدم المال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحسين العناية الصحية وحل مشاكل المنازل والسفر.

Group 3

- People suffering from game addiction have a high risk of weakened eyesight, obesity, insomnia and depression.

a) الأشخاص الذين يعانون من إدمان الرياضة معرضون بشكل كبير لضعف البصر ومشاكل القلب وألزهايمر والاكتئاب.

b) الأشخاص الذين يعانون من إدمان الرياضة معرضون بشكل كبير لضعف البصر والانهيار العصبى والأرق والاكتئاب.

c) الأشخاص الذين يعانون من إدمان الألعاب معرضون بشكل كبير لضعف البصر والسمنة وألزهايمر ومشاكل القلب.

d) الأشخاص الذين يعانون من إدمان الألعاب معرضون بشكل كبير لضعف البصر والسمنة والأرق والاكتئاب.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

Group 1

- يُستخدم الإنترنت بواسطة المحترفين لتبادل المعلومات وتعلم اللغات والحرف وتطوير الذات وكسب المال وبواسطة الهواة للكتابة والدردشة مع بعضهم البعض إلكترونيًا.

a) The Internet is used by professionals to exchange information, teach languages and crafts, self-development and gain money, and by amateurs to write and chat with each other electronically.

b) The Internet is used by experts to change information, learn languages and crafts, self-development and make money, and by amateurs to write and chat with others electronically.

c) The Internet is used by professionals to exchange information, learn languages and crafts, self-development and earn money, and by amateurs to write and chat with each other electronically.

d) The Internet is used by professionals to exchange information, learn languages and crafts, self-development and earn money, and by amateurs to write and chat with each other electrically.

Group 2

– عندما يختار أصحاب الأعمال الموظفين، فهم غالبًا يفضلون الأشخاص المهرة الموثوق بهم القادرين على حل المشاكل والمتعايشين سلميًا على المهملين والجاهلين والكسالى والسلبيين.

a) When business owners choose employers, they often prefer skilled, reliable, problem-solving, and peaceful people over negligent, ignorant, lazy, and negative people.

b) When business owners choose employees, they often prefer skilled, reliable, problem-solving, and peaceful people over negligent, ignorant, lazy, and passive people.

c) When employees choose the employers, they usually prefer skilled, reliable, problem-solving, and peaceful people over negligent, ignorant, lazy, and passive people.

d) When employers choose the employees, they usually prefer skillful, reliable, problem-solved, and peaceful people over negligent, ignorant, lazy, and passive people.

Group 3

– إن التضخم السكانى مشكلة خطيرة تواجه العديد من البلاد فهو العائق الأساسى لعملية التنمية فهو يضعف الاقتصاد ويبتلع الإنجازات. ويؤثر سلبيًا على مستوى معيشة الأفراد.

a) Overpopulation is a serious problem facing so many countries, as it is the main obstacle to the development process, as it weakens the economy and swallows up achievements. It negatively affects the standard of living of individuals.

b) Overpopulation is a serious problem which faces so many countries, as it is the main obstacle to the development operation, as it weakens the economy and swallows up achievements. It negatively affects the standard of living of individuals.

c) Overpollution is a serious problem facing a lot of countries, as it is the main obstacle to the development process, as it weakens the economy and swallows up achievements. It negatively affects the standard of living of individuals.

d) Overpopulation is a dangerous problem facing such a lot of countries, as it is the main hinder to the development operation, as it weakens the economy and swallows up achievements. It negatively affects the standard of living of individuals.

3 Writing:

1. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:
Being healthy is easy and cheap. Write about the ways which enable you to lead a healthy life."

....

....

2. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:
How we celebrate the different feasts in Egypt and the different kinds of food we have in them."
Tom's email is tommgreen5000@yahoo.com. Yours is ahmedtito23@gmail.com.

....

....

3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:
"Is eating genetically modified food helpful to man's health or a waste of time?"

....

....

Practice... Revision Test (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We .... our brother's graduation with a party for family and close friends.

a) celebrated b) rejected c) recommended d) reminded

2. Some .... teachers still think of computers as useless devices.

a) modernised b) fashionable c) traditional d) recent

3. The criminal spent the night in a prison .... in the nearby police station.

a) sign b) call c) tumour d) cell

4. The paramedics couldn't .... CPR to the patient in the street, so they did that inside the ambulance.

a) design b) assign c) make d) perform

5. In the weeks that followed, his health continued to improve. The antonym of the verb "improve" is "..................".

a) decline b) support c) develop d) prove

6. Mona read the whole research and .... notes of the main points.

a) did b) made c) performed d) acted

7. You .... take things that don't belong to you.

a) don't have to b) mustn't c) have to d) must

8. You .... buy a pen. I can lend you one.

a) don't need b) need to c) don't need to d) have to

9. He .... visit his uncle as he was ill in hospital.

a) has to b) is necessary to c) didn't have to d) had to

10. I .... work every day from 9 to 4. If I don't, I will be fired.

a) have to b) must c) don't have to d) mustn't

11. That's by far .... dam I've ever seen.

a) the large b) the larger c) the largest d) largest

12. My sister is probably .... person in my life.

a) important b) the most important c) more important d) the more important

13. Out of the two, she was far and away .... singer.

a) a better b) the good c) a good d) the better

14. We .... paint the house. It hasn't been painted for many years.

a) need to b) had to c) needn't d) mustn't

15. I'm sorry, but you .... eat in the classroom. You can't eat in school buildings.

a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) oughtn't d) aren't allowed

▶ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

You go to bed at night, close your eyes, and drift off to sleep. Have you ever wondered how exactly sleep works? Plus, where do dreams come from? When you fall asleep, you go through the four stages of the sleep cycle.

Stage 1: This is when you feel yourself becoming drowsy. Your muscles begin to relax and your brain activity slows down. Your eye movements are slow during stage 1. It lasts several minutes and you can be woken up easily.

Stage 2: When your sleep becomes a bit deeper. You won't wake up as easily. The slow eye movements continue and your brain waves slow down even more. Your body temperature goes down and your heart rate slows down.

Stage 3 is known as deep sleep. It's more difficult for you to be woken up. And although you are sleeping deeply; this is when sleepwalking or sleep talking occurs. So, all those sleepwalkers out there may not actually remember doing anything strange in their sleep the next day.

Then finally, you move into REM. That stands for rapid eye movement. During the REM stage, your eyes move quickly beneath your closed eyelids. This is caused by certain brain activity. You may have vivid dreams during this stage. Your brain waves are more active than in stages 2 and 3. They're similar to when you're awake. It's easier for someone to wake you up, but you may feel groggy or sleepy.

Once your REM phase is over, the cycle starts all over again with stage 1.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. "You begin to feel drowsy. Your muscles relax." This happens in stage ....

a) one b) two c) three d) four

17. What happens in stage two?

a) Sleepwalking or sleep talking occurs.
b) The person's body temperature goes down.
c) The person can be woken up easily.
d) The person may have vivid dreams.

18. The synonym of the word "drowsy" is ....

a) active b) vivid c) sleepy d) awake

19. When you are asleep, the quick eye movement is caused by ....

a) the person's movement b) the person's thoughts
c) the light around the person d) certain brain activity

20. In which stage does your brain activity slow down, and you aren't woken up as easily?

a) One. b) Two. c) Three. d) REM.

21. In REM stage ....

a) the eyes move quickly beneath the eyelids b) the brain activity slows down
c) the brain waves are more inactive d) the muscles relax

22. The synonym of the word "rapid" is "....................".

a) later b) gradual c) slow d) quick

23. One of the following isn't of the benefits of getting enough sleep: ....

a) sleep helps you to function properly b) sleep helps you be energetic by day
c) sleep helps you concentrate d) sleep helps you respond slowly

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Peace among nations is vital. It gives every country the chance to carry out its development plans and it saves the money spent on wars and destructive weapons.

a) السلام بين الدول أمر حيوى وهو يتيح لكل دولة فرصة تنفيذ خططها الاقتصادية ويوفر الأموال التى تُنفق على الحروب والأسلحة التدميرية.

b) السلام بين الدول أمر حيوى وهو يتيح لكل دولة فرصة تنفيذ خططها التنموية ويدخر الأموال التى تُنفق على الحروب والأسلحة التجريبية.

c) السلام بين الدول أمر حيوى وهو يتيح لكل دولة فرصة تنفيذ خططها التنموية ويوفر الأموال التى تُنفق على الحروب والأسلحة التدميرية.

d) السلام بين الدول أمر حيوى وهو يخطط لكل دولة فرصة تنفيذ خططها التنموية ويوفر الأموال التى تُنفق على الحروب والأسلحة التدميرية.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- تعطى الحكومة المصرية أولوية كبيرة للمشروعات الزراعية فى محاولة لتحقيق الاكتفاء الذاتى من الغذاء و زيادة الصادرات أيضًا.

a) The Egyptian government gives great priority to agricultural projects in an attempt to achieve self-sufficiency of food and increase imports as well.

b) The Egyptian government gives great priority to agricultural projects in an attempt to increase self-sufficiency of food and increase exports as well.

c) The Egyptian government gives great priority to industrial projects in an attempt to achieve self-sufficiency of food and increase exports as well.

d) The Egyptian government gives great priority to agricultural projects in an attempt to achieve self-sufficiency of food and increase exports as well.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Cordelia, would you change your mind and try to express your love to your father after he began to get angry? Why?

....

....

2. What do you think of King Lear's punishment to Kent?

....

....

3. Do you think that it is fair that Edgar will have all his father's inheritance? Why?

....

....

27. Write an email of ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

- "The house you dream to live in. Your name is Rania and your email address is rania10@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Hana and her email address is hana200@yahoo.com".

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
abbreviation (n)	اختصار	innovation (n)	إبداع/ابتكار/أفكار مبتكرة	production (n)	إنتاج
agriculture (n)	الزراعة	innovator (n)	مبدع	sustainable (adj)	مستدام
crop (n)	محصول	linguist (n)	عالم لغوى	tone (n)	نبرة صوت/نغمة
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيرى	livestock (n)	ماشية	variety (n)	تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة
formal (adj)	رسمى	misunderstand (v)	يسيء الفهم		
frown (v) (ed)	يكشر/لا يستحسن	necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة		

Helpful Vocabulary — مفردات مساعدة

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
ability (n)	قدرة	compare (v) (d)	يقارن	extraordinary (adj)	مميز/رائع
acronym (n)	اختصار (أوائل حروف الكلمات)	conclude (v) (d)	يستنتج	flow (n) (v) (ed)	انسياب/ينساب
admit (v) (ted)	يعترف	conclusion (n)	استنتاج/ختام	focus (v) (ed)	يركز
adults (n)	كبار/بالغون	contain (v) (ed)	يحتوى على	frequently (adv)	بشكل متكرر
algae (n)	طحالب	continent (n)	قارة	gap (n)	فجوة/فراغ
apply (v) (y ied)	يتقدم بطلب	create (v) (d)	يخلق/ينتج	giant (adj) (n)	عملاق
argument (n)	جدال/حجة	deal (v)	يتناول/يتعامل	headline (n)	عنوان رئيسى
author (n)	مؤلف	decade (n)	عقد من الزمن (عشر سنوات)	heat up (v) (ed)	يزداد حرارة
available (adj)	متوافر/متاح	destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر	hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية
basic (adj)	أساسى	dry (n) (v) (y ied)	جاف/يجف/يجفف	image (n)	صورة
care (v) (d)	يهتم	earn (v) (ed)	يكسب	increase (n) (v) (d)	زيادة/يزيد
cause (n) (v) (d)	سبب/يسبب	effect (n)	تأثير	interest (n) (v) (ed)	اهتمام/يثير اهتمام
central (adj)	وسط/متوسط	efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	invest (v) (ed)	يستثمر
charity (n)	مؤسسة خيرية	electric (adj)	كهربى	involve (v) (d)	يتضمن/يتورط
chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائى/مادة كيميائية	energy (n)	طاقة	key (adj)	رئيسى
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى	everyday (adj)	يومى	leaves (n)	أوراق شجر
communication (n)	اتصالات	evidence (n)	دليل	link (n)	رابط

English	Arabic
local (adj)	محلى
lose (v)	يفقد/يخسر
main (adj)	أساسى
mark (n)	درجة/علامة
meeting (n)	اجتماع
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
negative (adj)	سلبى
ocean (n)	المحيط
online (adj) (adv)	على الإنترنت
organisation (n)	منظمة
original (adj)	أصلى
partner (n)	شريك/رفيق
population (n)	السكان
positive (adj)	إيجابى
post (n) (v) (ed)	منشور عبر الإنترنت/ينشر (عبر الإنترنت)
powerful (adj)	قوى/ذو نفوذ
predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ بـ
procedure (n)	إجراء
produce (n)	إنتاج زراعى
proper (adj)	مناسب/صحيح
rainforest (n)	غابات استوائية (مطيرة)
recognisable (adj)	يمكن تمييزه/مميز
regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
request (n) (v) (ed)	طلب/يطلب
require (v) (d)	يتطلب
researcher (n)	باحث
response (n)	رد/استجابة
seaweed (n)	الأعشاب البحرية
section (n)	قسم
site (n)	موقع
society (n)	مجتمع
solution (n)	حل
source (n)	مصدر
southern (adj)	جنوبى
specific (adj)	محدد
summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
survey (n)	دراسة/تقييم
tasty (adj)	ذو مذاق جيد
teenager (n)	مراهق
tips (n)	نصائح
title (n)	عنوان (كتاب/مقال/مسرحية)
urban (adj)	مدنى
vegetarian (n)	شخص نباتى
vehicle (n)	مركبة
warn (v) (ed)	يحذر

Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

English	Arabic
according to	طبقًا لـ
as a result	نتيجة لذلك
at that time	فى ذلك الوقت
do the same	يفعل نفس الشىء
ever since	منذ ذلك الحين
feel special	يشعر أنه مميز
get upset	يصبح منزعجًا
get worse	يسوء
give advice	يعطى نصيحة
give opinion	يعطى رأيًا
have much fun	يتمتع بمرح كبير
in fact	فى الحقيقة/الواقع
in general	بشكل عام
in my view	فى رأيى
introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكارًا جديدة
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
make communication quicker	يجعل الاتصالات أسرع
make different sounds	يصدر أصواتًا مختلفة
make more money	يدر مالًا
make sense	ذو معنى
over the next few decades	عبر العقود القليلة التالية
pass an exam	يجتاز اختبارًا
post personal information	ينشر معلومات شخصية
stay in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
take a selfie	يأخذ صورة شخصية (أمامية)
take notes	يدون ملاحظات
tell the difference	يميز الفرق (الاختلاف)

Phrases & Prepositions

عبارات وحروف جر

add to/ into	يضيف إلى	go back	يرجع	remove from	يزيل من
advice about	نصيحة بشأن	good for	جيد لـ	solution to	حل لـ
apply for	يتقدم لوظيفة	grow to	ينمو إلى	source of	مصدر لـ
available for	متوفر لـ	hope for	أمل لـ	suitable for	مناسب لـ
based on	معتمد (مرتكز) على	increase ... by	يزيد ... بنسبة	talk about	يتحدث عن
chat with/to	يدردش مع	instead of	بدلًا من	talk to	يتحدث إلى
cut down	يقطع	kind of	نوع من	taste of	مذاق لـ
deal with	يتعامل مع	learn about	يعرف عن	thank for	يشكر على
difference between	اختلاف بين	link to	رابط لـ	variety of	تنوع من
disagree with	لا يتفق مع	look for	يبحث عن	work with	يعمل مع
focus on	يركز على	opinion on/about	رأى عن		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
aim	يهدف	aim	هدف	aimless	بلا هدف
communicate	يتواصل	communication	اتصالات	communicative	اتصالى
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	compared	مقارن
create	يخلق/ينتج	creation	خلق/إنتاج	creative	مبدع
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفى
destroy	يدمر	destruction	دمار/تدمير	destroyed	مدمر (تم تدميره)
innovate	يبدع/يبتكر	innovation	إبداع/ابتكار	innovative	مبدع/إبداعى
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	منظَّمْ
predict	يتنبأ بـ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	يمكن التنبؤ به
produce	ينتج	production	إنتاج	productive	منتج
recognise	يتعرف على/يميز	recognition	تمييز	recognisable	مميز/يمكن تمييزه
replace	يستبدل	replacement	استبدال/بديل	replaced	مستبدل
require	يتطلب	requirement	متطلب	----------------------------------	
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
specify	يحدد	specification	تحديد	specific	محدد

succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح
suggest	يقترح	suggestion	اقتراح	suggestive	اقتراحى
vary	يختلف/يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	مختلف/متنوع
warn	يحذر	warning	تحذير	warning	تحذيرى

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
appear	يظهر	come out/arrive	abandon/disappear	يغادر/يختفى
available	متوافر/متاح	handy/reachable	unavailable/unobtainable	غيرمتاح
basic	أساسى	main/primary	minor/extra	فرعى/غيرأساسى
compare	يقارن	contrast/analyse	discard/neglect	يستبعد/يهمل
control	يسيطرعلى/يتحكم	dominate/command	neglect/disobey	يتجاهل/يعصى
deal	يتعامل	handle/negotiate	refuse/deny	يرفض/ينكر
destroy	يدمر	smash/devastate	construct/create	يشيد
extraordinary	مميز/رائع	amazing/incredible	ordinary/common	عادى
factual	حقيقى/واقعى	real/precise	fictional/false	خيالى/غيرحقيقى
frown	يكشر/لا يستحسن	disapprove/dislike	approve/encourage	يستحسن
increase	يزيد	raise/expand	decrease/reduce	يخفض/يقلل
mention	يذكر	name/point out	ignore/neglect	يتجاهل
misunderstand	يسيء الفهم	misjudge/misinterpret	understand/perceive	يفهم
negative	سلبى	adverse/contradictory	positive	إيجابى
notice	يلاحظ	observe/regard	ignore/overlook	يهمل/يتغاضى عن
predict	يتنبأ بـ	forecast/anticipate	ignore	يتجاهل
procedure	إجراء	method/proceeding	inaction/inactivity	عدم إجراء/عدم نشاط
proper	مناسب/صحيح	convenient/suitable	improper/inappropriate	غيرمناسب
recognisable	مميز	definite/obvious	ambiguous/indefinite	غامض/غيرمحدد
regret	يأسف/يندم	repent/lament	praise/delight	يمدح/يفرح
request	يطلب	demand/seek	reply/answer	يرد
require	يتطلب	involve/desire	offer/dislike	يعرض/لا يرغب
response	رد/استجابة	reaction/feedback	request/question	طلب/تساؤل
source	مصدر	origin	outcome	ناتج

specific	محدد	definite/particular	common/ambiguous	شائع/غامض
suggest	يقترح	propose/advise	oppose/deny	يعارض/ينكر
summarise	يلخص	sum up/compile	expand/enlarge	يوسع
survey	دراسة/تقييم	analysis/inquiry	negligence	إهمال
sustainable	مستدام	continuous/tenable	temporary/brief	مؤقت
urban	مدنى	civil	rural	ريفى
variety	تنوع	diversity/variation	similarity	تشابه
warn	يحذر	alert/notify	mislead/ignore	يخدع/يتجاهل

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	lose	يفقد/يخسر	Hundreds of people lost their homes in the floods.
	miss	يفتقد/يفوته شيء	- It was great living in Prague, but I really missed all my friends. - By the time we got there, we'd missed the beginning of the film.
2	earn	يكسب (مالاً عن طريق العمل غالبًا)	You don't earn much money being a nurse.
	gain	يكتسب (شيئًا معنويًا)	In her first job, she gained experience as a programme manager.
	win	يفوز بـ (مباراة/جائزة/مسابقة)	How does it feel to have won the gold medal?
	beat	يهزم/يتغلب على	My brother easily beats me at chess every time we play.
3	title	١- عنوان (كتاب/مقال/مسرحية) ٢- لقب ٣- مسمى وظيفى	- What's the title of her new book? - The title "Mr" is used with a grown-up male. - He has an impressive job title in the company.
	address	١- عنوان (مكان) ٢- عنوان موقع إنترنت أو بريد إلكترونى ٣- خطاب/يخاطب	- Write your name, address, and phone number in the spaces provided. - Do you have the address of our website? - She was asked to give a formal address at the ceremony.
4	local	١- محلى (خاص بمنطقة/قرية/مدينة) ٢- أحد السكان المحليين	- You can find all these books in your local library. - We asked one of the locals to recommend a restaurant.
	national	قومى (خاص ببلد)	These buildings are part of our national heritage.
	international	دولى (بين أكثر من دولة)	The island now has an international airport.

	Word	Meaning	Example
5	earth	الكرة الأرضية/تراب	The Earth is the third planet from the sun.
	ground	أرض فضاء	He fell to the ground, crying out in pain.
	land	اليابسة	The army fought both at sea and on land.
	soil	تربة (زراعية/رملية)	Herbs should be planted in warm soil.
	floor	طابق فى بناية/أرضية الحجرة	He grabbed a broom and began sweeping the floor.
6	cause	١- سبَب يتبعها حرف الجر (of/to) ٢- يسبب	- His father has a good cause to be proud of him. - The police couldn't know the cause of the fire. - The infection can cause severe pain.
	reason	١- سبب/تبرير يتبعها الجر (for/why) ٢- يفكر/يصل إلى رأى بعد تفكير	- We'd like to know the reason why she didn't accept the job. - They reasoned that other businesses would soon copy the idea.
7	everyday (adj)	يومى (صفة يأتى بعدها اسم)	Stress has become one of the common qualities of everyday life.
	every day (adv)	كل يوم (ظرف)	When I was young, I used to play football every day.
8	communicate	يتواصل/يتفاهم	Many people all over the world use English to communicate with others.
	contact	يتصل بـ/يحتك بـ/اتصال	- Anyone with tickets will be contacted by phone. - Have you kept in contact with any of your friends from school?
	connect	يصل/يربط بين شيئين	A ferry connects the mainland and the island.
9	meeting	اجتماع (لأشخاص غالبًا ينتمون لمكان واحد)	The club's monthly meeting will be held next Monday evening.
	conference	مؤتمر (لأشخاص غالبًا من أماكن مختلفة)	The 1991 Middle East peace conference was in Madrid.
	interview	مقابلة شخصية (لوظيفة/صحافة/إذاعة)	The magazine has an exclusive interview with the couple.
	appointment	موعد (مع صديق/طبيب)	Why don't you make an appointment with one of our doctors?

10	make	يجعل	1. make + مفعول + (to المصدربدون) - My parents always made us do our homework before going to bed. 2. make + مفعول + adjective - The writer's first novel made him famous. 3. make + it + adjective + (to + المصدر) - Modern means of communication make it easy to share ideas with all people.
11	tasty	ذو مذاق جيد (تستخدم للطعام فقط)	The breakfast is complete and tasty.
	tasteful	ذو ذوق جيد (مختار بعناية)	The room is filled with tasteful furniture.

Prefix البادئـة

البادئة هى جزء من كلمة تضاف قبل الكلمة لتعطى معنى جديدًا ومنها (mis - re - un) واستخدام كل منها كالتالى:

Prefix	Meaning	Examples			
mis	تعطى معنى يسىء	misunderstand	يسىء الفهم	misuse	يسىء الاستخدام
re	تعطى معنى مرة ثانية	reread	يعيد قـراءة	rewrite	يعيد كتابة
un	تعطى العكس	undo	يلغى العمل	unrecognisable	لا يمكن تمييزه

Suffix اللاحقة

اللاحقـة هى مقاطـع تضـاف إلـى آخـر الكلمـة لتكويـن كلمـة جديـدة لإعطـاء معنـى جديـد أو لتحديـد نـوع الكلمـة، ومنهـا (able - er - less). واسـتخدام كل منهـا كالتالـى:

Suffix	Meaning	Examples			
able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	understandable	يمكن فهمه	recognisable	يمكن تمييزه
er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	carer	مهتم/مُراعٍ	writer	كاتب
less	تعطى العكس	careless	غيرحريص	useless	بلا فائدة

Practice...

Module (2)
Vocabulary Question Bank

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. A /An .... is a digital image that is added to a message in electronic communication in order to express a particular idea or feeling.

a) emoji b) abbreviation c) character d) signal

2. Egypt is investing more in .... energy resources such as solar and nuclear energy.

a) temporary b) avoidable c) sustainable d) non-renewable

3. In modern farming, the .... are regularly sprayed with pesticides.

a) products b) crops c) machines d) channels

4. Mrs Ashraf .... at her children, who were getting mud all over their clothes.

a) smiled b) smelled c) signed d) frowned

5. English is one of the most widely used language for people to .... with each other.

a) connect b) contact c) communicate d) link

6. The company has successfully innovated new products and services. The noun of the verb "innovate" is ....

a) innovative b) innovation c) innovate less d) innovated

Group 2

1. .... are the animals kept on a farm, for example cows or sheep.

a) Household b) Population c) Livestock d) Poultry

2. The market has an amazing .... of fresh fish.

a) property b) variety c) difference d) site

3. The government is making great efforts to encourage .... in industry.

a) invitation b) decoration c) acceptance d) innovation

4. .... is a method of growing plants in water rather than in soil.

a) Hydroponics b) Mathematics c) Micronics d) Gymnastics

5. AIDS destroys the body's ability to fight off illness. The adjective of the verb "destroy" is "....................".

a) destruction b) destroys c) destructive d) destructively

6. The rate of inflation increased .... 6 percent due to the present war in the region.

a) for b) at c) in d) by

Group 3

1. The land used for .... has been reduced, so we need to reclaim more desert land.

a) industry b) agriculture c) commerce d) economy

2. Toyota's new car model will be going into .... early next year.

a) invention b) consumption c) destruction d) production

3. In English, 'Dr' is written as a/an .... of 'Doctor'.

a) sentence b) abbreviation c) essay d) form

4. The foreign coach is keen on giving clear instructions so that they won't be ....

a) mismanaged b) misused c) misunderstood d) misbehaved

5. One of the main reasons for climate change is cutting .... rainforests.

a) in b) about c) down d) for

6. Soak the cloth in warm water and then squeeze it dry. The verb "squeeze" is a synonym of the verb ....

a) release b) press c) iron d) shield

Group 4

1. With the internet it is possible to make learning .... wherever it is needed.

a) avoidable b) expectable c) refutable d) available

2. Unfortunately, many crops are still grown with .... fertilisers which can be harmful.

a) acid b) material c) chemical d) induction

3. The factory owner offers a pay rise only for the workers who work ....

a) lazily b) hardly c) carelessly d) efficiently

4. Omar Khairat is known as a great .... in the field of modern Egyptian music.

a) user b) innovator c) listener d) inviter

5. If our son's illness .... any worse, we'll call the doctor or take him to hospital.

a) falls b) gets c) turns d) devises

6. More than half the restaurant staff are temporary working only in summer. The word "temporary" is an antonym of the word ....

a) sustainable b) regular c) gradual d) timeless

Group 5

1. You have to register to be able to post a/an .... in this website.

a) comment b) mark c) emoji d) abbreviation

2. The headmaster kept his .... friendly with the students who came to talk to him about the school trip.

a) sign b) tone c) mark d) stone

3. We had a/an .... with the waiter about the bill as it was very high.

a) fight b) treaty c) argument d) truce

4. Some scientists believe there may be a/an .... between caffeine and heart disease.

a) search b) outlet c) link d) exit

5. Our small factory began to .... more money after three years of building it.

a) make b) perform c) do d) assign

6. I would suggest that you see your doctor about this. The antonym of the verb "suggest" is ....

a) advise b) detest c) propose d) oppose

Group 6

1. There was a/an .... of fear on the child's face when he saw the lion at the circus.

a) impression b) depression c) progression d) expression

2. The best .... for water shortage is to greatly reduce our use of water.

a) evolution b) analysis c) solution d) exception

3. People always come to this old restaurant because the food is very .... there.

a) taste b) tasty c) tasteful d) tasteless

4. Mr Mamdouh is a very private man, and some people .... this for unfriendliness.

a) misunderstand b) miscalculate c) misuse d) misbehave

5. The minister will make a/an .... to the parliament to explain the new plan.

a) title b) address c) report d) headline

6. In her speech, the tennis player mentioned the help of her parents and husband. The antonym of the verb "mention" is "..................".

a) honour b) name c) neglect d) celebrate

Group 7

1. Yasser was ashamed to .... that he had lied to his wife.

a) adapt b) advise c) admit d) devise

2. Most people nowadays are aware of some of the .... rules of healthy living.

a) luxurious b) free c) costly d) basic

3. The wedding of the famous actor and actress made .... news.

a) headline b) address c) subtitle d) tale

4. All customer service centres are linked to the .... database at the head office.

a) inline b) offline c) online d) airline

5. I was able to .... in touch with some of my friends after university.

a) lose b) miss c) guard d) keep

6. The food at the restaurant was so extraordinary that we wanted to go there again. The synonym of the word "extraordinary" is "..................".

a) amazing b) terrible c) incredible d) ordinary

Group 8

1. I asked my friend to help me get a new passport as I don't know the ....

a) timetable b) timing c) program d) procedure

2. The bird is easily .... because of its bright red feathers.

a) available b) acceptable c) recognisable d) affectionate

3. Many farmers are leaving the countryside for the pleasures of .... life they hope for.

a) urban b) violent c) space d) rural

4. Many people believe that .... thinking can help your recovery from serious illnesses.

a) offensive b) positive c) negative d) depressive

5. Everyone should work very hard to .... enough money for a living nowadays.

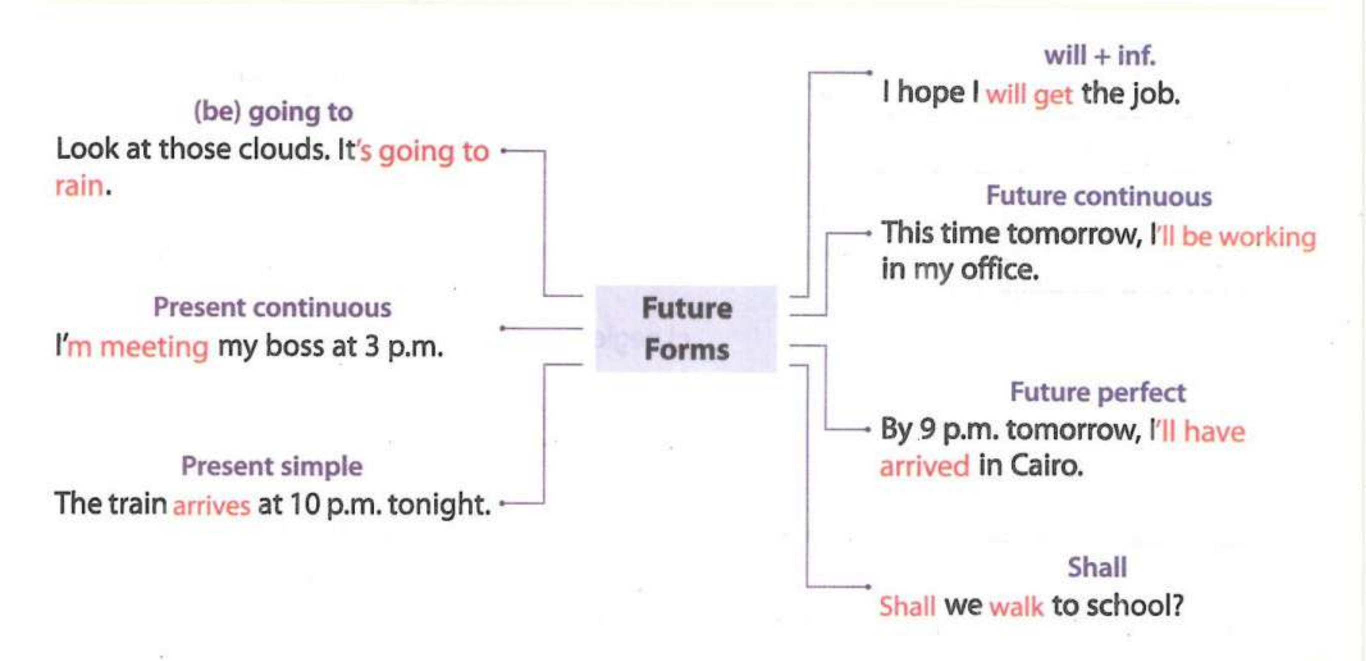
a) win b) gain c) beat d) earn

6. Antibiotics are still the most .... treatment for the diseases caused by bacterial infection.

a) affect b) effect c) effective d) affecting

Unit 3

Future Forms أشكال المستقبل



1 will + inf.

will

Affirmative الإثبات

كل الضمائر + will + inf.

١- التنبؤ بدون دليل

It will rain tomorrow.

٢- حقائق المستقبل

Tomorrow will be 12 Jan.

٣- للقرارات السريعة

I'll take my umbrella.

Negative النفى

كل الضمائر + won't + inf.

٤- للعرض والطلب

You seem busy. I'll make tea for you.

٥- للتحذير والتهديد

Without work, you will suffer a lot.

٦- يُستخدم مع تعبيرات زمنية وأفعال معينة.

sure, hope, think, expect, predict, promise, perhaps, probably, etc.

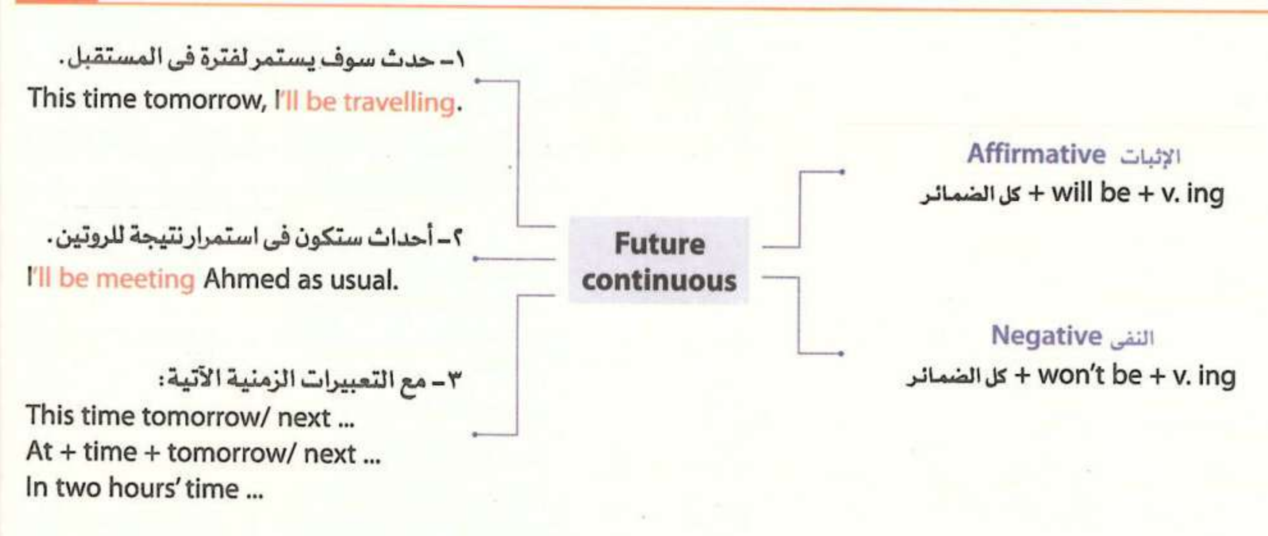
I'm **sure** Ali will win the race.

I **expect** that she will visit us tomorrow.



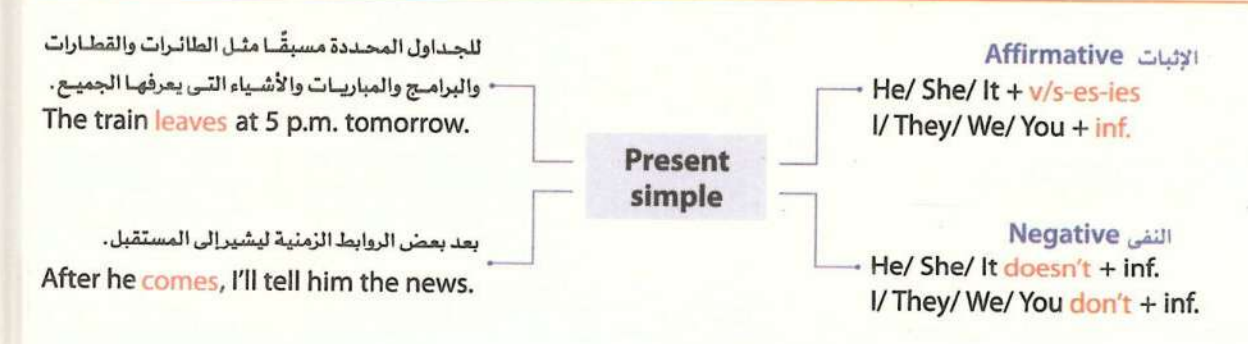


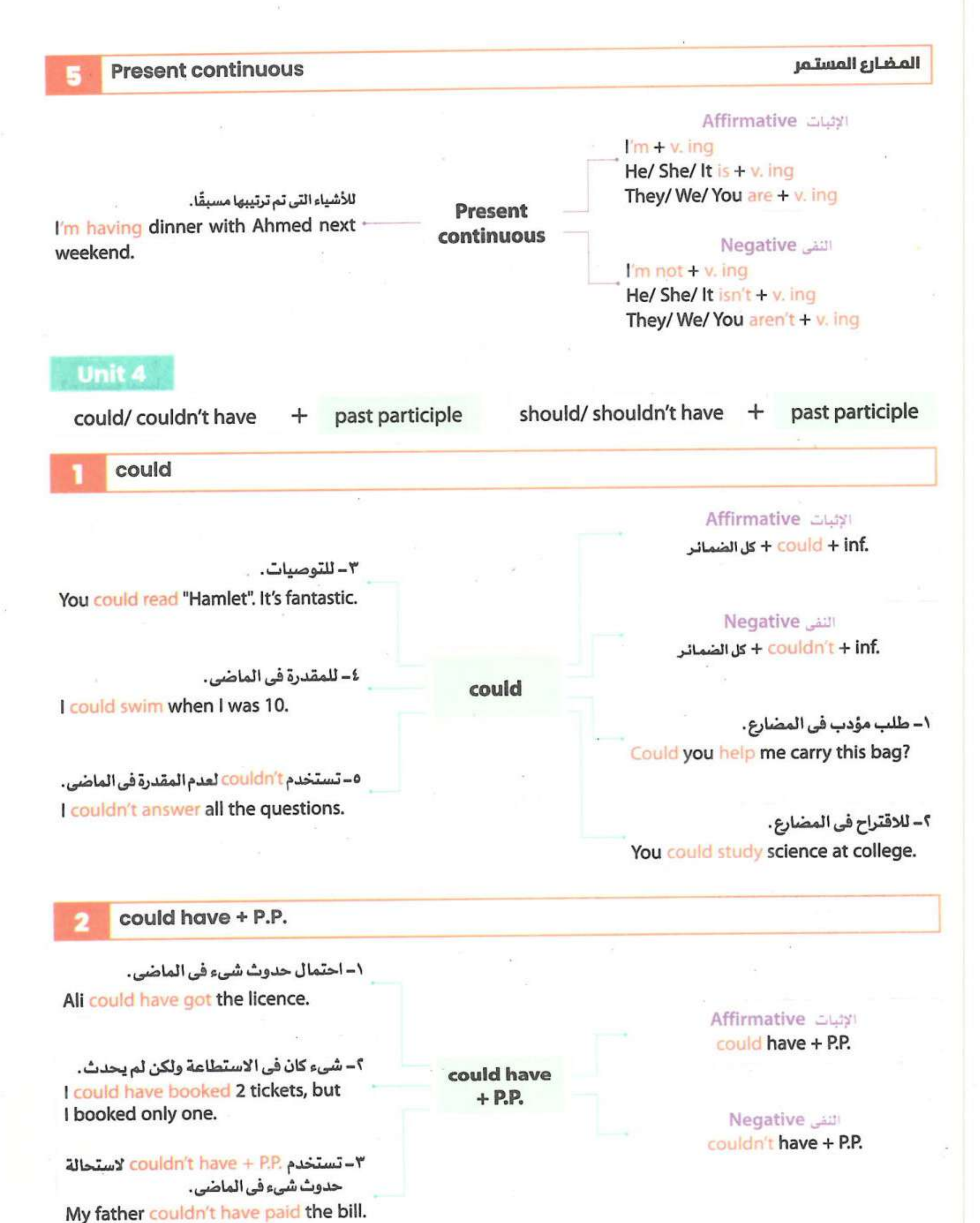
المستقبل المستمر





المضارع البسيط





5 Present continuous المضارع المستمر

Present continuous

Affirmative الإثبات
- I'm + v. ing
- He/ She/ It is + v. ing
- They/ We/ You are + v. ing

Negative النفى
- I'm not + v. ing
- He/ She/ It isn't + v. ing
- They/ We/ You aren't + v. ing

للأشياء التى تم ترتيبها مسبقًا.
I'm having dinner with Ahmed next weekend.

Unit 4

could/ couldn't have + past participle   should/ shouldn't have + past participle

1 could

could

Affirmative الإثبات
كل الضمائر + could + inf.

Negative النفى
كل الضمائر + couldn't + inf.

١– طلب مؤدب فى المضارع.
Could you help me carry this bag?

٢– للاقتراح فى المضارع.
You could study science at college.

٣– للتوصيات.
You could read "Hamlet". It's fantastic.

٤– للمقدرة فى الماضى.
I could swim when I was 10.

٥– تستخدم couldn't لعدم المقدرة فى الماضى.
I couldn't answer all the questions.

2 could have + P.P.

could have + P.P.

Affirmative الإثبات
could have + P.P.

Negative النفى
couldn't have + P.P.

١– احتمال حدوث شىء فى الماضى.
Ali could have got the licence.

٢– شىء كان فى الاستطاعة ولكن لم يحدث.
I could have booked 2 tickets, but I booked only one.

٣– تستخدم couldn't have + P.P. لاستحالة حدوث شىء فى الماضى.
My father couldn't have paid the bill. He didn't have the money.

3 should/shouldn't have + P.P. (for regret/ blame) للندم / اللوم

Rule	Meaning
should have + P.P. ought to have + P.P.	to talk about regret in the past للتعبير عن الندم (كان ينبغى فعل شىء ولم نفعله)
e.g. He should have looked for another job. He is now penniless.	
shouldn't have + P.P. oughtn't to have + P.P.	to say that something in the past wasn't a good idea شىء حدث فى الماضى ولم يكن واجبًا فعله
e.g. I shouldn't have wasted much time. I'm sorry for this now.	

Reported speech — الكلام المنقول (غير المباشر)

Reported imperatives, requests, suggestions and advice — (الأمر والطلب والاقتراح والنصيحة)

1 يتكون فعل القول فى الجملة الأمرية من أحد الأفعال الآتية:

advise	ينصح	help	يساعد	teach	يعلم
ask	يسأل	instruct	يوجه/يعلم	tell	يخبر
encourage	يشجع	invite	يدعو	want	يريد
expect	يتوقع	order	يأمر	warn	يحذر

2 لا نجد أقواسًا فى الجملة الأمرية المحولة ونربطها بـ to/not to ثم المصدر.

3 إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا نحول الأزمنة من المضارع إلى الماضى، لكن بعد to/not to فلا يوجد إلا المصدر.

"Stop talking."

The teacher told/asked/ordered us to stop talking.

"If I were you, I'd have a holiday and relax."

My mother advised me to have a holiday and relax.

"Don't waste time."

My father advised me not to waste time.

"Study science at university."

Ali encouraged his friend to study science at university.

Practice... **Language Question Bank**

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. We .... lunch and then we'll go out for a walk.
a) 'll have b) have c) had d) were having

2. I've got a job in Luxor, so I .... there for the next two years.
a) was working b) will have worked c) work d) will be working

3. He will tell me the details after he .... the boss.
a) meets b) will meet c) is going to meet d) is meeting

4. The government .... road repairs over the next two days.
a) do b) will do c) will be doing d) have done

5. It's unbelievable to think that this time tomorrow we .... to Matrouh.
a) will be driving b) will drive
c) are going to drive d) drive

6. What .... next, now that you've finished your course?
a) do you do b) did you do
c) will you be doing d) are you going to do

7. A: Chicken or meat, madam?
B: I .... meat, please.
a) am having b) will have
c) am going to have d) have

8. I won't have time to meet you next weekend, I'm afraid. I .... the school timetable for next year.
a) will organise b) will be organising c) organise d) will have organised

9. Look out! A car .... you.
a) will hit b) may hit c) is hitting d) is going to hit

Group 2

1. This time next week, I .... for the airport.
a) have left b) will leave c) will be leaving d) was leaving

2. I have already told you why I can't see you tomorrow. I .... guests.
a) can have b) am having c) have d) will have

3. The museum .... at 10 tomorrow morning as usual.
a) opens b) will open c) is opening d) opening

4. I'm buying flour and eggs because I .... a cake.
a) will make b) make c) making d) am going to make

5. Reham can't see her friend at the weekend as she .... her relatives.
a) has visited b) visiting c) is visiting d) visits

6. The match .... at 7:30. Don't call me at that time.
a) starts b) will start c) is starting d) is going to start

7. He .... a geologist when he leaves university. This is his plan.
a) will become b) has become
c) is going to become d) becomes

8. In the future, we .... new cells from patients to repair parts of their bodies.
a) use b) may be used c) will be used d) 'll be using

9. He .... in an hour. He has arranged it with his boss.
a) is leaving b) will leave c) leaves d) is going to leave

Group 3

1. When you .... my money back, I will give you the loan papers.

a) will return b) have returned c) can return d) had returned

2. How bad these players are! I'm sure our team .... in this match.

a) is beaten b) will be beaten
c) will have been beaten d) is being beaten

3. The committee won't leave .... they have finished the project.

a) until b) since c) when d) by the time

4. I think our team will win the next match. This is my ....

a) timetable b) prediction c) promise d) arrangement

5. Osama has decided to travel abroad to do his post-graduate studies, so ....

a) he will book the tickets tomorrow
b) he is going to book the tickets tomorrow
c) he books the tickets tomorrow
d) he doesn't have to book the tickets tomorrow

6. I'll bring my father some water. This is a/an ....

a) arrangement b) prediction
c) on-the-spot decision d) promise

7. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

a) He will take the train as soon as he books the ticket.
b) He won't take the train until he books the ticket.
c) He will take the train as soon as he has booked the ticket.
d) He will take the train as soon as he had booked the ticket.

8. Salah has decided that he .... at home and study his lessons.

a) is staying b) will stay c) is going to stay d) will be staying

9. Next week, while you .... for your exams, I will be on the beach.

a) are preparing b) were preparing
c) will be preparing d) prepared

Group 4

1. We had a lovely room in the hotel. We .... a fantastic view.

a) couldn't have seen b) should have seen
c) could see d) shouldn't have seen

2. Father didn't find any tickets; he .... have booked earlier.

a) could b) should c) shouldn't d) must

3. My father advised me .... a ticket in advance if I want to travel in August.

a) to buying b) buying c) to be bought d) to buy

4. You .... have heard me right. I definitely said 74, not 47.

a) must b) shouldn't c) could d) couldn't

5. You really .... have taken so much trouble over me.

a) shouldn't b) could c) should d) can't

6. Father ordered his daughters .... the door for anyone while he is out.

a) to open b) not to open c) opening d) to not open

7. As he was innocent, he wanted people .... what he had done.

a) knowing b) not to know c) to know d) to be known

8. Ahmed's parents warned him .... in others' affairs.

a) not to interfere b) to interfere c) interfering d) not interfering

9. I don't know who rang, but it .... have been Kamal.

a) must b) could c) can't d) shouldn't

Group 5

1. Khaled is expecting his friends .... very soon.

a) arrive b) to arriving c) arriving d) to arrive

2. He .... have bought the same car. He was wrong to do it.

a) shouldn't b) would c) should d) could

3. Ali's father warned him .... too much money on unnecessary things.

a) to spend b) not to spend c) to not spend d) to spending

4. After only six months, Suzan .... the violin quite well.

a) could have played b) couldn't play c) could play d) couldn't have played

5. It's a pity you didn't ask because I .... you.

a) could have helped b) had to help c) must help d) shouldn't have helped

6. The lifeguard instructed people .... near the rocks as it was dangerous.

a) to not swim b) to swimming c) to swim d) not to swim

7. You .... a doctor as soon as you felt that irritating headache. You were mistaken.

a) had to visit b) ought to have visited c) could visit d) might visit

8. .... you tell me when the next plane from Saudi Arabia arrives?

a) May b) Should c) Must d) Could

9. The train was so full of passengers that we .... on it.

a) must have got b) couldn't get c) should have got d) had to get

Group 6

1. It's advisable to save money for times of need. This means we .... do this.

a) should b) ought c) may d) have to

2. He advised me .... the film. It's violent.

a) not to see b) to be seen c) to have seen d) not to be seen

3. "Don't spend much money on luxuries." The reported sentence will be: ....

a) he didn't advise me to spend much money on luxuries
b) he advised me to not spend much money on luxuries
c) he advised me not to spend much money on luxuries
d) he warned me to spend much money on luxuries

4. He could answer all the questions in the exam. This means ....

a) it was necessary for him to answer all the questions in the exam
b) it was possible for him to answer all the questions, but he didn't
c) it was possible for him to answer all the questions
d) it was a good idea for him to answer all the questions

5. He should have turned right to go to the nearest market. This means ....

a) he didn't turn right
b) he turned right but got lost
c) he should do this to go there
d) he might have turned right, but we don't know

6. He oughtn't to have spoken sharply to his friend. This means ....

a) he didn't speak sharply to his friend
b) he spoke sharply, and it was rude
c) he spoke sharply as his friend wanted that
d) it wasn't necessary for him to speak sharply to his friend

7. Hady regrets not following his father's advice. This means ....

a) he should follow his father's advice
b) he ought to follow his father's advice
c) he might have followed his father's advice
d) he should have followed his father's advice

8. You .... have called him a fool - it really upsets him.

a) can't b) should c) shouldn't d) couldn't

9. He failed the test. He .... all the questions.

a) can't have answered b) can't answer c) must have answered d) could answer

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Group 1

A robot is a special kind of machine. It is a machine that moves. It follows instructions. The instructions come from a computer. It does not make mistakes. It doesn't get tired or complain unless you tell it to!

Robots are all around us. Some robots can help make cars. Other robots can help explore volcanoes. Certain robots can help vacuum your house. Some robots can even recognise words. They can be used to help answer telephone calls. Some robots look like humans. But most robots do not. Most robots just look like machines.

Long ago, people imagined robots. Over 2,000 years ago, a famous poet imagined robots. The poet's name was Homer. His robots were made of gold. They cleaned and made things. But they were not real. They were imaginary. Nobody was able to make a real robot. The first real robot was made in 1961. It was called Unimate. It was used to help make cars. It looked like a giant arm.

In the future, we will have even more robots. They will do things that we can't do. Or they will do things that we don't want to do. Or they will do things that are too dangerous for us. Robots will help us fight fires. They will help us fight wars. They will help us fight sickness. They will help us discover things. They will help make life better.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The robot doesn't make mistakes, get tired or complain because it ....
a) is made of plastic
b) is a machine
c) can't speak
d) looks like a human

2. As used in paragraph 1, we can understand that something special is NOT ....
a) expensive
b) perfect
c) tired
d) normal

3. What is the main purpose of paragraph 2?
a) To show how easy it is to make a robot.
b) To tell what a robot is.
c) To describe the things a robot can do.
d) To explain the difference between a robot and a machine.

4. Using the information in the passage as a guide, which of these gives the best use of a robot?
a) To help explore Mars.
b) To help make a sandwich.
c) To help read a book.
d) To help tie shoes.

5. How does the author of this passage feel about robots?
a) Robots are foolish.
b) Robots are helpful.
c) Robots are harmless.
d) Robots are dangerous.

6. The robot receives the instructions from ....
a) the computer
b) man
c) another robot
d) a poet

7. Robots have been in man's thoughts for over .... years.
a) 60
b) 62
c) 1961
d) 2000

8. The robot is different from man as it ....
a) needs carbon dioxide to live
b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong
c) doesn't object to anything
d) doesn't need space to move

Group 2

Tigers are one of the most powerful and graceful animals in the world. The different species that still exist today, namely the Bengal, Indochina, Siberian, South China and Sumatra tigers are in danger of becoming extinct. Due to irresponsible hunting, the Bali, Caspian and Java tigers have already become extinct. This could soon happen to the other species too.

Tigers do not shy away from water and enjoy bathing in streams and lakes to escape the heat in hot climates. In the past, tigers were considered pests. With a smaller area to hunt, as man had taken up more of the land to build upon, the tigers found fewer areas for themselves to hunt. They thus turned to farms to get their food. Farmers' livestock were attacked by these tigers. People were then encouraged to hunt and kill these animals with the promise of rewards. Even after the threat of tigers on livestock was over, man continued to hunt tigers, this time for recreation. Poachers too hunt tigers for their body parts knowing that the skin of tigers is much sought after. Bones and other organs are also used as ingredients in traditional Chinese medicine. Although killing tigers is illegal, it is still being carried out and unless it is stopped, the remaining species of tigers will soon become extinct too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How many species of tigers were there originally?

a) Three. b) Four. c) Five. d) Eight.

2. There were less hunting grounds for the tigers because ....

a) the tiger population was becoming bigger
b) man had occupied the land
c) the farmers put their livestock there
d) they liked hunting livestock

3. Poachers are people who ....

a) catch tigers
b) make Chinese medicine
c) hunt tigers illegally
d) hunt tiger's body parts

4. Illegal poaching will ....

a) cause the extinction of tigers
b) increase the population of tigers
c) increase the amount of Chinese medicine
d) increase the price of body parts

5. Hunting tigers is considered a kind of ....

a) business b) mercy c) recreation d) both a and b

6. The other noun that means "livestock" is "....................".

a) poachers b) cattle c) pests d) tigers

7. Tigers' bones can be used in ....

a) traditional medicine
b) food
c) recreation
d) feeding livestock

8. According to the passage, tigers ....

a) don't fear hot climates
b) are in danger of extinction
c) don't like water
d) don't eat livestock

Group 3

Football, or soccer, which is considered to be the most popular sport in the world, is a team sport played between two teams of eleven players using a spherical ball.

The object of the game, which is played on a wide rectangular field with a goal on each end of the field, is to score by putting the ball into the adversary's goal. A goalkeeper who is allowed, except for other players, to use his/her hands in the game, keeps the goal. The winners are those who score the most goals. If the football match ends in a draw the two teams may be redirected to play extra time and/or penalty shootouts (each team taking turns to have a set number of kicks at the goal).

The way football is played now was first codified in England. Nowadays, it is governed by the FIFA, "Fédération Internationale de Football Association" (International Federation of Association Football). The game is played now all over the world and competitions are organised nationally, continentally and internationally. The most prestigious of football competitions is the World Cup, which is held every four years.

Playing soccer just for fun can be done in backyards, on streets or on beaches. All you need is a ball. Soccer can also be a great sport for kids who may not have high levels of athletic ability, but who would like to participate in team sports. Soccer is ideal for boys, girls, men and women, who play the same game under the same rules and, where physically appropriate, may play alongside each other.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is another word for football.
a) Soccer b) FIFA c) The World Cup d) Goal

2. The rules of the game were established ....
a) by an international committee b) in England
c) by FIFA d) every four years

3. The number of players on the pitch in a football match is ....
a) ten b) eleven c) sixteen d) twenty-two

4. The most important football competition nowadays is ....
a) FIFA b) the World Cup
c) Soccer d) Champions League

5. The World Cup competition takes place ....
a) annually b) every 5 years
c) every 48 months d) every 60 weeks

6. What is the aim of the text?
a) To persuade the reader to play football.
b) To entertain the reader with football.
c) To explain a football match.
d) To describe football.

7. What is the difference between the goalkeeper and the other players in the team?
a) He/She is not allowed to use his foot.
b) He/She is the only one who can pass the ball inside the penalty area.
c) He/She is allowed to use his hands.
d) He/She is not allowed to shoot the free kicks.

8. The antonym of the underlined word "ideal" is ....
a) ordinary b) supreme c) imperfect d) fitting

2 Translation:

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Group 1

- Wars have disastrous effects on the stability of countries as they hinder development projects and economic growth all over the world.

a) الحروب لها آثار كارثية على اقتصاد الدول لأنها تعرقل مشاريع التنمية والنمو الاقتصادى فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

b) الحروب لها آثار كارثية على استقرار الدول لأنها تعرقل مشاريع التنمية والنمو الاقتصادى فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

c) الحروب لها آثار كارثية على استقرار الدول لأنها تعوق موضوعات التنمية والنمو الاقتصادى فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

d) الحروب لها آثار غير معقولة على أمن الدول لأنها تعوق مشاريع التنمية والنمو الاقتصادى فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

Group 2

- A man is known by the company he keeps, so we should choose our friends carefully as a friend in need is a friend indeed.

a) يُعرف المرء بأقرانه، لذلك ينبغى علينا أن نختار أصدقاءنا بعناية فالصديق الحق هو الذى يقف بجانبك فى الشدائد.

b) يُعرف المرء بعمله فى شركته، لذلك ينبغى علينا أن نختار أصدقاءنا بعناية فالصديق الحق هو الذى يقف بجانبك فى الشدائد.

c) يُعرف الرجل بالشركة التى يمتلكها، لذلك يجب أن نختار أصدقائنا بعناية لأن الصديق المحتاج هو صديق بالفعل.

d) الرجل معروف من قبل الشركة التى يحتفظ بها، لذلك يجب أن نختار أصدقائنا بعناية لأن الصديق المحتاج هو صديق بالفعل.

Group 3

- Since pollution and global warming are the greatest threats now, renewable energy can save our environment and secure our future.

a) منذ أن التلوث والاحتباس الحرارى هما أعظم التهديدات الآن، يمكن للطاقة الجديدة أن تنقذ بيئتنا وتؤمن مستقبلنا.

b) بما أن التلوث والاحتباس الحرارى يهددنا الآن كثيرًا، يمكن للطاقة المتجددة أن توفر لنا بيئة آمنة ومستقبلًا مشرقًا.

c) نظرًا لأن التلوث والاحتباس الحرارى هما أعظم التهديدات الآن، يمكن للطاقة المتجددة أن تنقذ بيئتنا وتؤمن مستقبلنا.

d) منذ أن هددنا التلوث والاحتباس الحرارى كثيرًا هذه الأيام، يمكن للطاقة المتجددة أن تنقذ بيئتنا وتؤمن مستقبلنا.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

Group 1

- يُعد مشروع تطوير الريف المصرى من أفضل وأضخم المشروعات القومية التى تنفذها الدولة بجميع مؤسساتها للاعتراف بحقوق الإنسان وتحقيقًا للتنمية المستدامة.

a) The Egyptian Rural Development Project is one of the best and largest international projects implemented by the country with all its institutions to recognise human rights and achieve sustainable development.

b) The Egyptian Rural Development Project is one of the best and largest national projects implemented by the state with all its institutions to recognise human rights and achieve sustainable development.

c) The Egyptian Rural Development Subject is one of the best and largest national Subjects implemented by the state with all its agencies to realise human rights and achieve subjectable development.

d) The Egyptian Rural Development Object is one of the best and largest national objects implemented by the country with all its organisations to recognise human rights and achieve sustainable development.

Group 2

- لقد ساعد التلفاز فى تطوير معرفة الناس بشئون العالم لأنه يمكنهم من متابعة الأحداث الجارية فى أجزاء مختلفة من العالم لحظة حدوثها.

a) Television has helped in developing people's knowledge of world conditions because it enables them of following the current events in different parts of the world the moment they happen.

b) Television has helped in developing people's knowledge of world affairs because it enables them to follow the currant events in different parts of the world the moment they occur.

c) Television has helped in developing people's knowledge of world affairs because it enables them to follow the current events in different parts of the world the moment they occur.

d) Television helped in developing people's knowledge of world crises because it enables them to follow the currant events in different parts of the world the moment they happen.

Group 3

- إن ارتفاع الأسعار ظاهرة شائعة وتحدث فى معظم اقتصاديات العالم. ولحلها ينبغى ترشيد الاستهلاك وزيادة الإنتاج وتعزيز سياسة الاكتفاء الذاتى وتنسيق التعاون بين الدول فى جميع مجالات الإنتاج.

a) Raising prices is a common phenomenon that occurs in most economies of the world. To solve it, it is necessary to rationalise customs, increase production, enhance the policy of self-sufficiency, and coordinate cooperation between countries in all fields of production.

b) Rising prices is a common phenomenon that occurs in most economies of the world. To solve it, it is necessary to rationalise consumption, increase production, enhance the policy of self-sufficiency, and coordinate cooperation between countries in all fields of production.

c) Rising prices is a famous phenomenon that happens in most economies of the world. To solve it, it is necessary to rationalise consumption, increase production, strengthen the politics of self-sufficiency, and coordinate cooperation between countries in all fields of production.

d) Raising prices is a common phenomenon that occurs in most economies of the world. To solve it, it is necessary to increase consumption, rationalise production, strengthen the policy of self-sufficiency, and coordinate cooperation between countries in all fields of production.

3 Writing:

1. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: "Your prediction about life in the next century".

....

....

....

2. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: "A play of Shakespeare you have just finished and you recommend us to read".

....

....

....

3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: "A place you visited and never forgot".

....

....

....

Practice...

Revision Test (2)

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Sometimes I'm lazy and just send a heart .... in a message to show how I feel about something.

a) character b) emoji c) abbreviation d) signal

2. The puzzle in this week's children magazine asks the children to .... the difference between two similar pictures.

a) tell b) make c) design d) do

3. The head teacher's formal .... made the students apologise for breaking the rules immediately.

a) sign b) mark c) tone d) stone

4. The students must finish the test within the .... of two hours, no more.

a) location b) area c) space d) region

5. The two friends had been classmates at secondary school and had always .... in touch.

a) lost b) kept c) missed d) lived

6. What interests me is all the history of these places. The adjective from the verb "interest" is "..................".

a) interestingly b) interest less c) interests d) interesting

7. Where do you think you .... when you're 50?

a) shall work b) will be worked c) will be working d) work

8. Get out of the building! It sounds like the generator ....

a) is going to explode b) will explode
c) explodes d) will be exploding

9. I don't think he .... his opponent. He's very weak.

a) 'll beat b) won't beat
c) isn't going to beat d) is beating

10. It's your own fault, you .... have gone to bed so late.

a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) must

11. As it was the time to close, all the customers were politely asked .... the shop.

a) leaving b) to leaving c) to leave d) to have left

12. He didn't find the keys anywhere. He .... have left them on the bus.

a) could b) can't c) couldn't d) mustn't

13. The assistant was helpful, but Samy felt she .... him more information.

a) can't have given b) shouldn't have given
c) could have given d) had to give

14. I strongly encourage everyone .... or see *King Lear*. It's an important play.

a) read b) to read c) reading d) to reading

15. He .... his doctor this afternoon.

a) is seeing b) sees
c) will have seen d) had seen

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In the UK, the diseases connected to smoking are a big problem. Doctors think that the annual medical cost for lung cancer, heart disease, and other illnesses connected to smoking is between 12 and 35 million pounds.

And smoking costs society money in other ways. Between 27 and 61 billion pounds are spent each year on sick days when people don't go to work, on wages that you don't get when you don't go to work, and on work lost at the company when you are sick.

This money counts the wages from people who die of cancer at a young age and stop paying taxes. This does not count fires started by cigarettes, which kill fifteen hundred people yearly and injure another four thousand. Smoking costs every man, woman and child in the UK from one hundred and ten to two hundred and fifty pounds each year in the lost work and wages. When you add another fifty to one hundred and fifty pounds yearly in insurance cost, that comes to one hundred and sixty to four hundred and ten pounds. If everyone stopped smoking, a family of four could have up to one thousand six hundred and forty pounds a year more. Smoking will also cause other problems. People who don't smoke will live longer, and so they will take money from the government when they are old. But they will also work for more years and pay more taxes.

In the end, the value of a non-smoking nation is not in pounds. The good health of the people is the true value for us all.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. If everyone stopped smoking, all the United Kingdom ....

a) would have more money b) would live longer
c) would have less money d) would have no more problems

17. Every year companies lose .... because of the disease.

a) money b) work c) wages d) time

18. The true value for the UK of not smoking is ....

a) more working b) more taxes c) good health d) more money

19. This text is about ....

a) taxes which are not paid by smokers
b) diseases that smokers get
c) how much smoking costs the UK
d) how much the UK gets if everyone stopped smoking

20. Smokers cost the UK a lot if they are ....

a) alive b) dead c) weren't born d) alive or dead

21. Curing lung cancer costs ....

a) much money b) 15 million pounds
c) many lives d) many doctors

22. People don't pay taxes because ....

a) they don't have enough money b) they don't like their country
c) they die at an early age d) taxes are too much for them

23. The synonym of the word "injure" is "..................".

a) heal b) restore c) recover d) hurt

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Besides being an important source of national income, tourism strengthens ties among the nations of the world. It also helps to spread peace, love and understanding.

a) إلى جانب كونها مصدرًا مهمًا للدخل القومى، تعمل السياحة على تقوية الروابط بين دول العالم. كما أنها تساعد على نشر السلام والمحبة والتفاهم.

b) بالرغم من كونها مصدرًا مهمًا للدخل القومى، تعمل السياحة على تقوية الروابط بين دول العالم. كما أنها تساعد على نشر السلام والمحبة والتفاهم.

c) إلى جانب كونها مصدرًا مهمًا للدخل القومى، تعمل السياحة على تقوية الروابط بين دول العالم. كما أنها تساعد على الحفاظ على السلام والمحبة والتفاهم.

d) إلى جانب كونها ناتجًا مهمًا للدخل القومى، تعمل السياحة على تقوية الروابط بين دول العالم. كما أنها تساعد على نشر السلام والمحبة والتفاهم.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- يحذر كثير من الخبراء من الاستخدام المفرط للتليفون المحمول؛ لأن ذلك قد يؤدى إلى مشكلات صحية ونفسية واجتماعية خطيرة وخاصة لدى الأطفال.

a) Many experts warn for excessive use of mobile phones because this must lead to serious health, psychological and social problems, especially for children.

b) Many experts warn against excessive use of mobile phones because this may lead to serious health, economic and social problems, especially for children.

c) Many experts warn against excessive use of mobile phones because this may lead to serious health, economic and social problems, especially for children.

d) Many experts warn against normal use of mobile phones because this may drive to serious health, psychological and social problems, especially for children.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. If you were King Lear, would you try to regain power after Goneril's treatment? If yes, how would you do this?

....

....

2. Why do you think Albany yielded easily to his wife's desire to let her father go away?

....

....

3. What do you think of the Fool's decision to stay with the King?

....

....

27. Write an essay of ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY(180) words on the following topic:

"The importance of friendship"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Study... Revision on Module 3 | Units 5 & 6



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

banner adverts (n)	إعلانات البانر (اللافتة)	follower (n)	متابع	subscribe (v) (d)	يشترك فى موقع
beg (v)	يرجو/يتوسل	mean (adj) (v)	بخيل/يعنى/يقصد	take down (v)	يزيل ملفات سبق رفعها على الإنترنت
carol (n)	ترنيمة (أغنية دينية مسيحية)	pile (n)	كومة	targeted advertising (n)	الإعلانات الموجهة
Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد	post (v) (ed) (n)	ينشر/منشورًا (على الإنترنت)	update (v) (d)	يحدث
consult (v) (ed)	يستشير	reliable (adj)	موثوق فيه	upgrade (v) (d) (n)	يرقى/ترقية
cookies (n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	search result (n)	نتيجة البحث	upload (v) (ed)	يحمل ملفات على الإنترنت
download (v) (ed)	يقوم بتنزيل ملفات	sigh (v) (ed) (n)	يتنهد/يتحسر/تنهيدة	up-to-date (adj)	حديث
fire (n) (v) (d)	نار/مدفأة/يطلق الرصاص/يفصل من العمل	sponsored adverts (n)	الإعلانات الممولة	views (n)	مشاهدات

Key Phrases عبارات رئيسية

bring back	يعيد ذكريات	get on with	ينسجم مع	lose touch	يفقد الاتصال
fall out	يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف/يتعارك مع	hang out with	يقضى وقتًا مع		
get into	يبدأ الاستمتاع	keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال		

Helpful Vocabulary مفردات مساعدة

access (n)	مدخل/سبيل	browser (n)	متصفح	employee (n)	موظف
adapt (v) (ed)	يتأقلم	button (n)	زر	employer (n)	صاحب العمل
addicted (adj)	مدمن	caption (n)	شرح/عنوان لمقال أو صورة	entertain (v) (ed)	يسلى/يستضيف
advertiser (n)	معلن	criticise (v) (d)	ينتقد	excuse (n)	عذر
app (n)	تطبيق	disappointed (adj)	محبط	extra (adj)	إضافى
apparently (adv)	بوضوح	donation (n)	تبرع	fake (adj)	مزيف
assistant (n)	مساعد/بائع	each (pro) (adv)	كل	forum (n)	منتدى

generous (adj)	كريم	own (v) (ed)	يمتلك	resource (n)	منبع/مورد
highlight (v) (ed) (n)	يسلط الضوء/عمل بارز	perfect (adj)	كامل/تام	sensible (adj)	عاقل
honest (adj)	مخلص/أمين	pick up (v) (ed)	يلتقط	series (n)	سلسلة
identity (n)	شخصية/هوية	platform (n)	منصة/رصيف القطار	software (n)	برامج الكمبيوتر
imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي	source (n)	مصدر
influence (n) (v) (d)	تأثير/يؤثر على	privacy (n)	خصوصية	spread (v)	ينشر
install (v) (ed)	يركب جهازًا/يثبت برنامجًا	professional (n) (adj)	محترف/احترافي	stamp (n) (v) (ed)	وسم/يوسم/يختم
instant (adj)	فوري/عاجل	profile (n)	الملف الشخصي	symbol (n)	رمز
keywords (n)	كلمات دلالية	provide (v) (d)	يوفر/يزود	treat (v) (ed)	يعامل/يعالج
knowledge (n)	معرفة	purpose (n)	غرض	version (n)	إصدار/نسخة (من برنامج)
life (n)	حياة	rank (n) (v) (ed)	رتبة/يضع في رتبة (ترتيب)	victim (n)	ضحية
logical (adj)	منطقي	register (v) (ed)	يسجل	viewpoint (n)	وجهة نظر
moral (n)	مغزى/درس أخلاق/خُلق	relationship (n)	علاقة	waste (v) (d)	يهدر/يسرف
obvious (adj)	واضح	represent (v) (ed)	يمثل/ينوب عن		

Expressions & Idioms — تعبيرات ومصطلحات

according to	طبقًا لـ	have access to	يمتلك (يحصل على) وسيلة للوصول إلى	for ages	لعصور (لفترة طويلة)
after all	على أية حال	have an effect on	له تأثير على	get burnt	يحترق/يتأثر بحرارة الشمس
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ	have experience in	لديه خبرة بـ	keep ... safe	يحافظ على ... آمنًا
as usual	كالمعتاد	in a few years' time	في غضون سنوات قليلة	keep ... entertained	يسلي/يجعلهم مسرورين
at the beginning	في البداية	in person	شخصيًا	keep attention on	يُبقي اهتمامًا بـ
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	in short	باختصار	keep in contact with	يبقى على اتصال مع
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر	keep ... warm	يحافظ على الدفء	knowledge of	معرفة بـ
change his mind	يغير رأيه	do exercise	يمارس تمرينات	make friends	يصادق/يكوِّن صداقات
do a blog post	يعد منشورًا على مدونة	do research	يقوم ببحث علمي	make rules	يعد القواعد
do a history essay	يعد مقالًا تاريخيًا	do things	يقوم بأشياء	miss the train	يفوته القطار
get lost	يضل الطريق	feel alone	يشعر بالوحدة	on your own	بمفردك
get worse	يسوء	feel healthy	يشعر بصحة جيدة	pay attention to	يهتم بـ
go online	يستخدم الإنترنت	feel sad	يشعر بالحزن	share sad moments	يشارك اللحظات الحزينة
have a cold	يصاب بالبرد	feel sorry	يشعر بالأسى	take an interest in	لديه اهتمام بـ
have a problem	لديه مشكلة	feel uncomfortable with	يشعر بعدم الراحة مع		

Phrases & Prepositions

عبارات وحروف جر

adapt to	يتأقلم مع	find out	يكتشف	plenty of	وفرة (كثير) من
argue with	يجادل مع	full of	ملىء ب	run off	يجرى بعيدًا
ask for	يطلب	go past	يمر ب	set of	مجموعة من
bad for	سيئ ل	information about	معلومات عن	share with	يشارك مع
careful about	حريص بشأن	interested in	مهتم ب	smile at	يبتسم بوجه
divided into	مقسم إلى	loads of	كثير من	work for	يعمل لصالح
feel about	يشعر بشأن	pay for	يدفع مقابل	worry about	يقلق بشأن

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
adapt	يتأقلم	adaptation	تأقلم	adapted	متأقلم
addict	يدمن	addiction	إدمان	addicted	مدمن
apply	يطبق	application (app)	تطبيق	applicable	يمكن تطبيقه
assist	يساعد	assistance assistant	مساعدة مساعد	--	
browse	يتصفح	browse browser	تصفح متصفح	--	
consult	يستشير	consultation consultant	استشارة مستشار	consultative	استشارى
criticise	ينتقد	criticism	نقد/انتقاد	criticised	منتقد
donate	يتبرع	donation	تبرع	--	
employ	يوظف	employment employee	توظيف موظف	employed	موظف
entertain	يسلى	entertainment	تسلية/ترفيه	entertaining	مسلٍ
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative imaginary	خيالى (مبدع) خيالى (بعيد عن الواقع)
improve	يحسّن	improving	تحسين	improved	محسن
influence	يؤثر	influence	تأثير	influential	مؤثر/ذو نفوذ
memorise	يحفظ	memory	ذاكرة	memorable	بارز/جدير بالذكر
register	يسجل	registration	تسجيل	--	
rely	يعتمد	reliance	اعتماد	reliable	موثوق فيه
represent	يمثل	representation	تمثيل/إنابة عن	representative	ممثل
subscribe	يشترك فى	subscription	اشتراك	--	
waste	يهدر/يسرف	waste	هدر/إسراف	wasteful	مبذر

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
adapt	يتأقلم	adjust/modify	reject/disturb	يرفض/ينبذ/يضطرب
apparently	بوضوح	obviously/clearly	unlikely	غيرمحتمل
beg	يرجو/يتوسل	request/urge	give/reply	يعطى
criticise	ينتقد	condemn/blame	approve/praise	يستحسن/يمتدح
disappointed	محبط	depressed/dissatisfied	cheerful/comforted	مرح
donation	تبرع	charity/assistance	blockage/hindrance	غلق/منع
entertain	يسلى	amuse/satisfy	annoy/displease	يضايق
generous	كريم	hospitable/charitable	mean/miserly	بخيل
highlight	يسلط الضوء على	focus	neglect	يهمل
honest	مخلص/أمين	sincere/truthful	deceitful/dishonest	مخادع/غيرحقيقى
instant	فورى/عاجل	immediate/urgent	delayed/slow	مؤجل/بطيء
mistake	خطأ	error/fault	correction/soundness	تصحيح
obvious	واضح	apparent/evident	ambiguous/doubtful	غامض/مشكوك فيه
privacy	خصوصية	secrecy/solitude	publicity/socialness	دعاية/شهرة/اجتماعية
professional	محترف	expert/experienced	amateur/incompetent	هاوٍ/غيركفء
prompt	مثير/محفز	hint/reminder	hindrance	إعاقة
relationship	علاقة	relation/connection	separation/disconnection	انفصال
reliable	موثوق فيه	trustworthy/respectable	dishonest/unreliable	غيرأمين/غيرموثوق
represent	يمثل	speak for	renounce	يتنصل
speed	سرعة	quickness/acceleration	slowness/delay	بطء/تأخير
upgrade	يرقى	promote/improve	reduce/decrease	يقلل/يخفض
waste	يسرف/يهدر	drain/misuse	maintain/save	يحافظ على

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

	Word		Example
1	load	يحمّل (بضائع/برامج)	The port workers are loading the truck now.
	unload	يفرغ حمولة	It was my job to unload the boxes from the van.
	overload	يفرط فى التحميل (الاستخدام)	The truck was overloaded with wood.
	download	يحمّل ملفات من الإنترنت	Wait until the programme finishes downloading.
	upload	يرفع على الإنترنت	It might take 10 minutes to upload these files to the internet.

	Word	Meaning	Example
2	effective	مؤثر/فعّال (له تأثير)	You need more effective communication within the organisation.
	impressive	مؤثر (يترك/ترك انطباعًا جيدًا)	The list of Mohamed Salah's achievements is pretty impressive.
	affecting	مؤثر (يوحى بالشجن)	*King Lear* is really an affecting drama with the death of the hero.
3	experience	١- خبرة (اسم غير معدود) ٢- تجربة حياة (اسم معدود)	- I had a bad experience in the last place I worked. - You don't need any experience to work here.
	experiment	تجربة (علمية/معملية)	Researchers now need to conduct further experiments.
4	publish	ينشر	The newspaper is published daily.
	spread	١- ينتشر/يمتد ٢- ينشر	- Cholera spread quickly through the refugee camp. - Some websites help spread rumours about people.
5	each	نستخدم (each) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء بشكل منفصل، كل واحد فى مرة.	- Grill the fish for five minutes on each side. - Each of these people has some useful talent or experience.
	every	نستخدم (every) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء معًا، فى مجموعة تعنى (كل شىء) أو (الجميع) أو (الكل).	I can remember every detail of our conversation.
6	platform	رصيف القطار منصة (يقف عليها المتحدث) منصة إلكترونية (مثل موقع تواصل اجتماعى)	- The train to Paris will depart from platform 3. - The two candidates shared a platform for the question and answer session. - Facebook is the most famous social platform all over the world.
	pavement	رصيف الشارع	The man suddenly stepped off the pavement into the road.
7	represent	يمثل/ينوب عن (منظمة/مجموعة)	Mr Michael was chosen to represent the company at the conference.
	act	١- يتصرف ٢- يمثل (يقوم بدور) فى فيلم/مسرحية/مسلسل/إعلان	- He's been acting strangely ever since his mum died. - She is acting the role of Lady Macbeth six evenings a week.
8	treat	يعالج (يتخذ إجراءات العلاج)	The clinic has treated several thousand patients free of charge.
	cure	يعالج/يشفى (من مرض)	The doctor managed to cure her of her illness.
	heal	تلتئم (الجروح والكسور)	This will help to heal your cuts and scratches.

	Word	Meaning	Example
9	work with	يعمل/يتعامل مع	He joined a course to learn how to work with disabled children.
	work for	يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح	- My father works for a small factory which makes children's clothes. - We all should work for making our country a better place to live in.
	work in	يعمل فى	My friend hopes to work in the field of computer software.
	work on	يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)	The researchers are working on a new machine to save energy.
	work as	يعمل كـ(وظيفة)	My cousin has been working as a police officer for fifteen years.
10	let	يترك/يسمح (المصدر بدون to)	My teacher lets our class do a quiz before the lesson.
	make	يجعل (المصدربدون to)	My teacher makes our class do a quiz before the lesson.
	cause	يسبب (المصدر+ to)	The coronavirus crisis caused a lot of factories to close down.
	allow	يسمح (المصدر to)	We refused to allow our children to stay up until midnight.
11	memory	ذاكرة/ذكرى (شيء معنوى غير ملموس)	- He suffered memory loss for weeks after the accident. - Her poems are often based on childhood memories.
	souvenir	تذكار (شيء مادى يُذكر برحلة/حدث)	I bought the ring as a souvenir of Greece.
	anniversary	ذكرى سنوية	He bought her a diamond ring on their tenth wedding anniversary.
12	title	عنوان رئيسى فى جريدة أو مجلة لمقال أو خبر/عنوان كتاب	The title of the first chapter is "Get Started."
	subtitle	١- عنوان فرعى (تحت عنوان رئيسى)/عنوان فرعى لكتاب ٢- ترجمة لفيلم أو فيديو تظهر مكتوبة أسفل الصورة	- The opera's subtitle is "The School for Lovers". - The film is in Chinese with English subtitles.
	caption	تعليق مكتوب فوق أو تحت صورة مطبوعة أو منشورة	- The caption on the picture says "This year's contest winners."

Practice...

Module (3)
Vocabulary Question Bank

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. A .... advert is an advertisement that appears across the top of a page on the internet.
a) banner b) radio c) cookie d) hidden

2. You should not attempt these heavy exercises without first .... your doctor.
a) preventing b) applying c) advising d) consulting

3. Advertising experts depend on .... to target their customers' needs.
a) antiviruses b) versions c) cookies d) updates

4. You can .... a free version of the game from the websites for free.
a) collect b) detach c) upload d) download

5. The new secretary seems to get .... with everybody in the company.
a) at b) off c) below d) on

6. It's a good idea to collect rainwater for use in the garden. The noun of the verb "collect" is "....................".
a) collect b) collection c) collective d) collected

Group 2

1. Several police shots were .... at the criminals, but no one was injured.
a) feared b) designed c) fired d) warmed

2. While we were watching TV, Mother came in carrying a .... of ironing in her arms.
a) pile b) hole c) hill d) pool

3. I never .... anything on the Internet that I wouldn't want my boss to see.
a) pass b) deliver c) burst d) post

4. Before starting the journey, make sure you have a .... map of the area.
a) removable b) reusable c) reliable d) complex

5. My younger brothers seem to argue .... each other all the time.
a) at b) with c) about d) over

6. It was a foggy, cold day without sunshine, so it's hard to drive. The synonym of the word "foggy" is "....................".
a) apparent b) clear c) predicted d) misty

Group 3

1. The young boy .... with relief when he saw that he passed the test.
a) laughed b) sighed c) perplexed d) marked

2. Many YouTubers resort to legal and illegal ways to make people .... to their channels.
a) subscribe b) ascribe c) describe d) unsubscribe

3. Email password should be at least 8 .... long and not more than 15 ones.
a) personalities b) characters c) personnel d) photos

4. Users have to pay to be able to .... the trial antivirus to the full version.

a) upload b) enrol c) upgrade d) rule

5. The young man spent a couple of days .... out with his old friends as part of their vacation.

a) improving b) removing
c) hurting d) hanging

6. She applied for a job with the local newspaper. The noun of the verb "apply" is "..................".

a) application b) applied
c) applicable d) applies

Group 4

1. Celebrities' pictures on Instagram usually receive millions of .... of their fans.

a) sponsors b) views c) prizes d) awards

2. The poor lady .... the doctor to see her sick child and he immediately agreed.

a) begged b) ordered c) replied d) delivered

3. The United Nations was established to be a/an .... for solving international problems.

a) procedure b) search c) interview d) forum

4. The teacher asked the students to .... important vocabulary words in the passages they read.

a) lin b) highlight c) dim d) signal

5. In ...., the report says that more money should be spent on new hospitals.

a) advance b) short c) public d) progress

6. You can trust Khalid; he's totally honest. The synonym of the word "honest" is "..................".

a) sincere b) cheerful c) hateful d) deceitful

Group 5

1. According to the rules, all shops in the mall have to .... a smoke alarm.

a) inhale b) export c) install d) report

2. The actress complained that the photographs taken without her approval were an invasion of her ....

a) publicity b) property c) prosperity d) privacy

3. The forest fire .... very quickly because of the strong wind and caused great damage.

a) published b) disappeared
c) spread d) copied

4. During wars, the Red Cross .... was painted on each side of the ambulances.

a) flag b) symbol c) view d) sight

5. My parents have been the most .... people in my life.

a) influence b) influencing
c) influential d) influenced

6. The project has been criticised as a waste of money. The synonym of the word "criticise" is "..................".

a) approve b) blame c) praise d) advertise

Group 6

1. You can get only a free trial .... from the antivirus website.

a) version b) session c) perfection d) fiction

2. The charity thanked the businessman for the generous .... to help the poor.

a) request b) expense c) donation d) cost

3. My friend says he's unable to give up smoking; he's completely .... !

a) affected b) addicted c) reflected d) infected

4. .... advertising is those advertisements that appear to people out of their interest and activity on the internet.

a) Banner b) Planner c) Amateur d) Targeted

5. The athlete was given the VIP .... after winning gold for her country at the Olympics.

a) treat b) treatment c) treated d) treatable

6. The house is large and difficult to maintain. The verb "maintain" can be the opposite to the verb "....................".

a) accept b) disappear c) keep d) waste

Group 7

1. The website owner will decide whether to .... the posts or make the required changes.

a) take up b) take down c) install d) devise

2. By law, all .... have to offer a safe work environment for their workers.

a) interviewers b) employees c) employers d) applicants

3. Although the spy was speaking with a/an .... German accent, the officer could discover her identity.

a) real b) fake c) ancient d) imaginary

4. My friend believes that nothing will make him .... his mind about his work.

a) change b) make c) intense d) avoid

5. This essay can be considered a .... document for everyone who uses social media.

a) consult b) consultant c) consultative d) consuming

6. My father has lots of happy .... of his stay in Saudi Arabia, which he will never forget.

a) memories b) souvenirs c) anniversaries d) occasions

Group 8

1. Ahmed had to buy a lot of different numbers of magazines to .... his research.

a) make b) devise c) do d) discover

2. The young man had .... out with his parents before moving out.

a) got b) woken c) fallen d) flown

3. The doctors fear that our grandfather's health condition will .... worse as he is very old.

a) feel b) turn c) fill d) get

4. Everyone .... difficult problems at some time in their lives.

a) expose b) experiments c) expires d) experiences

5. He couldn't imagine life without his wife. The adjective of the verb "imagine" are "....................".

a) imagination b) imaginative c) imagines d) imaginarily

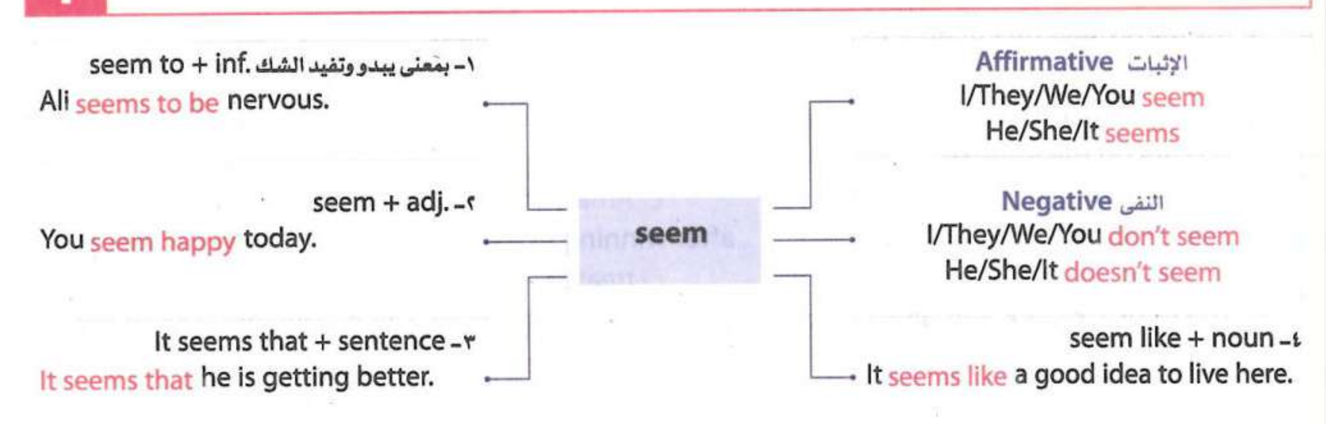
6. Some of the photo .... are mixed up and some text is missing from the book pages.

a) captions b) addresses c) sections d) divisions

B Language

Unit 5

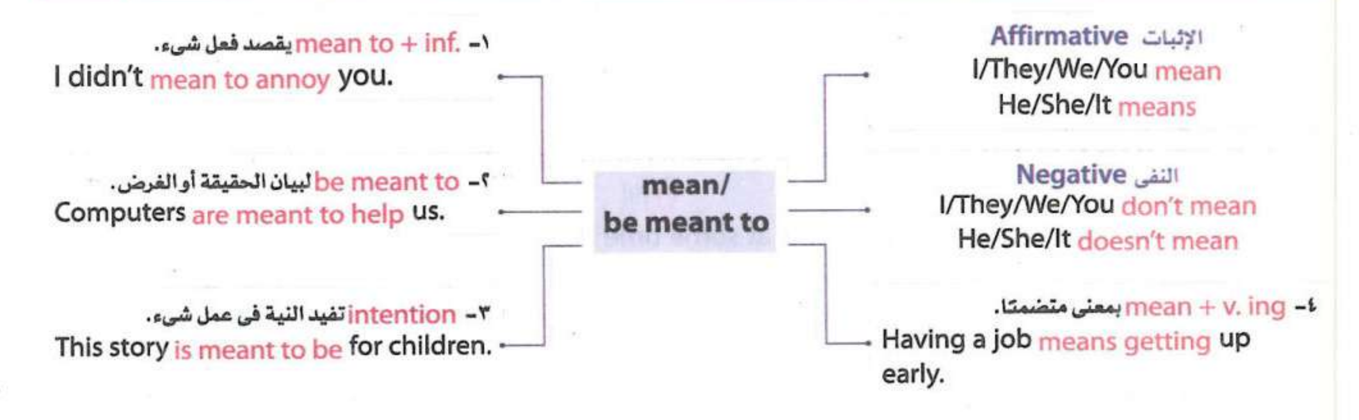
1 seem



2 be supposed to



3 mean/ be meant to



Unit 6

The conditionals

1 The zero conditional — الحالة الصفرية

Type (0)

If / When + Present simple (مضارع بسيط) , Present simple (مضارع بسيط) → Zero conditional

تعبر الحالة الصفرية عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية (شىء لا نتحكم فيه).

If/When you drop something, it falls to the ground.

If/When we heat air, it rises.

وتستخدم الحالة الصفرية أيضًا مع الأشياء التى أصبحت عادة لدى الشخص.

If/When I have a fever, I stay in bed.

If/When I use the computer for long, I always have a headache.

2 The first conditional — الحالة الأولى

Type (1)

If + Present simple (مضارع بسيط) , will / may / can / should للنصيحة + inf. → First conditional

نستخدم الحالة الأولى للأحداث والمواقف التى نعتقد أنها محتملة أو ممكنة فى المستقبل.

If Ali arrives late again, the headmaster will punish him.

If she doesn't earn much money, she won't be able to fly to the USA.

استخدامات خاصة فى جواب شرط الحالة الأولى:

	جملة جواب الشرط	Example
If الحالة الأولى	should/'d better	If you want to succeed, you should study hard.
	must/have to	If you are robbed, you have to tell the police.
	may	If I know more than 2 languages, I may take the job.
	can/will be able to	If there is an airport here, we'll be able to travel easily.
	السؤال بـ will او may	If you finish early, will you help me?
	فعل أمر	If you are not ill, go to school.

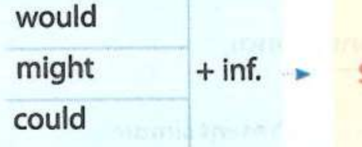


3 The second conditional الحالة الثانية



If





Second conditional

تعبر الحالة الثانية عن حدث غير محتمل فى المضارع أو المستقبل، وفى إعطاء النصيحة.

If I were a bird, I could fly. (I'm not a bird. Untrue in the present)

If I were you, I'd help him. (Giving advice)

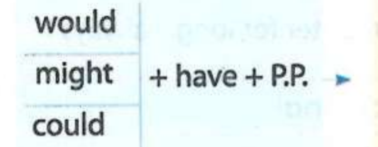
If I had a car, I'd have to give you a lift. (I don't have a car)

4 The third conditional الحالة الثالثة



If





Third conditional

نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للحديث عن المواقف الماضية أو الأحداث التى لم تتم.

If they had known I was ill, they would have visited me. (لم يعلموا بمرضى ولم يزورونى)

Wish/If only

Wish & If only	+ past simple → refers to the present
	+ past perfect → refers to the past
	+ would/could → refers to the future

١- نستخدم wish + past simple للتمنى أو الندم فى المضارع بخصوص موقف نتمنى أن يكون مختلفًا.

I wish he were/was with us now.

I wish I lived near my school.

بعد wish نستخدم were / was مع I/he/she/it و were فقط مع they/we/you

٢- نستخدم wish + could للتمنى أو الندم فى المضارع بخصوص عدم القدرة على فعل شيء.

I wish he could know Spanish.

I wish I could make my own clothes.

٣- نستخدم wish + past perfect للندم على شيء حدث أو لم يحدث فى الماضى.

I wish he hadn't insulted his friend yesterday.

٤- نستخدم wish + would/could للتعبير عن الرغبة فى تغيير مستقبلى غير محتمل الحدوث أو الرغبة فى التعبير عن عدم الرضا أو الحزن.

I wish they would build a new station near my home.

٥- نستخدم could مع كل الضمائر ونستخدم would مع كل الضمائر ما عدا I/We.

If only he would help me.

I wish I could play squash.

٦- عند استخدام wish وبعدها would لا بد أن يكون الفاعلان مختلفين مثل:

He wishes he could play tennis.
~~He wishes he would play tennis.~~

٧- تعبر could بعد wish عن عدم القدرة وتعبر would عن عدم الرغبة.

I wish my son would drive my car. (He doesn't want to ...)
I wish my son could drive my car. (He can't drive ...)

٨- نستخدم (could have + P.P.) بدلًا من الماضى التام للتعبير عن (ندم) على موقف فى الماضى.

If only I could have studied French at university. I know English only.

٩- إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد wish يأتى to + inf.

My brother wishes to have a better job.

Alternatives to using if

بدائل if

Alternative		Example
Provided that On condition that As long as	جملة (حالة 1 و 2)	He can go and play with his friends, provided/on condition (that)/as long as he finishes his homework first.
Suppose/ Supposing/ Imagine (that)	جملة	Suppose/Supposing/Imagine (that) you met the President, what would you ask him to do?
Without	n./v.ing	You won't succeed without studying hard.
But for	Noun	But for doctors, we might not have a better life.
In case of	Noun	In case of emergency, call this number.
In case	جملة	Bring the washing from outside in case it rains.
Should حالة أولى أوثانية	+ subject + inf.	Should you take this medicine, take it before meals.
Were حالة ثانية	+ subject + adj.	Were I you, I wouldn't spend so much money.
Were حالة ثانية	+ subject + to + inf.	Were he to travel, he'd be sad.
Had حالة ثالثة	+ subject + p.p.	Had you finished early, you'd have watched the film.
If it weren't for حالة 2	+ noun/v.ing	If it weren't for money, we couldn't buy anything.
If it hadn't been for حالة 3	+ noun/v.ing	If it hadn't been for Ahmed, I'd have been helpless.
Unless	جواب الشرط (جملة مثبتة أو منفية) + فعل الشرط (جملة مثبتة) I can't buy a car unless I have enough money.	

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Group 1

1. I advise you to do whatever .... best to you.
a) supposed b) seems c) meant d) is supposed

2. You .... to buy a ticket. You will be fined if you take the train without one.
a) seem b) are meant c) means d) are supposed

3. Come on, Hala, you .... to be helping me.
a) are supposed b) seem c) are seemed d) supposed

4. Although the exam .... easy, some students see it very difficult.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) seems d) is seemed

5. You .... to be here an hour ago!
a) meant b) seem c) are supposed d) were supposed

6. He can't think properly. It .... clear that he has had some problems.
a) seems b) is supposed c) supposes d) is seemed

7. The diagram .... to show the different stages of the process.
a) meant b) is meant c) is seemed d) supposed

8. The candidate is liked by only few people. It .... likely that he will lose the election.
a) seemed b) is seemed c) seems d) doesn't seem

9. I haven't seen it myself, but it .... to be a great film.
a) is seemed b) is supposed c) means d) supposed

Group 2

1. Dieting .... being careful about which foods you buy.
a) seems b) is supposed c) is meant d) means

2. She .... to be a smart woman. She can find a solution to any problem.
a) is seemed b) supposed c) seems d) was meant

3. The singer .... to have had hundreds of fans.
a) is supposed b) is seemed c) supposed d) seem

4. The high cost of housing .... that many young people can't afford to buy a house.
a) seems b) supposes c) is supposed d) means

5. Don't make decisions now. You .... to be nervous.
a) seem b) mean c) are meant d) supposed

6. You are not supposed to walk on the grass. This means that it is ....
a) allowed b) not allowed c) necessary d) advisable

7. Why doesn't your brother apply for the job? It .... worthwhile.
a) is meant b) supposes c) seems to be d) means

8. She .... trouble with her colleagues at work.
a) is meant to have b) supposed to have
c) is seemed to have d) seems to be having

9. The new road .... improve traffic, but it didn't.
a) is supposing b) seems to c) was meant to d) seemed

Group 3

1. Ahmed .... to be bad at drawing, ... he?

a) doesn't seem/does
b) seemed/did
c) didn't seem/doesn't
d) seems/does

2. After using new methods in teaching, many students .... English fast.

a) seem learn
b) seem to have learnt
c) seem learning
d) are meaning to learn

3. It's supposed that the man is 100 years old. "Supposed" here means ....

a) said
b) forbidden
c) predicted
d) advisable

4. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

a) Joining the Faculty of Medicine means that you must study hard.
b) Joining the Faculty of Medicine seems that you must study hard.
c) Joining the Faculty of Medicine means studying hard.
d) You are supposed to study hard if you join the Faculty of Medicine.

5. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

a) What does this word mean?
b) What is meant by this word?
c) What is the meaning of this word?
d) What is this word meaning?

6. The story is meant to be for adults, "meant" means ....

a) predicted
b) said
c) intended
d) necessary

7. Getting the red card means that the player must leave the pitch. It's ....

a) forbidden
b) optional
c) advisable
d) obligatory

8. He gets good marks although he isn't clever. He .... to be a cheat.

a) supposed
b) means
c) seems
d) supposes

9. Sorry, I .... to tell you that I would be out, but I forgot.

a) meant
b) was meant
c) supposed
d) seemed

Group 4

1. If the trip to Egypt .... longer, I would have visited my friends in Assuit.

a) had been
b) was
c) were
d) is

2. It's cold today. I wish it .... warmer.

a) is
b) has been
c) were
d) had been

3. The star .... difficult to see unless the sky is very clear.

a) is
b) would be
c) was
d) would have been

4. It is best to keep a medical kit عدة طبية ready .... emergency.

a) unless
b) in case of
c) if
d) without

5. I wish I .... the answer, but I didn't.

a) know
b) would know
c) had known
d) knew

6. If I had known that you were joining the discussion group, I .... too. I love birds!

a) will join
b) would join
c) joined
d) would have joined

7. Engy wishes she .... blue eyes.

a) had
b) has
c) had had
d) would have

8. Anyone can join the course .... there is space available.

a) in case of
b) provides
c) unless
d) provided that

9. If I drink too much coffee, I always .... awake all night long.

a) would stay
b) will stay
c) stay
d) may stay

Group 5

1. I have to work on Fridays. I wish I .... have to work on Fridays.

a) don't b) didn't c) wouldn't d) won't

2. We .... leave on Monday if it snows today.

a) will have to b) would c) would have to d) had to

3. I wish you .... take my things without permission.

a) don't b) won't c) wouldn't d) shouldn't

4. If you had worked harder, you .... your exams.

a) will pass b) wouldn't pass
c) would have passed d) wouldn't have passed

5. If I go to bed late, I .... drowsy in the morning. I know myself well.

a) felt b) won't feel c) might feel d) feel

6. What .... to your family if you were to immigrate?

a) would happen b) is happening
c) will happen d) would have happened

7. He wouldn't have visited me unless I .... him.

a) hadn't phoned b) had phoned c) phoned d) would phone

8. A: Are you going to the theatre tomorrow? B: No, but I wish I ....

a) did b) will c) could d) am

9. If you .... long-term goals, such as travelling, you .... to set money aside.

a) have/will need b) have/would need
c) had had /would need d) had/will need

Group 6

1. You can go to the party on Saturday night .... you're back home by midnight.

a) in case of b) therefore c) unless d) provided that

2. .... any delay, please notify us at once.

a) Were there to be b) Should there be c) If there were d) If it is

3. .... the firemen's efforts, the house would have been burnt.

a) But for b) In case of c) Provided d) Unless

4. If I spoke Italian, I'd ask these Italian tourists about their favourite food. This means: ....

a) I don't speak Italian b) I didn't speak Italian
c) I speak Italian d) I spoke Italian

5. I won't invite Karim to my birthday party, so he won't come. However, ...

a) if I invited him, he would come b) if I invite him, he will come
c) if I had invited him, he would have come d) if I don't invite him, he won't come

6. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

a) If it weren't for water, we would die. b) Without water, we would die.
c) But for water, we would die. d) If there is no water, we would die.

7. When I eat, I always start with salad. This means: ....

a) it is my habit to start eating with salad b) if I eat, I always start with salad
c) unless I eat, I never start with salad d) without eating, I won't start with salad

8. If you had put water in the freezer, it .... to ice.

a) turns b) turned
c) would turn d) would have turned

9. .... you to get high marks, you wouldn't waste much time.

a) Were b) Should c) If d) Provided that

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Group 1

Nine thousand years ago, people did not have money. They traded animals and crops for things they wanted.

In China, in about 1200 B.C., people traded shells for the things they wanted. Chinese people also traded metal tools for the things they wanted. For example, they traded metal knives and shovels for the things they wanted. Later, in China, people made metal money. In about 100 B.C., the Chinese made money from animal skin. The first paper money was made from white-coloured deerskin. It came from China about 900 years later.

In about 700 B.C., people made the first-round metal coins. The coins were made of gold and silver. They looked very similar to the coins we use today. These coins came from Lydia. Lydia was located where the country called Turkey is located today. After people made coins in Lydia, people in Rome, Iran and Greece also began making coins. Coins were very durable; they were strong and could last a long time without becoming damaged.

Wampum is a necklace made from beads and seashells. The beads had holes in them. People put beads on strings. American Indians used wampum for money in the 1500s. Money changes with time. No matter what it looks like, money is an idea. It is the thought that people can trade something they have for something they want. Money makes trading easier.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Before people had money, they traded ....
a) crops for what they wanted b) animals for what they wanted
c) metal tools for what they wanted d) all of these

2. The first paper money was made in ....
a) the year 1200 B.C. in China b) the year 700 B.C. in Lydia
c) the year 800 A.D. in China d) the 1500s in North America

3. A deer is ....
a) a kind of money b) a kind of animal c) made of shells d) gold or silver

4. If something is durable, it ....
a) is strong and can last a long time b) is made of metal
c) can be used as money d) none of these

5. The first paper money was made of ....
a) metal b) tree leaves c) animal skin d) white shells

6. The first-round metal coins were made of ....
a) iron and gold b) iron and silver c) gold and silver d) no correct answer

7. All money is based on the idea that ....
a) gold and silver are good money
b) people can trade what they have for what they want
c) people can trade things for animals
d) coins are the best kind of money

8. Many things were used before money, but once money was used, it stayed because of its ....
a) durability in nature b) ease in trading
c) global acceptance d) all of these

Group 2

Mona doesn't like to ask people for help. But it is hard for her to perform daily activities on her own. She is almost 13 years old, yet she is no larger than 5 years old. Mona has trouble keeping her balance and can't walk very far. When she uses a wheelchair, she can't push it herself.

Fortunately, Mona has a wonderful service dog named Sam. A service dog is a dog that has been trained to assist someone who has a physical problem. Sam lets Mona lean on him when she walks. He also pulls her wheelchair and turns the lights on and off. When Mona drops something, Sam picks it up. He even pulls her socks off at night.

Sam also helps Mona with everyday tasks at school. He carries her books from class to class in a special backpack. He puts Mona's completed assignments in her teachers' homework trays. In the lunchroom, he throws away her trash.

Besides making Mona less dependent on other people, Sam helps her lead a fuller life. Mona's classmates flock around Sam like geese. This has helped her make friends. Sam also helps Mona be more active. With his aid, she raised over $500 in a walkathon for her local humane society.

Because of Sam, Mona does not have to ask people for help. Sam brings her closer to the other kids. In addition, he even helps her contribute to her community.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which of the following would be the best title for this passage?

a) Why Mona loses her balance
b) How Mona's service dog helps her
c) Sam helps Mona at school
d) Raising money for the humane society

2. Using the passage as a guide, which of the following dogs is most likely a service dog?

a) Ahmed's dog, that turns on the lights when Ahmed enters the room.
b) Ramy's dog, that fetches the newspaper for Ramy while he is busy getting dressed.
c) Marriam's dog, that licks her face when she cries.
d) Tamer's dog, that loves to play catch, goes on walks and watches films with the family.

3. According to the passage, Sam helps Mona by ....

a) helping her to walk
b) performing everyday tasks for her
c) bringing her closer to her classmates
d) all of these

4. The antonym of the word "dependent" is ....

a) in need of
b) helpless
c) independent
d) reliant

5. Why does Mona use a wheelchair?

a) Because she doesn't ask people for help.
b) So that she can play with her dog.
c) Because she enjoys sitting in a wheelchair.
d) Because she can't walk well like other teenagers.

6. Which of the following can be used in place of the underlined word "assist"?

a) Walk.
b) Help.
c) Dress.
d) Push.

7. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) her service dog
b) her dog
c) her wheelchair
d) her balance

8. Mona could raise a sum of money for ....

a) a charity
b) her classmates
c) her school
d) her school fees

Group 3

The flu is the common name for influenza. The flu is a respiratory illness. The flu can be mild or bad. Sometimes the flu can even cause death. Each year in the U.S., about 36,000 people die from problems related to the flu.

The flu is caused by a virus. A virus is a germ. People can spread the virus. The virus can live in tiny drops of liquid. If you have the virus, you can spread it by coughing. You can get the virus by touching something that has the virus on it and then touching your eyes, nose or mouth.

A flu shot can prevent the flu. The nasal flu mist can also prevent the flu. The shot and the nasal spray are vaccines.

If you get the flu, you might get a headache. You might have a fever, a cough, or a runny nose. You might have a sore throat. You might feel very tired. Your body might hurt all over. Some people have diarrhoea and vomiting.

You can help stop the spread of the flu virus by covering your cough. You should cough into a tissue and throw the tissue away. Or you can cough into the inside of your elbow or into your own clothing. You should wash your hands with warm water and soap for at least 20 seconds.

Studies show that washing your hands for 2 minutes with hot, soapy water is the best way to get the most germs off your hands. Be sure to wash under your fingernails and between your fingers.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The flu is a disease connected to the .... system.

a) circulatory b) digestive c) respiratory d) nervous

2. What is the main idea of the fifth paragraph?

a) How to stop the spread of the virus. b) How long to wash your hands.
c) How to wash your hands. d) What studies have shown about hand-washing.

3. The underlined word "vaccines" most closely means ....

a) spray b) protection c) health d) shot

4. Why is it important to wash under the fingernails and between the fingers?

a) In order not to spoil our food. b) To weaken the flu virus.
c) To show others that we are clean. d) To get rid of germs.

5. The flu in its worst conditions causes ....

a) fatigue b) death c) headache d) stomachache

6. How can we avoid getting the flu virus?

a) By getting a flu shot. b) By taking medicine.
c) By avoiding using nose spray. d) By exercising and eating good food.

7. If you get the flu, the virus is easily spread by ....

a) eating food with others in a canteen
b) going shopping in the mall with masking
c) coughing or speaking without covering mouth
d) covering your cough with a tissue and throwing it away

8. Which of the following is NOT a symptom of the flu?

a) Stomachaches. b) Sore throats and coughs.
c) Headaches and diarrhoea. d) Fatigue and muscle aches.

2 Translation:

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Group 1

- To build a strong nation, parents and teachers must teach young people that they are the backbone of the nation and on their shoulders is the responsibility of defending it.

a) لبناء أمة واعية، يجب على الآباء والمعلمين تعليم الناس الصغار أنهم العمود الفقرى للأمة، وتقع على أكتافهم مسئولية الدفاع عنها.

b) لبناء أمة قوية، يجب على الآباء والمعلمين تثقيف الشباب أنهم أمل الأمة للأمة، وتقع على عاتقهم مسئولية الدفاع عنها.

c) لبناء أمة قوية، يجب على الآباء والمعلمين تعليم الشباب أنهم العمود الفقرى للأمة، وتقع على عاتقهم مسئولية الدفاع عنها.

d) لبناء ولاية قوية، يجب على الآباء والمعلمين توعية الطلاب أنهم عظام الظهر للأمة، وتقع على أكتافهم مسئولية الدفاع عنها.

Group 2

- One must carefully weigh the positives and the negatives before engaging excessively in social media so that we can choose the most effective one.

a) يجب على المرء أن يوازن بعناية الإيجابيات والسلبيات قبل الانخراط بشكل مفرط فى وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى حتى نتمكن من اختيار أكثرها فاعلية.

b) يجب على المرء أن يعرف مزايا وعيوب الارتباط الشديد بوسائل التواصل الاجتماعى لكى نتمكن من اختيار أكثرها فاعلية.

c) يجب على المرء أن يوازن بعناية الإيجابيات والسلبيات قبل الارتباط الخطير بوسائل التواصل الاجتماعى لذلك نستطيع اختيار أكثرها فاعلية.

d) يجب على المرء أن يعرف مزايا وعيوب الارتباط المدمر لوسائل التواصل الاجتماعى حتى نتمكن من اختيار أكثرها فاعلية.

Group 3

- Everyone should have the strength and positive thinking to conquer all the obstacles and challenges on the way to their ultimate goal.

a) يجب أن يمتلك كل فرد القوة والتفكير الإيجابى للتغلب على جميع العقبات والتحديات فى طريقه إلى هدفه النهائى.

b) على الجميع أن تكون لديهم القوة والتفكير الإيجابى للغزو ومواجهة العقبات والتحديات فى طريقهم إلى أهدافهم المنشودة.

c) يجب أن يمتلك كل فرد القوة والتفكير الإيجابى للغزو ومواجهة الصعاب فى طريقهم لأهدافهم الحقيقية.

d) يجب أن يمتلك الإنسان القوة والتفكير الإيجابى للتغلب على جميع العقبات والتغييرات فى طريقه إلى المرمى الخالى.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

Group 1

- يعتبر مترو الأنفاق واحدًا من أعظم الإنجازات الهندسية وهو يساهم مساهمة عظيمة فى حل مشكلة المواصلات فى القاهرة الكبرى فهو وسيلة سهلة للتنقل وهو يحمل ملايين المسافرين الى وجهات سفرهم.

a) The underground is considered one of the greatest engineering achievements, and it contributes greatly to solving the transport problem in Greater Cairo. It is an easy means of transport, and it carries millions of commuters to their destinations.

b) The underground is considered one of the greatest engineering works, and it contributes greatly to solve the transport problem in Greater Cairo. It is an easy mean of transport, and it carries millions of travellers to their travel destinations.

c) The metro is considered one of the greatest engineering achievements, and it contributes greatly to solve the transport problem in Greater Cairo. It is an easy means of transport, and it carries millions of travellers to their travel destinations.

d) The metro is considered one of the greatest engineering achievements, and it contributes greatly to solving the transport problem in Greater Cairo. It is an easy mean of transport, and it carries millions of travellers to their travel destinations.

Group 2

- يُعتبر العلم اللبنة الأولى فى بناء الأوطان وتقدم و تطور الأمم، وهو الوسيلة الأساسية التى تقود الإنسان لتحقيق أهدافه بينما يهدم الجهل كل شىء جميل فى الحياة.

a) Science is considered the first building block in building countries and the progress and development of nations, and it is the basic means that leads man to achieve his goals while ignorance destroys beautiful everything in life.

b) Education is considered the first building block in building homelands and the progress and development of cities, and it is the basic mean that leads man to achieve his goals while ignorance destroys every beautiful thing in life.

c) Science is considered the first block in building homelands and the progressive and development of countries, and it is the basic means that lead man to achieve his goals while ignorance destroys everything beautiful in life.

d) Science is considered the first building block in building homelands and the progress and development of nations, and it is the basic means that leads man to achieve his goals while ignorance destroys everything beautiful in life.

Group 3

- تختلف أسباب السعادة من شخص لآخر فالبعض يجدها فى جمع المال وآخرون يجدونها فى مساعدة الآخرين والتغلب على لحظات الفشل.

a) The reasons of happiness different from one person to another, some find it in collecting money and others find it in helping others and overcoming moments of failure.

b) The reasons for happiness different from one person to another, some find it in collecting money and others find it in helping others and overcoming moments of failure.

c) The causes for happiness differ from one person to another, some find it in saving money and others find it in helping others and overcoming moments of failure.

d) The causes of happiness differ from one person to another, some find it in collecting money and others find it in helping others and overcoming moments of failure.

3 Writing:

1. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: "The pros and cons of using the internet"

....

....

....

2. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: "An embarrassing situation you faced and the lesson you learnt from it"

....

....

....

3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: "Thinking of others is a value that we shouldn't neglect"

....

....

....

Revision Test (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can only .... a trial version of the game for free online.
a) download b) load c) upload d) overload

2. Parents always put their own needs at the bottom of the .... They care for their children first.
a) hill b) pile c) land d) mountain

3. I believe that teenagers need to .... a parent or a lawyer before signing official papers.
a) prevent b) apply c) advise d) consult

4. I couldn't .... my antivirus software because it cost much money.
a) upload b) deduce c) upgrade d) rule

5. We regret that there will be job losses. The adjective of the verb "regret" is "..................".
a) regrets b) regrettably c) regretful d) regretfully

6. I was disappointed that we played so well yet still lost. The antonym of the adjective "disappointed" is "..................".
a) depressed b) dissatisfied c) angry d) cheerful

7. It .... like a good idea to postpone the meeting until next Monday.
a) seemed b) is supposed c) is meant d) is seemed

8. He wishes he .... buy a new car.
a) might b) can c) should d) would

9. Ali .... the news if he wanted to know what was happening in the world.
a) will watch b) would have watched
c) can watch d) would watch

10. Do you know what "luxurious" ....?
a) supposes b) mean c) means d) seems

11. If I hadn't stayed up late last night, I .... up early.
a) would have got b) wouldn't have got c) will get d) would get

12. He is a comic person. He .... to make people laugh.
a) seems b) is supposed c) means d) is seemed

13. I wish I .... how to get to the new supermarket, but I don't.
a) know b) would know c) had known d) knew

14. Doctors said they could not treat the boy unless his parents .... their permission.
a) had given b) gave c) give d) were given

15. I wish I .... more for the exam.
a) have studied b) will study c) had studied d) study

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The winter months in North America are December, January, February, and March. Winter is the best season of the year. During the winter months, temperatures are usually colder and there are fewer hours of daylight. Cold winter temperatures are caused by the tilting of the Earth. When Earth's Northern Hemisphere is tilted away from the sun, there are fewer hours of daylight and the temperature is colder. When the Northern Hemisphere tilts towards the sun, there is more daylight time and the temperatures are warmer. The tilting of the Earth as it spins causes the seasons to change.

Animals have special ways of preparing themselves for winter. Some animals, like birds and butterflies travel long distances, or migrate, to warmer temperatures during the winter months. Other animals go to sleep, or hibernate, during the winter. Bears, gophers, snakes, and bats hibernate. Squirrels and raccoons don't migrate or hibernate. Instead, they gather extra food during the fall months and store it away so that they have plenty to eat during the winter.

In some areas, winter is a time when snow falls and gathers on the ground. People who live in these places can enjoy special winter activities like skiing, sledding, or snowboarding. They can also build snowmen and snow castles. When the water in lakes and ponds freezes, people can ice skate or play ice hockey. Some people even cut a hole in the ice and go ice fishing!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. Which sentence is an opinion?

a) The winter months are December, January, February and March.
b) Winter is the best season of the year.
c) There is more daylight during the summer months.
d) The tilting of the Earth causes the seasons to change.

17. During the winter months, the Northern Hemisphere is ....

a) tilted away from the sun — b) tilted towards the sun
c) tilted away from the moon — d) tilted towards the Earth

18. The synonym of the word "tilting" is "....................".

a) leaning — b) straightening — c) flattening — d) destroying

19. All the following animals hibernate during the winter months except ....

a) bats — b) gophers — c) bears — d) butterflies

20. Squirrels and raccoons .... to prepare for the winter.

a) migrate to warm places — b) hibernate in caves
c) collect sufficient food — d) hibernate on trees

21. According to the passage, when lakes get frozen, people ....

a) can't fish — b) go skiing
c) see themselves by reflection — d) play football

22. Cold weather is mainly caused by ....

a) the tilting of the Earth — b) the gravity of the moon
c) the far position of the sun — d) the months movements

23. The best title for the passage is "....................".

a) Winter is the worst season — b) The four seasons
c) The winter — d) The summer vibes

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Individuals differ in their ability to understand complex ideas and to adapt effectively to the environment. So, they must be taught in different ways.

a) يختلف الأفراد فى قدرتهم على فهم الأفكار المبتكرة والتكيف بشكل فعال مع البيئة. لذلك، يجب تعليمهم بطرق مختلفة.

b) يختلف الأفراد فى قدرتهم على فهم الأفكار المعقدة والتكيف بشكل فعال مع البيئة. لذلك، يمكن تعليمهم بطرق مختلفة.

c) يختلف الأفراد فى قدرتهم على فهم الأفكار المعقدة والتكيف بشكل فعال مع البيئة. لذلك، يجب تعليمهم بطرق مختلفة.

d) يختلف الأفراد فى قدرتهم على فهم الأفكار المعقدة والتكيف بشكل مبدع مع البيئة. لذلك، يجب تعليمهم بطرق مختلفة.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- يقول خبراء الاقتصاد إن جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية أحد أهم الحلول للمشكلات الاقتصادية التى نعانى منها، وهو ما يدفع الحكومة لتقديم المزيد من التسهيلات للمستثمرين.

a) Economists say that attaching foreign investment is one of the most important solutions to the economic problems we suffer from, that prompts the government to provide more facilities for investors.

b) Economists say that attracting foreign investment is one of the most important solutions to the economic problems we suffer from, which prompts the government to provide more facilities for investors.

c) Economists say that attacking foreign investment is one of the most important solutions to the economic problems we suffer from, when prompts the government to provide more facilities for investors.

d) Economists say that earning foreign investment is one of the most important solutions to the economic problems we suffer from, who prompts the government to provide more facilities for investors.

26. Answer the following questions:

1. Disguising as Poor Tom is a good solution for Edgar to solve his problem. Do you agree? Why?

....

....

2. What do you think of Kent's decision to send a messenger to Cordelia in Dover?

....

....

3. Do you think that Gloucester wanted to protect himself or his son when he didn't show the letter he had to Edmund? Give reasons for your answer.

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can we make school an exciting place for education?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

The play King Lear

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

anger (n)	غضب	foolish (adj)	أحمق	profit (n) (v)	ربح /يربح
answer (n)	رد/إجابة	forgive (v)	يسامح/يصفح عن	reward (n) (v)	مكافأة/يكافئ
apologise (v)	يعتذر	give ... away (v)	يتخلى عن	riches (n)	ثروة
attack (v)	يهاجم	guard (n) (v)	حارس/يحرس	rise (v)	ينهض
attendants (n)	خدم	guilty (adj)	مذنب	room (n)	فراغ
beauty (n)	جمال	hard-hearted (adj)	قاسى القلب	rude (adj)	وقح
beggar (n)	متسول	hut (n)	كوخ	send ... away (v)	ينفى/يبعد
behave (v)	يتصرف	ill (adj)	مريض / معتل	servant (n)	خادم
call out (v)	ينادى بصوت عالٍ	income (n)	دخل	shelter (n) (v)	ملجأ/يلجأ إلى
cart (n)	عربة	inheritance (n)	ميراث	shout about (v)	يتحدث بصوت عالٍ عن
deceive (v)	يخدع	joke (n)	مزحة/نكتة	sir (n)	سيد
deserve (v)	يستحق	kingdom (n)	مملكة	spies (n)	جواسيس
disagreement (n)	عدم اتفاق	lie (v)	يكذب	straw (n)	قش
disbelief (n)	عدم اعتقاد/ عدم ايمان	lightning (n)	البرق	succeed (v)	ينجح
disguise (v)	يتنكر	lock ... out (v)	يحبس ... خارجًا	sword (n)	سيف
divide ... into (v)	يقسم ... إلى	loyalty (n)	انتماء/ولاء	third (n)	ثلث
double (adj)	ضعف	mice (n)	فئران	title (n)	لقب
duke (n)	الدوق	patience (n)	الصبر	torch (n)	مصباح
duty (n)	واجب	persuade (v)	يقنع	trust (v) (n)	يثق فى/ثقة
encourage (v)	يشجع	philosopher (n)	فيلسوف	truth (n)	الحقيقة
exit (v)	يخرج	plot against (v)	يتآمر ضد		
faithful (adj)	مخلص	port (n)	ميناء	wise (adj)	حكيم
follow (v)	يتبع	pretend (v)	يتظاهر		

Phrases & Prepositions التعبيرات و حروف الجر

a stab in the back	طعنة فى الظهر	have a plan	لديه خطة	set eyes on	يلمح/يرى
change his mind	يغير رأيه	has a taste of her own medicine	تتذوق نتيجة أفعالها	the cart is pulling the horse	العربة أمام الحصان
give an answer	يقوم بالرد	my heart is broken	قلبى محطم/حزين	try walking in a poor person's shoes	يجرب التصرف مثل الفقير
go mad	يصاب بالجنون	say goodbye to	يودع	turn his back on	يدير ظهره لـ

Act I

Scene i

- In the King's palace, the Duke of Gloucester introduces his younger son Edmund to the Duke of Kent. He also tells him that he has an older son called Edgar. Soon, King Lear enters with his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia. The Duke of Cornwall, Regan's husband, and the Duke of Albany, Goneril's husband, follow them. King Lear surprises everyone with his plan to divide the kingdom among his three daughters. He asks his daughters to say which of them loves him the most, promising to give the greatest share to that daughter.
- Lear's older daughters, Goneril and Regan, tell him that they love him more than anything else. But Cordelia, Lear's youngest (and favourite) daughter, says that she loves him as much as a daughter should love her father, and that her sisters wouldn't have husbands if they loved their father as much as they say. Lear becomes very angry. He says that Cordelia will get nothing and divides his kingdom between her two sisters.
- The Duke of Kent disagrees with the King's decision. Lear gets very angry and decides that Kent should be sent away, telling him he must leave the kingdom within five days.
- Lear asks the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy, who both asked to marry Cordelia, to come in. Lear tells them that Cordelia no longer has any title or land. Burgundy refuses to marry Cordelia, but France is impressed by Cordelia's honesty صدق and decides to make her his queen. Lear sends her away without his blessing.

Scenes i-ii

- Cordelia says goodbye to her sisters before leaving England and asks them to take care of their father. Goneril and Regan get together and soon begin to turn their backs on their father. Thinking that their father is getting mad at his old age, they agree that they must act يتصرف to reduce their father's remaining authority. They exit together.
- In Gloucester's house, Edmund enters. He talks out loud. He expresses his dissatisfaction عدم الرضا about his father's decision that his elder brother, Edgar, will get his land when he dies. Edmund has a plan to change this. He tricked his father with a false letter. In it, Edgar, as Edmund suggests, is trying to persuade him to get rid of يتخلص من their father. Gloucester gets very angry and asks Edmund to look for Edgar and catch him.
- Edmund also succeeds in convincing Edgar that his father is angry with him. Edmund suggests that Edgar carry a sword as protection. Edmund convinces Edgar to hide away from his father.

Scenes iii-iv

- In the palace of the Duke of Albany, Goneril asks her servant, Oswald, if the King hit her servant. Oswald says that he did. Goneril orders Oswald to tell the other servants not to do what the King asks for, and if he is unhappy with this, he can go to Regan's palace. Goneril writes to Regan to tell her of her plans.
- Kent reappears in disguise as a poor old man. Lear enters and begins asking Kent questions about his identity هوية and his intention. Kent says that he wants to serve him as he is an important man. The King agrees.

- When the King asks to see Goneril, Oswald leaves without replying. A soldier reports that Goneril is unwell and unavailable. The soldier also tells Lear that all the servants, the Duke and the King's daughter are all unkind to them. The King asks about the Fool. He is told that he has been sad since Cordelia went to France. When Oswald enters with the Fool, the King hits him. When he tries to object, Kent hits him as well.
- Goneril enters, complaining about the king's Fool and his soldiers. Goneril asks the King to reduce the number of soldiers in his service. In anger, the king says that he will pack up his people and move to Regan's palace, where he is sure to receive a warmer welcome. When Albany tries to stop the King, Goneril tells him that she doesn't care and that she has written to her sister telling her everything.

Act II

Scenes i- ii

- In Gloucester's castle, the scene opens with Edmund talking to himself. He thinks that Cornwall's visit will help his plan against Edgar. Edmund persuades Edgar to run away to protect himself. Edmund and Edgar pretend to fight, and he cuts his arm to draw Gloucester's sympathy. He even tells his father that Edgar wished to kill his father. Gloucester promises to find Edgar and bring him to justice. Gloucester also decides that Edmund will inherit all his land.
- Regan and Cornwall enter. Without hesitation, they believe Edmund's story. Regan says that Edgar spent time with her father's soldiers. Cornwall asks Edmund to work for him saying that he needs men like him that he can trust.
- Edgar, alone in the woods, declares that he is aware that people believe that he is guilty and that guards are looking for him. Thus, he has a plan in which he will disguise himself as a beggar. متسول In this disguise, he will be known as Poor Tom. Lear, the Fool and Kent arrive at Gloucester's castle. Lear asks who has placed his messenger, Kent, in the stocks. Lear refuses to believe that Regan and Cornwall would do this to someone in the king's service. Regan appears and greets her father with seeming affection, and Lear tells her of his anger with her sister, Goneril. Regan advises Lear to go back to Goneril's house, telling him that he is wrong.

Scene iii

- The King complains to Regan about Goneril's bad treatment. Lear's sadness grew when Regan refused to host يستضيف him and his hundred soldiers. Goneril, conspiring يتآمر with her sister, suggests that Lear dismiss يطرد his soldiers. With Oswald and Goneril now present, Cornwall admits to Lear that he ordered Kent's punishment.

The King, angered by his daughters' rejection, calls for his horse. Lear says that he would rather live outside under the stars or beg shelter in France than stay in the company of those who disrespect his proper place as father and king. Regan and Goneril tell Gloucester not to stop their father from going out in the storm.

Act III

Scene i

- In a field in the countryside. The storm continues. Kent enters with a soldier. Kent learns that Lear and his Fool are out in the storm. Kent tells the soldier that there's a disagreement between the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall. They both have servants who are really spies for the King of France. They have noticed that the Dukes are both against the King. Now the King of France has sent an army, and the French have spies at some of their ports. Kent instructs the soldier to go quickly to Dover, and when he gets there, to make known the treatment that Lear has suffered.
- Kent gives the messenger رسول a ring for delivery to Cordelia. Kent leaves to search for Lear.

Scenes ii– iii - iv

- In another part of the field, King Lear enters with the Fool. The storm continues. Lear's mood حالة مزاجية matches the storm as he rages against his daughters' bad treatment. The Fool tries to persuade the King to take shelter. Kent arrives and points to a nearby hut for protection, while he returns to Gloucester's castle to ask that they admit the king.
- At Gloucester's castle. Gloucester enters with Edmund. Gloucester tells his son that when he asked Regan and Cornwall to leave, so that he might help Lear, they asked him not to do this. Gloucester also tells Edmund that he has a letter. Gloucester stops before telling Edmund about what is in the letter. The letter is locked in his bedroom. He asks Edmund not to tell anyone about that. Gloucester exits. Alone, Edmund plans to gain Cornwall's favour by revealing the plan to aid the King.
- In a field in front of a hut. King Lear enters with Kent and the Fool. Although Kent directs Lear to a hut for shelter, the king refuses to protect himself from the storm. The Fool runs from the hut, saying that a mad man is in the hut. The mad man is really Edgar disguised as Poor Tom. Lear has a short conversation with him. Gloucester enters the scene, carrying a torch. He has found both warm shelter and food for the King, but Lear refuses, claiming that he needs to talk more with the poor man. The disguised Edgar complains of the cold and everyone moves into the shelter.

Critical Thinking Questions & Suggested Answers

Act I Scene i

1. Do you think it is wise of King Lear to divide his kingdom among his daughters? Why?

هل تعتقد أنه من الحكمة أن يقسم الملك لير مملكته بين بناته؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. Dividing the kingdom would make it weaker and might also lead to conflict between his two daughters.

2. "Father, I love you more than anything. No child can love a father more than I love you." Do you agree with Regan when she said this? Why?

" أبى، أنا أحبك أكثر من أى شىء آخر. لا يمكن لأى طفل أن يحب أباه أكثر مما أحبك." هل تتفق مع ريجان عندما قالت هذا؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't. Regan's words don't seem real. I think she only said this to please her father.

3. "What can I say? I don't have the words to say how much I love my father." Do you think that Cordelia was right to say this? Why?

« ماذا أستطيع قوله؟ لا أملك الكلمات لأقول كم أحب والدى". هل تعتقد أن كورديليا كانت على حق فى قول هذا؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. A daughter should be able to express her true love to her father.

4. Do you think that Cordelia's words are enough to express her feelings towards her father? Why?

هل تعتقد أن كلمات كورديليا كافية للتعبير عن مشاعرها تجاه والدها؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. She should have tried to express her true love in a way that makes her father happy.

5. What do you think of Lear's punishment to Cordelia?

ما رأيك فى عقوبة لير لكورديليا؟

- I think it is a violent and difficult one. I think he should have given her a second chance.

6. In your opinion, did Kent do the right thing when he objected to the King's decision? Why?

فى رأيك، هل فعل كينت الشىء الصحيح عندما اعترض على قرار الملك؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think so. As a true helper of the King, he should give him good advice about his decisions.

7. "I hope you stay safe, young lady because you were honest." What does this show about Kent's opinion of Cordellia?

«أتمنى أن تظلي آمنة أيتها السيدة الشابة، لأنك كنت صادقة.» ماذا يظهر هذا عن رأى كينت فى كورديليا؟

- It shows that he thought highly of her as an honest daughter.

8. "Father, understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words." Do you agree with Cordelia's view about love?

يا أبى، افهم أننى أظهر محبتى فى أفعالى، وليس فى أقوالى. «هل تتفق مع وجهة نظر كورديليا حول الحب؟»

- Yes, I agree. Actions are more reliable to show love than words which can be misleading.

9. If you were the Duke of Burgundy, would you refuse to marry Cordelia because she had no title to money? Why?

إذا كنت دوق بورجوندى، هل سترفض الزواج من كورديليا لأنها لا تملك حق ملكية المال؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. I would value her honesty and truthfulness.

10. "You have lost your life here, but you'll find a better one with me." What does this show about the King of France?

"لقد فقدت حياتك هنا، ولكنكِ ستجدين حياة أفضل معى." ماذا يظهر هذا عن ملك فرنسا؟

- It shows that he is a good man who wanted a good wife, not only a rich one.

Act I Scenes i-ii

11. Do you think that Goneril and Regan were sorry to say goodbye to Cordelia? Why?

هل تعتقد أن جونيريل وريجان شعرتا بالأسف لتوديع كورديليا؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. They treated her badly and accused her of failing to satisfy her father.

12. "If our father still has some power, his anger will become a problem for us." What does this show about Goneril's opinion about her father?

"إذا كان والدنا لا يزال لديه بعض القوة، فإن غضبه سيصبح مشكلة بالنسبة لنا." ماذا يظهر هذا عن رأى غونيريل فى والدها؟

- It shows that she is an ungrateful daughter and that she only showed her love to get money and power.

13. Do you think that Edmund is right to demand a share in his father's inheritance? Why?

هل تعتقد أن إدموند على حق فى المطالبة بنصيب فى ميراث والده؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I think so. It isn't right that he will be deprived of his father's inheritance only because he is the younger son.

14. What does Edmund's trick show about his character?

ماذا تظهر خدعة إدموند عن شخصيته؟

- It shows that he is an evil and ungrateful son who is ready to trick his family to get what he wants.

15. Why do you think Gloucester believed Edmund and the letter so easily?

لماذا تعتقد أن جلوستر صدق إدموند والرسالة بهذه السهولة؟

- I think he didn't suspect that his son was evil enough to trick his own family. Maybe, he was not wise because of old age.

16. "I'm sure he wrote this to test my love and loyalty to you, and for nothing more dangerous than that." In your opinion, why did Edmund say this?

"أنا متأكد أنه كتب هذا ليختبر حبى وإخلاصى لك، وليس هناك ما هو أخطر من ذلك." فى رأيك، لماذا قال إدموند هذا؟

- I think he wanted to look good so that his father wouldn't suspect him.

17. Do you think that Edgar was right to believe Edmund so quickly? Why?

هل تعتقد أن إدجار كان على حق فى تصديق إدموند بهذه السرعة؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He should have been wise enough not to be tricked so easily.

18. "Really? Then somebody has lied about me." Why didn't Edgar suspect that Edmund was the one who did that?

"حقًا؟ إذًا لقد كذب شخص ما عنى." لماذا لم يشك إدجار فى أن إدموند هو من فعل ذلك؟

- I think he must have trusted him so much.

Act I Scenes iii-iv

19. Do you think that Goneril was really angry because the King hit her servant? Why?

هل تعتقد أن جونيريل كانت غاضبة حقًا لأن الملك ضرب خادمها؟ لماذا؟

- No, I think she was making an excuse to make her father angry.

20. "The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!" What does this show about Goneril?

"لا يزال الرجل العجوز الأحمق يريد الحصول على القوة التى تخلى عنها!" ماذا يظهر هذا عن جونيريل؟

- It shows that she was an ungrateful and deceitful person who denies her father the power that he had given her.

21. In your opinion, does the King deserve Kent's loyalty and obedience? Why?

فى رأيك هل يستحق الملك ولاء كينت وطاعته؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He punished him severely that he sent him away from the country only because he gave him good advice.

22. Do you think that Kent and Lear were wrong to hit Oswald? Why?

هل تعتقد أن كينت ولير كانا مخطئين فى ضرب أوزوالد؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He deserved to be punished for his bad treatment of his King.

23. "One day, you will want everything back." Do you agree with the Fool when he said that? Why?

"فى يوم من الأيام، سوف ترغب فى استعادة كل شىء." فهل تتفق مع المهرج عندما قال ذلك؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree with him completely. The King foolishly gave away his power and kingdom to his ungrateful daughters.

24. "But you're keeping a hundred soldiers here; they are noisy and rude." Do you think that this was Goneril's real cause for asking the King to get rid of his soldiers? Why?

"لكنك تحتفظ بمائة جندى هنا؛ إنهم صاخبون ووقحون." هل تعتقد أن هذا هو السبب الحقيقى الذى دفع غونيريل لمطالبة الملك بالتخلص من جنوده؟ لماذا؟

- No, I think she was afraid that the King might use them to attack her and her husband and get his power back.

25. Albany wanted to help the King be quiet. What does this show about him?

أراد ألبانى مساعدة الملك على الهدوء. ماذا يظهر هذا عنه؟

- It shows that he is a kind and grateful person who wanted to make up for the King because of his daughter's bad treatment.

26. "Then she will have a taste of her own medicine." What does the King mean by this?

"ثم سوف تتذوق دواءها." ماذا يقصد الملك بهذا؟

- I think he meant that Goneril's children – if she had any – would treat her as badly as she did to her father.

Act II Scene i- ii

27. Do you think it was necessary of Edmund to cut his arm to prove that Edgar is evil? Why?

هل تعتقد أنه كان من الضرورى أن يجرح إدموند ذراعه ليثبت أن إدجار شرير؟ لماذا؟

- No, I think it wasn't necessary. Gloucester, Cornwall and Regan were ready to believe what he said without this trick.

28. "I know Edgar spent time with my father's soldiers." What do you think Regan meant by saying this?

"أعلم أن إدجار قضى بعض الوقت مع جنود والدى." ماذا تعتقد أن ريجان كان تقصد بقوله هذا؟

- She clearly wanted to say that Edgar became evil because her father's soldiers encouraged him which means that they are evil, too.

29. If you were Edmund, would you do all these evil things to get your inheritance? Why?

لو كنت مكان إدموند، هل كنت ستفعل كل هذه الأشياء الشريرة لتحصل على ميراثك؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. I would think of another way to get it, but without evil or trickery.

30. Do you agree with Edgar to disguise as a poor man to escape punishment by his father? Why?

هل تتفق مع إدجار على التنكر بزى رجل فقير هربًا من عقاب والده؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree. He wouldn't be easily discovered as a mad, poor man.

31. In your opinion, where else could Edgar hide?

فى رأيك، أين يمكن أن يختبئ إدجار؟

- He could escape to France where he would find protection working for the King of France.

32. "....;you're the one who is wrong, not my good sister Goneril." Is Regan right to say this? Why?

... "أنت المخطئ، وليس أختى الطيبة جونيريل." هل ريجان على حق فى قولها هذا؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think she is. The King only wanted to be treated kindly and respectfully by his own daughters.

Act II Scene iii

33. The King asked Regan to give him food, clothes and a bed. What does this show about the King's state?

طلب الملك من ريجان أن يمنحه الطعام والملابس والسرير. ماذا يظهر هذا عن حالة الملك؟

- It shows that he became so weak and helpless.

34. If you were King Lear, would you try to use the soldiers to regain your power? Why?

لو كنت الملك لير، هل ستحاول استخدام الجنود لاستعادة قوتك؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. His daughters were so ungrateful to him that they denied him the title and honourable treatment in his old age.

35. If you were King Lear, would you regret punishing Cordelia after the bad treatment? Why?

لو كنت الملك لير، هل ستندم على معاقبة كورديليا بعد معاملتها السيئة؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. He punished her for being honest whereas he rewarded his deceitful daughters.

36. "They both have servants who are really spies for the King of France." What does this sentence by Kent show about the King of France?

"كلاهما لديه خدم هم فى الحقيقة جواسيس لملك فرنسا." ماذا تظهر هذه الجملة التى قالها كينت عن ملك فرنسا؟

- It shows that the King of France had bad intentions and was waiting for a chance to invade England.

37. In your opinion, does Kent want to work against his country when he sends a messenger with his ring to Cordelia in Dover? Why?

فى رأيك، هل يريد كينت العمل ضد بلاده عندما يرسل رسولا بخاتمه إلى كورديليا فى دوفر؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He is a good man who only wanted to help his King.

Act III Scene i

38. What do you think of Gloucester's decision to look for and help the King?

ما رأيك فى قرار جلوستر بالبحث عن الملك ومساعدته؟

- I think it showed that he is a kind and loyal man to his King.

39. Do you think that Gloucester should have told Edmund about the letter he received? Why?

هل تعتقد أنه كان ينبغى على جلوستر أن يخبر إدموند بالرسالة التى تلقاها؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't think so. He even realised that it is dangerous to tell him about the contents of the letter.

40. Edmund was ready to do anything to reach his evil goals. Do you agree? Why?

كان إدموند مستعدًا لفعل أى شىء للوصول إلى أهدافه الشريرة. هل توافق؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree. He decided to tell Cornwall about the letter which his own father received.

41. If you were Edgar, would you tell Gloucester your real identity? Why?

لو كنت مكان إدجار، هل ستخبر جلوستر بهويتك الحقيقية؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. It is a good chance to tell his father the truth and try to solve his problem.

42. If you were Cornwall, would you trust Edmund after betraying his own father? Why?

لو كنت كورنوال، هل ستثق بإدموند بعد خيانة والده؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't. The man who betrayed his own father could not be trusted.

43. "I'll win the trust that my father loses." What do these words show about Edmund?

"سأكسب الثقة التى فقدها والدى." ماذا تظهر هذه الكلمات عن إدموند؟

- It shows that he is an evil person who is ready to sacrifice his father's safety and position to get a position with Cornwall.

44. Why do you think King Lear welcomed the storm?

لماذا تعتقد أن الملك لير رحب بالعاصفة؟

- I think that he realised his big mistake and thought that he wanted to be punished by the storm.

45. Did King Lear get any benefit out of his bad experience with poor people? Why?

هل استفاد الملك لير من تجربته السيئة مع الفقراء؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, he finally began to realise how much his poor citizens suffered in life.

Practice...

King Lear
General Exercises

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... criminal committed his crime violently killing three children.
   a) good-hearted b) gentle c) simple d) hard-hearted
2. A/An .... is a person who secretly collects and reports information about the activities of another country or organisation.
   a) inventor b) guard c) spy d) astronaut
3. I was surprised to see some .... sleeping on the pavement when I visited the poor area of the African country.
   a) entrepreneurs b) beggars c) directors d) clerks
4. Mother told me that I .... a break after three hours of hard study.
   a) deserved b) reserved c) denied d) suspected
5. The journalist .... himself as a waiter in order to get into the celebrity party.
   a) appointed b) disguised c) cleared d) worn
6. Fortunately, the company made a lot of .... from the new coffee machine.
   a) loss b) profit c) waste d) rises
7. We tried to .... our parents to let us have a day-off, but they refused, so we went to school.
   a) persuade b) deploy c) retreat d) make
8. There were three .... standing outside the bank, but the robbers could get inside.
   a) investors b) employers c) cannibals d) guards
9. Tourism is one of the most important sources of national .... in many countries near the Mediterranean Sea.
   a) imports b) income c) exports d) consumption
10. The police officer was determined to find out the .... about the crime.
    a) research b) fiction c) fact d) truth
11. A/An .... is a weapon with a long metal sharp cutting part and a handle.
    a) canon b) pistol c) gun d) sword
12. Parents have a .... to make sure that their children receive a good education.
    a) duty b) right c) plan d) research
13. You must feel .... about not visiting your parents more often.
    a) shy b) guilty c) innocent d) proud
14. The new owner of the club is a rich man who had a large .... from his parents.
    a) inheritance b) heritage c) loss d) dream

15. A citizen's .... should be to his country.

a) research b) right c) loyalty d) performance

16. As the actors .... the stage, the lights went on.

a) decorated b) prevailed c) exited d) exempted

17. We stood watching in .... as the car rolled into the water.

a) disbelief b) pleasure c) satisfaction d) planning

18. Despite his problems, his friends have remained .... to him and helped him a lot.

a) useless b) unaffected c) faithful d) influenced

19. A flash of .... lit up the sky during yesterday's violent storm.

a) thunder b) lightning c) rain d) earthquake

20. I don't have the .... to wait in line for hours just to buy a ticket.

a) patience b) planning c) organisation d) acceptance

21. They were accused of .... against their country and helping the enemy.

a) innovating b) suspecting c) playing d) plotting

22. We sat in the shade, ... from the burning heat of the sun.

a) sheltering b) subjecting c) improving d) assigning

23. Farmers usually use .... to feed their animals and make beds for them to sleep on.

a) cream b) wood c) straw d) wool

24. My friend's refusal to support us in our new project campaign was a real .... in the back.

a) shot b) bullet c) step d) stab

25. Look at this mess! Mum will .... mad when she enters your room.

a) give b) do c) go d) take

26. I loved our new house from the moment I .... my eyes on it.

a) set b) make c) turn d) fall

27. He would never .... his back on a friend who needs help.

a) fall b) turn c) deny d) wave

28. We were very sad to .... goodbye to our grandparents after our visit to the village.

a) shout b) tell c) speak d) say

29. The farmer locked the dog .... as he kept some cold chickens inside a warm room.

a) on b) off c) out d) for

30. I advise you to give your old clothes .... to a charity as they are still good to wear.

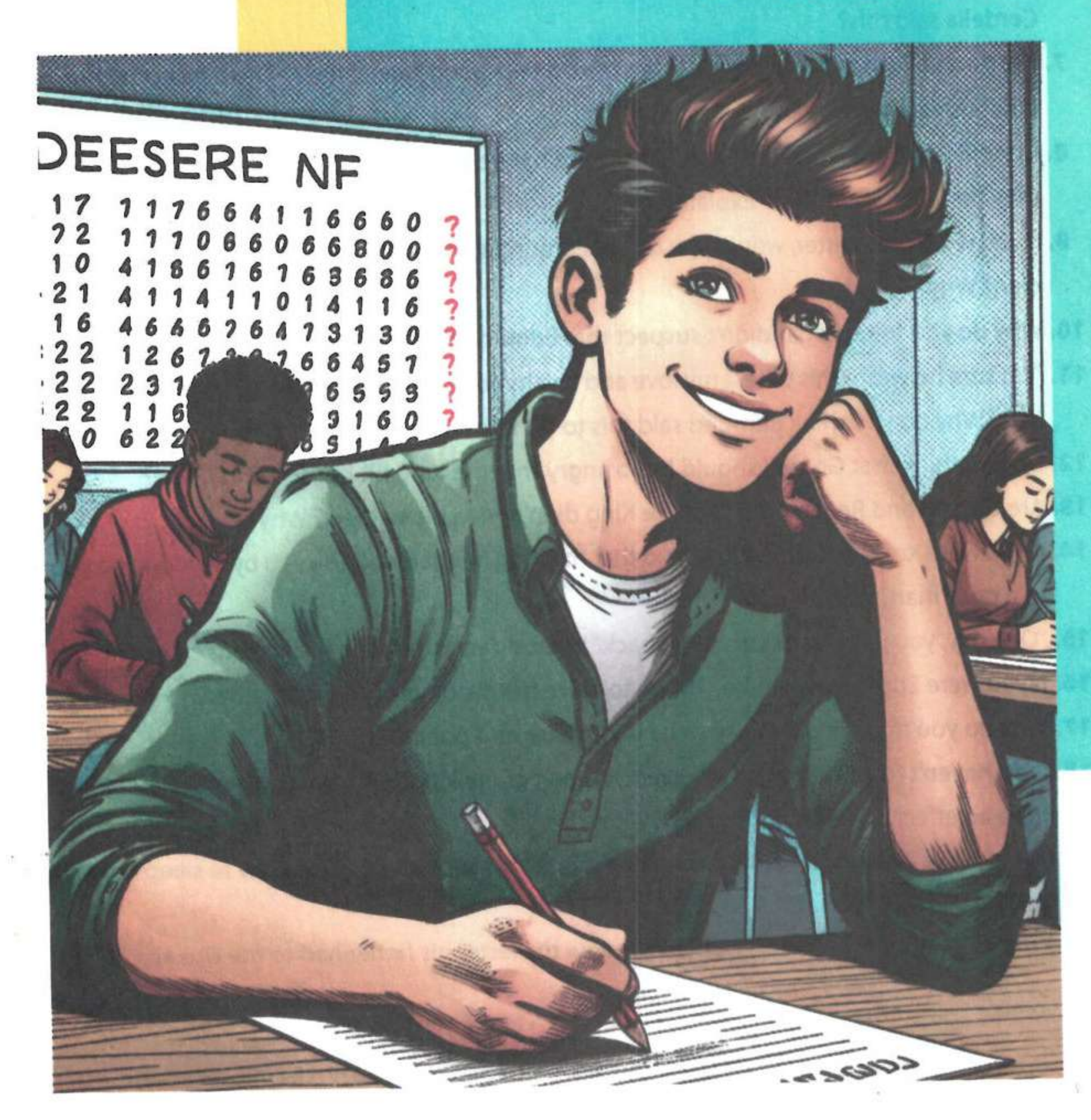
a) into b) off c) out d) away

B) Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think that King Lear chose the correct way to test his daughters' love? Why?
2. Cordelia couldn't probably express her love to her father because she was young and unmarried. Do you agree? Why?
3. "But my sisters say they only love you. How can this be true? Do they not love their husbands, too?" Was Cordelia right to say this? Why?
4. Should Kent tell his objection to the King privately? Why do you think so?
5. In your opinion, would Cordelia be happy if she married the Duke of Burgundy? Give reasons for your answer.
6. "Please tell him that I haven't done anything wrong to make you hate me." Why do you think Cordelia said this?
7. "Be good to our father. If he still loved me, I'd take good care of him! Please look after him well." What does this show about Cordelia?
8. Goneril and Regan blamed their father for what he decided about Cordelia and Kent although they benefited from that. Explain.
9. If you were Gloucester, would you doubt Edmund's intention when he spoke about Edgar's evil plan? Why?
10. Why do you think Edgar didn't suspect that Edmund might be jealous of him?
11. "I'm sure he wrote this to test my love and loyalty to you, and for nothing more dangerous than that." Why do you think Edmund said this to his father?
12. Do you think that Goneril should be so angry that the King hit her servants? Why?
13. Are Goneril and Regan right that the King didn't need his soldiers? Why?
14. If you were Kent, would you be afraid that the King might recognise you by introducing yourself as a poor man? Why?
15. "One day, you will want everything back." What do you think the Fool means by saying this?
16. If you were Edgar, how would you try to solve the problems with your father?
17. Why do you think Edgar chose to be in disguise as a poor man?
18. "You haven't forgotten that I've given you half of my kingdom." Did this sentence of King Lear have an effect on Regan? Why?
19. "It's strange how I now want to have horrible things such as a bed of straw to sleep on!" Why do you think the King said this?
20. Why do you think Edmund decided to show the letter his father had to the Duke?

Part 4

Final Tests





Test (1)

محافظة القاهرة (إدارة المعصرة)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The sun had .... high in the sky and it was hot.
   a) raised b) aroused c) risen d) arisen
2. We had a/an .... about which film to watch, but I let him watch a comedy.
   a) discouragement b) disagreement c) enforcement d) encouragement
3. I do not really like .... activities. I prefer doing them outdoors.
   a) outdoors b) indoors c) outdoor d) indoor
4. I didn't punish him for coming late, as I was told the reason .... he came late.
   a) for b) why c) over d) of
5. It's .... to include a lot of personal information on your profile on social media.
   a) reasonable b) insensible c) recognisable d) acceptable
6. We should make use of new .... in technology to improve dry land with too much rain water.
   a) innovations b) agriculture c) production d) crops
7. Young athletes .... miss the chance to check their heart examination. It's very important for their health.
   a) must b) don't need c) don't have to d) mustn't
8. My brother stopped studying English and now he needs it for work. He wishes that he .... studying it.
   a) hasn't stopped b) didn't stop c) wouldn't stop d) hadn't stopped
9. Fruits and vegetables became a .... more expensive than they used to be.
   a) much b) lot c) less d) many
10. I was invited .... a wedding party, but I couldn't come.
    a) to attend b) to attending c) attend d) attending
11. At one o'clock tomorrow, I .... the problem with my colleagues.
    a) will discuss b) will be discussing
    c) am going to discuss d) will have been discussed
12. He .... to bed earlier last night. He is really sleepy and tired today.
    a) shouldn't have gone b) should have gone
    c) shouldn't go d) should go
13. That piece of cloth .... to be a shirt, but the tailor made it a pair of trousers.
    a) is supposed b) was supposed c) is meaning d) is seemed
14. If you saw her, ... her to call me?
    a) you would tell b) will you tell c) tell d) would you tell
15. The train .... platform 4 at 10 a.m. tomorrow morning.
    a) will leave b) is going to leave c) leaves d) will be leaving

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

One of the most amazing and influential libraries in the world is the Bibliotheca Alexandrina. It opened in 2002 and can hold eight million books. But we have had libraries for thousands of years. Probably the oldest library that you can still visit is al-Qarawiyyin Library in Morocco. The daughter of a trader established the library in 859 CE. However, people had collected books a long time before this.

Archaeologists have found writing on collections of papyrus in Amarna and Thebes from around 1300 BCE. The ancient Greeks had libraries where they kept thousands of original books as they didn't want copies. The famous Library of Alexandria opened around 300 BCE. The aim of this library was to have one of each of the world's books, although books were then made of papyrus or leather.

Before 1450, people had written books by hand. Then, people started printing books for the first time. Many universities also started to open, and most of these had important libraries. The rulers of a lot of countries understood the importance of books to people's education, so they began to open national libraries.

Today, you can also use digital libraries, where thousands of books and magazines are available to people online. An example is the Egyptian Knowledge Bank (www.ekb.eg) which has dictionaries, encyclopaedias, videos and all kinds of books online. People have been very enthusiastic about this digital library since it opened in 2016.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. What is the best title for this passage? "....................".

a) The history of writing
b) Alexandria Library
c) The history of libraries
d) The start of British Libraries

17. The libraries in Ancient Greeks time didn't keep ....

a) original books
b) copied books
c) papyrus books
d) foreign books

18. Libraries in the future will be ....

a) digital and electronic banks
b) bigger and wider
c) encyclopedias
d) ordinary

19. It can be inferred from the passage that people are enthusiastic about the digital libraries because ....

a) they can find all the books they need only
b) they can watch videos only
c) they have a wide range of audio and visual materials
d) they have the right to log out

20. The writer thinks that it is important to ....

a) keep ancient documents only
b) print all books and magazines
c) use heavy books and dictionaries
d) develop and improve libraries

21. The main idea of the last paragraph is ....

a) digital libraries replaced traditional ones
b) Egypt has a digital library
c) traditional libraries are more useful to learners
d) many dictionaries are in Alexandria library

22. You can log in EKB to ....

a) read a book
b) read a magazine
c) read periodicals
d) a, b &c

23. Both bibliotheca and al Qarawiyyin Library are in ....

a) Morocco
b) Egypt
c) Africa
d) America

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- It has been proved that nothing remains impossible in science. In the near future, we will have different kinds of medicine for treating all diseases.

a) لقد ثبت أنه لا يظل شيء مستحيل في العلم. في المستقبل القريب ، سيكون لدينا أنواع مختلفة من الأدوية لعلاج بعض الأمراض.
b) لقد ثبت أنه يظل شيء مستحيل في العلم . في المستقبل القريب، سيكون لدينا أنواع مختلفة من الأدوية لعلاج جميع الأمراض.
c) لقد ثبت أنه لا يظل شيء غير ممكن في العلم. في المستقبل القريب، سيكون لدينا أنواع منتظمة من الأدوية لعلاج جميع الأمراض.
d) لقد ثبت أنه لا يظل شيء مستحيل في العلم. في المستقبل القريب، سيكون لدينا أنواع مختلفة من الأدوية لعلاج جميع الأمراض.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- لو استطاع كل فرد القيام بدوره على أكمل وجه لتقدمت مصر في كل المجالات ولأصبحنا من أرقى الأمم.فتنمية البلاد لا تتحقق دون الجهد والصبر.

a) When somebody plays their role in a complete way, Egypt will develop in all fields and we will be one of the most developing countries. Developing a country can't be achieved without hard work and patience.
b) If everyone played their role properly, Egypt would develop in all fields and we would be one of the most developed countries. Developing a country can't be achieved without hard work and patience.
c) If everyone played their role right, Egypt would develop in all fields and we wouldn't be one of the most developing nations. The development of a country can't be achieved with hard work and patience.
d) Unless nobody had played their role in a complete way, Egypt would have developed in all fields and we have been one of the most developing countries. The development of a country can be achieved without hard work and patience.

26. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. "Prove that Kent was loyal to the King.

....

2. How do you think Goneril and Regan were like Edmund?

....

3. "If Goneril has a child, she will have a taste of her own medicine" What does King Lear mean by this expression?

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY "180" words on this topic:

"Ways of boosting your immune system"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I saw some homeless children .... car drivers to give them money.

a) advising b) ordering c) begging d) delaying

2. As soon as I walked into the room I .... gas.

a) must have smelt b) can't have smelt c) could smell d) could have smelt

3. Parking in this car park is .... only for people staying at the hotel.

a) suitable b) available c) reliable d) avoidable

4. Part of the final chemistry exam includes .... an experiment.

a) deciding b) designing c) performing d) making

5. I share my father's .... that people should work hard for their living.

a) belief b) disbelief c) affection d) relief

6. Ali .... wear a tie at work. It's a rule of his company.

a) has to b) must c) have to d) mustn't

7. Computers .... to help people and all institutions to carry out easier work.

a) supposed b) seems c) meant d) are meant

8. In English, the .... "Mrs" is used only for married woman.

a) type b) abbreviation c) replacement d) form

9. The bigger the flat is, the .... time she takes to clean it.

a) longest b) long c) longer d) more long

10. Don't phone me at 7 o'clock, I ....

a) am going to sleep b) sleep c) will be sleeping d) will sleep

11. He will feel a lot better after he .... a rest.

a) had had b) had c) will have d) has

12. They .... reservations at the restaurant, but they did.

a) had to make b) should have made c) didn't have to make d) needn't have made

13. Ahmed, Osama and I .... at 5 o'clock on Monday to discuss the plan as arranged.

a) meet b) are going to meet c) are meeting d) will have met

14. Samir wants a job that will let him work .... he doesn't like staying in the office.

a) indoors b) outdoor c) outdoors d) indoor

15. Salma's parents always .... her to do karate.

a) forced b) encouraged c) made d) discouraged

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

While technology is steadily taking control over individual lives, the reading habit is fast vanishing in thin air, TV and the silver screen are filling the minds of modern youth, taking the majority of their free time. We have to think seriously about how the growing generation will find time to read.

Videos and television are responsible for the declining interest in reading among youth. They do nothing to build up reading skills. If the children's time is devoted to reading, the population would be better educated. The problem is that many children read very slowly. It is hardly surprising that such children declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television. Their difficulty isn't reading the words, it is interpreting them. They need to be able to read fast enough to feed their mind's hunger for a story. Reading a lot helps the child to be independent reader.

Parents need to be convinced of preventing their children from wasting their time. Without the television, child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. Reading helps people to be ....

a) good writers　b) well paid
c) well educated　d) good actors

17. There is a fruitful partnership between a writer and the reader when ....

a) an article is published　b) a short story is read
c) a video is watched　d) a book is sold

18. Children who read slowly ....

a) like reading　b) are disabled
c) speak fast　d) like TV

19. The best title for the passage is "..................".

a) Technology pros　b) The benefits of technology
c) Children's preference　d) The importance of reading

20. The synonym of the word "independent" is "..................".

a) self determining　b) an encouraging
c) self centred　d) active

21. What is the reason behind the declining in reading habit among youth?

a) TV and videos.　b) Lack of free time.
c) Doing sport.　d) Not going to school.

22. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

a) reading skills　b) the youth
c) children　d) video and television

23. According to the writer's view, TV is .... means of entertainment.

a) not a cheap　b) not an effective
c) an effective　d) an encouraging

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Since you are ill, I'll ask someone else to clean the upstairs and put everything in order to be ready for the guests.

a) بما أنك مريض سأطلب من شخص آخر تنظيف الطوابق العلوية ووضع كل شىء فى ترتيبه لنكون جاهزين للمضيفين.

b) بما أنك مريض سأطلب من شخص آخر تنظيف الطابق العلوى ووضع كل شىء فى ترتيبه لنكون جاهزين للضيوف.

c) بما أنك مريض وأنا سأطلب من شخص آخر طلاء الطابق العلوى ووضع كل شىء فى ترتيبه لنكون جاهزين للضيوف.

d) بما أنك مريض سأطلب من شخص آخر تنظيف السلالم ووضع كل شىء فى ترتيبه لنكون جاهزين للضيوف.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- تساهم المشروعات القومية فى بناء الوطن وخلق حياة كريمة للمواطنين

a) National projects contribute to building the nation and create a decent life for citizens.
b) National projects contribute to building the nation and creating a decent life for citizens.
c) National projects contribute to build the nation and create a decent life for citizens.
d) National projects contribute to build the nation and creating a decent life for citizens.

26. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. If you were King Lear, would you send Cordelia away because she didn't say how much she loved you? Why? Why not?

....

....

2. Are actions more important than words or are words more important than actions?

....

....

3. King Lear said, "Well I'm angry too," in Act 1 Scene II. Do you think he is right to feel angry?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY "180" words on this topic:

" Hard work is key to success"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Test (3)

محافظة القليوبية (إدارة قها)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All airports have special machines to .... passengers' bags to ensure safety.

a) skim b) scatter c) scan d) scold

2. We must take .... steps to overcome bullying inside schools.

a) reflexive b) negative c) passive d) positive

3. My parents always .... their wedding anniversary by going out for dinner.

a) celebrate b) collaborate c) calculate d) separate

4. It was hard for him to .... to life in the countryside when they moved to live there.

a) adopt b) admit c) adapt d) upload

5. In my opinion, success .... hard work and a lot of patience.

a) prevents b) requires c) inquires d) acquires

6. My uncle usually wears .... clothes. He doesn't like new fashions.

a) updated b) fashionable c) traditional d) stylish

7. The price of this room is 200 pounds per night, ... breakfast.

a) enclosing b) consisting c) containing d) including

8. I think that French is .... difficult to learn than German.

a) so b) much more c) too d) much

9. If I .... a car, I would have to give you a lift to the airport.

a) had had b) have c) was having d) had

10. The manager gets .... with his employees monthly to discuss their problems.

a) together b) over c) off d) away

11. I think most of our shopping .... online in the future.

a) would be done b) will have done
c) will be done d) will be doing

12. Shaymaa .... the Faculty of Medicine when she grows up. It's her intention.

a) joins b) will join
c) is joining d) is going to join

13. You .... have bought more bread. I've already bought some.

a) should b) mustn't c) didn't d) needn't

14. All factories .... to follow safety rules soon.

a) are supposing b) are meant
c) are seemed d) are seeming

15. I shouldn't have parked my car here. The underlined words express a/an ....

a) prohibition b) necessity c) regret d) advice

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It's a fact that women have made great achievements throughout history as well as men. Men have invented a lot of things: the alphabet, machines, rockets and so many other beneficial things. But historians now agree that women have invented a very important thing which has changed history. They invented agriculture as a result; they began to settle down in one place.

Before the invention of agriculture, men were hunters. They went through forests hunting for their food every day. Sometimes they killed animals, sometimes animals killed them. Life was quite difficult and serious for them. Women had to go out every day, too. They collected roots, fruit and grass. One day, more than 10.000 years ago, a woman dropped some grass seeds. She dropped them near a riverbank. To her surprise, they grew, and the first wheat was born which was later used to make bread.

The idea grew, too. Women planted roots and fruit trees. Then they could stay at home, do their housework, look after their children and their animals. Historians think that women kept the first domestic animals. Then, their husbands didn't have to go hunting for meat. They stayed at home. They built villages and cities. Men began civilisation after women had invented agriculture.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. The main idea of the passage is about the discovery of ....

a) rockets
b) agriculture
c) hunting
d) alphabet

17. Women had to go out every day to ....

a) catch fish
b) hunt animals
c) chase animals
d) collect fruit

18. The synonym of the underlined word "beneficial" is "....................".

a) useful
b) trivial
c) useless
d) unimportant

19. The underlined word "they" in the second paragraph refers to "....................".

a) forests
b) women
c) seeds
d) men

20. According to the passage, the early man got his food through ....

a) commerce
b) hunting animals
c) agriculture
d) industry

21. We understand from the passage that agriculture was discovered ....

a) on purpose
b) by men
c) by archaeologists
d) by chance

22. People began to know about agriculture nearly .... ago.

a) 10 years
b) 10 decades
c) 10 centuries
d) 10 millenniums

23. .... proved that women invented agriculture.

a) Inventors
b) Hunters
c) Historians
d) Farmers

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Despite the challenges the Egyptian economy is facing due to COVID 19, there is a determination to overcome them. The economy is expected to witness great growth soon.

a) بالرغم من التحديات التى تواجه الدخل القومى المصرى بسبب فيروس كورونا ، يوجد خطة للتغلب عليها ، فمن الممكن أن يشهد الإقتصاد نموًا هائلًا قريبًا.

b) بالرغم من التحديات التى تعوق الإقتصاد المصرى نتيجة فيروس كورونا ، يوجد نية على حلها ، فمن المتوقع أن يشهد الإقتصاد تقدمًا كبيرًا قريبًا.

c) بالرغم من التحديات التى تواجه الإقتصاد المصرى بسبب فيروس كورونا ، يوجد إصرار على التغلب عليها ، فمن المتوقع أن يشهد الإقتصاد نموًا هائلًا قريبًا.

d) بالرغم من الأزمات التى تواجه الصناعة المصرية بسبب فيروس كورونا ، يوجد إصرار للتغلب عليها ، فمن المقبول أن يشهد الإقتصاد تقدمًا هائلًا قريبًا.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- إن ممارسة الرياضة لها فوائد عديدة فى حياتنا اليومية حيث إنها تحافظ على اللياقة البدنية والصحية بالإضافة إلى أنها تجنبنا مشاكل اجتماعية كثيرة مثل العنف والتعصب والجريمة.

a) Do sport has several advantages as it keeps us fit and health. In addition to, it protects us from many sociable problems, such as violent, tolerance and crime.

b) Doing sport has several benefits as it keeps us fit and healthy. In addition, it prevents us from many social problems, such as violence, intolerance and crime.

c) Doing sport has many advantages as it keeps us fit and healthy. In addition, it prevents us from many sociable problems, such as violent, tolerance and crime.

d) Doing sport has a lot of hopes as it keeps us fit and healthy. In addition to, it protects us from many social problems, such as violence, intolerant and crime.

26. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. Do you think King Lear was right when he gave his kingdom to his two daughters Goneril and Regan? Why?

....

....

2. Do you think Duke of Burgundy really loved Cordelia? Why?

....

....

3. Why do you think Edmund plotted against his older brother (Edgar)?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY "180" words on this topic:

"How to stay healthy"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Test (4)

محافظة المنوفية (إدارة منوف)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We must look for more .... solutions that involve producing a wide variety of food.

a) unavailable b) sustainable c) traditional d) insupportable

2. You should wear .... heavier clothes than these in such cold weather.

a) more b) few c) a little d) many

3. Adel hates to work in distant areas. "Distant" is the opposite to ....

a) remote b) far c) crowded d) close

4. The faster you drive, the .... it is.

a) more dangerous b) dangerous
c) most dangerous d) least dangerous

5. Can you explain the .... why the climate changes in the world?

a) reason b) result c) cause d) effect

6. Ali is eating too much nowadays. I think he .... fat.

a) will be getting b) is going to get
c) isn't going to get d) can't get

7. Mohamed will go to university when he .... his secondary school.

a) had finished b) finishes c) finish d) will finish

8. Menna .... in the club last night; she was busy working in her office.

a) should have been b) could have been
c) couldn't have been d) mustn't have been

9. Young authors find it difficult to .... their works.

a) come out b) publish c) spread d) appear

10. Car drivers are .... to wear seat belts.

a) supposed b) seemed c) supposing d) meaning

11. After the exam, the student felt disappointed. "Disappointed" is a synonym for ....

a) appointed b) worried c) depressed d) satisfied

12. If I were tall enough, I would join the police. This means that I .... tall.

a) am b) am not c) was d) wasn't

13. To be among your close friends, doesn't require .... language.

a) formal b) informal
c) former d) comfortable

14. .... I studied hard, I would have passed the exam.

a) Unless b) If c) In case of d) Had

15. Don't try .... this tree. It's too tall.

a) climb b) to climb c) climbing d) to climbing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many people look forward to ways to lose weight. But natural weight loss is something that experts recommend everywhere! A healthy diet and regular exercise are just the most important ways to control weight. There are many other ideas that can help you to lose weight fast. Other people like to take weight loss pills, but you need to ask your doctor's advice before you start any weight loss programs.

We all love celebrating birthdays and occasions with lots of sweet things. In that case, don't eat too many desserts; they add to your weight. A healthy diet will help you to control your weight. Begin with soup or salad as a starter. Soup and salad can help you to keep your stomach full. Forget the heavy meals, have small meals around 4-5 times a day. You put on more calories by having meals at restaurants. There, you choose foods rich in calories and eat larger portions. Eat homemade food instead. Fresh fruits and vegetables have fewer calories that make you lose weight faster. Exercise is the obvious solution for all weight problems. A home exercise routine will help you to lose weight quickly.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. Salad and soup help you feel ………………… .

a) hungry b) full
c) angry d) happy

17. People usually prefer having more ………………… during parties.

a) desserts b) salad
c) Salt d) groceries

18. How many ways are mentioned in the text to control weight?

a) 2 b) 3
c) 4 d) 5

19. What can doctors give you to lose weight?

a) Proteins. b) Calories.
c) Bills. d) Pills.

20. Having meals in restaurants ………………… .

a) is healthy b) helps you lose weight
c) can add to your weight d) lacks higher calories

21. The word "obvious" can be replaced by ………………… .

a) apparent b) clear
c) noticeable d) all mentioned

22. What are the best alternatives to the foods which are rich in calories?

a) Fast foods. b) Fatty food.
c) Fruit and vegetables. d) b and c.

23. The main idea of the passage is "…………………".

a) Food shortage b) Calories
c) Losing weight d) Homemade food

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- We are in urgent need of a revolution against our bad behaviours. Really, we should refuse any strange conduct and try to modify it.-

a) نحن فى أمس الحاجة إلى ثورة ضد سلوكياتنا السيئة، فحقًا ينبغى أن نرفض أى سلوك غريب وأن نحاول تعديله.

b) نحن فى أكبر حاجة إلى ثورة ضد مهامنا السيئة، فحقًا ينبغى أن نرفض أى سلوك غريب وأن نحاول تعديله.

c) نحن فى أمس الحاجة إلى ثورة ضد سلوكياتنا الغريبة، فحقًا ينبغى أن نرفض أى سلوك غريب وأن نحاول تعديله.

d) نحن فى أمس الحاجة إلى ثورة عند سلوكياتنا السيئة، فحقًا ينبغى أن نرفض أى عمل غريب وأن نحاول تعديله.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- يجب على الآباء أن يتحروا الصدق فى حديثهم مع الأبناء حتى يربوهم على قول الحقيقة واتباعها فى كل شيء.

a) Parents should be truth in their conversation with the children in order educate them to tell the truth and follow it in everything.

b) Parents should be truthful in their conversation with the children in order to educate them to say the truth and follow it in everything.

c) Parents should be truthful in their conversation with the children in order to educate them to tell the truth and fellow it in everything.

d) Parents should be truthful in their conversation with the children in order to educate them to tell the truth and follow it in everything.

26. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. "No child can love a father more than I love you." Why do you think Goneril said this?

....

....

2. Gloucester says, "It's a stab in the back." What do you think Gloucester meant?

....

....

3. Money and power might change some people. Give examples from the play.

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY "180" words on this topic:

"The importance of tourism"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test (5)

محافظة الدقهلية (إدارة المنزلة)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our teacher asked us to .... the play in two pages.

a) summarise b) realise c) economise d) recognise

2. Scientists are .... research to reach an effective vaccine for coronavirus.

a) hoping b) doing c) making d) telling

3. Salma .... to phone me last night, but she didn't.

a) was supposed b) seems c) is meant d) is supposed

4. I travelled by train. I .... by car, but I felt tired.

a) had to travel b) could have travelled
c) might travel d) have to travel

5. Companies usually .... things so that they can increase sales online.

a) recognise b) hide c) advertise d) appear

6. From 6 to 8 tomorrow, I .... the final match on TV.

a) will watch b) watch
c) will be watching d) will have watched

7. Nadia will go to the park after she .... her homework.

a) had finished b) finishes c) finished d) will finish

8. Due to the rapid population growth, we will have to increase our food ....

a) assumption b) introduction
c) production d) consumption

9. We hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will use .... farming techniques.

a) sustainable b) sociable
c) invisible d) cultural

10. I'll give you a lift, so you .... walk to the station.

a) must b) don't have to c) had to d) mustn't

11. We have to hurry. The train .... in five minutes.

a) is leaving b) is going to leave c) will leave d) leaves

12. My teacher advised the students .... their time.

a) to waste b) not to waste
c) to not waste d) don't waste

13. She has always been mean with money. The antonym of "mean" is "..................".

a) active b) miser c) negative d) generous

14. The more you study, ... mistakes you make.

a) the more b) the fewer c) the most d) the least

15. If I .... enough money, I would have that mobile.

a) had had b) had c) have had d) would have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Social media is a digital technology that allows the sharing of ideas and information, including text and visuals, through virtual networks and communities. Nowadays, a lot of people are using social media sites, such as Facebook, Twitter, Instagram and so on. Since the Internet has propagated rapidly, social media have progressed a lot. People are using smart phones, I-phones or devices which can access the internet. It helps contact friends, family, and other people. It could, however, be abused if you don't use it properly. People can get mental and physical disorders easily through using social media. People might think social media is not matter with the disorders. They argued that social media is good for mental diseases because it helps them express their feelings or thoughts easily. However, social media just offers limited meetings. They just meet on websites, not physical meetings.

When people are using social media they do not need to move a lot. As a result, it leads to mental and physical disorders. Social media also doesn't help with their studies or talents. I did surveys about relationships between using social media and studying last semester. Most students answered that using social media is not helpful to study. Also, students who got good grades spent just a little time on social media. Using social media easily steals your time from what you really want to do. If you do not pay attention, your time is gone very fast.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. What kind of diseases can using social media cure?

a) Mental diseases. b) Physical diseases.
c) Incurable diseases. d) Simple diseases.

17. Using social media is .... for students.

a) beneficial b) useful
c) important d) useless

18. The word "propagated" in the passage means ....

a) limit b) hurried c) provided d) spread

19. Social media helps people ....

a) study their lessons b) practise their favourite hobbies
c) express their feelings easily d) eat well

20. The meetings on social media are ....

a) physical b) mental
c) virtual d) economical

21. Modern technology helped people to use social media ....

a) more b) less c) limited d) rarely

22. The underlined word "physical" in the passage means ....

a) relating with physics b) relating to the mind
c) relating to the body d) relating to psyche

23. According to the passage social media ....

a) makes people active b) makes people lazy
c) makes people helpful d) makes people move much

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- One of the most important goals of education is to build an Egyptian citizen capable of facing the future and creating a productive society that faces the challenges of the age.

a) من أهم أهداف التعليم بناء مواطن مصرى قادر على مواجهة المستقبل وخلق مجتمع مستهلك يواجه تحديات العصر.

b) من أهم أهداف التعليم بناء مواطن مصرى قادر على مواجهة المستقبل وخلق مجتمع منتج يواجه تحديثات العصر.

c) من أهم أهداف التعلم بناء مواطن مصرى قادر على مواجهة المستقبل وخلق مجتمع منتج يواجه غلاء العصر.

d) من أهم أهداف التعليم بناء مواطن مصرى قادر على مواجهة المستقبل وخلق مجتمع منتج يواجه تحديات العصر.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- تحاول الحكومة تطوير القرى المصرية بتوفير التسهيلات الضرورية للوصول بالريف المصرى إلى مستوى معيشى لائق.

a) The government is trying to develop the Egyptian villages by providing the necessary facilities to bring the Egyptian countryside to a decent standard of living.

b) The government is trying to develop the Egyptian cities by providing the necessary facilities to bring the Egyptian countryside to a decent standard of living.

c) The government is trying to develop the Egyptian villages by improving the necessary facilities to bring the Egyptian countryside to a decent standard of living.

d) The government is trying to develop the Egyptian villages by providing the cheap facilities to bring the Egyptian countryside to a decent standard of living.

26. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. King Lear proved to be unfair. Why do you think so?

....

....

2. In your opinion, what is the moral you have learnt from "King Lear"?

....

....

3. Do you think Kent was a good friend? Why? Why not?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY "180" words on this topic:

"Pollution, reasons and solutions"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's important to show .... for other people's beliefs.
a) ignorance b) regret
c) respect d) misunderstanding

2. This restaurant .... cheap and delicious food.
a) serves b) surfs c) celebrates d) exists

3. We must look for more .... solutions to increase food production.
a) traditional b) sustainable
c) old-fashioned d) confusing

4. Abbreviations are used in text messages to make .... quicker.
a) punctuations b) innovations
c) community d) communication

5. I need to .... my anti-virus software to make my personal computer fully protected.
a) update b) upload c) date d) overload

6. He .... me to help him because he was in trouble.
a) sighed b) apologised c) begged d) ignored

7. The language of text messages doesn't .... correct spelling.
a) inquire b) require c) acquire d) retire

8. "*Oliver Twist*" is one of Charles Dickens' .... novels.
a) famous b) much famous
c) the most famous d) most famous

9. You .... eat too much of something if it has a lot of sugar or salt.
a) should b) mustn't c) don't need d) have to

10. I .... downloaded that program. Now, I have a virus on my laptop.
a) couldn't have b) should have c) shouldn't have d) could have

11. Schools .... to follow rules of safety.
a) must b) are seemed c) are meant d) supposed

12. My school .... an education program next month to help slow learning students.
a) runs b) has run c) will be running d) will have run

13. We .... the office till we have done all our work.
a) won't leave b) didn't leave
c) have left d) had to leave

14. I'm awfully sorry; if I .... free time, I'd have met you.
a) hadn't had b) had been c) would have d) had had

15. Out of all students, Ahmed studied .... but got the best grades.
a) the less b) the least c) the much d) the more

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I'm almost 19 years old, and I finished my first year of university. I'm currently on holiday, and I have a lot of free time. Having free time is nice, but the problem is that when you are a student, you never have money. And when you have a lot of free time, but you don't have much money, it can get boring.

Every morning I go to the gym, and I read in the afternoons. But I still have a lot of free time. Going to the gym takes me about two hours, including the road time and the post-gym shower. And I usually read for one hour.

Another activity that I do is watch documentaries. I study history, and I love historical documentaries. I learn a lot from them. I watch documentaries for one and a half hours, four or five times a week.

But those activities are a small part of my day. When I'm not at the gym or reading, I get bored, and I often play video games for hours. I enjoy playing video games, but I don't think it's a productive activity. When I play for a long time, I feel bad. I'd like to find more productive activities to do, but it isn't easy. I live in a small town, and there aren't many things to do. Do you have any suggestions? What do you do with your free time?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. The main problem when you are a student, you don't have .... for your free time activities.

a) enough time
b) enough money
c) enough friends
d) enough activities

17. The writer prefers to .... in his free time.

a) exercise
b) watch documentaries
c) read
d) all of them

18. The writer prefers .... to any other genre.

a) science
b) history
c) fiction
d) non-fiction

19. The opposite of "bored" is "..................".

a) excited
b) lovely
c) perfect
d) stressed

20. The writer is a/an ....

a) graduate
b) university student
c) high school student
d) employee

21. According to the writer, the problem of living in a small town is ....

a) having little free time
b) not having much money
c) not having many activities
d) not having many friends

22. The activities the writer does takes nearly .... a day.

a) two hours and half
b) three hours
c) four hours
d) four hours and half

23. .... is not a productive activity according to the writer.

a) Going to the gym
b) Watching documentaries
c) Playing video games
d) Reading

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The Ministry of Education is trying to develop curricula and modify the exam system. Thus, we can have highly qualified graduates who are able to face global and local challenges.

a) تحاول وزارة التربية والتعليم العالى تطوير المناهج وتعديل نظام البعثات ولذلك يمكن أن يكون لدينا خريجون مؤهلون تأهيلًا عاليا قادرون على مواجهة التحديات العالمية والمحلية.

b) تحاول وزارة التربية والتعليم تطوير المناهج وتعديل نظام الامتحانات وبالتالى يمكن أن يكون لدينا خريجون مؤهلون تأهيلًا عاليا قادرون على مواجهة التحديات العالمية والمحلية.

c) تحاول وزارة التربية والتعليم تطوير المناهج وتعديل نظام الإعارات ونتيجة لذلك يمكن أن يكون لدينا خريجون مؤهلون تأهيلًا عاليا قادرون على مواجهة مصاعب الحياة العالمية والمحلية.

d) تحاول وزارة التربية والتعليم العالى تطوير المعلمين وتعديل نظام الإمتحانات وعلى الرغم من ذلك يمكن أن يكون لدينا خريجون مؤهلون تأهيلًا عاليا قادرون على مواجهة التحديات العالمية والمحلية.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- يُعد تلوث المياه من أخطر القضايا التى تشغل عقول العلماء، وهذا النوع من التلوث عادة ما يكون نتيجة للأنشطة البشرية فى البحيرات والأنهار والمحيطات.

a) Water pollution is one of the most tolerable issues that occupy the minds of scientists. This type of pollution is usually the result of human activities in seas, rivers and oceans.

b) Water pollution is one of the least serious issues that occupy the minds of thinkers. This type of pollution is usually the result of human exercises in lakes, rivers and oceans.

c) Water pollution is one of the most serious issues that occupy the minds of scientists. This type of pollution is usually the result of human activities in lakes, rivers and oceans.

d) Water pollution is one of the most important issues that occupy the minds of scientists. This type of pollution is usually the cause of human activities in canals, rivers and oceans.

26. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. Do you think that King Lear was right to give everything to Goneril and Regan? Why?

....

....

2. Do you think that Cordelia and Edgar were alike? Why? Why not?

....

....

3. What do you think of Edmund? Why?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY "180" words on this topic:

" We owe much to science and scientists"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The .... of energy a person needs each day depends on the type of work they do.
a) account b) quality c) weight d) amount

2. The current global economic crisis increased the importance of .... to provide food for our own country.
a) economy b) agriculture c) literature d) culture

3. A/An .... is someone who studies or teaches the science of languages.
a) linguist b) botanist c) astrologist d) biologist

4. I believe that people of the world can all work together, regardless of their .... and religions.
a) heights b) wealth c) competitions d) races

5. There is a wide variety of roses to choose from at the florist's. The synonym of the word "variety" is "................".
a) similarity b) diversity c) argument d) familiarity

6. Our neighbour, Mrs Samira, always complains that her kids spend hours chatting on the phone .... their friends.
a) by b) at c) with d) for

7. You .... leave your bags with someone you don't know.
a) have to b) mustn't c) had to d) don't have to

8. I must finish this essay today. It .... be handed in by tomorrow.
a) has to b) mustn't c) had to d) needn't

9. They are confident. It .... that they are sure they can win the match.
a) is meant b) supposed c) supposes d) seems

10. We find that we have far .... time to relax now that we have children.
a) less b) much c) many d) a lot

11. This time next week, I .... at the Hilton if you need to contact me.
a) will wait b) will be waiting c) am going to wait d) wait

12. Although he is a liar, he expects people .... him.
a) to believe b) to be believed c) believing d) believe

13. I don't like stories .... have unhappy endings.
a) which b) they c) who d) whose

14. Everything is going well. We .... any problems so far.
a) didn't have b) have no c) haven't had d) hadn't had

15. Let's go to the seminar. It .... interesting.
a) used to be
b) is supposed to be
c) must have been
d) needs to be

▶ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

My hobby is reading. I read storybooks, magazines, newspapers and any kind of material that I find interesting.

This hobby got started when I was a little boy. I had always wanted my parents to read fairy tales and other stories to me. Soon, they got fed up and tired of having to read to me continually. So as soon as I could, I learned to read. I started with simple ABC books. Soon I could read simple fairy tales and other stories. Now, I read just about anything that is available.

Reading enables me to learn about so many things that I would otherwise not know. I learned about how people lived in bygone days of magic and mystery. I learned about the wonders of the world, space travel, human achievements, gigantic whales, tiny viruses and other fascinating things in our world.

The wonderful thing about reading is that I do not have to learn things the hard way. For example, I do not have to catch a disease to know that it can kill me. I know the danger, so I can avoid it. Also, I do not have to go deep into the jungle to learn about the tiger. I can read all about it in a book.

Books provide the reader with so much information and facts. They have certainly helped me in my daily life. I am better equipped to cope with life. Otherwise, I would go about ignorantly learning things the hard way.

So, I continue to read. Besides being more informed about the world, I also spend my time profitably. It is indeed a good hobby.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. The writer has liked reading since his ....
a) graduation b) childhood c) marriage d) youth

17. Through reading, the person becomes ....
a) knowledgeable b) available c) famous d) honourable

18. The word "bygone" means "................".
a) the things that will happen in the future
b) the things that happen daily
c) the things that will never happen
d) the things that happened in a past time

19. In addition to helping the person to know many things, reading is a ....
a) disaster b) responsibility c) hobby d) danger

20. The writer began to depend on himself and learnt to read because ....
a) he was old enough to read for himself
b) he was fed up with the tales his parents read
c) his parents were fed up with reading him tales
d) he wanted to change the stories his parents read

21. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....
a) the world b) time c) a book d) reading

22. Without reading, the writer would "................".
a) travel a lot to get information
b) know about the world through hard ways
c) have much time for himself
d) be protected from disasters

23. The best title for the passage is "................".
a) The advantages of reading
b) The pros and cons of reading
c) Reading is a useless hobby
d) Not everyone could be a good reader

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Having a hobby is a golden rule in life as it helps you to grow physically and mentally strong and enhances your chance of success.

a) لأن تكون سعيدًا هى قاعدة ذهبية فى الحياة؛ لأنها تساعدك على النمو فيزيائيا وعقليًا بقوة، وتعزز فرصتك فى النجاح.

b) لأن تكون لديك هواية هو قاعدة ذهبية فى الحياة؛ لأنها تساعدك على النمو جسديًا وعقليًا بقوة، وتعزز من فرصتك فى النجاح.

c) إن ممارسة هواية تعتبر دورًا حيويًا فى الحياة؛ لأنها تساعدك على النمو جسديًا وعقليًا بقوة، وتقوى فرصتك فى النجاح.

d) لأن يكون لديك هدف هو دور ذهبى فى الحياة؛ لأنه يساعدك على النمو جسديًا وعقليًا ويعزز من فرصتك فى النجاح.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- تعانى العديد من دول العالم من مشكلة اللاجئين الذين تجبرهم الحروب والصراعات والمشكلات الاقتصادية الكبيرة على ترك أوطانهم والبحث عن حياة أفضل.

a) Many countries of the world suffer from the problem of refugees who are forced by wars, conflicts and major economical problems to leave their homelands and search for a better life.

b) Many countries of the world suffer from the problem of refugees who are decided by wars, conflicts and major economic problems to leave their homelands and search for a better life.

c) Many countries of the world suffer from the problem of refugees who are forced by wars, conflicts and minor economical problems to leave their homelands and search for a better life.

d) Many countries of the world suffer from the problem of refugees who are forced by wars, conflicts and major economic problems to leave their homelands and search for a better life.

26. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. Do you think that Kent has good reason to be loyal to the King? Why?

....

....

2. In your opinion, where else could King Lear go to be away from his two daughters?

....

....

3. What proves that Goneril and Regan lied about their love to their father?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Your favourite social networking site"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt .... its Victory Day on the enemy on the 6th of October.
a) accepts b) rewards c) celebrates d) reports

2. The Nile is our most important .... water supply, so we should all try to keep it clean.
a) believable b) noticeable c) avoidable d) sustainable

3. We intend to make a/an .... written complaint against the car agency.
a) normal b) formal c) occasional d) easy

4. The applicant .... no time in introducing himself to the interviewer.
a) wasted b) missed c) profited d) benefited

5. The concert was advertised in all the national newspapers. The noun of the verb "advertise" is "...........".
a) advertised b) advertises c) advertisement d) advisor

6. The two friends have .... in contact since they met during their holiday two years ago.
a) lost b) departed c) missed d) kept

7. I .... see the head teacher yesterday as he/she had called me to his/her office.
a) have to b) didn't have to c) had to d) mustn't

8. Vegetable curry is usually .... than the other meals on the menu.
a) spicier b) spicy c) spiciest d) most spicy

9. If you arrive late again I .... for you. So, we're clear.
a) wait b) will be waiting c) won't be waiting d) am waiting

10. Khalid didn't know where the ball was, but he thought his sister .... have been playing with it.
a) could b) must c) can't d) mustn't

11. I'm going to buy this book. It .... to be very good.
a) seemed b) is seemed c) is supposed d) supposed

12. Do you think he'd be here if he .... a choice?
a) had had b) have c) were d) had

13. A: Do you think it will rain? B: ....
a) I hope not b) I don't hope c) I don't hope so d) I hope no

14. A: You don't know where Hany is, ...? B: Sorry, I have no idea.
a) don't you b) do you c) are you d) is he

15. We can't wait any longer! Something .... immediately.
a) should have been done b) had to be done
c) ought to do d) must be done

▶ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Our home is usually our favourite place to spend time. However, many accidents occur at home. There are dangerous things in the house and we should be aware of them. Thus, we can avoid unnecessary pain or injury.

Electricity runs many of our home appliances. It is a very useful thing. It is also a very dangerous thing if used carelessly, for it can kill. Electrical sockets and power points are to be handled with the utmost care. Young children should never be allowed to go near them. Unless we are very sure of what we are doing, repairs should only be done by a competent electrician.

It is only too easy to get electrocuted. Old or faulty appliances should be discarded. If they are used, they are likely to start a fire somewhere or kill someone who touches them.

The kitchen has many dangerous things. Sharp knives can draw blood, mishandled gas cylinders can explode, hot water can scald and stoves can cause nasty burns. Flies and rats can contaminate food. Thus, the kitchen is not a place to be careless in. If we are careful and know how to handle things there, then the chance of an accident occurring is lessened.

The biggest danger in a bathroom is when the floor is slippery with water or soap. I have heard of many incidents of people, especially old folks, falling in the bathroom. Sometimes the fall is fatal. Often, it leaves the victim bedridden. The utmost care is needed here.

Finally, the medicine cabinet should be inaccessible to young children. Dangerous drugs and pills can look like sweets to these young ones. If taken, the consequences can be disastrous. Other dangers do exist. It is up to us to watch out for them.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. Although it is a very useful thing, electricity can ....

a) run factories
b) end your life
c) make you happy
d) darken your room

17. If there is something wrong with the electricity at home, who should do the repairs?

a) The electrician.
b) The children.
c) The parents.
d) The neighbours.

18. The utmost care is needed in the bathroom as ....

a) there is much electricity in it
b) hot water can scald your skin
c) you may slip easily and become bedridden
d) fire can break out at any time

19. Young children may take dangerous drugs and pills, thinking that they are ....

a) milk
b) medicine
c) fruit
d) sweets

20. We should get rid of faulty devices because ....

a) they cause bad emissions
b) they consume much electricity
c) they may cause a fire
d) they are bad for our lungs

21. The synonym of the underlined word "nasty" is ....

a) pleasant
b) mild
c) delightful
d) terrible

22. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) home appliances
b) electrical sockets
c) young children
d) old appliances

23. The main idea of the passage is ....

a) not to use the electrical devices
b) to be careful in the house
c) to be careless when entering the kitchen
d) it is difficult to be safe at home

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Hosting great sports championships and tournaments can confirm Egypt's prominent role in Africa. It can also be a chance to show our civilisation to the whole world.

a) يمكن لاستضافة البطولات والدورات الرياضية الكبرى تأكيد دور مصر البارز فى إفريقيا كما يمكن أن تكون أيضًا فرصة لإظهار حضارتنا للعالم كله.

b) يمكن لاستضافة البطولات والدورات الرياضية الكبرى تأكيد دور مصر البارز فى العالم كما يمكن أن تكون أيضًا فرصة لإظهار حضارتنا للعالم كله.

c) يمكن لاستضافة البطولات والدورات الرياضية الكبرى تأكيد دور مصر البارز فى إفريقيا كما يمكن أن تكون أيضًا فرصة لإظهار ثقافتنا للعالم كله.

d) يمكن لاستضافة البطولات والدورات الرياضية الكبرى تأكيد دور مصر البارز فى إفريقيا كما يمكن أن تكون أيضًا فرصة لشرح حضارتنا للعالم كله.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

– للسياحة دور هام فى الاقتصاد فى مصر؛ فهى توفر الكثير من فرص العمل، كما أنها ثانى أهم مصدر للعملة الأجنبية التى تحتاج إليها مصر.

a) Tourism has an important role in the economy in Egypt. It proves a lot of job opportunities, and it is the second most important source of foreign currency that Egypt needs.

b) Tourism has an important role in the economy in Egypt. It provides a lot of job opportunities, and it is the second most important result of foreign currency that Egypt needs.

c) Tourism has an important role in the economy in Egypt. It provides a lot of job opportunities, and it is the second most important source of foreign currency that Egypt needs.

d) Tourism has an important role in the economy in Egypt. It provides a lot of job opportunities, and it is the second most important source of foreign support that Egypt needs.

26. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. Why do you think Cornwall treated the King cruelly?

....

....

2. "I need these two fools to make my plan work." What does this show about Edmund's character?

....

....

3. In your opinion, are Goneril and Regan right to wish to get rid of the King's soldiers? Why?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The role teachers can play in developing society"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Tests

Test (9)

32

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Unfortunately, the airline .... some of its staff to decrease their losses in the past few years.
   a) feared b) designed c) fired d) employed
2. The artist painted the .... of a boat against the setting sun.
   a) port b) profile c) character d) site
3. Many Egyptian farmers keep ...., such as cows and buffaloes to help them in their fields.
   a) livestock b) dairy c) fish d) poultry
4. All laws have very .... penalties for people who sell drugs.
   a) simple b) merciful c) fragile d) severe
5. My friend has just told me that he .... his mind about going on the trip with us.
   a) determined b) decided c) changed d) did
6. The plan received strong support from farmers. The synonym of the noun "support" is "............".
   a) neglect b) operation c) assistance d) avoidance
7. I .... go to the post office to receive the parcel. The postman delivered it.
   a) didn't have to b) don't have to c) have to d) had to
8. This exercise is too difficult. I think you should make it ....
   a) as simple b) most simple c) more simpler d) simpler
9. When she comes, they .... dinner. They are waiting for her.
   a) have b) will be having
   c) are going to having d) will have
10. He said that he never wanted to see you, but I'm sure he didn't .... it.
    a) meant b) seem c) suppose d) mean
11. The plastic melts if it .... too hot.
    a) gets b) got c) is getting d) had got
12. My friends have invited me .... the Pyramids with them.
    a) visiting b) to visiting c) to visit d) to have visited
13. You can't stop me .... what I want.
    a) that I do b) do c) doing d) to do
14. .... my friend's telephone number, I contacted him.
    a) Having found b) Founding c) After founding d) We found
15. Mr Hamdy is the .... teacher I've ever had. His classes are always so interesting and I always look forward to them.
    a) much inspiring b) most inspiring c) biggest inspiring d) more inspiring

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Computers are machines that can help us in many ways. But they cannot think or do things on their own. Humans have to feed them with information and tell them what to do with it.
They can save much time and work. For example, all the information and office files can be stored in a computer's "memory".

The first computers were huge and costly. They filled up almost the whole floor with large offices. Later, because of the usefulness and demand for computers in business, scientists soon found ways to produce cheaper and smaller computers. They invented chips, which made it possible to store more information in less space.

Today, computers are not only cheaper, but also ***more compact***. They can just be placed on top of an ordinary writing table. They can even be carried easily from one place to another. Computers are not only used in offices by companies, but they are also used at home by families who can afford them.

Robots, on the other hand, are not mechanical people. They are only moving parts controlled by a computer. A robot can do the same work for twenty-four hours, and yet it does not complain or get tired. In Japan and some places in America, robots are used in factories to assemble cars. As computers become more common in businesses and factories, people fear that one day computers and computer-controlled robots will put human workers out of work.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. Humans fear that one day computers and robots ....

a) are busier than humans
b) are cleverer than humans
c) will make humans jobless
d) will make humans listen to certain noise

17. The best title for this passage would be "..................".

a) Computers and Robots
b) Old and New Computers
c) Robots are Security Guards
d) The Electronic Invention

18. Find a word in the passage that has the same meaning as *more compact*.

a) Huge.
b) Cheaper.
c) Smaller.
d) Costly.

19. Which of the following statements is NOT TRUE?

a) Robots are controlled by a computer.
b) Robots are mechanical people.
c) Robots do not get tired of working.
d) Robots are used in factories in Japan.

20. Humans have to feed the computers with information and tell them what to do because computers ....

a) can save time and work
b) cannot think or do things on their own
c) can store office information in their memory
d) can help us in many ways

21. Why did the first computers fill up almost the whole floor?

a) Because they were huge and costly.
b) Because of the usefulness and demand for computers in businesses.
c) Because the office floor was small.
d) Because they were huge.

22. What does the author imply in this passage?

a) A clerk would take more time to find information if he did not have a computer.
b) Computers were huge and costly at the beginning, but then they were evolving.
c) Computers store information in their memory so it is easier for a clerk to find information.
d) Humans need to feed machines so the computers can work effectively with information.

23. What can we infer from this passage?

a) A robot needs a computer to control it.
b) Computers are used in different areas of life.
c) In the United States, robots tell people what to do.
d) Computers are making people feel useless.

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Although the internet has become the most important means for information and knowledge, terrorists use it to spread their evil beliefs. It also helps them find young people to enlist them for their violent actions.

a) على الرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبح أهم وسيلة للمعلومات والمعرفة، فإن الإرهابيين يستخدمونه لتوثيق معتقداتهم الشريرة. كما أنه يساعدهم فى العثور على الشباب لتجنيدهم لأعمالهم العنيفة.

b) على الرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبح أهم وسيلة للمعلومات والمعرفة، فإن الإرهابيين يستخدمونه لنشر معتقداتهم الشريرة. كما أنه يساعدهم فى العثور على الشباب لتجنيدهم لأعمالهم العنيفة.

c) على الرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبح أهم وسيلة للمعلومات والمعرفة، فإن الإرهابيين يستخدمونه لنشر معتقداتهم الشريرة. كما أنه يساعدهم فى العثور على الشباب لتدريبهم لأعمالهم العنيفة.

d) على الرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبح أهم وسيلة للمعلومات والمعرفة، فإن الإرهابيين يستخدمونه لنشر معتقداتهم الشريرة. كما أنه يساعدهم فى العثور على الكبار لتجنيدهم لأعمالهم العنيفة.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية على فهم الاتجاهات العلمية والثقافية الحديثة كما يمكننا من مواكبة التطور الكبير فى مجالات العلوم والتكنولوجيا المختلفة.

a) Learning foreign languages helps us understand modern scientific and cultural traces and enables us to keep pace with the great development in various fields of science and technology.

b) Learning foreign languages helps us understand modern scientific and cultural trends and enables us to take place with the great development in various fields of science and technology.

c) Teaching foreign languages helps us understand modern scientific and cultural trends and enables us to keep pace with the great development in various fields of science and technology.

d) Learning foreign languages helps us understanding modern scientific and cultural trends and enables us to keep pace with the great development in various fields of science and technology.

26. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. If you were Edmund, would you resort to trickery to get a share of your father's inheritance? Why?

....

....

2. "Your youngest daughter does not shout about her love for you, but that doesn't mean she loves you the least." Do you agree with Kent's point of view? Why?

....

....

3. Do you think that Lear really went mad? Why?

....

....

27. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"A country or city you would like very much to visit"

- Your name is Magdy and your email address is magdy4@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Ayman and his email address is ayman_2020@yahoo.com.

....

....

....

....

....

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Being able to adapt to different situations is one of the .... life skills.
   a) fictional b) extra c) additional d) basic
2. Within less than an hour, the fire had .... to the fuel stores.
   a) published b) spread c) printed d) sprayed
3. All airports have special machines to .... passengers' bags.
   a) scan b) skim c) expect d) state
4. A .... is a written set of questions which you give to a large number of people in order to collect information.
   a) licence b) degree c) permission d) questionnaire
5. He was charged with متهم بـ possessing a fake passport. The antonym of the adjective "fake" is "............".
   a) forged b) genuine c) false d) duplicate
6. We need to look for more innovative solutions .... our environmental problems.
   a) in b) at c) for d) with
7. You .... keep medicines where children can get them.
   a) have to b) must c) mustn't d) needn't
8. Was the film .... funny as the last one?
   a) much b) as c) more d) less
9. Do you like my new solar watch? Here, I .... you how it works.
   a) show b) will be showing c) am showing d) will show
10. I .... have taken the job if they had offered it to me earlier.
    a) could b) shouldn't c) must d) couldn't
11. I .... to have left my book at home.
    a) supposed b) am meant c) mean d) seem
12. .... late, we will have to start without him.
    a) Were he to be b) Should he be c) Had he been d) Unless he is
13. The .... planet in the solar system is Jupiter.
    a) large b) larger c) largest d) most large
14. I'm tired. I'd rather .... out this evening, if you don't mind.
    a) not going b) not to go c) don't go d) not go
15. Of her three dresses, the second was the ....
    a) longest b) longer c) long d) most long

▶ **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

The Asian elephant is another type of elephant found in the world, besides the African elephant. They share some similarities. Elephants are social creatures and live in herds. Asian elephants are normally found in countries like India, Indonesia, Malaysia and Myanmar. An adult Asian elephant stands at two to three metres and weighs approximately 5000 kilograms. At birth, it stands at around one metre and weighs approximately 100 kilograms. Like most humans, they give birth to a single baby at a time, but the foetus stays much longer in the mother's womb compared to the human baby–23 months! An Asian elephant has a life span of about 60 years.

The diet of an Asian elephant is somewhat similar to that of an African elephant. They feed mainly on vegetation, bark, fruits and flowers.

Living in a herd means that the baby elephant has a large group of adults to look after it, besides its own mother. An orphan elephant is often adopted by another female elephant. As the largest land animal in the world, an elephant requires about 150 kilograms of food and 75–95 litres of water a day.

The largest threats to the Asian elephant are poaching and habitat loss. Their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market, so large-tusked males are in constant danger of being poached. Elephants are also captured alive for domestic use, such as tourist attractions.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. There are .... types of elephants in the world.

a) one b) two c) three d) many

17. The Asian elephant can be found in ....

a) Indonesia b) America c) Australia d) Holland

18. The synonym of the word "poaching" is "..................".

a) slaughtering b) immigrating c) killing d) stealing

19. What happens to an orphan elephant?

a) It is looked after by another female elephant.
b) It is abandoned.
c) It is looked after by the whole herd.
d) It is killed.

20. How is the elephant similar to humans in terms of giving birth?

a) The elephant gives birth to many young at a time.
b) The elephant gives birth to one young at a time.
c) The elephant's foetus stays the same amount of time in the mother's womb as the human baby.
d) The baby elephant is only looked after by its mother.

21. What are the similarities between the African and Asian elephants?

a) They come from the same countries. b) They live in herds.
c) They have the same diet. d) They live in herds and have the same diet.

22. One of the reasons that elephants are captured is that ....

a) their tusks are very expensive b) they are sold to circus owners
c) they are used as tourist attractions d) they are used for ride

23. At birth, the baby elephant weighs around ....

a) one ton b) 100 grams c) 10 kilograms d) 100.000 grams

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

Many people don't have knowledge or awareness of health care. So, it's the role of educated people to spread awareness about such health issues to face medical emergencies.

a) كثيرمن الناس ليس لديهم المعرفة أو الوعى بالرعاية الصحية. لذا، فإن دورالمتعلمين هو نشرالوعى حول مثل هذه القضايا الصحية لمواجهة الطوارئ الطبية.

b) كثيرمن الناس ليس لديهم المعرفة أو الوعى بالرعاية الصحية. لذا، فإن دورالمعلمين هو نشرالوعى حول مثل هذه القضايا الصحية لمواجهة الطوارئ الطبية.

c) كثيرمن الناس ليس لديهم المعرفة أو الوعى بالرعاية الصحية. لذا، فإن دورالمعلمين هو نشرالوعى حول مثل هذه القضايا الصحية لمواجهة العمليات الطبية.

d) كثيرمن الناس ليس لديهم المعرفة أو الوعى بالرعاية الصحية. لذا، فإن دورالمتعلمين هو تصميم الوعى حول مثل هذه القضايا الصحية لمواجهة الطوارئ الطبية.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- للرياضة أثر كبير فى محاربة مشكلات المجتمع المختلفة مثل العنف والجريمة، كما يمكنها تعزيز المبادئ الأساسية لشخصية الأطفال بجانب فوائدها الصحية الكبيرة لكل الناس.

a) Sport has a great defect in fighting the various problems of society, such as violence and crime. It can also enhance the basic principles of children's personality, in addition to its great health benefits for all people.

b) Sport has a great effect in fighting the various problems of society, such as violence and crime. It can also evade the basic principles of children's personality, in addition to its great health benefits for all people.

c) Sport has a great effect in fighting the various problems of society, such as violence and crime. It can also enhance the basic findings of children's personality, in addition to its great health benefits for all people.

d) Sport has a great effect in fighting the various problems of society, such as violence and crime. It can also enhance the basic principles of children's personality, in addition to its great health benefits for all people.

26. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. Do you agree with Cordelia's argument that words can't express her love for her father? Why?

....

....

2. Why do you think Edmund asked Edgar to carry a sword when he got out?

....

....

3. "You should worry, old King, because you gave everything away, rather than worrying about her head." What do you think of the Fool's remarks on Lear's situation?

....

....

27. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"You bought a new TV, but it had a lot of problems after a week. Write to the company which sold it to you, complaining and asking them to replace it for you. Your name is Ehab Ahmed Ibrahim and your email address is ehab09@gmail.com. The company's email address is: service@ted.eg."

....

....

....

....

....



▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The doctor encouraged the child to increase the .... of food that he eats.

a) mixture b) combination c) variety d) collocation

2. It's important to .... a virus checker on your mobile or tablet.

a) break b) instill c) attach d) install

3. If you change your .... about the wall colour, it's easy to just paint over it.

a) head b) mind c) brain d) matter

4. The shoe factory has come under .... for using child labour.

a) fire b) rocket c) pocket d) shot

5. Experts say that some pets .... to any bad treatment with violent actions.

a) return b) react c) retreat d) plead

6. With the news of the war, oil has increased in price. The synonym of the verb "increase" is "..................".

a) rise b) decrease c) raise d) decline

7. You .... see a doctor. It's not so serious.

a) had to b) didn't have to c) mustn't d) needn't

8. For some students, mathematics is the .... subject they study.

a) difficult b) more difficult c) most difficult d) much difficult

9. My elder brother taught me how .... a bike.

a) to ride b) riding c) to be riding d) ride

10. A: Why hasn't the teacher come to school today? **B:** She .... to be ill.

a) seems b) is meant c) was seemed d) supposed

11. At the same time tomorrow, we .... through the streets of downtown.

a) will walk b) are going to walk c) will be walking d) walk

12. If you had this house, a husband, and three children to look after, you .... tired like me.

a) looked b) would have looked
c) will look d) would look

13. Are you looking forward .... on holiday?

a) to going b) that you go c) to go d) going

14. I haven't seen her for ...., I've forgotten what she looks like.

a) so along b) a such long time c) a long time d) so long time

15. A: .... a job? **B:** No, I don't. I'm a student.

a) Did you have b) Do you have c) Had you had d) Are you having

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Being an only child, there was not much that Sara could do when she was alone. Reading made her life seem so much more interesting. She read so much that she earned the nickname 'bookworm'. Because of all the reading that she did, her grasp of the English language was so good that no one at her level could ever beat her at it.

Her teachers were all so proud of her. They especially enjoyed her compositions, as she had a very good imagination and could write very well. One day, a surprise waited for Sara in school. Her teacher had shown some of her compositions to a friend of hers who was a book publisher. The publisher was so impressed with Sara's writing that he offered Sara the chance to write her own novel. Sara wasn't so sure at first whether she had the talent to write a novel. But with her teacher's encouragement, she agreed. A few months later, Sara's book was published and put on sale. They sold like hotcakes! Everyone was proud of her and Sara discovered that this was what she wanted to be.

Sara received a "pat on the back" from friends, family and coworkers. She continued to develop her style of writing and her own personal sense of pride and accomplishment.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. What did Sara do to make her life more interesting?

a) She wrote books. b) She read books.
c) She wrote compositions. d) She wrote novels.

17. Sara was called 'bookworm' because ....

a) she kept worms in her books b) she liked worms
c) she liked to read books about worms d) she loved to read

18. How many brothers and sisters does Sara have?

a) One. b) Two. c) Three. d) None.

19. The phrase 'sold like hotcakes' means ....

a) the books were selling very well
b) the books were sold together with hotcakes
c) the books were hot like cakes when sold
d) the books were sold near a bakery selling hotcakes

20. The publisher wanted to publish Sara's work because ....

a) she was her teacher's favourite student
b) her teacher asked the publisher to publish her work
c) the publisher felt that Sara had the talent to write a novel
d) Sara wanted to publish her novel

21. Sara was reluctant to write the novel at first because ....

a) she wasn't confident she could do it b) she did not like to write novels
c) she wanted to publish her compositions d) she did not have the talent to do it

22. The underlined pronoun "her" refers to ....

a) Sara b) Sara's teacher c) Sara's teacher's friend d) Sara's work

23. The synonym of the underlined word "impressed" is "................".

a) fascinated b) normal c) depressed d) disappointed

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Everyone in society has the right to have their own opinions and beliefs. In civilised societies, there is no problem with being different from others, but it's a must to respect each other.

a) لكل فرد فى المجتمع الحق فى أن يكون له آراؤه ومعتقداته وفى المجتمعات المتحضرة، لا توجد مشكلة فى أن تكون مختلفًا عن الآخرين، ولكن من الضرورى احترام بعضنا البعض.

b) لكل فرد فى المجتمع الواجب فى أن يكون له آراؤه ومعتقداته وفى المجتمعات المتحضرة، لا توجد مشكلة فى أن تكون مختلفًا عن الآخرين، ولكن من الضرورى احترام بعضنا البعض.

c) لكل فرد فى المجتمع الحق فى أن يكون له آراؤه ومعتقداته وفى المجتمعات المتحضرة، توجد مشكلة فى أن تكون مختلفًا عن الآخرين، ولكن من الضرورى احترام بعضنا البعض.

d) لكل فرد فى المجتمع الحق فى أن يكون له آراؤه ومعتقداته وفى المجتمعات المتحضرة، لا توجد مشكلة فى أن تكون مختلفًا عن الآخرين، ولكن من الجائز احترام بعضنا البعض.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- علاوة على المناظر الطبيعية الخلابة والطقس المعتدل تمتلك مصر العديد من الأعمال الهندسية المذهلة القديمة والحديثة، لذلك تجذب الزائرين والسائحين من جميع أنحاء العالم.

a) In addition to the fabulous landscape and mild weather, Egypt has many amazing ancient and modern engineering jobs, so it attracts visitors and tourists from all over the world.

b) In addition to the fabulous landscape and mild weather, Egypt has many amazing ancient and modern engineering works, so it attaches visitors and tourists from all over the world.

c) In addition to the fabulous landscape and mild weather, Egypt has many amazing ancient and modern engineering works, so it attracts visitors and tourists from all over the world.

d) In addition to the fabulous landscape and mild weather, Egypt has many amazing ancient and modern engineering works, so that it attracts visitors and tourists from all over the world.

26. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. Do you think that Cordelia is right to help the French army invade her country? Why?

....

....

2. "Goneril, but I think you are making problems rather than solving them." Do you agree with Albany when he said this? Why?

....

....

3. If you were Gloucester, would you get angry with Edgar so easily? Why?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"A story of a man who conquered great difficulties to reach his ambition"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Doctors say that the small blood vessels in the nose .... easily, so some fighting sports players wear a face mask.
a) injure b) heal c) treat d) bleed

2. It was real fun to .... together with his old school friends.
a) get b) make c) go d) intend

3. There is a clear .... that smoking causes heart disease.
a) law b) case c) experience d) evidence

4. The two villages are similar in size, but very different in ....
a) feeling b) character c) letter d) assumption

5. The staff were invited to give their opinions .... the way the work should be done.
a) for b) about c) at d) in

6. The essay contains a number of factual errors about the scientific study. The antonym of the word "factual" is "...............".
a) genuine b) real c) false d) detective

7. There were lots of buses, so we .... drive to the airport.
a) didn't have to b) needn't c) must d) had to

8. *"The Lord of the Rings"* was the .... film I have ever seen.
a) much exciting b) most exciting c) exciting d) more exciting

9. The plane from Saudi Arabia .... Cairo Airport at 4:30.
a) will have reached b) is reaching
c) is going to reach d) reaches

10. Nobody knows where the jewels have gone. They .... have been stolen.
a) should b) must c) could d) can't

11. He is a liar, which .... that we'll never believe him.
a) seem b) means c) suppose d) mean

12. .... they seen us, we would have been in trouble.
a) Should b) If c) Had d) Were

13. When Marwa came to Britain, she had to get used .... on the left.
a) for driving b) to drive c) to driving d) driving

14. We don't have .... on holiday right now.
a) enough money to go b) money enough to go
c) enough money for go d) money enough for going

15. Our friend is getting married. I think you .... go to the wedding.
a) should b) have to
c) needn't d) may

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The chocolate that we eat starts with cacao trees, also called cocoa trees. Cacao trees grow in warm climates like Central and South America, Africa or parts of Asia. This tree produces a seed pod and cocoa beans are the seeds inside the pod. Cocoa beans eventually become chocolate. At the chocolate factory, the beans are cleaned and then they are roasted for up to 2 hours in large rotating drums. The cocoa beans tumble in these drums like clothes in a clothes dryer. As they dry, the beans turn a rich brown colour. After roasting, the shell of the cocoa bean is removed and the inside of the cocoa bean is then ground by heavy steel plates. This grinding process forms a chocolate liquid. When chocolate liquid is moulded and cooled, the product is called unsweetened or bitter chocolate. Sometimes the chocolate liquid is made into dry cocoa powder. When cocoa is made, the oil from the cocoa bean is pressed out and is known as cocoa butter. Add sugar, cocoa butter, and vanilla flavouring to unsweetened chocolate and you have a chocolate candy. If you also add milk, the product is milk chocolate.

Next, the milk chocolate mixture goes through heating and cooling cycles before being moulded. Finally, it is moulded into milk chocolate candy bars or it is made into ten-pound blocks of chocolate that are sold to other candy bar manufacturers.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. Where do cacao trees grow?

a) In Asia and the United States.
b) In Central and South America, Africa and Asia.
c) In South America and Mexico.
d) In Europe and Africa.

17. What does chocolate come from?

a) Pinto beans. b) Butter beans. c) Lima beans. d) Cocoa beans.

18. How are these beans dried?

a) By boiling in a pan. b) By roasting in a dryer.
c) By baking in the sun. d) By baking in an oven.

19. The synonym of the word "bitter" is "..................".

a) unpleasant b) pleasant c) sweet d) hot

20. What is unsweetened chocolate?

a) It is another name for milk chocolate. b) It is another name for cocoa.
c) It is another name for bitter chocolate. d) It is another name for a candy bar.

21. A milk chocolate candy bar needs to contain ....

a) sugar and cocoa butter b) sugar and milk
c) sugar, vanilla and cocoa butter d) sugar, vanilla, cocoa butter and milk

22. How is the chocolate that candy bar makers buy sold to them?

a) As processed milk chocolate. b) As cocoa powder.
c) As cocoa butter. d) As cocoa beans.

23. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) heating and cooling cycle b) milk chocolate candy bar
c) the milk chocolate mixture d) a block of chocolate

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

In the past, trade was on a small scale. Today, trade has greatly developed and increased. Goods are now transported quickly and safely, so the prices of goods are affected by the crises in faraway countries.

a) فى الماضى، كانت التجارة على نطاق واسع، واليوم تطورت التجارة وازدادت بشكل كبير حيث يتم الآن نقل البضائع بسرعة وأمان، وبالتالى تتأثر أسعار السلع بأزمات دول بعيدة.

b) فى الماضى، كانت التجارة على نطاق ضيق، واليوم تطورت التجارة وازدادت بشكل كبير حيث يتم الآن نقل البضائع بسرعة وأمان، وبالتالى تتأثر أسعار السلع بأزمات دول بعيدة.

c) فى الماضى، كانت التجارة على نطاق ضيق، واليوم تطورت التجارة وازدادت بشكل كبير حيث يتم الآن نقل البضائع بسرعة وأمان، وبالتالى تتأثر أسعار السلع بأزمات دول أخرى.

d) فى الماضى، كانت التجارة على نطاق واسع، واليوم تطورت التجارة وازدادت بشكل كبير حيث يتم الآن نقل البضائع بسرعة وأمان، وبالتالى تتأثر أسعار السلع بأزمات دول مختلفة.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- تضرب مصر مثالًا كبيرًا للتسامح بين الأديان من خلال التعايش بين المسلمين والمسيحيين الذى يرجع لمئات السنين والذى حماها من الفتنة الطائفية على مر العصور.

a) Egypt sets a great example of cooperation of religions through coexistence between Muslims and Christians which dates back to hundreds of years, and protected it from sectarian strife throughout the ages.

b) Egypt sets a great example of tolerance of religions through integration between Muslims and Christians which dates back to hundreds of years, and protected it from sectarian strife throughout the ages.

c) Egypt sets a great example of tolerance of religions through coexistence between Muslims and Christians which dates back to hundreds of years, and protected it from security strife throughout the ages.

d) Egypt sets a great example of tolerance of religions through coexistence between Muslims and Christians which dates back to hundreds of years, and protected it from sectarian strife throughout the ages.

....

....

26. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. In your opinion, how are Lear and Gloucester similar?

....

....

2. Do you think that King Lear could get any benefit from being with poor people such as Poor Tom? Explain your answer.

....

....

3. If you were Edgar, would you obey your younger brother to pretend to fight? Why?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"A famous person and the services he/she did to humanity"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test (13)

32

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People complained that the rubbish lay in .... on the street and this was collected at once.
   a) piles b) hays c) holes d) wreckages
2. The famous tennis player Venus Williams won several important single .... before retiring.
   a) titles b) names c) headings d) tours
3. To .... healthy, you should follow the rules of personal and public cleanliness.
   a) leave b) move c) stay d) remove
4. The Japanese bride insisted on wearing a/an .... Japanese kimono on her wedding.
   a) styled b) technological c) inventive d) traditional
5. Every organisation with computer links .... the internet must employ its own programmers.
   a) on b) to c) about d) at
6. Children find endless pleasure and fun in playing with water. The antonym of the word "pleasure" is "..................".
   a) assistance b) enjoyment c) sorrow d) delight
7. We .... to school tomorrow as it is a holiday.
   a) needn't go b) needn't have gone c) didn't go d) must go
8. What .... at the party tonight?
   a) you wearing b) do you wear
   c) are you worn d) are you wearing
9. They were warned .... the mountain in such bad weather.
   a) to climb b) climbing c) not to climb d) to not climb
10. She has been on the phone for an hour. She .... to have an interesting conversation!
    a) is meant b) supposed c) seems d) is seemed
11. Which of the three supermarkets do you think has .... range of products?
    a) widest b) the widest c) wider d) the most wide
12. Hisham .... at the club tonight. We should go and see him. He's a great player.
    a) will be playing b) will play c) is going to play d) plays
13. I called the restaurant .... a table.
    a) for reserve b) to reserve
    c) for reservation d) so that I reserve
14. It's two years .... Joe.
    a) that I don't see b) since I last saw
    c) that I haven't seen d) since I hadn't seen
15. You wouldn't .... your car if you had driven more carefully.
    a) damage b) damaged
    c) has damaged d) have damaged

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The term ecology comes from a Greek word that means "the study of the house". Ecology is the study of how all living things interact with their environments. Today, we also understand ecology to mean taking care of the Earth so that humans, plants and animals can all thrive. However, we can damage the environment. Sometimes the damage is irreversible.

Ecology considers how a living thing reacts to climate and soil conditions. It also studies how much clean water is available and the amount of natural resources. By learning about how living things, including humans, affect each other, we can make smart decisions that protect all living things and the resources they need. There are many things that children can do to help make sure that their world stays healthy. The decisions you are making today can affect the future.

Conservation is one area of ecology where we can all make a difference. Conservation means using Earth's limited resources wisely so that they don't run out. When you are home, take a moment to think about how you use resources. Many people waste resources. Leaking toilets, half-filled dishwashers or clothes washers, and unattended hoses all waste precious water. If you leave lights on and appliances running in rooms where they are not being used, you are wasting energy.

We need to take the time to learn about how to save resources. More importantly, we must then put into practice what we learn. Children can do their part. They can show their families some ways to save resources. Together, we can all make a difference.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. Earth is like a house for ....

a) rich people
b) all living things
c) animals and plants
d) people and plants

17. Ecology studies how living things interact with ....

a) earth
b) other planets
c) the environment
d) people

18. People probably leave lights on when they aren't using them because ....

a) they want to punish the government
b) they want to pay a lot of money
c) electricity is free
d) they forget to turn them off

19. Which one of the following doesn't help to conserve resources?

a) Leaking water in the bathroom.
b) Turning off lights during our sleep.
c) Full-filled clothes washers.
d) Walking to the market instead of driving.

20. The underlined word "thrive" can be replaced by ....

a) escape
b) grow
c) demolish
d) decrease

21. Conservation is to use the planet's resources ....

a) foolishly
b) gradually
c) carefully
d) carelessly

22. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) humans
b) smart decisions
c) all living things
d) resources

23. The best title for the passage is "................."

a) Conservation
b) The earth's limited resources
c) The planet is in danger
d) How to live happily

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

All living creatures need to cooperate in order to achieve their goals. Teamwork, together with tolerance, is essential for the success of any project.

a) تحتاج جميع الكائنات الحية إلى التعاون من أجل تحقيق أهدافها، فالعمل الجماعى جنبًا إلى جنب مع التسامح، ضروريان لنجاح أى مشروع.

b) تحتاج جميع الكائنات الحية إلى التعاون من أجل تحقيق أهدافها، فالعمل الجاد جنبًا إلى جنب مع التسامح، ضروريان لنجاح أى مشروع.

c) تحتاج جميع الكائنات الحية إلى التعاون من أجل تحقيق أهدافها، فالعمل الجماعى جنبًا إلى جنب مع السماح، ضروريان لنجاح أى مشروع.

d) تحتاج جميع الكائنات الحية إلى التعاون من أجل تحقيق أهدافها، فالعمل الجماعى جنبًا إلى جنب مع التسامح، ضروريان لاستمرار أى مشروع.

25. Choose the correct English translation:

- لم يعد التعليم التقليدى مناسبًا للأجيال الجديدة ومواكبًا للتطور المستمر فى جميع مجالات الحياة الحديثة؛ لذلك بدأت وزارة التربية والتعليم فى النظام الحديث للتعليم وخاصة فى المرحلة الثانوية.

a) Traditional education is no longer suitable for new generations and keeping pace with the continuous development in all regions of modern life. Therefore, the Ministry of Education started the new system of education, especially in the secondary period.

b) Traditional education is no longer suitable for new generations and keeping pace with the continuous development in all fields of modern life. Therefore, the Ministry of Education started the new system of education, especially in the secondary stage.

c) Traditional education is no longer suitable for new generations and keeping pace with the continuous development in all fields of modern life. Nevertheless, the Ministry of Education started the new system of education, especially in the secondary area.

d) Traditional education is no longer suitable for new generations and keeping pace with the continuous development in all fields of modern life. Therefore, the Ministry of Education started the new system of education, especially in the secondary phase.

26. Answer the following questions: (The Play)

1. Do you think that the King of France came to England only to help King Lear? Why?

....

....

2. Why do you think the King refused to go with Gloucester without Poor Tom?

....

....

3. In your opinion, why couldn't Gloucester recognise Kent or Edgar when he saw them with the King?

....

....

27. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Many people think that money is the main cause of happiness. State your opinion."

....

....

....

....

....

....

Al-Azhar (1)

منطقة القاهرة الأزهرية (علمى)



(A) Usage &Language Functions

1 Listen and answer the following questions:

a) How many litres of blood does your heart pump through your body every hour?

b) How long do we need to exercise every day?

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue at a restaurant:

A: Excuse me! I want to see the manager.

B: Of course, sir! .... (1) .... ?

A: I have a complaint

B: .... (2) ....

A: The food is .... (3) ....

B: We'll change it for you, sir.

A: .... (4) ....

(B) Vocabulary & Structures

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why don't you come over to my house and .... out for a while?
   a) put b) hang c) fall d) bring
2. The slower you drive, the .... you are.
   a) safe b) safest c) most safer d) safer
3. The soldiers were lying .... on the ground as they were wounded.
   a) flat b) injury c) healthy d) active
4. It .... to be an apology but it only made her angry.
   a) is seemed b) is meant c) supposed d) was meant
5. .... is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
   a) Agriculture b) Hydroponics c) Industry d) Botany
6. She was angry with him. He .... have talked to her that way.
   a) couldn't b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) can't

(C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, and then answer the questions:

A student passed all his school examinations and then went to a college to continue his studies. There, he enrolled in a course in geography. But after the first lecture, he didn't attend any more lectures. The geography lecturer noticed this student was always absent and that he had changed to another course, so he was very surprised to see the boy's name on the list of the students who wanted to take the geography examination at the end of the year. The lecturer had prepared a difficult examination paper, which followed his lectures very closely, and he was eager to see how this student answered the questions. When he examined the answer, he found only one small mistake. So, he sent for the student and told him that he was curious to know how he was able to find only one little mistake although the student came to the first lecture and was absent from all the others. To his great surprise, the student told him that he would not have made that mistake if he hadn't been confused by his first lecture.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why was the lecturer surprised when he saw the student's name on the list of the students wanting to take the exam?
2. What did the lecturer find when he examined the student's answer?
3. What would have happened if the student hadn't attended the first lecture?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The student mentioned in the passage must have been ....
   a) foolish b) fool c) clever d) stupid
5. The student ....
   a) was always absent
   b) changed to another course
   c) passed his exams
   d) a & c

(D) Drama-King Lear

5 A) Answer the following questions:

1. How does Edmund trick Edgar?
2. Why does King Lear leave Goneril's house?
3. Who is Oswald?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. "Let me talk to this philosopher". Who is the philosopher according to Lear?
   a) Gloucester. b) Poor Tom. c) Kent. d) The Fool.
5. Cordelia will leave with ....
   a) The Duke of Burgundy
   b) The King of France
   c) Kent
   d) Edgar
6. Regan asks her father to bring just .... soldiers.
   a) 100 b) 50 c) 25 d) 10

(E) Writing

5 Write a paragraph of not less than (80) words on:

"The dangers of using social media unwisely"

....

....

(F) Translation

A) Translate into Arabic:

- Most of us makes mistakes, but most of us don't know how to benefit from our mistakes.

....

....

....

B) Translate into English:

- غالبا ما يكون للغة الجسد تأثير كبير فى ترجمة الرسائل.

....

....

....



(A) Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct word:

1. In an emergency, every .... is important.
   a) second b) minute c) thing d) day
2. People worry that they will .... a mistake.
   a) do b) make c) give d) take

2 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences:

1. Major changes have taken .... in the Egyptian society.
   a) part b) place c) apart d) down
2. You .... drive so fast. It's very dangerous.
   a) don't need b) don't have to
   c) must d) mustn't
3. .... is a method of growing plants in water.
   a) Hydroponics b) Mathematics
   c) Micronics d) Gymnastics
4. Look out! a car .... you.
   a) will hit b) is going to hit
   c) is hitting d) may hit
5. The play .... to be really good.
   a) is meant b) meant
   c) is seemed d) supposed
6. If I .... up late last night, I would have got up early.
   a) hadn't stayed b) stayed
   c) had stayed d) have stayed

3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Hager : How often do you .... (1) .... ?
Somaya : I cook three .... (2) .... a week.
Hager : What type of .... (3) .... do you regularly cook?
Somaya : Chicken, meat and rice.
Hager : What about .... (4) .... ?
Somaya : I like chocolate cake.

(B) Reading Comprehension

4 Read the passage, then answer the questions:

Computers are machines that can help us in many ways. But they can't think or do things on their own. They can save much time and work. The first computers were huge and costly. They filled up almost the whole floor with large offices. Today, computers are not only cheaper, but also more compact. They can be carried easily. Robots, on the other hand, can do the same work without complaining or getting tired.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
2. Why did the first computers fill up the whole floor?
3. What's your opinion of computers?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Find a word in the passage that means compact.
   a) Huge. b) Cheaper. c) Smaller. d) Costly.
5. Computers are machines that can't think ....
   a) alone b) slow c) aloud d) lonely

(C) Islamic Selections

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What would happen if there were more than one creator?

B) Choose the correct word(s) between brackets:

2. Most of Allah's names are revealed in the Qur'an, while some are known from ....
   a) stories b) narration c) the hadith d) tales
3. The Prophet (PBUH) sent .... to teach the people of Yathrib about Islam.
   a) Ali b) Abu Bakr
   c) Alabass d) Mus'ab Ibn 'Umair

(D) Writing

5 Write a paragraph of about 80 words on:

"Something you did recently that you regret"

....

....

(E) Translation

A) Translate into Arabic:

- Traditional education is no longer suitable for new generations or keeping pace with the continuous development in all fields of life.

....

....

....

....

B) Translate into English:

عاجلاً أم أجلاً، سيواجه الشباب مسئوليات جسيمة، لذا يجب أن يكونوا مسلحين بالعزيمة والاخلاص و الصبر والإرادة القوية.

....

....

....

....



اختبار دمج

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The synonym of "bully" is to .... somebody.
a) impress b) conquer c) hurt d) admire

2. Ahmed .... a talk in an international conference about education.
a) took b) gave c) played d) went

3. This water isn't polluted; you can drink it as it is ....
a) fresh b) toxic c) poisoned d) dirty

4. .... hard surely leads to success.
a) Working b) Worked c) Work d) Works

5. Having .... my work, I left the office.
a) finishing b) finish c) finishes d) finished

6. My grandson will go to the park when he .... his assignment.
a) answers b) had answered
c) answer d) will answer

7. People .... heart problems need special care.
a) in b) by c) for d) with

8. The doctor told him to stop smoking. This shows ....
a) order b) request
c) positive advice d) negative advice

9. What .... yesterday to avoid meeting those people? I feel sorry now!
a) did I have to do b) should I do
c) should I have done d) I should have done

10. Professor Ahmed showed students how to .... research online.
a) make b) do c) set d) let

11. I must .... my lawyer; I have a case in the court.
a) advise b) insist c) insult d) consult

12. Hospitals .... to follow rules of safety.
a) supposed b) are meant c) are seemed d) must

13. The kids .... their parents to take them to the carnival on Friday.
a) begged b) backed c) looked d) agreed

14. The word terrible is a replacement for ....
a) very bad b) very good c) surprising d) terrific

15. Nadeen .... with the new roommates: all of them love her.
a) quarreled b) got on c) fell out d) lost touch

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It's a busy city, with about 20 million people living and working there. People can have a nice sight-seeing in Cairo. You can take the subway or drive a car to the museum. You can catch a taxi to get to the Cairo Tower. It's the tallest place in Cairo. You can see all of the city from it. The Pyramids and Sphinx stand for the great ancient Egyptians. You can ride a bus to get there. The Giza Zoo is full of lots of animals. It's a good place for a trip.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. The text is mainly about ....

a) Alexandria b) Cairo
c) Giza d) Aswan

17. Cairo is a/an .... city.

a) amazing b) small
c) dwarf d) remote

18. The Sphinx is a/an ....

a) Pyramid b) museum
c) statue d) temple

19. You can see a lot of animals at the ....

a) zoo b) museum
c) tower d) Pyramids

20. Tourists come to Cairo to .... monuments.

a) look b) see
c) care d) inspire

21. Cairo Tower is the .... place in Cairo.

a) highest b) fattest
c) thinnest d) ugliest

22. The word "ancient" can be the opposite for ....

a) aged b) old
c) modern d) fresh

The Novel (1 Mark)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

23. The King of.................. married Cordelia although she didn't have any money.

a) Burgundy b) France
c) England d) Scotland

24. Edmund is the .... son of Gloucester.

a) new b) older
c) younger d) good

25. Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- The computer has helped man to save time and effort and to perform calculations quickly and easily.

a) ساعد الحاسب الآلى الإنسان على إنقاذ الوقت والجهد وأداء الحسابات بسرعة وبسهولة.

b) لقد ساعد الحاسب الآلى الرجل على توفير الوقت والتأثير وأداء الحسابات بسرعة وبسهولة.

c) ساعد الحاسب الآلى الرجل على توفير الوقت والمال وأداء الحسابات بسرعة وبسهولة.

d) لقد ساعد الحاسب الآلى الإنسان على توفير الوقت والجهد وأداء الحسابات بسرعة وبسهولة.

26. Choose the correct English translation:

- إن إتقان المرء لعمله إحدى وسائل النهوض بالبلد ورقيها.

a) Master one work is one a means to advance the country and promote it.
b) That Master one's work is a means to advance the country and promote it.
c) Mastering one work is one of the means to advance the country and promoting it.
d) Mastering one's work is one of the means to advance the country and promote it.

27. Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

1. We arrived late at ten o'clock in the evening.

....

....

2. The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock in the morning.

....

....

3. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station.

....

....

4. Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan with my family.

....

....

a) We arrived late at ten o'clock in the evening. The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock in the morning. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station. Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan with my family.
b) The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock in the morning. We arrived late at ten o'clock in the evening. Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan with my family. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station.
c) Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan with my family. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station. The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock in the morning. We arrived late at ten o'clock in the evening.
d) My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station. We arrived late at ten o'clock in the evening. Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan with my family. The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock in the morning.

Topics Dictionary

قاموس بأهم موضوعات الترجمة

Mass Media

وسائل الإعلام

amusement	تسلية	editor-in-chief	رئيس التحرير	press	صحافة
author	مؤلف	free press	صحافة حرة	producer	منتج
critical	نقدى	humour	فكاهة	public relations	علاقات عامة
criticism	نقد	interpreter	مترجم فورى	realistic films	أفلام واقعية
criticise	ينتقد	journalism	صحافة	rumour	إشاعة
critic	ناقد	journalist	صحفى	sound and light show	عرض الصوت والضوء
director	مخرج	means of communication	وسائل الاتصال	TV serials	المسلسلات التليفزيونية
editor	محرر	news agency	وكالة أنباء	TV viewers	مشاهدو التليفزيون

Sports

الرياضات

activities	أنشطة	introvert	شخص انطوائى	supporters (fans)	المشجعون
amateurs	الهواة	Olympic Games	الألعاب الأولمبية	support	يؤيد/يشجع
audience	المتفرجون	physical fitness	اللياقة البدنية	team work	عمل جماعى
boxer	ملاكم	playground	ملعب	the World Cup	كأس العالم
boxing	الملاكمة	rowing	التجديف	training suit	بدلة التدريب
compete with	يتنافس مع	silver medal	ميدالية فضية	weight	وزن
competition	منافسة	spectators	المتفرجون	winner	فائز
competitor	متنافس	sporting club	نادٍ رياضى	wrestler	مصارع
crowd	الجمهور	sporting spirit	الروح الرياضية	wrestling	المصارعة
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	sports day	يوم رياضى	youth organisations	منظمات الشباب
extrovert	شخص اجتماعى (غير انطوائى)	sportsmanship	الروح الرياضية	youth welfare	رعاية الشباب
gold medal	ميدالية ذهبية	summer camps	المعسكرات الصيفية		

Tourism — السياحة

advertise	يعلن عن	flight	رحلة جوية	pharaonic remains	الآثار الفرعونية
baggage/luggage	أمتعة السفر	group tourism	السياحة الجماعية	religious tourism	السياحة الدينية
book/reserve	يحجز	guide	يرشد/مرشد	sector	قطاع
civilisation	الحضارة	hard currency	العملة الصعبة	sight-seeing	رؤية المعالم السياحية
civilised behaviour	سلوك متحضر	holy places	أماكن مقدسة	the citadel	القلعة
conducted tour	رحلة مع مرشد	home tourism	السياحة الداخلية	tourism industry	صناعة السياحة
conference tourism	سياحة المؤتمرات	immortal	الخالدة	tourist awareness	وعى سياحى
crocodiles of tourists	أفواج من السياح	Ministry of Tourism	وزارة السياحة	tourist information	معلومات سياحية
cruise	رحلة نهرية	monuments	آثار	tourist villages	قرى سياحية
cultural tourism	السياحة الثقافية	national income	الدخل القومى	travel agency	وكالة سياحية
curative tourism	السياحة العلاجية	nature reserves	محميات طبيعية	voyage	رحلة بحرية
embalming	التحنيط	obelisk	مسلة	youth hostels	بيوت الشباب
feasts	أعياد	pharaohs	الفراعنة		

Science & Culture — العلم والثقافة

civilised society	مجتمع متحضر	ignorance	الجهل	inventor	مخترع
consumer	مستهلك	ignorant	جاهل	manufacture	يصنع
diagnose	يشخص	ignore	يتجاهل	miracles	معجزات
discover	يكتشف	industrialism	التصنيع	refrigerator	ثلاجة
discoverer	مكتشف	industrialise	يصنع	scientific research	البحث العلمى
discovery	اكتشاف	industry	الصناعة	symptoms	أعراض
elements	عناصر	invent	يخترع		
eliminate illiteracy	يقضى على الأمية	inventions	اختراعات	technology	تكنولوجيا
heater	سخان	inventiveness	القدرة على الابتكار		

Economy — الاقتصاد

achieve	يحقق	consumption	الاستهلاك	economic crisis	الأزمة الاقتصادية
bank loan	قرض مصرفى	credit card	كارت ائتمان	economic grouping	تجمع اقتصادى
barter	المقايضة	crowded with	مزدحم بـ	economic progress	التقدم الاقتصادى
birth control	تحديد النسل	double	يضاعف	economic recovery	انتعاش اقتصادى
budget	ميزانية	economical	مقتصد	economic slump	تدهور اقتصادى

economic system	النظام الاقتصادى	housing problem	مشكلة الإسكان	progress	التقدم
economic wealth	ثروة اقتصادية	ideal society	مجتمع مثالى	prosperity	الرخاء
economise	يقتصد	increase	يزيد/زيادة	provide	يوفر
economist	عالم اقتصاد	investment	الاستثمار	rationalise	يرشد/يقتصد
economy	الاقتصاد	job opportunities	فرص العمل	raw materials	المواد الخام
encourage	يشجع	living expenses	تكاليف المعيشة	self-reliance	الاعتماد على الذات
exportation	التصدير	local currency	عملة محلية	self-sufficiency	الاكتفاء الذاتى
family planning	تنظيم الأسرة	national economy	الاقتصاد القومى	food shortage	نقص الطعام
financial aid	مساعدة مالية	national production	الإنتاج القومى	socialism	الاشتراكية
financial crisis	أزمة مالية	new world order	النظام العالمى الجديد	transport problem	مشكلة المواصلات
foreign investment	استثمارات أجنبية	over-crowdedness	شدة الازدحام	unemployment	البطالة
foreign trade	التجارة الخارجية	overpopulation	زيادة السكان		
health insurance	التأمين الصحى	population explosion	الانفجار السكانى	welfare	الرفاهية
health services	خدمات صحية	private sector	القطاع الخاص		

Transport — النقل

air crash	تحطم طائرة	conductor	كمسرى	runways	ممرات
avenue	طريق مشجر	crossroads	تقاطع الطرق	side street	شارع جانبى
ban/prohibit	يمنع/يحظر	departure lounge	صالة المغادرة	sign	لافتة
carriage	عربة قطار	means of transport	وسائل المواصلات	timetable	جدول مواعيد
catch	يلحق	miss	يفقد/يفوته	traffic instructions	تعليمات المرور
city centre	وسط المدينة	prohibition	منع/حظر	tunnel	نفق
comfortable	مريح	railway station	محطة سكة حديد		

Politics — السياسة

abolish	يقضى على	Arab nationalism	القومية العربية	commit crimes	يرتكب جرائم
aggression	عدوان	ceasefire	وقف إطلاق النار	corruption	الفساد
aggressive policy	سياسة عدوانية	celebrate	يحتفل بـ	current event	أحداث جارية
aggressor	معتدِ	chaos	الفوضى	debate	مناظرة/مجادلة
Arab Gulf	الخليج العربى	combat/fight	يكافح	declaration	إعلان
Arab leaders	القادة العرب	commando	فدائى	declare	يعلن عن

delegation	وفد	new horizons	آفاق جديدة	safety and security	الأمان والأمن
democracy	الديمقراطية	new press law	قانون صحافة جديد	sanctions	عقوبات
disaster	كارثة	occupation	احتلال	security council	مجلس الأمن
election campaign	معركة انتخابية	occupied land	أرض محتلة	seminars	ندوات
embassy	سفارة	opponents	خصوم/أعداء	side with	ينحازإلى
extremism	التطرف	oppression	الاضطهاد	social justice	العدالة الاجتماعية
extremist	متطرف	organisation	منظمة	strategic goal	هدف استراتيجى
foreign minister	وزيرالخارجية	peace-loving nations	الشعوب المحبة للسلام	suicidal action	عمل انتحارى
foreign policy	السياسة الخارجية	peaceful co-existence	التعايش السلمى	summit conference	مؤتمرقمة
freezing the situation	تجميد الموقف	peaceful means	الطرق السلمية	terrorism	إرهاب
hostages	رهائن	peaceful solutions	حلول سلمية	terrorist	إرهابى
hostility	العداء	peace treaty	معاهدة سلام	the agenda	جدول الأعمال
initiative	مبادرة	permanent peace	سلام دائم	the Egyptian sovereignty	السيادة المصرية
instability	عدم الاستقرار	political settlement	تسوية سياسية	the present situation	الوضع الراهن
international issues	القضايا الدولية	politicians	السياسيون	the top event	الحدث الرئيسى
martyrs	شهداء	praise	يمدح/يشهد بـ	United Nations = UN	الأمم المتحدة
mass destruction	الدمارالشامل	Prime Minister	رئيس الوزراء	uproot	يستأصل
military action	عمل حربى	refugees	لاجئون	urgent solutions	حلول عاجلة
military aids	مساعدات عسكرية	reject	ينبذ	victory	انتصار
national consciousness	الحس القومى	release/set free	يطلق سراح	violence	العنف
national duty	واجب وطنى	repressive measures	إجراءات قمعية	violent	عنيف
negotiations	مفاوضات	resistance	مقاومة	weapons	أسلحة

Different Subjects موضوعات مختلفة

ability	القدرة	advanced countries	الدول المتقدمة	air forces	قوات جوية
abject poverty	فقرمدقع	affairs	شئون	a means to	وسيلة لـ
abuse	إساءة استعمال	aggression	عدوان	anaesthetic	عقاقيرمخدرة
according to	طبقًا لـ/حسب	aggressive	عدوانى	annual	سنوى
acute shortage	نقص حاد	agricultural	زراعى	appearance	مظهر
addiction	الإدمان	agriculture	الزراعة	appliances	أجهزة
admiration	إعجاب	air-strikes	ضربات جوية	armed forces	القوات المسلحة

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
astrology	تنجيم	comprehensive	شامل	disarmament	نزع السلاح
attractions	جاذبات	confidence	ثقة	discipline	نظام
authority	سلطة	conflict	صراع	discovery	اكتشاف
auto-determination	حق تقرير المصير	confrontation	المواجهة	displays	معروضات
awareness	وعى	considerate	مراع للآخرين	dispute	نزاع / خلاف
backbone	عمود فقرى	construction	تشييد	dissatisfaction	عدم الرضا
behaviour	السلوك	consumption	استهلاك	distinguish	يميز
birth control	تحديد النسل	corruption	الفساد	domination	سيطرة
birth rate	معدل المواليد	creature	مخلوق	donations	تبرعات
blessing	نعمة	criticism	نقد	do without	يستغنى
book fair	معرض الكتاب	cultivable land	أرض زراعية	drought	جفاف
bossy	متغطرس	curfew	حظر تجوال	drugs	المخدرات
brotherhood	الأخوة	current events	أحداث جارية	duties	واجبات
by accident	بالمصادفة	customs and traditions	العادات والتقاليد	earn his living	يكسب رزقه
by all means	بكل الوسائل	deepen	يعمق	earthquake	زلزال
campaign	حملة	democracy	الديمقراطية	economic stability	الاستقرار الاقتصادى
capacity	قدرة / مقدرة	demonstrations	مظاهرات	education	التعليم
capital	رأس مال	dependence	اتكال / تبعية	effective	مؤثر / فعال
catastrophe	كارثة	depression	اكتئاب / انخفاض	efforts	جهود / مجهودات
characteristics	خصائص	deprivation	حرمان	elections	انتخابات
childhood	الطفولة	desertification	تصحر	eliminate	يزيل
civilisation	الحضارة	deserve	يستحق	emergencies	طوارئ
civil war	حرب أهلية	destiny	مصير	emotions	عواطف
cloning	الاستنساخ	destruction	دمار	employable	صالح للوظيفة
co-operation	تعاون	deterioration	تدهور	enlightenment	تنوير
comfort	راحة	developed countries	دول متقدمة	enrich	يثرى
commandoes	فدائيون	developing countries	دول نامية	entertainment	تسلية
commerce	التجارة	deviation	الانحراف	enthusiasm	حماس
compensation	تعويض	dilemma	مأزق	environmental	بيئى
competition	منافسة	disappearance	اختفاء	environment	البيئة

epidemic	وبائى
equality	المساواة
era	عهد
every now and then	من حين لآخر
evidence	دليل
exert effort	يبذل الجهد
exhibition	معرض
existence	وجود
expenditure	إنفاق
exploitation	استغلال
explosion	انفجار
exports	صادرات
extremists	متطرفين
facilities	تسهيلات
failure	الفشل
fair peace	السلام العادل
famine	مجاعة
fatal	قاتل/فتاك
features	ملامح/سمات
fertility	خصوبة
financial aid	إعانة مالية
flourish	يزدهر
fluency	طلاقة
flyover bridges	كبارى علوية
forgiveness	تسامح
forum	منتدى
freedom	الحرية
friendship	الصداقة
from now on	من الآن فصاعدًا
fumes	أدخنة
future generations	أجيال المستقبل
generation	جيل
genetic engineering	هندسة وراثية
globalisation	العولمة
gloomy/dull	كئيب
glory	مجد
gratitude	عرفان الجميل
handicapped	معوق
hardships	صعوبات
heritage	تراث
homeless	متشرد
hostages	رهائن
housing	الإسكان
humanity	البشرية
human race	الجنس البشرى
human rights	حقوق الإنسان
ignorance	الجهل
illiteracy abolishing	محو الأمية
immigration	هجرة
immunisation	تحصين
imperialism	الاستعمار
imports and exports	واردات وصادرات
impose	يفرض
improvement	تحسينات
incompetence	عجز/لا كفاءة
independence	الاستقلال
industrialisation	تصنيع
inequality	عدم المساواة
infancy	الطفولة
infection	عدوى
inflation	تضخم مالى
influence	تأثير
infrastructure	البنية الأساسية
injustice	الظلم
innocence	براءة
in recognition of	اعترافًا بـ
insurance	تأمين
integrated community	مجتمع متكامل
integration	التكامل
intelligence	ذكاء
invasion	غزو
invention	اختراع
investment	استثمار
investor	مستثمر
irrigation	الرى
justice	العدل
just ruler	حاكم عادل
knowledge	معرفة
labour force	القوى العاملة
leading country	دولة رائدة
lessen/reduce	يقلل/يخفض
liberation	تحرير
liberty/freedom	الحرية
living standards	مستويات معيشة
local products	منتجات محلية
loyalty	الوفاء
majority	الأغلبية
mankind	الجنس البشرى
manners	أخلاق
mass media	وسائل الإعلام

maternity	الأمومة	partition	تقسيم	privatisation	الخصخصة
medical assistance	مساعدات طبية	passive	سلبى	process	عملية
minority	الأقلية	patriotic	وطنى	profit/benefit	ربح
misery	البخل/شقاء	peace-loving nations	دول محبة للسلام	progress	التقدم
missile/rocket	صاروخ	peace treaty	معاهدة سلام	projects	مشروعات
mixed blessing	سلاح ذو حدين	peace	السلام	prominent	بارز
monopoly	احتكار	permanent	دائم	propaganda	دعاية
motherhood	الأمومة	perseverance	مثابرة	prospecting	التنقيب
motivate/urge	يحث/يدفع	pessimism	التشاؤم	prosperity	الرخاء
national duty	واجب قومى	pessimistic	متشائم	protection	حماية
national necessity	ضرورة قومية	pessimist	متشائم	protesters	محتجون
national unity	وحدة وطنية	phenomena	ظواهر طبيعية	public opinion	رأى عام
natural resources	موارد طبيعية	pioneer	رائد/قائد	punctual	مواظب
nature	الطبيعة	plastic arts	فنون تشكيلية	put an end	يضع نهاية
navigation	ملاحة	point of view	وجهة نظر	racism	عنصرية
neighbourliness	حق الجوار	political parties	الأحزاب السياسية	rationalising	ترشيد
neutral	محايد	pollution	التلوث	raw materials	مواد خام
non-smokers	غير المدخنين	popularity	شعبية	reclamation	استصلاح
nutrition	تغذية	population	السكان	reconstruction	تعمير
obstacles	عقبات	position	موقع/مكانة	reflection	انعكاس
on purpose	عمدًا	positive step	خطوة إيجابية	refugees	اللاجئون
opportunity	فرصة	poverty	الفقر	regain	يسترد/يستعيد
oppressed	مظلوم	prediction	تنبؤ	reliable	موثوق به
oppression	الظلم	president	رئيس	religion	الدين
optimism	التفاؤل	pressing problems	مشاكل ملحة	renaissance	نهضة
optimistic	متفائل	pressure	ضغط	resistance	مقاومة
outstanding	بارز/ظاهر	prevention	منع	resolution	حل جذرى
overpopulation	الزيادة السكانية	pride	فخر	resorts	منتجعات
part and parcel	جزء لا يتجزأ	principles	مبادئ	responsibility	مسئولية
participate	يساهم فى	private sector	قطاع خاص	restrictions	قيود

revival	إحياء	special talent	موهبة خاصة	tolerance	التسامح
revolution	ثورة	sports activity	نشاط رياضى	treatment	معاملة
rights	حقوق	spread awareness	ينشر الوعى	tremendous	هائل/مروع
rush hour	ساعة الذروة	stability	استقرار	tyranny	طغيان
sacrifice	يضحى	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة	tyrant	طاغية
satisfaction	الاكتفاء الذاتى	starvation	مجاعة	unemployment	البطالة
science fiction	الخيال العلمى	strength	قوة	unrest	عدم استقرار/اضطراب
sector	قطاع	strike	إضراب	uprising	انتفاضة
self-sacrifice	التضحية بالنفس	strong ties	روابط قوية	urgent task	مهمة عاجلة
selfishness	أنانية	strong will	الإرادة القوية	vaccination	مصل
self-confidence	الثقة بالنفس	struggle	يكافح/كفاح	various purposes	أغراض عديدة
self-reliance	الاعتماد على النفس	suitable opportunity	فرصة مناسبة	victorious	منتصر
separation	انفصال	summit conference	مؤتمر قمة	victory/triumph	نصر
settlement	استقرار	superficial	سطحى	voluntary	تطوعى
shelter	المسكن/المأوى	superstructure	بنية فوقية	volunteer	متطوع
shortage	نقص	supplies	مؤن	wasteful	مبذر
slavery	عبودية	surrender	يستسلم	wealth	ثروة
sociable	إنسان اجتماعى	survivors	الناجون	welfare	رفاهية
solidarity	التضامن	taxes	ضرائب	wipe out	يزيل/يمحو
solution to	حل لـ	thanks to	بفضل	withdraw	ينسحب
sooner or later	عاجلًا أم آجلًا	the only way to	الطريق الوحيد لـ	within	فى خلال/فى غضون
sovereignty	سيادة	the percentage	النسبة المئوية	with the aim of	بغرض/بهدف
space exploration	استكشاف الفضاء	threat	تهديد	wounds	جروح